



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







**Harvard College Library**  
THE GIFT OF  
**GINN AND COMPANY**



3 2044 097 076 830



GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

C. IVLI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI II  
**CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR**

With Introduction, Notes, Grammatical Appendix  
Vocabulary, and English-Latin Exercises

BY

HARRY F. TOWLE

LATE PRINCIPAL, CURTIS HIGH SCHOOL

AND

PAUL R. JENKS

FLUSHING HIGH SCHOOL

NEW YORK CITY



D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS  
BOSTON      NEW YORK      CHICAGO

Edw. T 1000.835.915  
v

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
GINN & COMPANY  
MARCH 17, 1927

COPYRIGHT, 1908, BY  
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

---

COPYRIGHT, 1915, BY  
D. C. HEATH & CO.

1 c5

## PREFACE

THE second year of the Latin course, in which Caesar's Gallic War is usually read, is confessedly the crucial period in the pupil's career. The work of the first year is devoted principally to learning the forms and acquiring as large a vocabulary as possible. But little attention is paid to syntax, and the reading material is carefully selected to suit the stage of progress of the learner. In the second year, on the other hand, not only must he review his forms, and enlarge his knowledge of syntax, but he must make his first acquaintance with a world-renowned classic, written for mature minds and of all grades of difficulty. To meet the needs of pupils at this period in their course this edition has been prepared, and the editors have endeavored to embody in it the results of many years' experience in the class room.

A large proportion of any school commentary on the Gallic War must be devoted to the explanation of syntactical difficulties. The usual practice is to refer for detailed treatment of any construction to some grammar in common use. This is open to two objections. The first and most important is that the grammar is of secondary importance to most pupils. Their principal attention is given to the translation of the text, and every teacher knows how difficult it is to get them to follow up the references given in the notes. The second difficulty is that the most of the class are as yet unable to make discriminating use of the comprehensive treatment found in the grammar, so that a confusion frequently results. To meet



these difficulties a complete treatise on the Syntax of the Gallic War has been inserted in this edition in the shape of an appendix to the commentary. Here every construction found in the text is explained in the simplest manner, and illustrated by examples, all of which are taken from the text, with references to the passages where they occur. Many hints as to differences between Latin and English idiom are also given, so that this Appendix is an important adjunct to the commentary in every way. For further study, references to the standard grammars are added under every heading.

In the conviction that the student should be encouraged to work out things for himself, but little assistance in the way of translation is provided. Instead, suggestive analyses of the thought have been inserted, with sufficient references to the Appendix, when the construction seems to demand it, to make the meaning of the author clear. The editors also believe that too much attention is usually paid in the early chapters to Indirect Discourse, and that it can be readily handled in translation without changing it to the direct form; they have, however, provided the direct form of several chapters in the notes, and those who prefer to make an exhaustive study of it will find it fully discussed in the Appendix, with a careful comparison of the rules for Indirect Discourse in English.

In illustrating the subject matter of the narrative the constant aim of the editors has been to interest and stimulate the pupil, but not to overload the commentary with unimportant details.

Much of the material often found in the notes is given in the Vocabulary. Here, too, the student is assisted to choose the right meaning of a word by references to its occurrence in the text, and phrases and idiom are explained, and, when necessary, translated.

The Introduction contains a brief discussion of Caesar's career and a sketch of the conditions of Roman society before his rise to power. The customary information as to the military system of the Romans is also added.

The thanks of the editors are due to Professor Lodge, who has read all the proofs and made many helpful suggestions, and to Miss Mary A. Cogswell, of Wellesley College, for material assistance in the preparation of the Vocabulary.

HARRY F. TOWLE.

PAUL R. JENKS.

## PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

THE recent trend in the teaching of second year Latin has been toward an intensive study of the first two books of Caesar, and a rapid reading of the most interesting portions of the rest ; toward a prescribed vocabulary, and a limited range of syntax study.

Accordingly the word lists have been conformed to Professor Lodge's standard vocabulary, and English-Latin exercises have been added, which contain, first, several sentences illustrating new constructions, second, review and miscellaneous sentences, which after a while are developed *pari passu* with Book I ; so that the teacher may easily give as much or as little drill and review as different classes or pupils require. The authors' selections for sight reading from Caesar are added, to make the book complete for all second year work.

P. R. J.

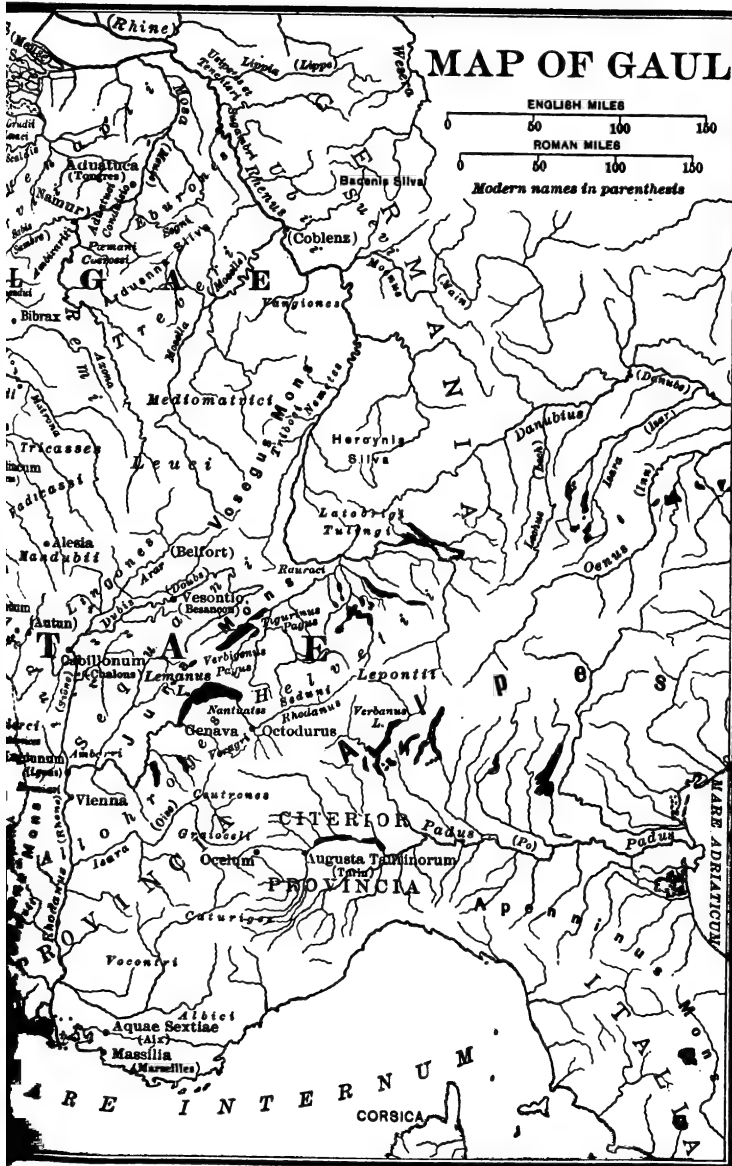
## MAPS AND CAMPAIGN PLANS

Map of Gaul . . . . .	<i>Facing page</i>	vii
Campaign of 58 B.C. . . . .	"	1
Map of Helvetia . . . . .	"	16
Battle with Ariovistus . . . . .	"	34
Campaign of 57 B.C. . . . .	"	38
Battle on the Aisne . . . . .	"	43
Battle with the Nervii . . . . .	"	48
Siege of Aduatuca . . . . .	"	54





## MAP OF GAUL







## INTRODUCTION

BEFORE entering upon the study of the literary work of Caesar it is well for the student to acquire some knowledge of the man and the times in which he lived. Too often is the reader of the Gallic War left under the impression that the fame of Caesar rests mainly on his having written a history of his campaigns in foreign lands, a book which has made young people more or less miserable, however it may have commanded the admiration of scholars. The character and achievements of this man are worthy of study quite apart from his career in Gaul.

As a writer, it is true, he will be famous to the end of time; but as an orator he was also conspicuous in an age of orators; as a successful military leader he has no superior; as a statesman neither ancient nor modern times have furnished his equal; and as an example of success due to a fixed purpose in life, prosecuted with an unyielding will and with restless energy, he has left a name that dominates history.

### THE ROMAN COMMONWEALTH.

During the four hundred years which elapsed from the expulsion of the kings to the birth of Caesar, the Roman Commonwealth underwent many changes in its government, in its moral and social life, and in the extent of its dominion.

**The Roman Government.**—At the beginning, the offices of the state were restricted to the aristocracy or patricians alone, while the plebeians, or common people, had almost no voice; hence arose political strife; the plebeians striving con-

tinually to improve their political status, the patricians striving as pertinaciously to retain their privileges unimpaired. To the determined assaults of the plebeians, however, the patricians gradually yielded, and one office after another was opened to plebeian candidacy until, finally, in 367 B.C. the consulship was brought within the grasp of the humblest citizen in the state. From that time, so far as appearances and law went, the Roman Commonwealth was a democracy, though not of the modern pattern.

**The Roman Empire.**—The city of Rome was situated in the midst of a fertile valley, in a location commanding the surrounding country, and it was thus brought into conflict with adjoining peoples at the very beginning of its life. In the course of years, however, by an uninterrupted series of wars, the dominion of the city gradually extended, and first one section of Italy and then another was brought under its influence, until in 275 B.C. the Roman government extended over the whole of Italy south of the river Aesis.

Shortly afterwards, the Romans came into contact with the rapidly expanding Carthaginian power by reason of the attempts of the Carthaginians to obtain control of Sicily. The result of this contact was the First Punic War (264–224 B.C.), which ended in Roman victory and the establishment of the Roman power in Sicily, the first of the long roll of Roman provinces.

Later, the Romans obtained a foothold in Spain, and they were reaching out in still other directions when the Second Punic War (219–202 B.C.) stopped their progress for a time, and brought them almost to the verge of destruction. The end of this war, however, was the complete overthrow of the Carthaginian power, and Rome became the dominating force in the Mediterranean.

Having obtained by the victory over the Carthaginians the control of the West, her attention was now directed toward the East. Here country after country was gradually subdued until, at the time when Caesar was born, the Roman Empire extended from Spain to Asia Minor, and embraced the whole coast of the Mediterranean without a break.

**The Character of the Romans.**—The effect of this perpetually expanding power upon the moral and political life of the people of Rome was demoralizing. In the earliest period they had been a brave, patriotic and thrifty people, fighting among themselves to decide the questions of political supremacy, but sinking all their internal differences to present a united front to foreign attack. With increasing power and dominion came a vast increase in wealth and luxury. This was particularly the case after the Second Punic War, when the control of so many subject states brought into Rome a steady stream of wealth from the East and the South and, at the same time, flooded the city with the dregs of Eastern and Southern populations: idle, indolent and vicious.

The great losses in the Roman Commonwealth during the Second Punic War had been repaired by the admission to citizenship of slaves and freedmen, men of entirely different quality from that of the sturdy old Roman stock. Almost all the farmers of Italy had been driven from their homes by Hannibal, and vast districts had been left desolate. These were bought up by the rich nobles of Rome and farmed with great companies of slaves. Accordingly there ensued a steady decrease in the number of free landed proprietors, the class which formed the real strength of the nation.

The increase in wealth had caused a decay in the morals of the leading citizens, and political rivalry for the best

interest of the state had given way to political rivalry for personal aggrandizement. Roman nobles now strove with each other for themselves, and not for Rome, and, as a consequence, made use of their wealth to corrupt still further the commonwealth, to destroy the independent spirit of the old democracy and to make the voting population a tool in the hands of the highest bidder.

**The Gracchi.**—In the year 133 B.C. a public-spirited Roman tribune, Tiberius Gracchus, attempted to remedy some of these evils by the passage of an Agrarian law to distribute the public lands now occupied by the nobles into small farms for the poor people. Great dissension was the result, which finally culminated in a bloody riot in which Gracchus and three hundred of his followers were killed. Ten years later Gaius Gracchus, brother of Tiberius, tried a similar scheme ; but he, too, was killed in 121 B.C. with many of his partisans. After that time the spirit of bitter partisanship and of rivalry between the nobility on the one hand and the democratic rabble on the other grew rapidly more and more intense, and it became evident to every discerning eye that it would not be long before the Roman Government would fall a prey to the strongest in arms. The first man to come to the front in this way was Gaius Marius.

**Marius.**—Marius was a man of humble birth who very early, as an officer in the army of Metellus, during the war in Africa against Jugurtha showed exceptional military talent. With this he combined such influence with the people that he was made consul in 106 B.C., and was sent to replace Metellus in the African war. He returned to Rome in triumph in 104 B.C. with Jugurtha as a captive. This success made him not merely general of the army, but leader of the popular party. Such was his strength that he was elected consul year after

year until 102 B.C., when he defeated the Teutones and Cimbri in two great battles—and after quelling the invaders returned to Rome supreme over all rivals.

**Sulla.**—At this time a young noble, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, who had done honorable service with the army of Marius in Africa, began to be looked upon as a rising man. But his bearing was modest and he continued to live in an unpretentious way, all the while rising in reputation and extending his influence. During the supremacy of Marius we hear but little of him, although from his aristocratic connections we can understand that he looked with no favorable eye upon the excessive power and demagogic actions of Marius in the government. As Marius was the recognized head of the popular party, so Sulla was coming to be regarded as the one about whom the nobles must rally in order to oppose Marius should occasion arise.

#### LIFE OF CAESAR.

**Birth.**—Gaius Julius Caesar was born July 12, 100 B.C. His family, on his father's side, was of the noblest blood of the aristocrats, tracing its origin back to Aeneas, the leader of the Trojan exiles, and through him to Venus, goddess of Love and Beauty, and thus to Jupiter himself. His mother, Aurelia, was of a prominent plebeian family, while his father's sister Julia was the wife of the great democratic leader Marius.

**Childhood and Youth.**—Of his childhood we know almost nothing. But it is evident that the feelings of the household were on the side of the democratic party. We may therefore infer that from his earliest years he was accustomed to hear much discussion about the wrongs of the people and the tyranny of the aristocrats.

There is nothing recorded to indicate that Caesar in



his boyhood was especially precocious. He probably received the customary training of the sons of wealthy families of his time. He was taught Greek by Antonius Gniphos, an educated Gaul, but as to his further education we are ignorant. He is said to have been "a tall, handsome youth, with dark, piercing eyes, a large nose, full lips and, in general with a refined and intellectual bearing." He was almost foppish in the extreme care he bestowed upon his dress and personal appearance. Caesar's most intimate companions were the younger Marius, the adopted son of his uncle, and the two Ciceros, Marcus and Quintus, both of whom were to be closely connected with his public life.

At the age of fourteen he was made a priest of Jupiter by his uncle, and thus became a member of the Sacred College with a fixed income. Almost immediately afterwards Marius died and was succeeded as leader of his party by Cinna, an unscrupulous and cruel demagogue. At the age of sixteen Caesar lost his father by death. When only seventeen, he married Cinna's daughter, and by this marriage his alliance with the popular party was made complete.

**Caesar and Sulla.**—Meanwhile for several years Rome had been distracted by civil war. Marius had been banished, and then had been forcibly brought back by Cinna. After the restoration Marius and Cinna set on foot a bloody proscription in which they murdered all the most important of their political opponents. The aristocrats in despair turned to their general, Sulla, who was on his return to Rome, after having conducted military operations in the East with distinguished success. When he arrived in Italy he defeated the opposing forces of the popular party and entered Rome in triumph.

Sulla was immediately made dictator and a reign of terror for the democrats was then ushered in. Every leader of that

party was proscribed, and four thousand seven hundred were murdered. Caesar, now a youth of eighteen, strangely escaped proscription; but he did not pass unnoticed. The Dictator had his eye on this "youth in petticoats," and was interested in him. He made him the proposition that he desert his party and divorce his wife. Caesar, with the cool assurance for which he was ever noted, positively refused and defied the tyrant; and though his life was spared, his property was confiscated and his priesthood taken from him. All this was without effect, and now at last, being condemned to death, he deemed it prudent to go into hiding for a time. Once, indeed, he was discovered, but escaped by bribing the men sent to kill him. Powerful friends interceded for him, and at last the Dictator reluctantly yielded, saying, "Take him, since you will have it so—but I would have you know that the youth for whom you plead will sometime overthrow the aristocracy for whom you and I have fought so hard; in this young Caesar are many Mariuses."

**Caesar enters the Army.**—Caesar had now reached an age when it became necessary for him to choose a course in life. To the ambitious young Roman only two avenues to success were open — politics or a military career; for trade and commerce were in the hands of an inferior class. Literature was merely incidental to success in other fields. For success in politics oratory was an extremely useful accomplishment; and Caesar was a forceful though inexperienced speaker even at the age of twenty. But upon making his peace with Sulla, having not much confidence in the Dictator's sincerity, he thought it wiser to enter the army, and went to Asia. Here he distinguished himself at the siege of Mytilene by saving the life of a soldier, for which he was honored by the praetor with the gift of a civic crown. His military ser-

vice lasted until the death of Sulla, when he returned to Rome at the age of twenty-two and entered upon his political career.

**Caesar enters Politics.**—The usual method of acquiring political prominence was to prosecute some provincial officer. Caesar brought a charge of extortion against Dolabella, who had been governor of Macedonia. In this trial Caesar, who had little experience in public speaking, was opposed by some of the most famous advocates of the day. The result was a failure of the prosecution, and Caesar discovered that he needed special training if he was to win against experienced pleaders. Furthermore, the trial had aroused against him much enmity, and he deemed it best to leave Rome for a time. So he went to Rhodes to study oratory under the famous rhetorician, Apollonius Molo. On his way he was captured by pirates, who took him to an island and held him for a large ransom. The pirates treated him well, and he seems to have enjoyed his captivity. He told them, however, he would shortly return and hang them all, a threat which they seem to have made light of; for when the ransom was paid he was immediately set free. He at once proceeded to carry out his threat, and, gathering some vessels, returned to the island and captured the whole crew while they were dividing the money. They were all taken to Pergamus and put to death. He then proceeded to Rhodes, where he devoted two years to hard study. Upon the conclusion of his studies he returned to Rome to watch the course of events, ready at any time to take a hand in public affairs. The aristocrats were still in power, but trouble was brewing for that party on every hand. Caesar had done enough to render him a conspicuous leader of the popular party. But the time for action was not yet come. As a reward for his services in Asia he was chosen military tribune. He had im-

proved so much in oratorical ability that he was recognized as a powerful advocate.

His "*Cursus Honorum*."—In 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two, he was chosen *quaestor*, and thus obtained a seat in the Senate. This was the first step in the so-called *cursus honorum*, which led through successive offices to the consulship. In B.C. 65 he was chosen *aedile*. Among other duties the aediles had charge of the public games and exhibitions. They were expected to beautify the city and entertain the people with elaborate shows. And all this at their own expense. Caesar was well to do, but he went far beyond his means in presenting magnificent spectacles and erecting costly columns. His gladiatorial contests exceeded anything before known. Wild beasts were brought into the arena in cages of burnished silver. Costly porticos were added to temples and public buildings, and splendid statues were made to adorn the public places of the city. All this plunged Caesar into debt to the amount of a million and a half of dollars. A man who, at the age of thirty-two, could contract debts to such an enormous amount is worthy of regard for his audacity if for no other reason. By this means Caesar had won the favor of the multitude, and he was now the undisputed leader of the popular party.

He next became a candidate for the office of *Pontifex Maximus*, or head of the state religious order. He had been made a priest as early as his fourteenth year, as we have seen above, and it was perhaps natural that he should aspire to be head of the Church. It is a significant commentary upon the religious state of the times that a man who had no respect whatever for the gods of his country or for any god but Fortune, should thus be considered eligible for the highest position in the priesthood. The place was the most conspicuous in the

state, and its occupant held office for life. Caesar conducted his campaign for the office with his usual vigor. He borrowed still larger sums of money and spent them with a lavish hand. But the danger of the canvass must have been serious, for it is said that, as he left his mother on the morning of the election, he kissed her and remarked that he would return as Pontifex Maximus or never return at all. He was chosen by an overwhelming vote.

Soon after his election to the pontificate Caesar was chosen *praetor*, in 63 B.C. This was the time of Catiline's conspiracy, and party spirit ran high. Many have thought that Caesar knew more of the inside workings of that conspiracy than he ever told. Possibly this was true; but he was too shrewd a politician and too sure of his position of leadership to cast in his lot with a lawless faction. It is likely that his plans for his own future movements in public life were fairly well developed in his own mind by this time, and he could see nothing to be gained by an alliance with a party which did not include the real leaders of the state. During his term in the praetorship he conducted himself in a manner to strengthen his position in his party, while he looked to yet greater power in the future.

After this praetorship Caesar was sent to Spain as *pro-praetor*. His term there was eminently successful and very profitable to himself. For he brought back money enough to pay all his debts and have something for the rainy days to come. He had also turned large sums into the public treasury. Furthermore, he had settled all troubles in Spain. His popularity was immense, and it was a foregone conclusion that he would win the consulship in 60 B.C. when by age he would be eligible.

**Pompey and Crassus.**—While Caesar had been advancing

with rapid strides toward the position of popular idol, Pompey, who had succeeded Sulla as the general of the aristocrats, had been winning great fame in war until he was recognized as the first soldier of the age. He was, however, no politician, and lacked ability as an orator. The head of the financial world, and the wealthiest citizen, was Publius Crassus. Except Cicero these two were, perhaps, the most conspicuous members of the aristocratic party. It was at this time that Cicero wrote: "We have not a statesman or the shadow of one. My friend Pompey, who might have done something, sits silent admiring his fine clothes. Crassus will say nothing to make himself unpopular, and the rest are such idiots as to hope that though the constitution fall they will save their own fish-ponds."

**The First Triumvirate.**—Caesar saw his opportunity and took advantage of it. He formed a coalition with Pompey and Crassus for the division among themselves of the honors of the state. This is known in history as the First Triumvirate. In accordance with this agreement Caesar was chosen consul, the first of his party for a generation. He proposed many reforms, and most of them were adopted against the protest of the senatorial party. It was a stormy year politically, but it served admirably to emphasize Caesar's superiority to all the men of his time. By the terms of his agreement with Pompey and Crassus, Gaul was to be entrusted to him as proconsul for five years.

This brings us to the year 58 B.C., and the story of the next seven years is told by Caesar himself in the Commentaries. In 56 B.C. a meeting of the triumvirs was held and it was agreed that Caesar's term should be extended for five years more, at the end of which time he should be eligible for a second election to the consulship, thus giving ample time to complete the



conquest of Gaul before his return to Rome. In the year 53, however, the death of Crassus broke up the coalition, and Pompey was coaxed or flattered until he, too, withdrew his support from Caesar, and espoused the cause of the Senate. The Civil War followed. In the latter part of 50 B.C. Caesar crossed the Rubicon with his army. His success was instantaneous, though the war continued in various quarters until 45 B.C., when he returned to Rome the undisputed master of the Roman world. His great rival, Pompey, defeated at Pharsalia in Thessaly in 48 B.C., had fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered.

**Death.**—Caesar used his supreme power in a way very different from his predecessors Marius and Sulla. He at once set about repairing so far as he could the ravages of the civil wars, by making several laws which were designed to benefit the people. He reformed the Calendar, instituting the system which, with a slight modification, we still use. He also formed other great projects for the public welfare which he was destined not to carry out. In particular, he had shown marked clemency to his political opponents; but for this he was ill repaid. A conspiracy to take his life was formed by a number of leading citizens, some of whom were his intimate friends. On the "Ides of March" (March 15), 44 B.C., he was attacked in the senate-house and fell pierced with twenty-three wounds at the foot of the statue of his great rival Pompey.

#### CAESAR AS A MAN.

In person Caesar was tall and handsome—such a man as one would select out of a crowd as a born leader of men. His health was perfect, kept so by active physical exercise and a careful attention to hygienic laws as they were

then understood. He was a fearless horseman, and is said to have ridden in Gaul a remarkable horse, trained by himself, which would allow no one else to mount him.

As a friend he was steadfast to the end; as a foe, generous and ready to forgive. One thing, however, he could never overlook. That was treachery. This is proved by his treatment of certain persons and peoples in Gaul, who tried to overreach him by violating promises or treaties.

Much has been written of his vices. He has been painted as a monster of lust and rapacity. There is no evidence, however, that he was worse than others of his class and time. That he was conspicuously better in morals is not claimed. Nevertheless, in all his dissipations, he did not for a moment lose sight of the main purpose of his life, which was to reach the highest pinnacle of personal greatness, and raise his country to a position of unquestioned supremacy throughout the known world. One of the best evidences of the nobility of his character is found in his great love for his mother and his devotion to her as long as she lived.

#### CAESAR AS A SOLDIER.

Caesar's military skill and success place him among the first half-dozen captains of the world. Without special training and with comparatively little previous experience, he raised and drilled an army that was simply invincible, whether pitted against the immensely more numerous hordes of the Gauls and Germans or the veteran legions of Pompey. "The conquest of Gaul," says Froude, "was effected by a force numerically insignificant, which was worked with the precision of a machine. The variety of uses to which it was capable of being turned implied, in the first place, extraordinary forethought in the selection of materials. Men whose nominal

duty was merely to fight were engineers, architects, mechanics of the highest order. In a few hours they could extemporize an impregnable fortress on an open hillside. They bridged the Rhine in a week. They built a fleet in a month. The legions at Alesia held twice their number pinned within their works, while they kept at bay the whole force of insurgent Gaul, entirely by scientific superiority. The machine, which was thus perfect, was composed of human beings who required supplies of tools and arms and clothes and food and shelter, and for all these it depended on the forethought of its commander." These soldiers loved their great leader almost to idolatry, and believed in him with a confidence that nothing could shake. The long march, the hard labor of fortifying the camp, the hardships of the siege, all were borne cheerfully for the general's sake.

Caesar's courage and self-confidence were unbounded. He never sent a soldier where he would not go himself, and he never faltered in his belief that victory would perch on his banner. Quick to see what was needed in any emergency and swift to move, he never lost a point of advantage or failed to make the most of an enemy's mistake. With entire disregard of danger he was always in the thickest of the fight. Personally known to every soldier and knowing most of them by name, he thus brought home to each the responsibility resting upon him. Apparently he was rash at times; yet his rashness had method in it and success gave it another name. In several instances in Gaul he seems to have been unnecessarily cruel in his treatment of his surrendered foes. We must remember, however, that he was dealing with unscrupulous barbarians, ready to rise against him at any time. Furthermore, it was one of Caesar's leading characteristics to go by the shortest way to his objective point. Gaul was to be

subdued and that thoroughly. Hence it was necessary to remove ruthlessly all obstacles to that end.

#### CAESAR AS A STATESMAN.

After his final victory over the Senate, Caesar had very little time to show his strength as a constructive statesman. There is, however, no doubt of his ability in this direction. During his consulship, in the year 59 B.C., he had proposed and carried extensive reforms in many directions. The "*Leges Juliae*" were enacted, a code of laws which is celebrated even to this day.

The government of the aristocracy was tyrannical and corrupt in the extreme. Bribery of juries was universal, and the administration of justice was a mockery and a stench in the nostrils of all decent men. Elections were a farce, and the people were the legitimate prey of unscrupulous and greedy politicians. These laws of Caesar's were intended to restrain the power of the Senate and enlarge and increase the rights and powers of the people.

Upon his return to Rome as dictator Caesar had the opportunity to fashion anew the government according to his long-cherished ideas. His plans were comprehensive and far-reaching. But the consummation was not to be his. Death claimed him, and his successor took up the unfinished task.

In all his projects Caesar undoubtedly aimed at making Rome indeed imperial. With unerring judgment he discovered the need for reform in all departments of government, and he had implicit confidence in his own ability to bring that reform to pass. His ability as an orator was conspicuous, and when he spoke in the Senate or elsewhere men listened as to no one else excepting Cicero. One prime element in his success as a statesman, as well as in war, was his perfect knowledge of men. He selected his agents with care, and they were in-

variably the fittest for the purpose. Liberty and Justice were his watch-words; freedom and equal rights for all, his unswerving present aim.

#### CAESAR AS AN AUTHOR.

Caesar's literary efforts covered a wide range, embracing almost every known topic. He wrote a treatise on grammar, poems, tragedies, satirical essays, a work on augury and an extended history of his own campaigns. With the exception of the last his writings have practically all disappeared.

Caesar's most pronounced personal characteristic was simplicity. This quality is prominent in his writings. He tells his story in the plainest fashion, without attempting adornment or indulging in imagery. The great events of his years in Gaul, involving the conquering of an empire so completely that it never gave Rome further trouble, are treated as plain facts. Descriptions of the country are complete; the character and customs of the people are fully set forth; it is true anecdotes of individuals are introduced, but they are all significant; nothing essential is suppressed; nothing superfluous is stated.

Without the slightest attempt to magnify his own deeds, he appears everywhere as the central figure, the man of action, doing things for the sake of results, rather than for the purpose of making a name for himself.

Such, then, was Caius Julius Caesar. "The greatest name in history," says Merivale; the peerless soldier, the man of letters, the forceful, convincing orator, the foremost statesman of his day, the liberator of his country from the tyrannical grasp of a soulless aristocracy, the unyielding foe of shams and cant. To quote again: "He was great in everything he undertook; as a captain, a statesman, a lawgiver, a jurist, an orator, a poet, an historian, a grammarian, a mathematician and an architect."

## THE ARMY OF CAESAR.

Caesar's army consisted of legionary infantry, auxiliary infantry and cavalry. The cavalry was made up of foreigners—Germans, Gauls and Spaniards—who were disbanded at the end of each campaign. They were used to begin an attack and for pursuit of a beaten enemy, as well as for foraging. The auxiliary infantry were furnished by allied states, and served for a show of strength rather than for serious work in battle. There was a small corps of engineers (*fabri*), but the mechanical work was done as a rule by the soldiers themselves.

In the earlier period the legion was drawn up in three lines, of which the men in the first line were called *hastati*, those in the second line *principes*, those in the third line *triarii* or *pilani*. In Caesar's time the arrangement was different, but the same names were retained, being applied to the men of the third, second and first maniples of each cohort.

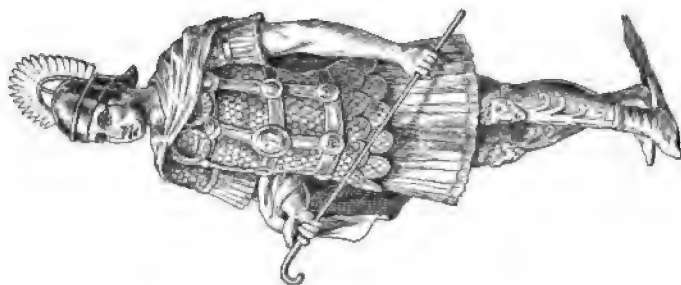
The main strength of the army lay in the regulars composing the legions.

Theoretically the legion may have consisted of 6,000 men. It is likely, however, that Caesar's legions averaged not more than 3,600 each at the time of their greatest fullness.

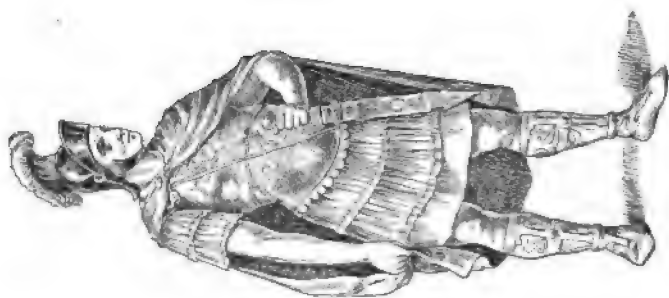
The legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, each manipule again into two centuries. Assuming 3,600 as the strength of the legion we have:

10 cohorts	each having	360 men	
30 maniples	“	“	120 “
60 centuries	“	“	60 “

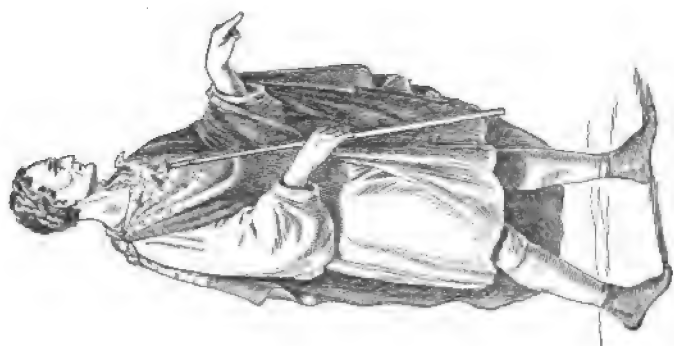
Thus the manipule corresponded very nearly to a *company* in



CENTURIO.



LEGATUS.



IMPERATOR.

our army; the century, to a *platoon*. Beyond this the divisions hardly find their counterpart in modern armies, although the legion differed but little from a *brigade*.

### *Officers.*

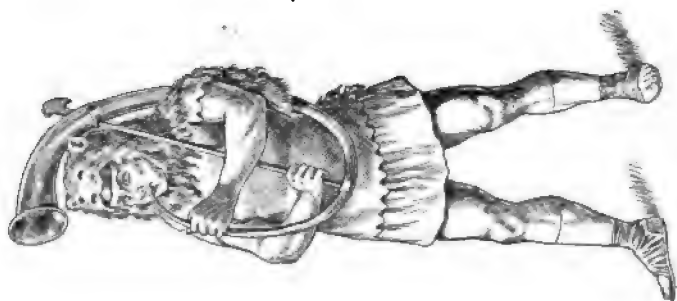
The command of the legion was originally in the hands of the military tribunes, six in number, who acted in pairs and commanded in turn, each pair for a period of two months. As these officers were usually chosen for political reasons and were not necessarily trained soldiers, this method of commanding the legion fell into disuse under Caesar. Leaving the tribunes as nominal commanders, he placed a *legatus* in charge of each legion as the real commander in time of battle.

The legati were men of senatorial rank, and were the lieutenants of the commander-in-chief (*imperator*). They had no independent power, but derived all authority from their chief. Together with the quaestors they composed the staff of the general.

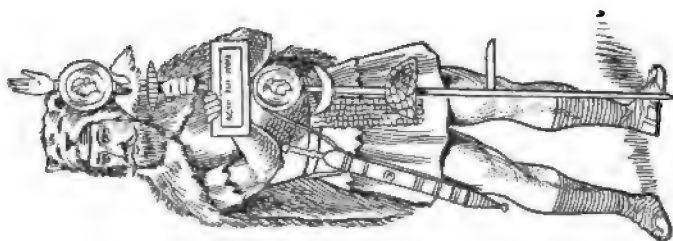
The *quaestors* had charge of the supplies for the army; paid the troops; furnished them with clothing, arms and equipments, food and shelter.

The *centurions* commanded the sub-divisions of the legion. Of these there were 60 in each legion, each maniple having two, a senior and a junior. The senior was in command of the whole maniple with the junior as his lieutenant. Of the six centurions in a cohort, the senior of the first maniple, called *pilus prior*, commanded the cohort, having the other five as lieutenants. Thus the senior centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, called *primus pilus prior* or *primipilus*, was the senior officer of the whole legion, and accordingly often, if not generally, led the legion.

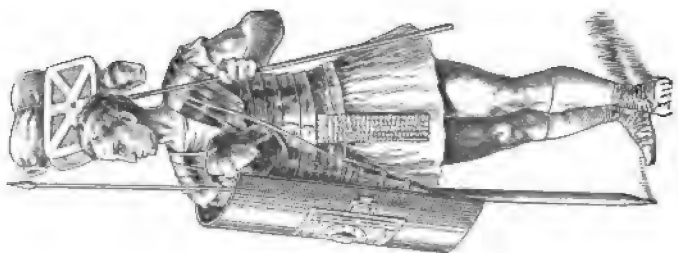




BUCINATOR.



SIGNIFER.



MILES IMPEDITUS.

The centurions were taken from the ranks of the legionaries and corresponded closely to the officers of our army. The method of their classification is not known; but it is certain that they were classified and graded in ranks.

Those of the first rank (*primorum ordinum*) were summoned in councils with the *legati* and *tribunes*.

Another officer was known as *praefectus*, probably the Roman commander of the cavalry and of the auxiliary infantry.

### *The Legionary Soldier.*

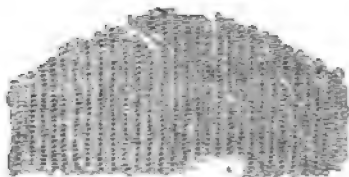
Originally only Roman citizens were enrolled in the legions, but, owing to the changes in the character of the Roman government, from the time of Marius the service had been open to almost any one.

Caesar's legionaries were professional soldiers. Their term of service was twenty years, at the end of which they were usually rewarded with bounties of money or land. They received 225 *denarii*, or about \$45.00 a year as pay. The value of food, clothing and equipments furnished by the state was deducted from this sum. Each soldier was allowed 4 *modii*, or about one bushel of wheat a month, at a cost of about \$5.75 a year. The cost of clothing is not known.

The age for enlistment of the legionary was probably as a minimum seventeen years, and as a maximum forty-six years. There was undoubtedly a rule as to size; but big men were not required. Indeed, the soldiers of Caesar's army have always been considered as undersized when compared with the German giants. Occasionally barbarians were enrolled in the legions; but in the main the legionaries were Roman citizens hailing from Northern Italy, which was entirely Romanized and loyal to the government of that country.

*Clothing.*

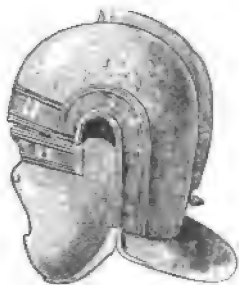
The clothing consisted of a sleeveless woollen shirt (*tunica*) worn next the skin, and over this a coat of leather with metallic bands across the breast, back and shoulders (*lorica*). The officers wore a kind of chain mail (*lorica hamata*). Over all in cold weather was worn the military blanket (*sagum*). On the feet were worn sandals (*calcei*) strapped to the feet and ankles.



CHAIN MAIL.

*Armor.*

The defensive armor consisted of the helmet and the shield. The helmet was made from iron (*cassis*) or leather strengthened with metal (*galea*). It had a crest and a plume, and was usually carried by the soldier, when on the march, hanging in front of the shoulder.

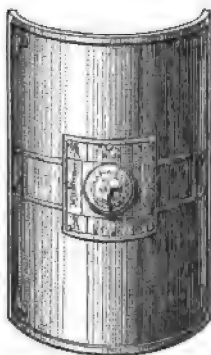


GALEAE.

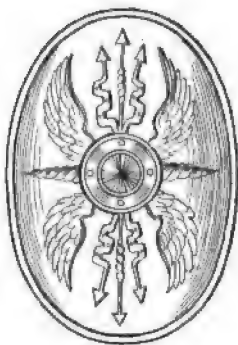
The shield (*scutum*) was of wood covered with leather. Its length was four feet and width two feet. It was curved to fit the body, and was carried on the left arm. The badge of the

cohort was painted on the outside, and the name of the owner on the inside. It had a metallic knob in the center called *umbo*. A covering was drawn over it when not in use, and one of the first preparations for battle was the removal of this covering, as in Book II., Chapter 21.

The *clipeus*, or Greek shield, was circular originally and large enough to cover three-quarters of the person. In later times it was smaller, covering the warrior from the neck to



SCUTUM.



CLYPEUS.

the knees. It was also made oval in shape. This kind of shield was not used in the time of Caesar, although the auxiliaries carried a shield (*parma*) resembling the *clipeus*.

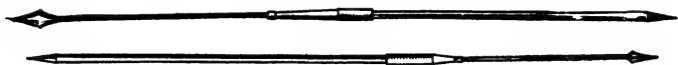
Shields were adorned in various ways, by iron rims or by such devices as thunderbolts, wreaths, etc.



GLADIUS.

The offensive weapons were the short or Spanish sword (*gladius*) and a heavy javelin (*pilum*). The sword was two feet long in the blade, probably about four inches in width, two-edged and pointed. It was carried by a belt (*balteus*)

passing over the left shoulder, suspending the sword on the right side. There is no definite knowledge as to the javelin used in Caesar's time. It is likely that it consisted of a long iron point inserted in a shaft of wood. The whole length was from six to seven feet and the weight at least ten pounds.



PILA.

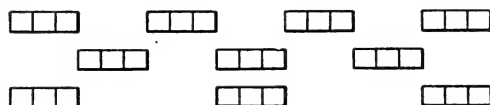
It could be thrown perhaps twenty or thirty yards, according to the weight of the soldier and the nature of the ground. The point was of soft iron, easily bent and thus rendered unfit to be thrown back when once hurled. In Book I., Chapter 25, the confusion of the Gauls was in great part due to the bending of the *pila* after they had pierced their shields.

Some have supposed that the legionary carried a light javelin in addition to the heavy *pilum*. Caesar says nothing of this weapon, and there is no good reason to suppose that it was used in his time. The weapons used by Roman soldiers were in a state of evolution at all times, as is the case with modern weapons. It is a long stride from the "old queen's arm," the flint-lock musket of the Revolution, to the Krag-Jørgensen repeating rifle of the United States army of to-day. This change came about only by gradual development through many intermediate steps. So the light and graceful steel javelin of later Roman times was the result of many improvements upon the weapon even of Caesar's age.

After the first volley of javelins, the sword came into play. Thus it was the most effective and the most in use of offensive arms. It was a terrible implement in the hands of skilled fighters. Being pointed, as well as sharpened on both sides, it was equally effective for thrusting and cutting. The former, however, was its customary use.

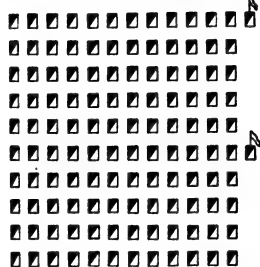
*Tactics of the Legion.*

In all arrangements for battle the tactical unit of the legion was the cohort. For offence the legion was arrayed either in two lines (*acies duplex*) or in three lines (*acies triplex*).



ACIES TRIPLEX.

When in two lines there were five cohorts in each line. When in three lines, four cohorts were in the first, and three in each of the others. Between the cohorts of the first line were spaces of about 120 feet, behind which at a distance of 120 feet stood the cohorts of the second line. The three cohorts of the third line were placed at the same distance to the rear of the second line. Each cohort was arranged by maniples, each maniple having twelve men in front, forming a *rank*, and ten men in depth forming a *file*. Allowing three feet of space for each man in rank and four feet on the right for the commanding officer, the front of each cohort would be 120 feet, and the front of the legion 840 feet. Supposing four feet to have been the distance allowed to each man in the file, we get a depth for the maniple of forty feet, and each cohort a depth of 120 feet. Thus the legion would have a depth of 600 feet.



MANIPLE.

*The Attack.*

Whenever possible the Roman battle line was formed on a hillside with the enemy in the plain at the foot.

In beginning the attack, the troops marched slowly forward for a time, then, at the proper time, broke into a run, the two front ranks carrying their javelins poised ready for hurling. When the right distance was reached, they hurled the javelins, often without stopping. The ranks whose javelins had been thrown then rushed on to the conflict with swords at close quarters, without giving the enemy time to recover from the confusion caused by the volley of javelins. The next three ranks hurled their javelins over the heads of the first two and in their turn advanced to fight with the sword. The five rear ranks waited in reserve until their services were needed to take the places of the fallen or to increase the numbers of the attacking troops. The second line advanced and waited two or three hundred feet behind the first. When the first had become weakened by losses, this line perhaps entered the fight in the same way. It is hardly to be supposed that the remnants of the first line were withdrawn however; but they probably melted into the oncoming second line. The third line was held in reserve, and often sent to the flanks when there was danger of the front lines being out-flanked.

In many cases the onset of the first line was sufficient to put the enemy to flight, especially if they were barbarians. For this reason the first line was usually the strongest and made up of the most experienced soldiers.

When the enemy had been beaten and turned to flee, as usually happened in Caesar's battles, the cavalry was sent in pursuit to complete the work of destruction.

The cavalry was also used to guard the flanks against attack, or to attack the enemy's flank. It was therefore usually located on the extreme edge of the wings. But an experienced general would also use it in other ways, and Caesar sometimes placed it in the rear, sometimes after the first line.

*On the March.*

The usual order of the march was in three divisions. In the van (*primum agmen*) came the cavalry and the light-armed troops; next the main body; and lastly the rear-guard (*novissimum agmen*).

The main body marched in single column, the number of ranks depending upon the width of the road, each legion accompanied by its own baggage-train.

At times, when approaching the enemy, the baggage of the whole army was massed together, with most of the legions in advance of the baggage-train.

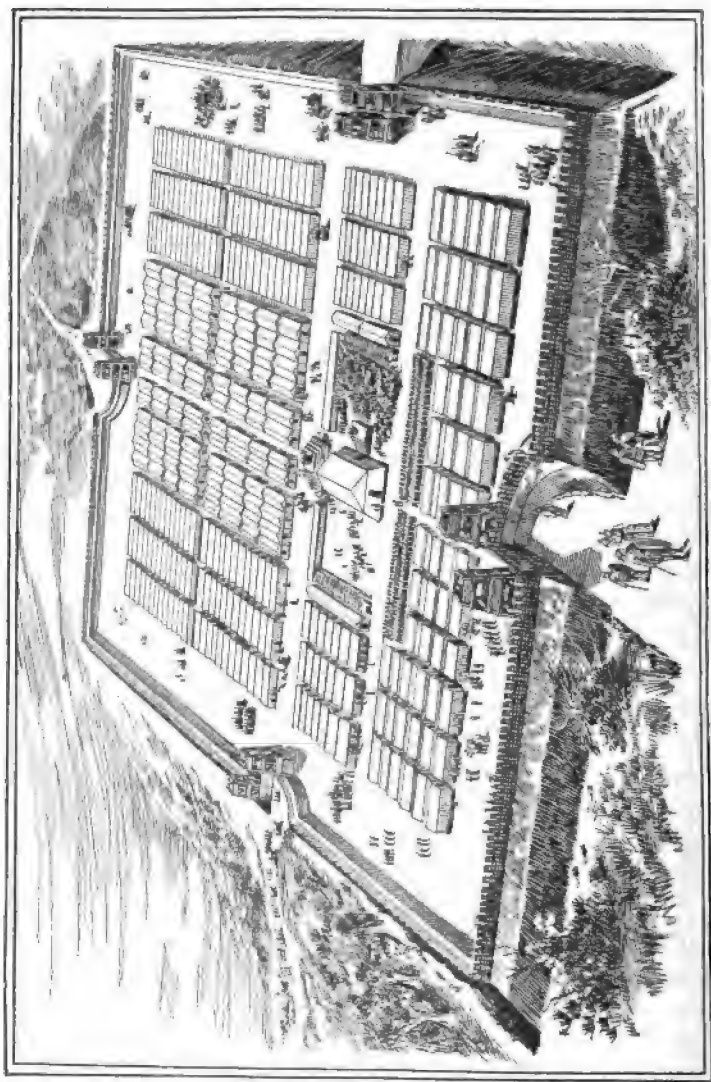
Occasionally, when an attack was expected, the army advanced for a short distance in line of battle. This could of course not last long, although on two occasions we are told that the legions marched thus for three hours, covering about eight miles.

The rear-guard was made up of recruits, camp-followers, and the rabble that usually followed an army.

The legionary was forced to carry a burden of fifty pounds or more on the march. This was made up of his supply of food, cooking utensils, extra clothing, arms, helmet and shield. All that could be so placed was made into a bundle and carried on a stick over the shoulder, the rest was disposed on the person in the most convenient way. See the illustration on page xxvi.

The average distance covered in a day's march was about fifteen miles. But when the march was over, the soldiers' day's work was by no means done. A camp must be built and fortified—no small undertaking, when we consider the labor involved. There were a few engineers (*fabri*) with the army, but the working man was the legionary soldier.

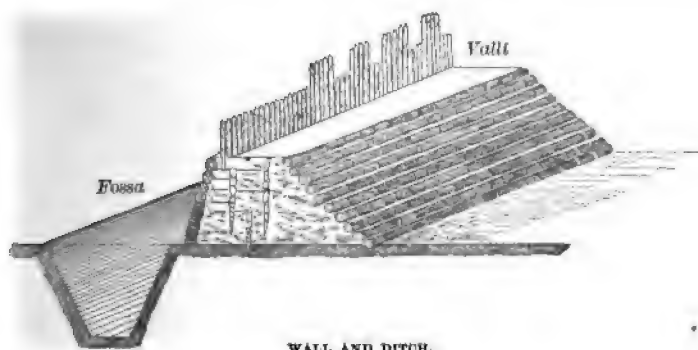




*The Camp.*

The ideal site for a camp was on the slope of a hill with the rear of the camp at the top. The absolutely indispensable natural features were wood and water. Although we have no definite knowledge about Caesar's camps, we may assume that they differed in no great degree from the Roman camps of other times.

They were rectangular in shape, varying in size according



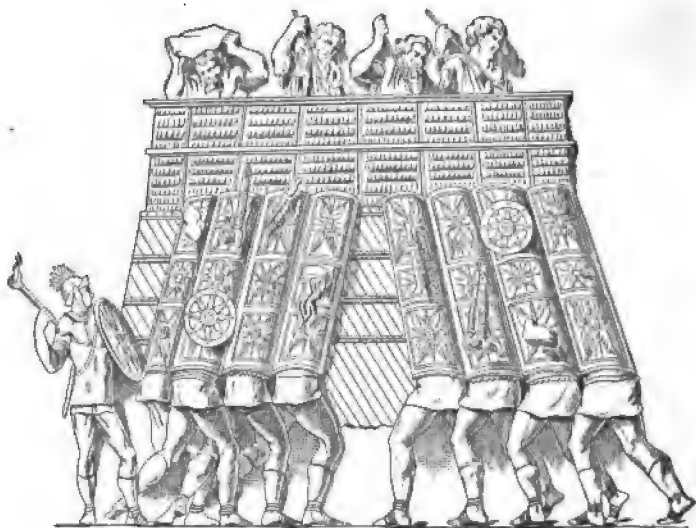
to the number of troops to be accommodated, having a width in front equal to two-thirds of their depth.

The fortification of the camp consisted of a surrounding wall (*vallum*) and a ditch (*fossa*). The ditch was nine feet wide and seven feet deep. The earth from this was thrown up to form the wall, which was made six feet high and six feet wide on the top. Sometimes stakes (*valli*) were set on the outer edge of the wall to make it stronger. As the wall was intended for fighting ground, it had some sort of steps on the inside so as to render it easy for the defenders to reach the top.

Camps built for a longer stay than a single night, or when an attack was expected, had breastworks made of trees on the top of the wall and wooden towers at intervals along the wall. Wider and deeper ditches and higher walls were often built in order to make a camp especially strong. It is estimated that from four to five hours was consumed each day in fortifying the camp.

### *Operations against Fortified Places.*

In subduing a fortified camp or town, the Romans sometimes attacked by assault and sometimes by a siege. The method depended upon the strength of the town's defence. These operations brought into use various weapons not yet mentioned. For the assault there were the scaling ladders, the battering-ram and movable huts or sheds (*vineae*) used to

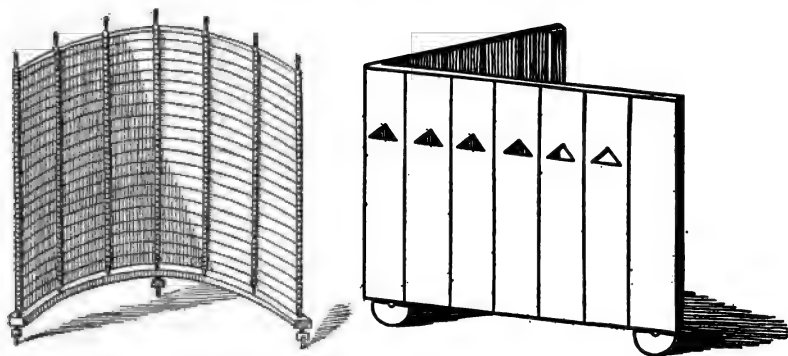


TESTUDO.

cover the assaulting force and thus protect them from weapons thrown from the walls by the besieged.

The *testudo* was usually a movable shed, from the front of which projected the battering-ram (*aries*), worked by the men beneath the roof from which it was suspended.

Sometimes, however, the word was applied to a kind of shed formed by the shields of the soldiers who were attacking a wall, as in the illustration. See Book II, Chapter 6.



PLUTEI.

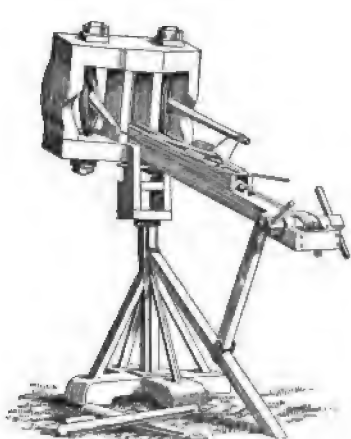
*Plutei* were large movable, three-wheeled shields of wickerwork, covered with hides to turn the missiles of the besieged.

The battering-ram was a long, heavy piece of timber whose offensive end was capped with metal sometimes having the shape of a ram's head. Hence the name. With men enough behind it, it was effective against walls of stone and timber. Compared with shots from a modern cannon, however, it was a child's toy.

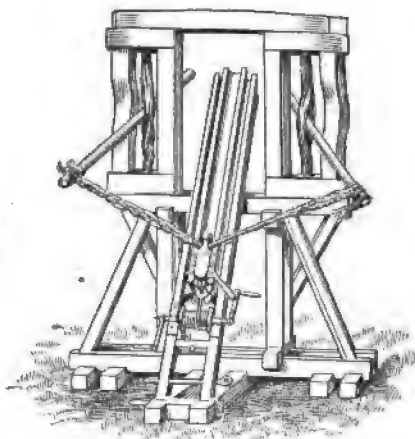
There was also a device called *falx muralis* or wall hook, consisting of a long beam suspended from upright supports with a single or double hook of metal at the end. This was used to pull stones from the top of a wall.

Another piece of apparatus was the *musculus*, a low, heavily built shed with a sloping roof. This was used to protect men at work filling up ditches or preparing to build the *agger*; sometimes also to cover the ram.

All the foregoing were used by light-armed troops or laborers preparing the way for the advance of the legionaries to the assault. When the preparations were completed and the walls cleared of defenders by the bowmen and slingers, the heavy-



CATAPULT.



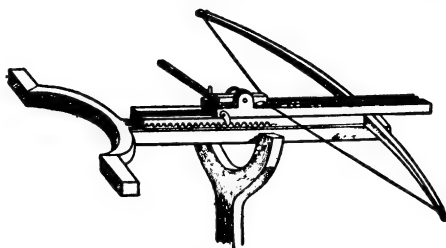
BALLISTA.

armed troops rushed forward, scaled the walls, or forced a gate, and the assault was brought to a finish.

The siege was a more complicated method of attack, and involved a vast amount of labor in preparation, and brought into use another branch of the army and a different class of weapons (*tormenta*) called by courtesy artillery.

These engines were the *catapult*, *ballista* and *scorpio*. The two former were the heavy artillery; the catapult shooting large arrows, the ballista hurling stones or heavy blocks

of wood. The propelling force was obtained by an ingenious arrangement of twisted ropes, combined with a bow-spring. The catapult required at least two men to manage it, while the ballista needed six or more. The range of each machine was not more than 1200 feet. The *scorpio* was a small catapult capable of being handled by one man. It consisted of a steel bow fastened to a framework, and shot arrows of steel or iron, which were perhaps eighteen inches long, to a distance not greater than 400 feet. In all cases a windlass was used to load the machine and set it for action. The men



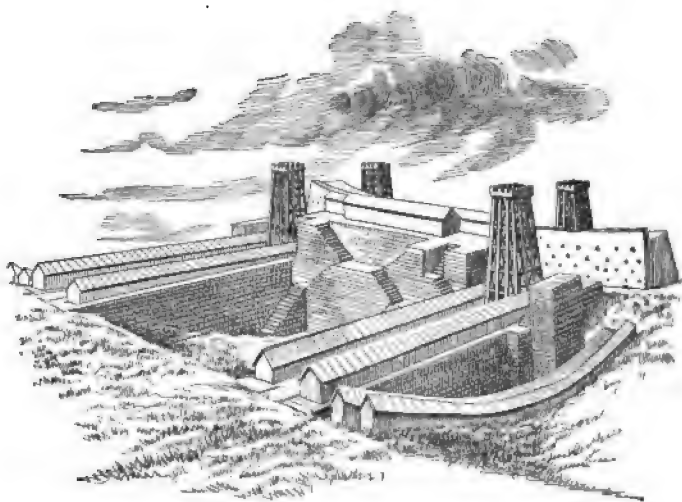
SCORPIO.

in charge of these engines constituted the artillery branch of the army. They may have been a section of the *fabri*, but we have no details of their organization.

The first work to be constructed for attack upon a stronghold was the *agger*, a mound of earth or timber or both, made as high as the walls of the town. The workmen were protected by the *plutei*, and those who brought the material passed through long galleries of *vineae*. The light-armed slingers and bowmen, placed in moving towers or behind other *plutei* for their protection, kept the walls of the town free from men. Bodies of heavy-armed troops also were held in reserve. When the *agger* was completed to a sufficient height, the troops of the besiegers took their place upon it and the fight-

ing began in earnest. Movable towers were often placed on the *agger* as a means of protecting the fighting men.

The illustration shows a restoration of the siege works before Avaricum, a town of the Bituriges, besieged by Caesar in the war against Vercingetorix, as narrated in Book VII, Chapters 14-

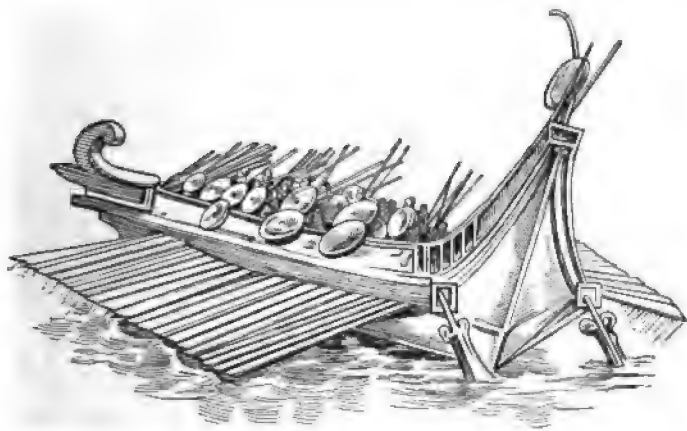


SIEGE WORKS BEFORE AVARICUM.

31. Close to the walls rises the Roman *agger*, with steps on the outside leading up to the top and flanked at each end with a high tower. In this siege the *agger* was eighty feet in height and was probably at least fifty feet broad at the top, so as to give room for a single manipule to form. The long lines of covered *vineae* leading across the low ground show the means by which the soldiers could reach their work without exposure. In this case preparations were being made for an assault, because the situation was such that the town could not be reduced by an enforced famine.

*Ships of War.*

In most of his campaigns in Gaul Caesar had no use for ships. When needed, however, they were built and equipped according to the Roman method. They carried a single sail, but were fitted with oars as their chief motive power. Some had as many as five tiers of rowers. They were fitted with

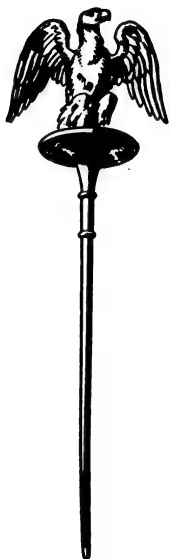


WAR GALLEY.

sharp beaks (*rostrum*) at the prow for the purpose of ramming an enemy's ship. They sometimes carried a tower on deck for the protection of the fighting men. This was the case particularly when a low ship was attacking a high one, or when the object was to kill the opposing sailors by a shower of missiles. In battle a favorite manoeuvre was to grapple the enemy's ship, so that the Roman heavy-armed soldiers could board it and settle the conflict by a hand-to-hand fight.

The illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall-painting of a naumachia, and represents a war galley. If this vessel had had a sail, it would have been near the stern.



*Standards and Musical Instruments.*

AQUILA.

The standard of the legion was the eagle (*aquila*), made of metal. This was in the care of the first cohort, and carried by a special officer (*aquilifer*).

Each cohort had its own standard-bearer (*signifer*) and its own emblem (*signum*). This was sometimes a figure of an animal on a staff.

The banner of the cavalry and light-armed troops (*vexillum*) was of cloth attached to a horizontal bar. See Commentary, page 66.

The commander-in-chief had his flag, as in modern armies. This was of white cloth with his name in red letters.



SIGNUM.

The musical instruments were the *tuba* (see Commentary, page 67), the *bucina* (see the *bucinator*, Introduction, page xxvi), the *lituus* and the *cornu*.



LITUUS.

## GAUL AND ITS PEOPLE.

The Great West, which Caesar went out to conquer in 58 B.C., may be roughly located as lying between the Pyrenees and the Rhine, the Mediterranean and the Atlantic. Cisalpine Gaul was thoroughly Romanized and entirely peaceful. On the southeast along the shore of the Mediterranean was the Roman province (Provincia) which had been won sixty years before Caesar's time. It was now all Roman and the centre of Transalpine Roman activity. The influence of the civilized life of the province was felt powerfully by the neighboring tribes; but this did not serve to extend at all the political control of the Romans.

The Gaul that was still unsubdued was divided, as we learn from the first chapter of the *Bellum Gallicum*, into three parts—the Celtic, the Aquitanian and the Belgic. Aquitania was located in the southwest, between the Garumna and the Pyrenees. This was small in area and, in the main, gave Caesar very little trouble. The country of the Belgians was bounded by the Sequana, the Matrona and the Rhine. Celtic Gaul, the great central portion, had for its boundaries the Sequana, the Matrona and the Garumna. This great country, with its mighty and lesser mountains, its noble rivers, its vast forests and fertile valleys, was the home of a large and fairly prosperous population. It has been estimated that the average number of inhabitants to the square mile was at least fifty.

Although Caesar mentions some tribes that subsisted on fish and the eggs of birds, it is evident that the great mass of the Gauls had advanced in civilization to a point far beyond the savage state. They were largely engaged in

agriculture and the raising of cattle. They had plenty of roads and bridges over the streams. Navigable rivers and the neighboring seas were alive with their ships carrying on the commerce of the times among the various tribes and between Gaul and Britain. Manufacturing seems not to have been much developed except in the working of metals. Copper implements and gold and copper coins, showing considerable skill, have been found in their tombs.

It was the custom of all the Gauls to settle in communities, or cantons. These were villages, of a greater or less size, having no walls. There were, however, many towns protected by strong walls of wood and stone. Helvetia alone had twelve walled towns and four hundred cantons. These strongholds were intended for the protection of all the people in time of war. Tribes having none of these sought the forests and swamps in time of danger.

The political conditions were the result of the habit of settling in communities or clans. The clans extended and the members multiplied; but the prince and the council of elders still made up the government. As the communities became larger, jealousies among the chiefs arose. The supporters of each rallied round their favorite, and the government of the canton came to be the rule of a faction. Thus the cantons were weakened and came to be the prey of more powerful communities or were united with them into leagues, such as the Belgian confederacy, against which Caesar had to contend. Inter-tribal conflicts were frequent, and practically all national feeling was lacking. They did meet at times in national assemblies, but the results were seldom beneficial to the people at large.

As warriors the Gauls were brave but untrained. Being extremely volatile by nature, they were roused to the highest

pitch of enthusiasm by slight successes or completely disheartened by slight reverses. Hence a single defeat was often sufficient to subdue a whole tribe. They were strong in cavalry, but had little skill or science as an infantry force. They fought in solid phalanx, an arrangement so unwieldy that they fell an easy prey to Caesar's well-trained legions. Their arms consisted of slings, bows and arrows, and spears of various kinds, and long swords of soft iron. High-crested helmets and shields formed their defensive armor.

We know little of the customs of the Gauls as regards dress. They wore trousers, however—an extremely barbaric habit from the Roman point of view.

### *Religion.*

The great religious system of Gaul was Druidism. This seems indeed to have been the only unifying force in the land. The Druids, or priests, were a class set apart and highly honored by the people. Young men from all parts of the country were sent to learn the principles of the order, and after a long term of apprenticeship they became members of the priesthood. All the learning of the time was monopolized by the Druids, and they were honored by exemption from war and taxation. They were the ministers of justice, and enforced their decrees by excommunication. This punishment carried with it exclusion from citizenship as well as from religious privileges. By the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, the Druids taught their disciples to hold death in contempt. Human sacrifices were offered up, the victims usually being criminals. In certain sections of Gaul there appear to have remained some vestiges of an older religion, which Druidism had, to a great degree, supplanted.

## BRITAIN.

Caesar made two campaigns into Britain, but in neither did he penetrate the interior of the country. He has given us a description of the islands far from accurate, but valuable from the fact that it is the earliest statement made by a personal observer. The conquest begun by Caesar was completed by his successors, and Britain remained a Roman province for 400 years.

## GERMANY.

Germany was never conquered by the Romans. Caesar twice crossed the Rhine, but made little impression on the vast hordes who inhabited the interior. The German invaders of Gaul were driven back across their great river, but only to return again to the attack, thus setting at defiance the almost invincible power of Rome.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY.

All of the histories of Rome that cover this period give an extended treatment of Caesar and his friends and foes. Of special importance, however, are those of MERIVALE and MOMMSEN. The former gives a sane and sympathetic account, in a beautiful and interesting style; the latter, a distorted and overdrawn picture, hardly relieved by the erudition shown in detail.

In addition we have :

فروده, J. A. Caesar : a Sketch. New York, 1879. Interesting but biased.

فاولر, W. W. Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System. New York, 1892. Sound and sympathetic—the best account of the man.

دودج, Col. F. A. Julius Caesar. Boston and New York, 1892. A military history, and not always reliable otherwise.

ترولوپ, A. The Commentaries of Caesar. London and Philadelphia, 1880. Interesting.

هولمز, T. R. Caesar's Conquest of Gaul. London, 1899. A fascinating account of Caesar's work, with invaluable appendices on the ethnology and geography of Gaul, and many matters relating more strictly to Caesar's life.

نابليون III. Histoire de Jules César. Paris and New York, 1865, 1866. The foundation of modern scientific discussion of Caesar's campaigns, and particularly important for its atlas.

The following books on the style and contents of the Commentaries are also important :

سيهر, E. G. A Complete Lexicon of the Latinity of Caesar's Gallic War. Boston, 1891.

MEUSEL, H. *Lexicon Caesarianum*. Berlin, 1887-93.  
MENGE, H., and PREUSS, S. *Lexicon Caesarianum*. Leipzig, 1890.

MERGUET, H. *Lexicon zu den Schriften Caesars*. Jena, 1886.  
The last three give complete citations from both the Gallic War and the Civil War.

---

JUDSON, H. P. *Caesar's Army*. Boston, 1888. A convenient and useful book.

FRÖHLICH, F. *Das Kriegswesen Cäsars*. Zürich, 1891.

RÜSTOW, F. W. *Heerwesen und Kriegführung Cäsars*. Nordhausen, 1862. Atlas, Stuttgart, 1868.

LINDENSCHMIDT, L. *Tracht und Bewaffnung des römischen Heers*. 1882.

OEHLER, R. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de bello Gallico*. Leipzig, 1890.

VON KAMPEN, A. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de bello Gallico commentarios tabulae*. Gotha.

GURLITT, L. *Anschaungstafeln zu Caesars Bellum Gallicum*. Gotha.

Important also are :

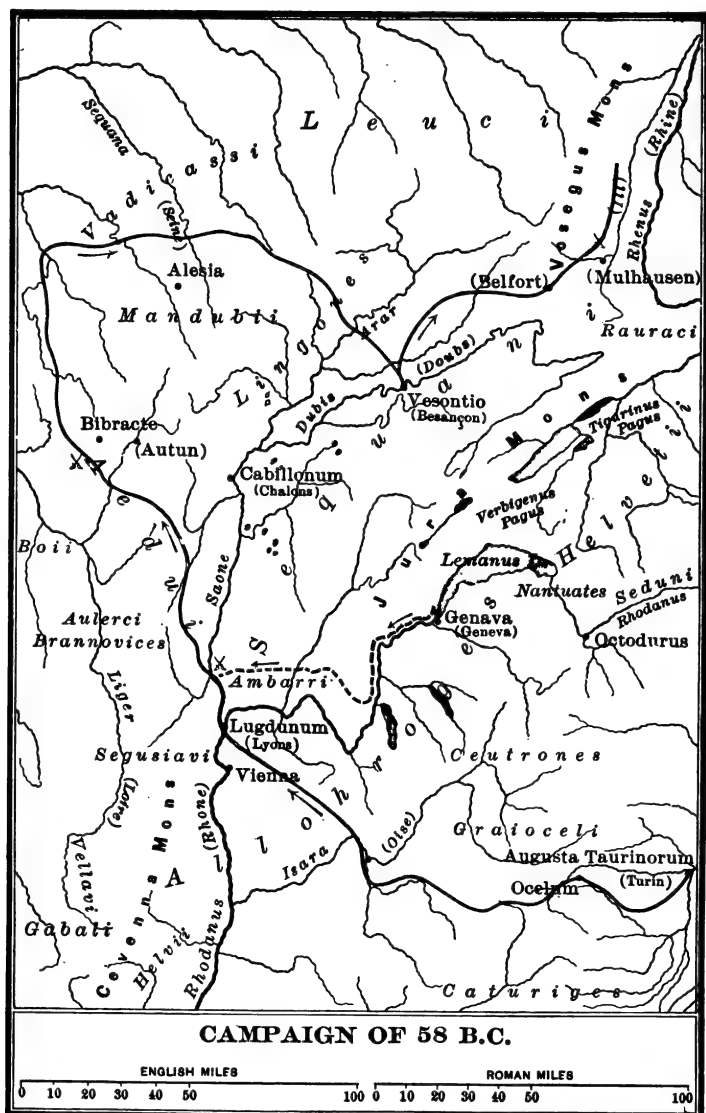
LODGE, HUBBELL and LITTLE. *Helps for the Teaching of Caesar*. In *Teachers College Record*, vol. iii (1902), nos. 3 and 4. A discussion of the various books introductory to Caesar, with detailed treatment of his vocabulary, syntax and style.

HEYNACHER, M. *Was ergibt sich aus dem Sprachgebrauch Caesars im Bellum Gallicum für die Behandlung der lateinischen Syntax in der Schule?* 2. ed. Berlin, 1886.

LEBRETON, J. *Caesariana Syntaxis quatenus a Ciceroniana differat*. Paris, 1901.







L.L. POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

C. IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

---

*I. DESCRIPTIO GALLIAE.*

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallios ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. 5  
Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, qui- 10  
buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum 15  
gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceanus, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur;

- 20 pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnā flumine ad Pyrēnaeos montes et eam partem Oceanī, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

## II. BELLUM HELVETICUM.

CC. 2-29.

*Motus Helveticorum excitatus ab Orgetorige; eius clandestina consilia, mors.*

- 25 2. Apud Helvetios longē nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messalā et M. Pisōne consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, 30 totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci naturā Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rhēnō latissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helveticum a Germanis dividit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sequanos et Helvetios, tertiā lacū 35 Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō, quī provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magnō dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloriā 40 belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum cclx, in latitudinem clxxx patebant.

3. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, com- 45 parare, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum

coëmere, sementēs quam mǎximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās bien- nium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profec- tionem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orge- 50 torix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnū in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnū in cīvitate suā occupāret, quod pater ante 55 habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, qui eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitate obtinēbat ac mǎximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiā suā in mǎtrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvi- 60 tātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quān- tōtius Galliae plūrimū Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc orātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iurandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs 65 populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iūdicium 70 omnem suā familiā, ad hominū mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum mǎgnū numerū habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitas ob eam rem inci- tāta armīs iūs suū exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque 75 hominū ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mor-

tuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit.

*Iter Helvētīi primō per prōvinciam temptant, sed Caesaris mūnitiōnibus interclūsī deinde per Sēquanōs.*

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id, quod cōn-  
 80 stituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi  
 iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua  
 omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reli-  
 qua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter  
 quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum  
 85 reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula sub-  
 eunda essent, trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque  
 domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et  
 Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem usī cōnsiliō oppidis suis  
 vicisque exūstis, unā cum iis proficiscantur, Bōiōsque, quī  
 90 trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trāsi-  
 erant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi  
 asciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō  
 exire possent: unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,  
 95 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā sin-  
 gulī carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat,  
 ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvin-  
 ciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea  
 quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper  
 100 pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locīs vadō  
 trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proxi-  
 mumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns  
 ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,  
 quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidē-

rentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturōs ut per suos finēs 105  
 eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant: is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eos per prōvinciam 110  
 nostram iter facere cōnārī, māturat ab urbe proficisci et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genā- 115  
 vam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cuius lēgatiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea 120  
 quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētīis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultate 125  
 per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milites, quōs imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur. 130

8. Interea eā legiōne, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvincia cōvenerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētīis dividit, milia passuum decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque 135

perducit. Eo opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella :  
 commūnit, quō facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur,  
 prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lē- :  
 gātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre  
 140 et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ulli per prōvinciam  
 dare et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit.  
 Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque com- :  
 plūribus factis, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitudō  
 flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si  
 145 perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum  
 concursū et tēlis repulsi, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur una per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs  
 invitīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā :  
 sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem  
 150 Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātore, ā Sēquanīs impetrā-  
 rent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plū- :  
 rimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte  
 Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium duxerat ; et, cupiditate  
 rēgnī adductus, novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās  
 155 civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque  
 rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs  
 Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent,  
 perficit : Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant ; Hel-  
 vētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.

160 10. Caesarī renūtiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per  
 agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs  
 facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae  
 civitās est in prōvinciā. Id si fieret, intellegēbat māgnō :  
 cum periculō prōvinciae futurum, ut hominēs bellicosōs,  
 165 populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locis patentibus māximēque frū-  
 mentāriis finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī, :

quam fecerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit ; ipse in Italiam māgnis itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernis ēducit et, quā proximum iter in ūteriōrem Gal- 170  
liam per Alpēs erat, cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graioceli et Caturigēs, locis superioribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriō-  
ris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ūteriōris 175  
prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit : inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hi sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

*Gallōrum dē Helvētiōrum iniūriis querēlae.*

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant 180  
eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaeque ab iis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium : Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rō-  
mānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitutem abdūci, oppida 185  
expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidis vim  
hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem 190  
recipiunt et dēmōstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortunīs sociōrum cō-  
sūptis in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.



*Clades Tigurinorum.*

195 12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sē-  
 quanōrum in Rhodanum Influit, incredibili lēnitāte, ita  
 ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iudicārī nōn possit. Id  
 Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iunctis trānsibant. Ubi per  
 explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cō-  
 200 piārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē par-  
 tem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā  
 cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem  
 pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs  
 et inopināntēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concidit:  
 205 reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunť atque in proximās silvās ab-  
 didērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus: nam omnis  
 civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hic pāgus  
 unus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L.  
 Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iu-  
 210 gum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immor-  
 tālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem  
 populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit.  
 Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās  
 iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L.  
 215 Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium,  
 interfēcerant.

*Helvētīi per lēgātōs cum Caesare agunt.*

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut  
 cōsequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque  
 ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū  
 220 commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēce-  
 rant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum unō diē fecisse intelle-  
 gerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūius lēgatiōnis Diviciō

princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.  
 Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum  
 Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs 225  
 Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset:  
 sin bellō persequi perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris  
 incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtutis Helvētiō-  
 rum. Quod imprōvisō unum pāgum adortus esset, cum ei,  
 qui flūmen trānsissent, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē 230  
 ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūti tribueret aut  
 ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis  
 didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut  
 insidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi  
 cōstitissent, ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne 235  
 exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriā prōderet.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis  
 dari, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent,  
 memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō  
 populi Rōmāni accidissent: qui si alicūius iniūriae sibi 240  
 cōnsciis fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēcep-  
 tum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret, quārē  
 timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod si  
 veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium  
 iniūriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim 245  
 temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allo-  
 brogas vexāssent, memoriā dēpōnere posse? Quod suā  
 victoriā tam insolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē  
 impūne iniūriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre.  
 Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortalēs quō gravius hominēs ex 250  
 commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum  
 ulcisci velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem  
 impunitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs

ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturōs in-  
 255 tellegat, et si Aeduīs de iniuriis, quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum  
 intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis  
 pacem esse facturum. Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs a  
 maiōribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, nōn  
 dare consuerint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse tēstem.  
 260 Hōc respōnsō datō discēssit.

*Equitatus Caesaris ab Helvētiis pulsus. Utriusque exercitūs iter.*

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit  
 Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mī-  
 lium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum so-  
 ciis coactum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in par-  
 265 tes hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum āgmen  
 insecuti aliēnō locō cum equitatū Helvētiōrum proelium  
 committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō  
 sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multi-  
 tudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn  
 270 numquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere  
 coepērunt. Caesar suōs a proeliō continēbat ac satis ha-  
 bēbat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pābulatiōnibus popu-  
 latiōnibusque prohibere. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter  
 fecērunt, uti inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum  
 275 primum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum  
 interesset.

*Caesaris cum Aeduōrum principibus, Liscō et Diviciacō, de  
 civitātis condiciōe et Dumnorīgis perfidiā colloquium.*

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frumentum, quod  
 essent publicē polliciti, flāgitare. Nam propter frīgora,  
 quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita  
 280 est, nōn modo frumenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed

• nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat: eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat, propterea ūti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiū āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī: cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diutius dūci intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quorum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat, quem ‘vergo-bretum’ appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitāe necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī possit, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus ab iis nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

17. Tum dēnum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plurimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbere quīn, sī Helvētiōs superaverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs libertātem sint ereptūrī. Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enūtiārī: hōs ā sē coērceri nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Caesarī enūtiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Lisci Dumnorigem, Diviciāci

frātre, dēsignārī sentiēbat, sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solō ea, quae in conventu dīxerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vērā: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitatem grātiā, cupidum rerum novarum. Complūrēs annōs portoria reliquaue omnia Aeduōrum vectigālīa parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitātis suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finiti-  
 325 mās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illō nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam affinitatem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī  
 330 nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātū, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, cum ad hās sūspiciōnēs cer-

tissimae res accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Hel-  
vētios trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset,  
quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussu suō et civitātis, sed etiam 345  
inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod ā magistratū Aeduōrum  
accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum  
aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere  
iubēret. His omnibus rēbus unum repugnābat, quod  
Diviciāci frātis summum in populum Rōmānum studium, 350  
summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iustitiam,  
temperantiam cōgnoverat: nam nē eius supplicio Divi-  
ciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam  
quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et  
cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Trou- 355  
cillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum,  
cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō  
colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in  
concilio Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit,  
360 quae sēparatim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit  
atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animi vel ipse dē  
eō, causā cōgnitā, statuāt, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus  
obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātre statueret:  
365 Scire sē illa esse vērā, neo quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē  
dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plurimum  
domi atque in reliqua Galliā, ille minimum propter  
370 adulescentiam posset, per sē crevisset; quibus opibus ac  
nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad  
perniciem suam uteretur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō  
375 et existimātiōne vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei ā  
Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae  
apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā

voluntate factum; quā ex re futurum, uti tōtius Galliae  
 375 animi ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns  
 ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsō-  
 lātus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti eius apud sē  
 grātiā esse ostendit, uti et rei publicae iniuriā et suum  
 dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorī-  
 380 gem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat,  
 ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur; prō-  
 pōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciōnēs  
 vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre dicit.  
 Dumnorigi cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum lo-  
 385 quatur, scire possit.

*Caesaris cōnsilium P. Cōnsidii errore pervertitur.*

21. Eōdem diē ab explorātōribus certior factus hostēs  
 sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris  
 octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitu  
 āscēsus, quī cōgnōscerent, misit. Renūtiātum est facilem  
 390 esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prae-  
 tōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iis ducibus, quī iter cōgnō-  
 verant, summum iugum montis āscendere iubet; quid sui  
 cōnsilii sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere,  
 quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem  
 395 ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus  
 habēbātur et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi  
 fuerat, cum explorātōribus praemittitur.

22. Primā luce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenē-  
 rētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīn-  
 400 gentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis com-  
 perit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus esset,  
 Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem,

quem a Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī;  
 id sē a Gallicīs armīs atque Insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar  
 suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. 408  
 Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, nē proelium  
 committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prōpe hostium castra visae  
 essent, ut undique unō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret,  
 monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.  
 Multo dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et 410  
 montem a suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et  
 Cōsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō visō  
 sibi renūtiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuerat intervālo, hostēs  
 sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra  
 pōnit. 415

*Helvētiōrum clādēs, fuga, rēditus in finēs suos.*

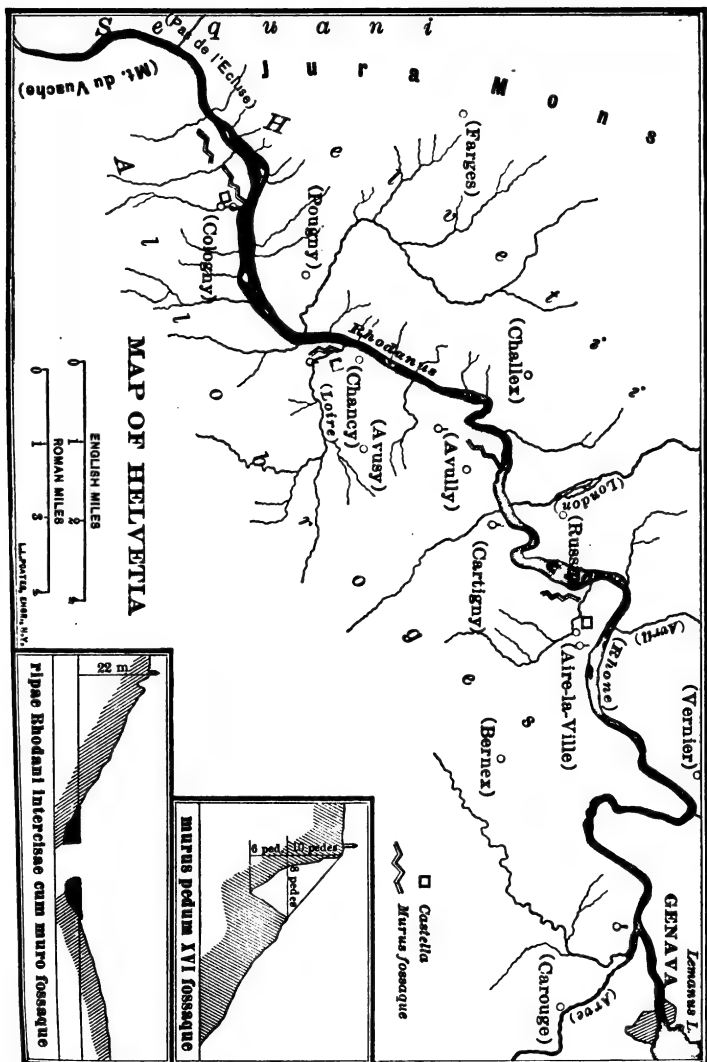
23. Postrīdiē eius diē, quod omnīnō bīdium supererat,  
 cum exercitui frumentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod a  
 Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsis-  
 simō, nōn amplius milibus passuum xviii aberat, rei  
 frumentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs 420  
 avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs  
 L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nū-  
 tiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs  
 discēdere a sē existimārent, eō magis, quod pridīe, superi-  
 ōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sive 425  
 eō, quod rē frumentāriā intercludī posse cōfiderent,  
 commutātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs a novis-  
 simō āgmine Insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar  
 in proximum collem subducit equitātumque, quī sustinēret 430  
 hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō



triplicem aciem Instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum ;  
 [ita uti supra sē] in summō iugō duās legiōnes, quās  
 in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia  
 445 auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et  
 intereā sarcinās in unum locum cōferri, et eum ab iis,  
 quī in superiōre aciē cōstiterant, mūniri iussit. Helvētiī  
 cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum  
 locum contulerunt ; ipsi cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō  
 440 equitatū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem  
 succēsserunt.

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū  
 remōtis equis, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae  
 tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō,  
 445 superiōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrē-  
 gērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum  
 fecērunt. Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō, s  
 quod pluribus eōrum scūtis unō Iotū pilōrum trānsfixis et  
 colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque  
 450 sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant ; multi  
 ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmit-  
 tere et nudō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi  
 et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille  
 passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et  
 455 succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingi, quī hominum  
 milibus circiter xv āgmen hostium claudēbant et novis-  
 simis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō  
 aggressi circumvenire ; et id cōspicāti Helvētiī, quī in  
 montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redin-  
 460 tegrāre coepērunt. Rōmāni conversa signa bipertitō  
 intulērunt ; prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis  
 resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.





26. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem recepērunt, alteri ad 465  
 • impedimenta et carrōs suos se contulerunt. Nam hōc tōtō proelio, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnatum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs veni- 470  
 entēs tela coniciēbant, et nōn nulli inter carrōs raedāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus ē filiis captus  
 • est. Ex eō proelio circiter hominum milia cxxx super- 475  
 fuerunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum morāti eōs  
 • sequi nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūnti- 480  
 ōsque misit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: qui si iuvissent, se eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi coepit.

27. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē 485  
 • dēditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūti flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iūssisset, pāru-  
 • erunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, 490  
 • servōs qui ad eōs perfūgissent, popōscit. Dum ea conquiruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum milia vi eius pāgi, qui Verbigenus appellātur, sive

timore perterriti, nē armis traditis supplicio afficerentur,  
 495 sive spē salutis inducti, quod in tantā multitudīne dediti-  
 ciorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari  
 posse existimarent, primā nocte ē castris Helvetiorum  
 egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant,  
 500 his, uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse  
 vellent, imperavit; reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos  
 omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in  
 ditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in  
 fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et quod  
 505 omnibus frugibus amissis domi nihil erat, quo famem  
 tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam  
 facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere  
 iussit. Id eā maximē ratione fecit, quod noluit  
 eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, nē propter  
 510 bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt,  
 ē suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi  
 Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios peten-  
 tibus Aeduīs, quod egregiā virtute erant cogniti, ut in  
 finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros  
 515 dederunt quosque postea in parem iuris libertatisque  
 conditionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris  
 Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in  
 tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo  
 520 exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim  
 pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa  
 erat capitum Helvetiorum milium cclxiii, Tulingorum mi-  
 lium xxxvi, Latobrigorum xiv, Rauracorum xxiii, Boiorum  
 xxxii; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nonaginta

duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eorum, 525  
qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

### III. BELLUM ARIOVISTI.

CC. 30-54.

*Concilio Galliae habitō, principes civitatum cum Caesare  
secretō agunt. Querelae de Ariovisto, Germanorum rege.*

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, totius fere Galliae  
legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum con-  
venerunt: Intellegere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helve- 530  
tiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam  
populi Romani accidisse; propterea quod eo consilio flo-  
rentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti  
Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque 535  
domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gal-  
lia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iudicassent, reli-  
quasque civitates stipendiarias haberent. Petierunt, ut  
sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicare id-  
que Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam 540  
res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea  
re permissa, diem concilio constituerunt et iure iurando,  
ne quis denuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio man-  
datum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso Idem principes civitatum, qui 545  
ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertentur petieruntque, uti  
sibi secreto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret.  
Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes pro-  
iecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea,  
quae dixissent, denuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, 550

impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum se ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō his Diviciācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius  
555 Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere de potentātū inter se multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germāni mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse: postea quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac  
560 barbarī adamassent, trāductōs plūrēs: nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum hīs Aeduos eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsisse.  
565 Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populi Rōmāni hospitio atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coactōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis et iure iūrāndō civitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs, neque auxilium ā populō  
570 Rōmānō implorātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum se esse ex omnī civitāte Aeduōrum, quī adduci nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitāte prōfugisse et Rōmam ad senātum  
575 vēnisse auxilium pōstulātum, quod sōlus neque iure iūrāndō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtius  
580 Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc de alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucis mēnsibus

ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent,  
 11 quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis  
 annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque  
 omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent: neque enim cōferen- 585  
 dum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc  
 12 cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum  
 autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod  
 proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crudēliter  
 imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs pōscere et 590  
 in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad  
 13 nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse  
 barbarum, Irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius impe-  
 14 ria diūtius sustinēri. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque  
 Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, 595  
 quod Helvētīī fēcērint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domici-  
 lium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortunam-  
 15 que, quaecumque accadat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta  
 Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus,  
 16 quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Cae- 600  
 sarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī vic-  
 tōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dētērrere posse, nē māior  
 multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque  
 omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc orātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī 605  
 aderant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepē-  
 runt. Animadvertit Caesar tūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs  
 nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs,  
 capite dēmissō, terram intuerī. Eius rei quae causa esset,  
 3 mīrātus ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed 610  
 in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius  
 quaereret neque ullam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset,



Idem Diviciacus Aeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem  
 et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum,  
 615 quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium im-  
 plōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crudelitātem, velut  
 sī cōram adesset, horrērent; propterea quod reliquīs tamen  
 fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs  
 Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte  
 620 eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

*Colloquium ā Caesare pōstulātum, dēnegātur ā rēge. Lēgātī ā  
 Caesare mittuntur. Ariovistī respōnsum.*

33. His rēbus cōgnītīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs  
 cōfīrmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram:  
 māgnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte  
 adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs facturum. Hāc orā-  
 625 tiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsīt. Et secundum ea multae  
 rēs eum hortābantur, quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam  
 et suscipiendam putāret, in primīs, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs  
 cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in  
 servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī,  
 630 eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs in-  
 tellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī turpis-  
 simum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrābatur. Paulātīm  
 autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre, et in  
 Galliam māgnam eōrum multitudinem venīre, populō  
 635 Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs  
 ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem  
 Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcis-  
 sent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliā conten-  
 derent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā  
 640 Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē oc-

currendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rē placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō pōstulārent, utī aliquem locum 645 medium utriusque colloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Ei lēgātīōnī Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine 650 exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtīi esset. 655

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in 660 colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē discendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō pōstulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret: deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet Sēqua- 665 nīsque permetteret, ut, quōs illi habērent, voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniuriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociisque eōrum bellum Inferret. Si id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcī- 670 tiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, senātus cēnsuisset, utī,

quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō  
rei pūblīcae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amicōs  
populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn  
675 neglētūrum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Ius esse bellī, ut,  
quī vīcissent, iīs, quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent,  
imperārent: item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad  
alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre  
680 cōnsuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, 2  
quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā po-  
pulō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam 3  
bellī fortunam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac supe-  
rātī essent, stipendiārīos esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem 4  
685 iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra  
faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque 5  
hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, si in eō  
manērent, quod convēnisset, stipendiumque quotannis  
penderent; si id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen  
690 populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūtiāret, 6  
sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmīnem sēcum  
sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregērētur: 7  
intellētūrum, quid invictī Germānī exercitātissimī in  
armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte  
695 possent.

*Aeduōrum questibus mōtus Caesar ad Ariovistum contendit,  
Vesontionem occupat.*

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,  
et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī 2  
questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trāns-  
portātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē, nē obsidibus

quidem datis, pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trē- 700  
 veri autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēni  
 cōnsēdisse, qui Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; hīs praeesse  
 Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar  
 vehementer commōtus mātūrāndum sibi exīstimāvit, nē,  
 sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovisti 705  
 sēsē coniūxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque, rē  
 frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, magnīs  
 itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcēssisset, nūntiātum est ei,  
 Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum 710  
 Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum,  
 contendere, trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcēssisse. Id  
 nē accideret, magnō opere sibi praecavendum Caesar exī-  
 stimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī  
 erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā 715  
 loci sic mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum  
 daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis ut circinō  
 circumductum paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum  
 spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum mille sexcentōrum,  
 quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitudine 720  
 ita ut rādīcēs eius montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis  
 contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et  
 cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs  
 diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō, ibi  
 praesidium collocat.

725

*Magna in castris Rōmānīs trepidātiō, Caesaris orātiō, iter ad  
 Ariovistum.*

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae  
 commeātusque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum

vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātorum, quī ingentī māgnitudine corporum Germānōs, incredibīlī virtūte atque  
 730 exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō  
 sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem  
 oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor  
 omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium  
 mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est a  
 735 tribūnīs militum, praefectīs reliquisque, quī ex urbe  
 amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnū in rē  
 militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā,  
 quam sibi ad proficiiscendum necessariam esse diceret,  
 petēbat, ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nulli  
 740 pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanē-  
 bant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās  
 tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum  
 querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne perī-  
 culum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs tēstamenta  
 745 obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam  
 iī, quī māgnū in castrīs ūsum habēbant, milites centu-  
 riōnēsque quīque equitātū praeerant, perturbābantur.  
 Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē  
 hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitudinem  
 750 silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum,  
 aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī  
 posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nulli etiam Caesarī nūnti-  
 ābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri iūssisset, nōn fore  
 dictō audientēs milites neque propter timōrem signa  
 755 lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō  
 omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriō-  
 nibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod, aut quam

in partem aut quō cōsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum  
 aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōsule cupidis- 760  
 simē populī Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse: cūr hunc tam  
 temerē quisquam ab officiō discēssūrum iudicāret? Sibi  
 quidem persuādērī, cōgnitis suis pōstulātis atque aequitate  
 condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī  
 Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque 765  
 āmentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verē-  
 rentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā  
 dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis periculum patrum  
 nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō  
 pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor 770  
 meritis vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servili  
 tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus āc disciplīna, quae ā  
 nobis accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iudicārī posse,  
 quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, propterea quod,  
 quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea 775  
 armātōs āc victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem  
 Germānōs, quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn  
 solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus plērumque  
 superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn  
 potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum 780  
 commovēret, hōs, si quaerent, reperīre posse, diūturnitate  
 bellī dēfatigātis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs  
 castrīs sē āc palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem  
 fēcisset, dēspērantes iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō  
 adortum magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vīcis- 785  
 se. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs  
 locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs  
 exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frumen-  
 tariae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent.

790 facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspē-  
rāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: 11  
frumentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre,  
iamque esse in agrīs frumenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs  
brevi tempore iudicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs 12  
795 neque signa lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī:  
scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn  
fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortunam dēfuisse aut aliquō  
facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam: suam inno-  
centiam perpetuā vitā, felicitātem Helvētiōrum bello  
800 esse perspectam. Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem 13  
collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrū et proximā nocte dē  
quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrū, ut quam primum intelle-  
gere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an  
timor plūs valeret. Quod si praetereā nēmō sequātur, 14  
805 tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrū, dē quā nōn  
dubitāret, sibiue eam praetōriam cohortem futuram.  
Huic legiōni Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter 15  
virtutem cōnfidēbat māximē.

41. Hāc orātiōne habitā, mirum in modum conversae  
810 sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās  
belli gerendi illāta est, princepsque decima legiō per 2  
tribūnōs militum ei grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum  
iudiciū fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parā-  
tissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum 3  
815 tribūnīs militum et primōrum ordinum centuriōnibus  
egerunt, utī Caesarī satis facerent: sē neque umquam  
dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā belli suum  
iudiciū, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse. Eōrum 4  
satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum,  
820 quod ex Gallīs ei māximam fidem habēbat, ut milium

amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātōribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostris milia passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

825

*Caesaris cum Ariovistō colloquium Germānōrum impetū dīripitur.*

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod antea de colloquiō pōstulāset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculō facere posse existimāre. Nōn respuit conditionem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti dēnegāset, ultro polliceretur, magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique Rōmāni in eum beneficiis, cōgnitis suis pōstulātis, fore, uti pertinaciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultro citroque inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus pōstulāvit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se ne per insidiās ab eō circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu veniret; aliā ratione sese nōn esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tolli volēbat neque salutem suam Gallōrum equitatu com-mittere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eō legiōnariōs milites legiōnis decimae, cui quam maxime cōfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus factō esset, haberet. Quod cum fieret, nōn irridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit: plus quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum se in cohortis praetōriae loco decimam legiōnem habiturum, ad equum rescribere.

830

835

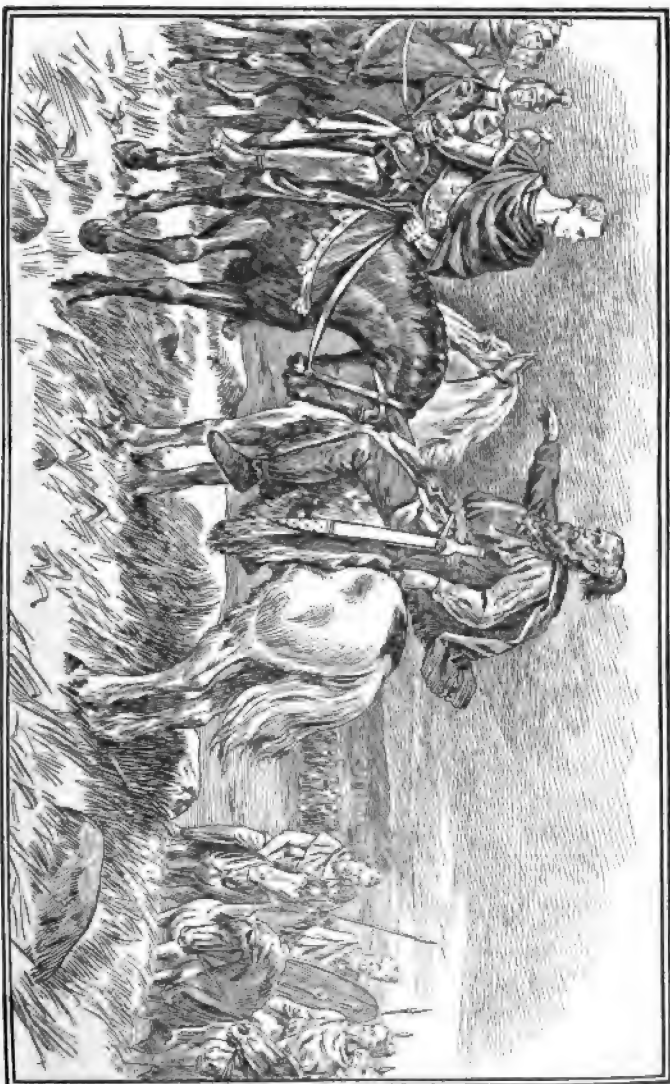
840

845



850 43. Plānitīēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus  
 satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs  
 Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad collo-  
 quium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēve-  
 xerat, passibus cc ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs  
 855 Ariovistī parī intervallō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus ex  
 equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad collo-  
 quium addūcerent, pōstulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar  
 initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia comme-  
 morāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus,  
 860 quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs  
 contigisse et prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī  
 docēbat; illum cum neque aditum neque causam pōstu-  
 landī iūstam habēret, beneficiō āc liberalitātē suā āc  
 senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum. Docēbat etiam, quam  
 865 veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs cum  
 Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns  
 quamque honōrifca in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore  
 tōtius Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam  
 quam nostram amīcitiam appetissent. Populī Rōmānī  
 870 hanc esse cōsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn  
 modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitātē, honōre  
 auctiōrēs velit esse: quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī  
 Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset? Pōstu-  
 lāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē  
 875 aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum inferret; obsidēs red-  
 deret; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere  
 posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad pōstulātā Caesaris pauca respondit,  
 dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum  
 880 sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs;



CÆSAR'S INTERVIEW WITH ARIOVISTUS.

From Guizot.



nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedēs habere in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre belli, quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērint.

• Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs 885 Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē unō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; si pāce uti velint, inīquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte 890 ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Rōmāni sibi ōrnamentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dediticiū subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi 895 Rōmāni amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē sui mūniendi, nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā facere: eius rei tēstimonium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam 900 vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populi Rōmāni Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessionēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concēdi nōn oportēret, si in 905 nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse inīquos, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātres ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitū esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānis auxilium tulisse 910 neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et

cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sē sūsPICĀRĪ simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem 10 exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre.

915 Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēducāt ex hīs regiō- 11 nibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcērit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīn- 12 cipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum: id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum

920 omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et liberā possessiōnem Gal- 13 liae sibi trādīdisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnērātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.

925 45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiā dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset; neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōsuetūdinem pati, utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam potius esse 2 Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse

930 Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus Ignōvisset neque in prōvinciā redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum 3 quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium: sī iūdicium senātūs

935 observārī oportēret, liberā dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victā suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumultum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōnicere.

940 Caesar loquendī finem fēcīt, sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque 2 imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū 3

proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Postea quam in vulgus militum 945 elātum est; quā arrogantia in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omni Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercitū iniectum est.

950

*Galli lēgātī ad Ariovistum missī in vincula cōniciuntur.*

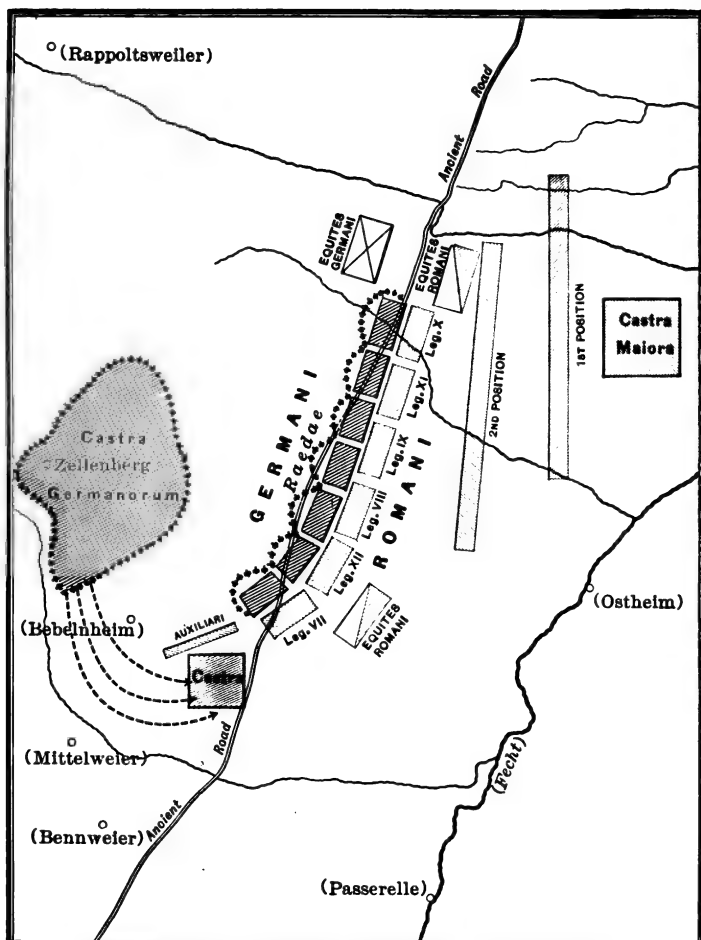
47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: Velle sē dē iīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō: utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suis lēgātīs 955 aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēi Germāni retinērī nōn potuerant, quā tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent. Lēgātum ex suis sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum existimābat. 960 Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuetūdine utēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa 965 nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et unā M. Metium, quī hospitio Ariovistī utēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī 970 causā? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās cōniēcīt.

*Equestre proelium.*

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex  
 ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē eius diē  
 praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus  
 975 passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī  
 frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduis sup-  
 portārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs con-  
 tinuōs quīnque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et  
 aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō  
 980 contendere, ei potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omni-  
 bus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proeliō  
 cotidiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Ger-  
 mānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem  
 985 numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni  
 cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salutis causā dēlēgerant: cum  
 hīs in proeliis versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant:  
 hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī graviōre vul-  
 nere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumstībant; sī quō erat  
 990 longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat  
 hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum  
 cursum adaequārent.

*Castra minōra Caesaris Ariovistus oppūgnat, proeliō dēcērtāre  
 nōn audet.*

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē  
 diūtius commeātū prohiberētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in  
 locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iis,  
 995 castris idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici instrūctā ad  
 eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs  
 esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Hic locus ab hoste  
 circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō



## PLAN OF BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

ENGLISH MILE  
0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

ROMAN MILE  
0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

L.L. POATES, ENGR., N.Y.





circiter hominum numerō sēdecim milia expedita cum  
 omni equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs  
 1000  
 4 terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar,  
 ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam  
 5 opus perficere iussit. Mūnītis castris, duās ibi legiōnēs  
 reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra  
 maiōra redūxit. 1005

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrisque  
 cōpiās suās edūxit paulumque ā maiōribus castris prōgres-  
 sus aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit.  
 2 Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter meri-  
 diē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus 1010  
 partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret,  
 3 mīsit. Acriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum  
 est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multis et illātis  
 4 et acceptis vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captivīs  
 quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn 1015  
 decertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs  
 ea cōsuetūdō esset, ut matrēs familiae eōrum sortibus  
 et vaticinātiōnibus declārārent, utrum proelium committi  
 5 ex ūsū esset necne; eas ita dicere: nōn esse fās Germānōs  
 superāre, sī ante novam lunam proeliō contendissent. 1020

*Tandem in proelium dēscendere coācti Germānī vincuntur et ad  
 Rhēnum profugiunt. Liberantur lēgātī Gallī.*

51. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris,  
 quod satis esse vīsum est, reliquit, ālariōs omnēs in  
 cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit, quod  
 minus multitudīne militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium  
 numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālariis ūteretur; ipse, 1025  
 triplici instrūctā aciē, ūsque ad castra hostium accēssit.

Tum dēnum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs edū-  
xērunt generatimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllis,  
Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs,  
1030 Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs  
circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō  
mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiscentēs  
militēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in  
servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

1035 52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae-  
stōrem praefēcit, utī eōs tēstēs suae quisque virtūtis  
habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē  
firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit.  
Et ita nostrī ācritē in hostēs, signō datō, impetum  
1040 fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repentē celeriterque prōcurrērunt,  
ut spatium pīla in hostēs cōniciendī nōn darētur.  
Reiectīs pilīs, comminus gladiīs pūgnātum est. At  
Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā,  
impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs  
1045 nostrī, quī in phalanga insilirent et scūta manibus  
revellerent et dēsUPER vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs  
ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā  
dextrō cornū vehementer multitudīne suōrum nostram  
aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus  
1050 adulēscēs, quī equitatū praerat, quod expeditior erat  
quam īī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem  
labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsīt.

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnēs hostēs  
terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad  
1055 flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque  
pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut viribus cōnfisi trānāre  
contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salutē repperē-

runt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, qui nāviculam deligātam ad ripam nactus eā profūgit: reliquos omnes cōsecuti equitēs nostrī interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti 1060 uxōrēs, una Suēba nātiōne, quam domo secum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, regis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Duae filiae: hārum altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnis 1065 catēnis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū persequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari nōn minorem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ereptum ē manibus hostium sibi 1070 restitutum videbat, neque eius calamitāte de tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente de sē ter sortiōbus cōsultum dicebat, utrum Igni statim necārētur, an in aliud tempus reser- vārētur: sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. 1075 Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

*Suebi domum revertuntur. In hiberna deducitur exercitus.  
Caesar in citeriorem Galliam proficiscitur.*

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbi, qui ad ripās Rhēni vēnerant, domum reverti coepērunt; quos Ubi, qui proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritos sēnsērunt: insecuti māgnū ex iīs numerum occiderunt. Caesar unā 1080 aestāte duobus mājimis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī pōstulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventūs agendos profectus est.

## COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

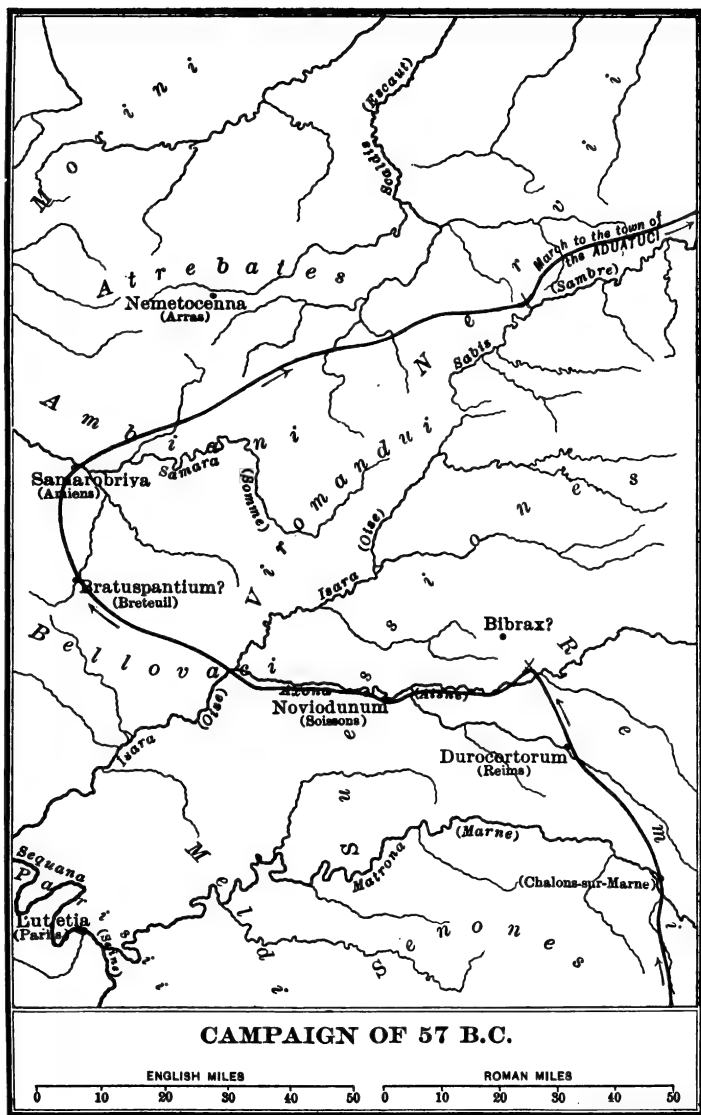
### I. BELLUM BELGICUM.

CC. I-33.

*Coniūrātiō Belgārum praeter Rēmōs, quī sē in fidem Caesaris  
permittunt.*

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita uti suprà  
dēmōstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur,  
litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās,  
quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā  
5 populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.  
Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur, nē  
omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur;  
deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim  
quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita  
10 populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in  
Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte  
animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod  
in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad condūcendōs  
hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur,  
15 quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequi  
poterant.

2. His nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legi-  
ōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte,  
in ūteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum  
20 mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad





1 exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque  
 Gallis quī finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs  
 gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiorē  
 4 faciant. HI cōstanter omnēs nūntiāverunt mantis cōgi,  
 exercitum in unum locum condūci. Tum vērō dubitan- 25  
 5 dum nōn existimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē  
 frumentariā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque circiter  
 quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne  
 vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad 30  
 eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis,  
 2 misērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque  
 in potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum  
 reliquis Belgis cōsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmā-  
 3 num coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et 35  
 imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frumentō cēteris-  
 4 que rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse,  
 Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum his  
 5 coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem,  
 ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, 40  
 quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus utantur, unum impe-  
 rium unumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant, dēterrere  
 potuerint, quīn cum his cōsentirent.

#### *Orīgō et cōpiae Belgārum.*

4. Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitātēs quantaque  
 in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: 45  
 plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānis Rhēnumque  
 antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsē-  
 2 disse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque  
 esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā,

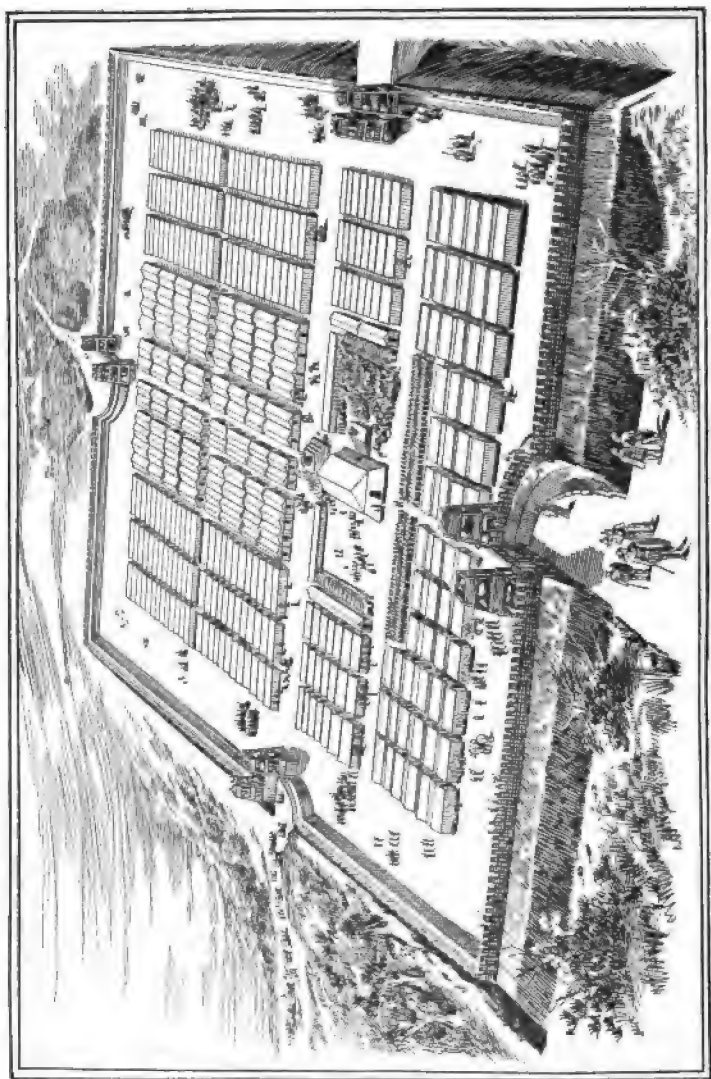


50 Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi prohibue-  
 rint; quā ex rē fieri, uti eārum rerum memoriā māgnam s  
 sibi auctoritatem māgnōsque spīritus in rē militārī  
 sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta  
 Rēmī dicēbant, proptereā quod, propinquitātibus affini-  
 55 tātibusque coniūcti, quantam quisque multitudinem in  
 commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit,  
 cōgnōverint. Plurimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et s  
 auctoritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse cōn-  
 ficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō elēcta  
 60 sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi pōstulāre. Sues-  
 siōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque  
 agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam 7  
 memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī  
 cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Bri-  
 65 tanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse rēgem Galbam:  
 ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiāque summam  
 tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre s  
 numerō duodecim, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā;  
 totidem Nervīōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur  
 70 longissimēque absint; quindecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Am-  
 biānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii  
 mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Velicassēs et Viromanduōs  
 totidem, Aduatucōs xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, 10  
 Caerōsōs, Caemanōs, quī unō nōmine Germānī appel-  
 75 lantur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia.

*Castra Caesaris ad Axonam.*

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne  
 prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque  
 liberōs obsidēs ad sē adducī iūssit. Quae omnia ab hīs





A ROMAN CAMP.

• diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Aeduum  
māgnoperē cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei pūblicae 80  
commūnisque salutis intersit manūs hostium distinērī,  
nē cum tantā multitudīne unō tempore cōnfligendum sit.  
• Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aedui in finēs Bellovacōrum  
intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His  
• datīs mandātīs, eum ā sē dimittit. Postquam omnēs 85  
Belgārum cōpiās in unum locum coāctās ad sē venīre  
vidit, neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs miserat explō-  
rātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod  
est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere  
• mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus 90  
unum castrōrum ripīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum  
quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātus ab  
Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum  
• portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi  
praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium 95  
Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra  
in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duo-  
dēvigintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

*Bibrax, Rēmōrum oppidum ā Belgīs obsessum, ā Caesare  
obsidiōne liberātur. Discēdentēs Belgae clāde afficiuntur.*

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax  
aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū 100  
Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum  
• est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est  
haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne hominum tōtis moeni-  
bus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt mūrusque  
dēfēnsōribus nudātus est, tēstūdine factā portās succē- 105  
• dunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam

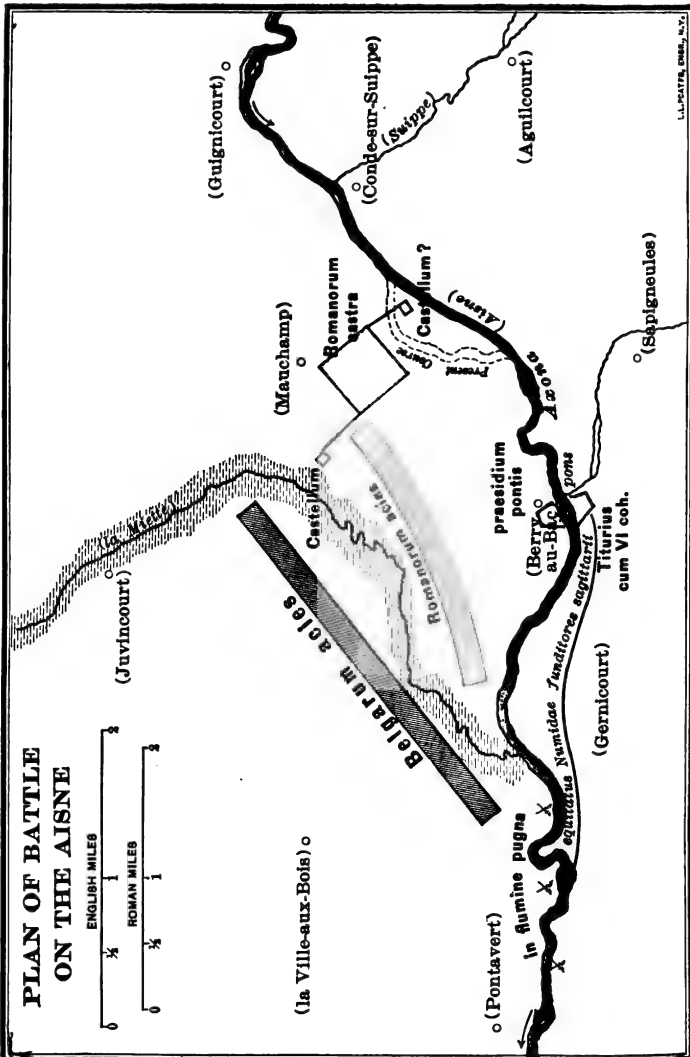
cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō  
cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī  
nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitate et grātiā  
110 inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iis, quī  
lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum  
mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius  
sustinēre nōn posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus, qui  
115 nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs  
et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidanīs mittit; quōrum  
adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpu-  
gnandī accēssit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī  
oppidi discēssit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī  
120 agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiis-  
que quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris om-  
nibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus  
duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque  
Ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in  
125 lātitudinem patēbant.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et  
propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre  
statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis  
virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur.  
130 Ubi nostrōs nōn esse infērīōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs  
ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportunō atque idōneō,  
quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex  
plānitīē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat,  
quantum locī aciēs instructa occupāre poterat, atque  
135 ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem  
lēniter fāstīgātus paulātīm ad plānitīem redībat, ab  
utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit



# PLAN OF BATTLE ON THE AISNE



circiter passuum eo et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instruxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudīne poterant, ab 140  
 5 lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instruxerunt. 145

9. Palus erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggredierentur, parātī in armis erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi 150  
 neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, 155  
 4 quod esse post nostra castra dēmōstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; 160  
 5 si minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui māgnō nōbis ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commēātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittariōsque 2  
 ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acrīter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine 3  
 aggressi māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt: per eōrum 165  
 corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōsque, qui trānsierant, 4  
 equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē



expugnandō oppidō et dē flumine trānseundō spem sē  
 170 fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiorē  
 prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frū-  
 mentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō, cōstituērunt  
 optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum  
 in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad  
 175 eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis  
 quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis  
 rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum  
 reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod  
 Diviciācum atque Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appro-  
 180 pinquāre cōgnōverant. His persuādērī, ut diūtius morā-  
 rentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum stre-  
 pitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nullō certō ordine neque  
 imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret  
 185 et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōsimilis  
 fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per  
 speculātōrēs cōgnitā, insidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā  
 discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque  
 castris continuit. Primā luce cōfirmātā rē ab explō-  
 190 rātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen  
 morārētur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium  
 Cottam lēgātōs praefecit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum  
 legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti  
 et multa milia passuum prōsecuti māgnam multitudinem  
 195 eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmine,  
 ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum  
 nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā  
 periculō vidērētur neque ullā necessitatē neque imperiō  
 continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus,

omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ullō  
periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfē-  
cerunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsum sōlis  
sequi dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum,  
recēpērunt.

*Suessiōnēs in fidem accipiuntur.*

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, prius quam sē hostēs  
ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī  
proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere  
[cōfectō] ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex  
itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōri-  
bus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque  
altitudinem paucis dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit.  
Castris mūnitīs, vineās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum  
ūsui erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā  
Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte con-  
venit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō  
turribusque cōstitutīs, māgnitudine operum, quae neque  
vīderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmā-  
nōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mit-  
tunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

*Caesar Bellovacōs, petente Diviciācō, in fidem recipit, dē Ner-  
viōrum nātūrā mōribusque quaerit.*

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs, primīs civitātis atque  
ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs armisque omnibus ex  
oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exer-  
citumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia  
in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō  
oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum  
quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi

manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad  
230 oppidum accēssisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discēssum Belgārum dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba :  
235 Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis 2 Aeduae fuisse : impulsōs ā suīs prīncipibus, quī dicerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsiliū 3  
240 prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgissee. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, 4 ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs utātur. Quod 5 sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās  
245 amplificātūrum ; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit ; et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque homi-  
250 num multitudīne praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs popōscit. His trādītīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō 2 locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervī attingēbant ; 3 quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic  
255 reperiēbat : Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus : 4 nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad luxuriām pertinentium inferri, quod iīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs

5 [eōrum] et remitti virtutem existimarent; esse hominēs  
ferōs māgnaeque virtutis, increpitare atque incūsare reli-  
quōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriam- 266  
6 que virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs  
missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*Nerviōs, multis utrimque clādibus acceptis, Caesar vincit cum  
Atrebātibus et Viromanduis accipitque in dēditiōnem.*

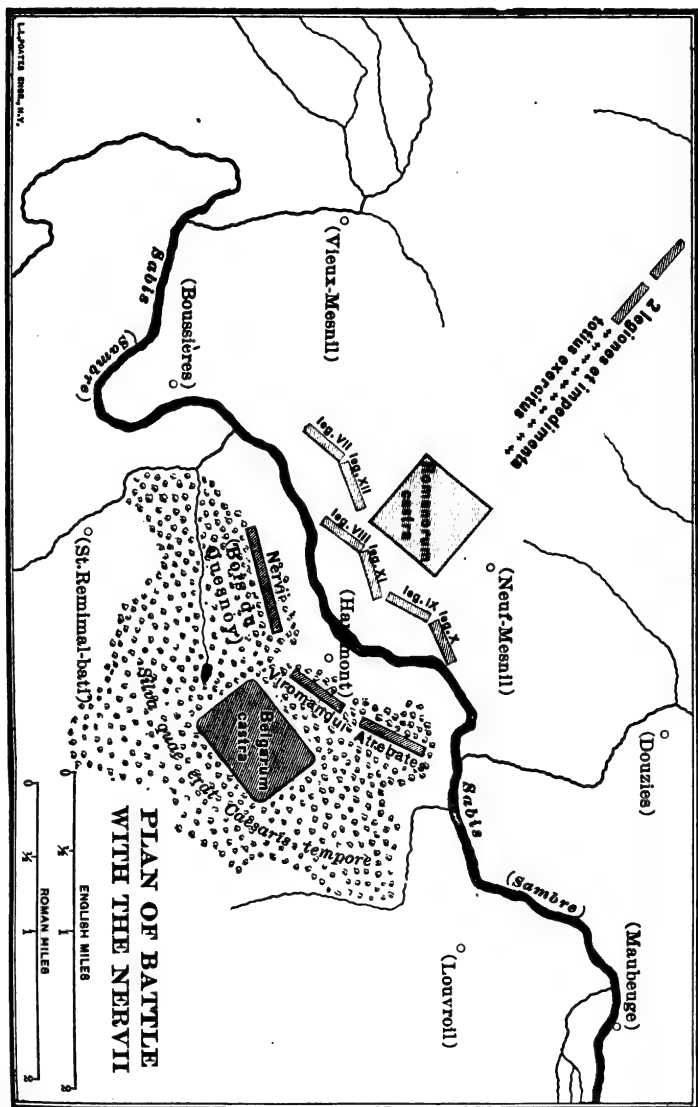
16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīdūm iter fēcisset, inve-  
niēbat ex captivīs, Sabim flūmen ā castris suis nōn  
2 amplius milia passuum x abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs 266  
Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expec-  
tāre unā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis  
(nam his utrisque persuāserant, utī eandem belli fortū-  
3 nam experīrentur); expectārī etiam ab iīs Aduatucōrum  
4 cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs, quīque per aetātem 270  
ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum cōniēcisse,  
quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

17. His rēbus cōgnitis, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque  
2 praemittit, quī locum castris idōneum dēligant. Cum ex  
dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem 275  
secūtī unā iter facerent, quīdam ex his, ut postea ex  
captivīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuetūdine itineris  
nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt  
atque his dēmōstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impe-  
dimentōrum māgnū numerum intercēdere, neque esse 280  
quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset  
reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium abessent, hanc sub  
3 sarcinis adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis  
futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.  
4 Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, 285

quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiiis) quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causam ad eos venissent, impedirent, 290 teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis et rubis sentibusque interiectis effecerant, ut instar muri hae saepes munimentum praebarent, quo non modo non intrari, sed ne perspicere quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, 395 non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

18. Locum natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur, adversus 300 huic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, a superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspicere posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continabant; in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo 305 pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequeretur omnibus copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expectatas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat; inde duae legiones, quae proximae conscriptae 310 erant, totum agmen clauderant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium 315 commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos recipere ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent,





neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca  
 aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs insequi audērent, interim  
 legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra  
 mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exer- 320  
 citūs ab iis, qui in silvis abditī latēbant, visa sunt, quod  
 tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā  
 silvās aciem ordinēsq̄e cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē  
 cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt  
 impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile 325  
 pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incredibili celeritāte ad flūmen  
 dēcucurrērunt, ut paene unō tempore ad silvās et in  
 flūmine et iam in manibus nostris hostēs vidērentur.  
 Eādē autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra  
 atque eōs, qui in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt. 330

20. Caesarī omnia unō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum  
 prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī  
 oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī  
 milites, qui paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcēs-  
 serant, arcessendī, acies instruenda, milites cohortandī, 335  
 sīgnum dandum. Quārum rerum māgnam partem tem-  
 poris brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. His dif-  
 ficultātibus duae res erant subsidiō, scientia atque usus  
 militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fieri  
 oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere 340  
 quam ab aliis docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singu-  
 lisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi  
 mūnītis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitātem  
 et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium  
 exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur, administrābant. 345

21. Caesar, necessariis rēbus imperātis, ad cohortandōs  
 milites, quam [in] partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et



ad legiōnem decimam dēvenit. Militēs nōn longiōre :  
ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae pristināe virtutis  
350 memoriā retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hosti-  
umque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius :  
hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeliū  
committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem :  
item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit.  
355 Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus :  
ad dimicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad insīgnia accom-  
modanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque  
tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque :  
ab opere in partem cāsū dēvenit quaeque prīma signa  
360 cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis  
pūgnandī tempus dimitteret.

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque  
collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rei militāris ratiō  
atque ōrdō pōstulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā  
365 in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut  
ante dēmōstrāvimus, interiectīs, prōspectus impedīrētur,  
neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque  
parte opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab unō omnia imperia  
administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte :  
370 fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā  
parte aciē cōstiterant, pilīs ēmissis, cursū ac lassitudine  
exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs  
ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen  
375 compulērunt et trānsīre cōnantēs Insecūtī gladiīs māgnam  
partem eōrum impedītā interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre :  
flūmen nōn dubitāverunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī  
rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegratō proeliō in fugam

coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs,  
 undecima et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum  
 erant congressi, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis ripīs  
 proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā  
 parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et  
 nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs  
 Nervii cōnfertissimō āgmine duce Boduognātō, quī  
 summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt;  
 quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire,  
 pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae  
 peditēs, quī cum iīs unā fuerant, quōs primō hostium  
 impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent,  
 adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rursus aliam in partem  
 fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac  
 summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse  
 cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressi, cum respexissent  
 et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs  
 fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedi-  
 mentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliūque  
 aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus  
 rēbus permōti equitēs Trēveri, quōrum inter Gallōs  
 virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā civitate  
 missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudīne hostium  
 castra [nostra] complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circum-  
 ventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās  
 dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent,  
 dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmā-  
 nōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum  
 hostēs potītōs civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum

410 cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in unum locum  
collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs milites sibi ipsōs  
ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis  
omnibus centuriōnibus occisīs, signiferō interfectō,  
signō amissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē cen-  
415 turiōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occisīs, in hīs primi-  
pilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravi-  
busque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn  
posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis,  
dēsertō locō, proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque  
420 ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab  
utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque  
ullum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset, scūtō ab  
novissimis [ūnī] militī detrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō  
venerat, in primam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque  
425 nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus milites signa  
inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis  
utī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redin-  
tegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperā-  
tōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet,  
430 paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōn-  
stiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum  
monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et con-  
versa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum aliis  
435 alii subsidium ferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste  
circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre  
coepērunt. Interim milites legiōnum duārum, quae in  
novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō  
nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus  
440 cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus

et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur, cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātōr versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritatem 445 sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

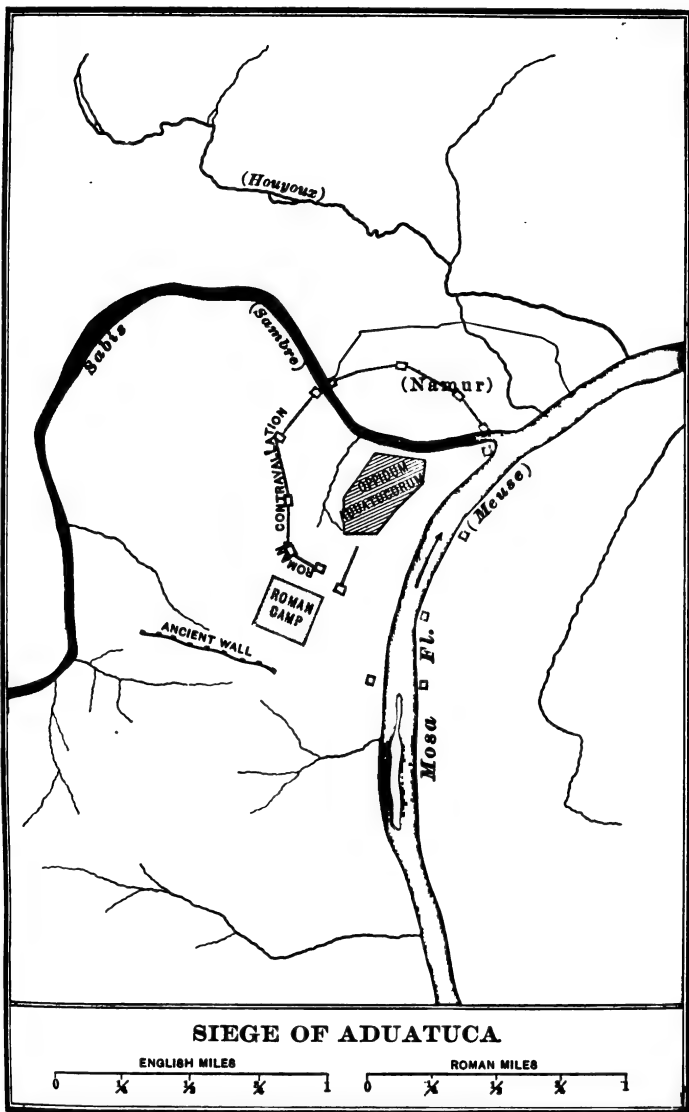
27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commutātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtis innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs, perterritōs hostēs cōspiciātī, etiam inermēs armātis occur- 450 rerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlerent, omnibus in locis pūgnandō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtutem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus Insisterent atque ex eōrum 455 corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectis et coacervātis cadaveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumultō, tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtutis hominēs iudicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, āscendere altissimās rīpās, 460 subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animī māgnitudō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente āc nōmine Nerviorum redactō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs unā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs con- 465 iectōs dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sexcentis ad trēs senātōrēs, ex 470 hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre

possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in  
 miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligen-  
 tissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs utī iūs-  
 475 sit et finitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē  
 suosque prohibērent.

*Item Aduatucī subiguntur.*

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprà dīximus, cum omnibus  
 cōpiīs auxiliō Nervīis venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex  
 itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque 2  
 480 dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā  
 mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū 3  
 partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectusque habēret, ūnā ex  
 parte lēniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem nōn amplius  
 pedum ducentōrum relinquebātur; quem locum duplicī  
 485 altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum māgnī ponderis saxa  
 et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex 4  
 Cimbrīs Teutonisque prōgnāti, quī, cum iter in prōvin-  
 ciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, iīs impedimentīs,  
 quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen  
 490 Rhēnum dēpositīs, cūstōdiam ex suis āc praesidium sex  
 milia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum 5  
 multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitāti, cum aliās bellum  
 inferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum  
 omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.  
 30. Āc primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex  
 oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliīs cum  
 nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII in circuitū 2  
 XV milium crēbrisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē  
 continēbant. Ubi, vīneīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim 3  
 500 procul cōstituī vidērunt, primum irridēre ex mūrō atque





increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō  
 4 spatiō Instruerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus  
 viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plē-  
 rumque omnibus Gallis prae māgnitudine corporum  
 suōrum brevitās nostra contemptui est) tantī oneris 505  
 turrin in mūrō sēsē posse collocāre cōfiderent.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vidē-  
 runt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad  
 Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī, ad hunc modum locūtī:  
 2 nōn sē existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dēōrum bellum 510  
 gerere, quī tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeri-  
 tātē prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī  
 3 permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte  
 prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētudine, quam ipsī ab aliīs  
 audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē 515  
 4 armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs  
 ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs  
 5 armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum  
 dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī,  
 quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī 520  
 cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētudine  
 suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī, prius  
 quam mūrū ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēdi-  
 2 tiōnis nullam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē 525  
 id, quod in Nervīis fēcisset, factūrum finitimisque impe-  
 rātūrum, nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam  
 3 inferrent. Rē renūtiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur,  
 4 facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudinē dē mūrō  
 in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sic ut 530  
 prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervi



armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, celātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsi.

535 33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exire iūssit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi, ante initō, ut intellectum est, cōsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc-  
tūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant,  
540 partim cum iis, quae retinuerant et celāverant, armis, partim scūtis ex cortice factis aut vīminibus intextis, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās pōstulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente  
545 ex oppidō eruptiōnem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, Ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursus est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācritur est, ut ā viris fortibus in extrēmā spē salutis iniquō locō contrā eōs, qui ex vāllō turribusque tela  
550 iacerent, pūgnārī debuit, cum in unā virtute omnis spēs [salutis] cōsisteret. Occisus ad hominum milibus quatuor, reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diēi, refractis portis, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostris, sectionem eius oppidi  
555 universam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iis, qui ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quinquāgintā trium.

## II. CRASSI IN AREMORICAS CIVITATES EXPEDITIO.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne unā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas,  
560 Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civi-

tātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās civitatēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmāni esse redāctās.

### III. RES EXEUNTE ANNO GESTAE.

35. His rēbus gestis, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius belli ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iis nātiōnibus, 565 quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs daturās, imperāta facturās pollicerentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē 570 revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs quaeque civitatēs propinquae iis locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductis, in Ītaliā profectus est; ob eāsque rēs ex litteris Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.



# NOTES

The references are to the section numbers in the Appendix.

---

## BOOK I.

58 B.C.

### TITLE.

Various headings for this work are found in the manuscripts; the whole is sometimes called *Commentarii de Bello Gallico*, "Commentaries on the Gallic War," with the additional heading *Liber Primus*, etc., for each book. *Commentarius Primus* amounts to the same thing. The subject of a Roman book was usually expressed by *de* with the ablative; in English the nominative case is usually employed. Thus, *Ciceronis de Senectute* becomes in English "Cicero's Old Age."

## I. DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

### CHAPTER I.

This outline of the geography of the country was necessary to enable Caesar's readers at Rome to understand the situation, because Gaul had been entirely unknown to them until Caesar went there.

1. **Gallia**: for the sense in which the word is used here as compared with l. 19, see vocabulary. **omnis**: predicate use, *as a whole*. **est divisa**: the force of each part of the compound tense form is retained, the perfect participle showing that the division was made in the past, and the **est** that it still exists. Translate by the present. **quarum**: §§ 47 and 136. The structure of the sentence is:

	Object.	Verb.	Subject.
quarum	unam (partem)	incolunt	Belgae
	aliam ( " )	( " )	Aquitani
	tertiam ( " )	( " )	(ei) qui—appellantur

2. **Belgae**: the Belgians were closely related to the Germans. **aliam**: *another, a second*, used instead of **alteram**, *the second*, because the

three parts are not enumerated in order; contrast l. 33. **Aquitani:** their descendants are the modern Basques in southwestern France, who are still very different from the people surrounding them, being short and thickset, dark-complexioned, and speaking an entirely different language. (ei) qui: § 129. ipsorum: § 132. lingua: § 82.

3. **Celtae:** sc. appellatur; for the case, see § 17. The Celts were to the Romans the typical Gauls; they were probably of mixed descent, but mainly of the division of the Aryan race known to us as Celtic, probably akin to the Irish. nostra: i.e. (sed) nostrā (linguā).

4. inter se: see vocabulary under inter. Aquitanis: § 65.

5. flumen: §§ 1 and 2. dividit: § 142. A portion of the boundary is omitted.

6. horum: §§ 47 and 52. propterea quod: see vocabulary and §§ 170 and 215, 1, b.

7. cultu, humanitate: *civilization, refinement*; the former refers to customs of life, the latter to the mental and moral condition of the people. provinciae: the sense shows this to be genitive singular; for the district thus named, see vocabulary and map.

8. minime, etc.: construe saepe with commeant, minime with both commeant and important; *least of all do traders (often resort) make frequent journeys back and forth to them and bring in, etc.* mercatores: nom. Traders and peddlers from Massilia (Marseilles) and northern Italy brought wine (their most attractive commodity) and other luxuries on pack mules or even on their own backs.

9. ad effeminandos animos; §§ 271 and 272. animos: *character*.

10. proximique sunt: i.e. et Belgae fortissimi sunt propterea quod proximi sunt. Germanis: § 33.

11. qua de causa: § 136. This refers to the reason just given for the bravery of the Belgians.

12. quoque: i.e. as well as the Belgians. virtute: § 82. quod contendunt: §§ 170 and 215, 1, b. This explains qua de causa more particularly.

13. proeliis: such border warfare as half-civilized people carry on. For the case, see § 72. cum prohibent: § 182. suis: § 125. This sentence shows that it is often necessary to translate pronouns by the nouns to which they refer; Latin has so many more pronouns than English that it can make clear distinctions with pronouns where we can not.

14. finibus: § 65. eos: §§ 121 and 129. ipsi: § 130. finibus: § 91. eorum: §§ 121 and 125.

15. *Eorum*: of all these, i.e. of the Gauls in general. *quam—est*: § 257. *Gallos*: i.e. the Gauls in the narrower sense (= *Celtas*).

16. *initium capit*: see vocabulary under *capio*. *ab: at*; § 98.

17. *ab*: see vocabulary.

18. *vergit*: i.e. looking at the country from the Roman province. All the directions are from the same standpoint, e.g. *extremis*, l. 19, *spectant*, l. 20, *spectat*, l. 23.

21. *in—solem*: i.e. northeast.

23. *ad: off* or *near*. *inter—septentriones*: i.e. in what direction?

## II. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS.

### CHAPTERS 2-29.

The Helvetians after three years of preparation were now on the move with all their possessions, bound for the western part of Gaul. Caesar hastened from Rome to Geneva and prepared to stop the Helvetian horde from entering the province. He had one legion and some hastily gathered recruits. He constructed fortifications between the Lake of Geneva and the Jura Mountain. By this means the march of the Helvetians was stopped, and they took the only other route available through the Jura by way of the *Pas de l'Écluse*, about 18 miles below Geneva.\*

Caesar now returned to Cisalpine Gaul for more troops.

With five legions he hastened to Ocelum, the frontier town of Cisalpine Gaul, and thence by way of Mount Genève across the Alps. In seven days he made his way into the country of the Vocontii, thence into that of the Allobroges, and thence into the land of the Sequanians, which lay between the rivers Rhone and Saône (Arar). The precise route is uncertain, and is not essential. The Helvetians had already passed through the country of the Sequanians, and were in the land of the Aeduans. They now attempted to cross the Arar not far from the site of the modern city of Lyons. A part of the Helvetian forces, the Tigurini, had not yet crossed, and they were cut to pieces by Caesar. He now built a bridge and crossed the Arar in order to follow up the Helvetians. The route of the latter is uncertain, but Caesar says they moved about five miles ahead of his vanguard for a fort-

\* The above and subsequent summaries are based mainly upon the conclusions of Mr. T. Rice Holmes, as stated in his lately published work, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, 1899.

night, and remarks that they had moved away from the Arar. From his various statements, it seems that the general direction of the march was northwest. When Caesar had reached a point 18 miles from Bibracte (Mont Beuvray), he turned towards that place. In this neighborhood was fought the battle which settled the case of the Helvetians for all time. Just where this battle occurred is not certainly known, but it was less than 18 miles from Bibracte, and probably to the south of that town.

After the battle the survivors of the Helvetians fled into the territory of the Lingones, northeast of Bibracte. Caesar remained three days on the battlefield, and then started in pursuit. He had previously notified the Lingones that they should give no assistance to the fugitives, who, reduced to the utmost extremity, finally surrendered at discretion.

*Movement of the Helvetians, stirred up by Orgetorix ; his secret plans and death.*

## CHAPTER 2.

Caesar's first operations in Gaul were directed towards preventing the Helvetians from leaving their territory and attempting a conquest of the other Gallic states. He gives the history of this movement, though its beginning was three years before he came to Gaul to prevent its execution.

Helvetia embraced in a general way the country now included within the limits of Switzerland, although it was somewhat smaller. The population, as stated by Caesar in Chapter 29, was 368,000.

26. **Orgetorix**: note the position, as the emphatic word of the sentence. **is**: § 122. **consulibus**: §§ 87 and 88; that is, the year 61 B.C. As the term of office of the consuls was one year, the Romans designated the year of any event by naming the consuls of that year. Educated Romans might be supposed to know the list of consuls as a matter of necessary general information, but undoubtedly this knowledge was often no more accurate than our knowledge of the presidents of the United States. **regni**: § 40.

27. **nobilitatis**: the political system of Helvetia was a confederacy of leaders, each of whom had a large body of retainers; thus it somewhat resembled the feudal system of later times; but the kings had nearly all been deposed, and these rough, strong, turbulent "nobles," or chiefs, held the power among themselves. **nobilitas, civitas, etc.**: such

words, originally abstract or collective in meaning, like English *nobility*, *state*, may often be better translated by concrete nouns like *nobles*, *citizens*. That the thought is plural in Latin is shown by *exirent*, following. *civitati*: § 23.

28. *ut exirent*: §§ 25 and 208. *de*: notice the use of *de* with *ex* in composition. *copiis*: *possessions*.

29. *esse*: §§ 227 and 236. *cum*: §§ 172, 228 and 239. *omnibus*: § 27.

30. *Galliae*: § 40. *imperio*: § 73. *potiri*: this is the subject accusative of *esse*, and *perfacile* agrees with it. *id*: §§ 12 and 25. *hoc*: § 84. *eis*: §§ 23 and 25.

31. *loci natura*: *by natural boundaries*. *continentur*: *are shut in*.

32. *parte*: see vocabulary. *flumine*: § 71. *Rheno*: §§ 1 and 2. *latissimo atque altissimo*: § 117. Caesar adds these adjectives after their noun, like a short parenthesis, for the benefit of his Roman readers, who knew little or nothing about the Rhine.

33. *parte*: see *parte*, l. 32.

34. *altissimo*: see note on l. 32. *tertia*: sc. *ex parte*.

36. *rebus*: § 84. *fiebat*: § 148. *ut vagarentur*: § 213. *et . . . et*: *both . . . and*.

37. *finitimis*: § 27.

38. *qua ex parte*: (from this side, i.e. of the matter), *for this reason*. *homines*: (*being*) *men*. *bellandi*: §§ 58 and 267. *cupidi*: agrees with *homines*. *afficiebantur*: § 148.

39. *pro*: *in proportion to*. *multitudo hominum*: (number of human beings), *population*. *gloria—fortitudinis*: (glory of war and bravery), *reputation for bravery in war*; §§ 280 and 40. *se habere*: (*that*) *they had*; §§ 228, 235 and 238. *angustos*: (*too*) *narrow*.

41. *milias*: § 14. *passuum*: § 47. The distance indicated by *mille passus* was about 4854 English feet; but it may be considered roughly as a mile and so translated. Helvetia then, according to these figures, was not far from the size of New York State, whose population in 1900 was over 7,000,000.

### CHAPTER 3.

43. *rebus*: the word *res* does not mean *thing* in the sense of *any thing*, but always refers to some definite thing or circumstance previously mentioned. Here it refers to all the *considerations* mentioned in Chapter 2 which tended to cause the Helvetians to leave their country.

44. *proficiscendum*: § 267. *pertinere*: § 229.



45. **quam**: see vocabulary, and § 117. **carrorum**: § 48. These were two-wheeled, drawn mostly by oxen. See the rear wagons in the following illustration.



BAGGAGE WAGONS.

48. **ad eas res conficiendas**: §§ 271 and 272.

49. **sibi**: § 28. **duxerunt**: see vocabulary. **in**: see vocabulary. **in annum tertium** means directly after the end of the two years' preparation; we might say, *at the beginning of the third year*.

50 **lege**: i.e. by a popular vote, by which the Gauls and Helvetians made their laws. **confirmant**: *establish, determine*; § 147.

51. **sibi**: § 27.

52 **Castico**: § 23. **filio, Sequano**: § 1.

53. **cuius—appellatus erat**: in order to get at the meaning of a complicated Latin sentence, the most important words to be considered are the connectives. Observe these words carefully and thus determine the dependence of clauses upon one another. Here the clause, **cuius—appellatus erat**, is parenthetical; in working out the sentence, omit it until the rest has been thoroughly grasped. Then go back and translate this clause; then read the entire sentence. **regnum**: *chief power*, not that of a king (see note on l. 27), but the authority of the most powerful chief in the state; compare **principatum**, below. **anos**: § 14.

54. **amicus**: § 17; the Romans sometimes gave this distinction to barbarian chiefs whose aid they wished to gain.

55. **ut occuparet**: with *persuadet*; §§ 25, 152 and 208. **quod**: relative.

56. **itemque, etc.**: the structure of this sentence is exactly like that of the preceding.

57. *tempore*: § 89.  
 58. *plebi*: § 33.  
 59. *perfacile esse*: cf. l. 30. *factu*: § 276. *filiam dat*: this was a common method of securing friendly relations, like intermarriage among the royal families of Europe to-day.  
 60. *perficere*: for construction, see *potiri*, l. 30. *civitatis*: § 40.  
 61. *obtenturus esset*: §§ 153, 228 and 277. *esse quin*: § 214.  
 62. *Galliae*: §§ 47 and 52. *plurimum*: see vocabulary and § 12. *se conciliaturum*: § 237. Note the very common omission of *esse*. *copiis*: § 71.  
 63. *illis*: § 19. *regna*: plural, because the Latin thinks of a *regnum* for each man; English uses the singular.  
 65. *regno occupato*: (the royal power having been seized), *after seizing the power in their respective states*; this modifies *posse*.  
 66. *Galliae*: § 73, note. *sese*: subject acc. of *posse*; there is no fut. infin. of *possum*, and *posse* here refers to the future; *they hope (hoped) that they will (would) be able*, etc.

## CHAPTER 4.

67. *res*: here, *conspiracy*. *moribus*: § 86.  
 69. *damnatum*, etc.: *poenam* is subject acc. of *sequi*, and *poenam sequi* taken together is the subject of the impers. verb *oportebat*; for translation, see § 257. *damnatum* agrees with *eum* (*Orgetorigem*) understood, which is the object of *sequi*. *damnatum* literally means *having been condemned*, but is best translated freely, *if condemned*; § 264, 3. *ut igni cremaretur* explains *poenam*; § 213.  
 70. *die*—*causae*: (the day of the pleading of the case having been appointed), *on the day appointed for trying the case*. *die*, § 36. *causae*, § 40. *ad iudicium*: *at the place of trial*.  
 71. *familiam*: his clansmen and retinue of followers. *ad*: *to the number of*.  
 72. *clientes*: 'supporters,' a general term for those who followed his lead. *obaeratos*: men who had got into debt to him, who, according to the Gallic customs, had bound themselves over to his service (Book VI., Chapter 13).  
 73. *eodem*: adverb; so most demonstrative pronouns have a corresponding adverb, e.g. *eo*, *illo*. *per eos*: *through (the help of) these*. *ne diceret*: § 209.  
 74. *Cum conaretur*: *while the state was trying*; § 182.

75. *armis*: with *exsequi*; § 71. *multitudinem*—*cogerent*: the same as when we have the militia called out to enforce the law and preserve order.

77. *ut*: see vocabulary.

78. *quin*: § 214. *ipse*: § 133.

*The Helvetians first attempt to march through the province, but afterward, being prevented from doing this by Caesar's fortifications, they start through the country of the Sequanians.*

#### CHAPTER 5.

79. *nihilo*: see vocabulary and § 81. Although the scheme of Orgetorix had been shown to be one of personal ambition, its brilliancy had fascinated the Helvetians.

80. *ut*—*exeat*: explains *id quod (facere) constituerat*; (*namely*), *to go out*; § 208. *e*: compare with *de*, l. 28. *ubi arbitrati sunt*: § 176.

81. *se—esse*: § 228, etc.

82. *numero*: § 82. *ad*: *about*.

84. *quod*: sc. *id*, (that which), *what*; so often, when antecedent is omitted. *secum*: § 90, note. *portaturi erant*: § 277.

*dónum*: § 95; it modifies *reditionis*, a verbal noun. This construction is contrary to the usage of the best Latin style; we should expect *redeundi*. *reditionis*: § 40. *spe*: § 87. *paratiores*: see vocabulary. *ad—subeunda*: §§ 271 and 272.

86. *mensium*: §§ 44 and 45. *molita cibaria*: as this must have been the chief article of food, an immense amount had to be carried in order to feed 368,000 persons; no wonder they had decided to obtain *iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum* (l. 45). The length of the caravan has been variously estimated at from thirty to seventy miles. *sibi*: § 32.

87. *domo*: § 97. *Rauracis*: § 23.

88. *uti, . . . usi . . . oppidis suis . . . exustis, . . . proficiscantur*: (that they, having used . . . , their towns . . . having been burned, should set out), *to adopt . . . , burn their towns . . . , and set out . . .* *una*: adverb.

89. *Boios receptos—asciscunt*: (they associate to themselves the Boii, having been received to themselves as allies), *they allow the Boii to join their movement and make them their allies*; but the Latin order may be retained thus: *and the Boii, who, etc. . . . , they allow to join their movement and make their allies.*

## CHAPTER 6.

93. *erant*: *there were*. *duo itinera*: one on each side the Rhone.  
*quibus*: § 135. *itineribus*: when an antecedent is repeated after a relative adjective, omit it in translation. Here the repetition seems to be for the sake of emphasis only.

94. *possent*: § 168. *unum*: *sc. iter*.

95. *vix—ducerentur*: *where carts could barely be drawn one at a time*.

97. *ut possent*: §§ 165 and 167. *alterum*: *sc. iter*.

98. *multo*: § 81.

100. *non nullis*: *some*. *locis*: § 92. *vado transitur*: (is crossed by a ford), *is fordable*. The choice of routes here described was either to move down the right bank of the Rhone through the country of the Sequanians, who were friendly, or to pass through the province of the Allobroges and thence into the Roman territory. About nineteen miles below Geneva by the former route they must pass through the narrow defile described in the text; the passage of this by so large a force was well-nigh impossible. *pacati erant*: they had been annexed to the Roman province some time before, had rebelled and again been subdued ("pacified," the Romans called it) in 61 B.C.

101. *proximum*: (*the one*) *nearest*. Note the order; Geneva is the key to the situation, hence its place at the end of the sentence. See l. 26.

102. *finibus*: § 33.

103. *Helvetios*: compare this with *finibus Helvetiorum* above. So the name of any tribe may be used for its territory; the repetition of *finis* is thus avoided. *sese*, etc.: § 228, etc.

104. *animo*: § 80. *in*: *toward*. *viderentur*: § 229.

105. *ut—paterentur*: this is the object of both *persuasuros* and *coacturos*: § 208. Elsewhere Caesar uses the infinitive after *cogo*.

107. *qua die*: see *quibus itineribus*, l. 93 and § 163.

108. *convenient*: § 162. *is dies*: compare gender with l. 107, and see vocabulary. *a.d.* etc.: § 108.

109. *consulibus*: see l. 26. Year 58 B.C.

## CHAPTER 7.

110. *cum esset*: § 182. *eos—conari*: in apposition with *id*; *conari* is progressive, (in direct discourse *conantur*, *they are trying*), *that they were trying*.

111. *urbe: the city*, i.e. Rome. Though appointed governor of Gaul at the close of his consulship two or three months before, Caesar had not yet gone to his province; on the other hand, he was not in Rome but in its vicinity, under the law that forbade any one holding military authority to be inside the gates.

112. *quam—itineribus*: (by the greatest marches that he is able to make), *with all possible speed*; § 71. We learn from Plutarch that he travelled 90 miles a day.

113. *ad Genavam*: § 95. *provinciae*: § 27. *quam—nume-  
rum*: see l. 112.

115. *una legio*: this was the famous *tenth legion* of the Roman "standing army"; *una* here has the force of *only one*.

116. *de: of*. *certiores facti sunt*: § 17.

117. *legatos*: § 2, note. *nobilissimos*: § 111.

119. *qui dicerent*: § 162. *sibi esse in animo*: see § 30.

120. *facere*: subject of *esse*.

121. *haberent*: §§ 229, 239 and 170. *rogare*: coördinate with *esse*; *that they asked*. *ut liceat*: see vocabulary under *licet*. *voluntate*: § 86.

122. *memoria*: see vocabulary and § 92.

123. *occisum*: 107 B.C. Supply *esse* and so with *pulsum*, *missum* and *concedendum*.

124. *concedendum*: § 277; sc. *sibi* (§ 31); for translation, see § 215, 1, a.

125. *neque existimabat*: *neither did he think (that men, etc.)*. *animo*: § 80. *data facultate*: § 264, 3.

126. *faciundi*: old form for *faciendi*; § 267.

128. *dum convenirent*: § 180.

129. *diem*: see vocabulary. *quid*: § 139. *vellent*: § 242, 1.

130. *reverterentur*: § 245.

## CHAPTER 8.

131. *legione*: § 71.

134. *milia*: § 14. *milia—novem* is best translated after *murum fossamque*,—(both) *nineteen miles long*. This wall and ditch formed a rampart on the south side of the Rhone. A great part of the distance was occupied by steep cliffs, and it was necessary to construct the artificial defences only where the natural failed. The undertaking was not so formidable as might appear from a mere statement of height and distance.

135. *pedum*: § 45.

136. *disponit, communit*: the omission of the conjunction (*asyndeton*) indicates the haste of the action.

137. *quo—posset*: § 160. *si conarentur*: § 242, 5.

139. *negat*: see vocabulary. *more*: § 86.

141. *facere*: see vocabulary.

142. *spe*: figurative use of the abl. of separation; § 65. *delecti*: see vocabulary.

*navibus—factis*: (boats having been joined and many rafts having been made), (*some*) *by bridges of boats and numerous rafts that they had made*; ablative absolute.

143. *alii*: § 4. The first *alii* is carelessly omitted.

145. *conati si—possent, repulsi, destiterunt*: (having tried . . ., if they were able, having been repulsed, desisted), *tried (to see) if they could, etc.; (but) being repulsed, they gave up.* *si possent*: § 243, note, *munitione*: see vocabulary.

146. *concurso*: (running together), *charges.* *tellis*: *weapons* (*showered upon them*). *conatu*: § 65.

## CHAPTER 9.

147. *Relinquebatur*: (was left), *there remained.* *una*: *only.*

148. *angustias*: see ll. 94–97. *cum*: § 172.

150. *eo*: i.e. *Dumnorix*; § 88. *a Sequanis*: § 67.

151. *gratia*: § 84.

153. *Orgetorigis—duxerat*: see l. 59. *cupiditate regni adductus*: almost the same phrase used to describe *Orgetorix*, l. 26. They were evidently “kindred spirits.”

154. *novis*: see vocabulary. *rebus*: § 23. *quam*: see vocabulary and § 117.

155. *habere obstrictas*: a case of the so-called “maintenance of the result,”—(*to bind and*) *keep bound.*

156. *ut—patiantur*: obj. of *impetravit*.

157. *obsides*: object of *dent*. When an agreement was made by a tribe, certain members were often put into the hands of the other party to the agreement, as a pledge of good faith. This was the only form of security known among barbarous tribes; the idea was, that the friends of these hostages would use their influence to have the tribe keep the agreement. Now national honor takes the place of such security. *inter*: see vocabulary.

158. *Sequani*: sc. as predicate *obsides dent*, (give hostages), *promise*; so after *Helvetii*. *ne—prohibeant, ut transeant*: § 208.

## CHAPTER 10.

160. *Helvetiis*—*animo*: see l. 119. *per agrum*, etc.: trace this intended route on the map; it was not the most direct way, but probably the easiest on account of the topography of the country.

162. *non longe*, etc.: note on map the position of the Santones and



LEGIONARY SOLDIER.

Tolosates; the distance between them was about a hundred miles. This then does not appear to be sufficient excuse for Caesar's interference. But the Helvetian migration would undoubtedly have been the starting point for another general movement of the German tribes such as had occurred when Rome was sacked, 390 B.C., and such as had been narrowly averted by Marius fifty years before, when he crushed the Cimbri and Teutones. On this ground Caesar was justified in interfering. *quae civitas*: § 135.

163. *si fieret, futurum (esse)*: § 242, 5.

164. *magno*—*provinciae*: (with great danger of the province), *very dangerous to the province*; §§ 76 and 40. *ut haberet*: this clause is the subject of *futurum (esse)*; the subject of *haberet* is *provincia*. Translate, *that it should have, or, to have*.

165. *locis*—*frumentariis*: § 92; translate exactly in the Latin order (except *-que*, of course).

166. *finitimos*: (*as*) *neighbors*; § 2, note. *munitioni*, Labienus: § 27; see also vocabulary, Labienus.

168. *Italiam*: Caesar speaks of Italy here as including Cisalpine Gaul (i.e. Gaul south of the Alps). As a matter of fact, however, all Italy north of the Rubicon was embraced in Caesar's province of Gaul. *magnis itineribus*: *forced marches*, usually 25 or 30 miles, but perhaps longer here, because he probably took only a small force with him as a body guard, and went through a friendly country. *duas legiones*: the eleventh and twelfth.

169. *tres*: the seventh, eighth and ninth. *hiemabant*: § 148.

171. *quinque legionibus*: as one legion was already near Geneva, Caesar's army now consisted of six legions, or about 22,000 men, together with the troops, probably cavalry, ordered from the province, as told in Chapter 6. The number of the latter is uncertain.

172. *locis*, etc.: these Alpine tribes, hearing of Caesar's approach, seized elevated positions along the road and tried to prevent him from passing; either because they thought he intended to annex their territory to the province, or because they sympathized with the Helvetians and thought they could help them by delaying Caesar or perhaps forcing him to turn back.

173. *itinere*: see vocabulary under *prohibeo*.

174. *his pulsus*: § 87. *compluribus proeliis*: § 72. This "interlocked" order seems very peculiar to us here, where the terminations which usually make Latin agreements clear are of no assistance and the sense alone shows the agreement.

175. *extremum*: sc. *oppidum*; *extremum* means *last*, in the sense of *most western*, the farthest from Rome. After leaving this town, Caesar passed over the Alps by the pass of Mount Genève, through the territory of two tribes of the western province, and moved on in pursuit of the Helvetians, who had gone something less than a hundred miles on their way. *ulterioris provinciae*: § 46; (*a tribe*) of the further province.

176. *die septimo*: i.e. *in six days*; § 104. When the Romans measured intervals of time, they included the day on which they started. The French do the same; they would call Wednesday the third day after Monday. In English the usage varies.

177. *Allobrogibus*: contrast with *fines Allobrogum* above, and see note on l. 103.

### *Complaints of the Gauls about the depredations of the Helvetians.*

#### CHAPTER 11.

179. *angustias*: see l. 95 and l. 148.

181. *Aedui*: the Aeduans, it appears, had previously been recognized as allies of Rome, having been styled by the senate "brothers and kinsmen"; see ll. 670-675, 864-869. *populabantur*: contrast with the previous tense used and see § 148.

183. *rogatum*: §§ 274 and 275. *ita se*, etc.: (*saying that*) *they had so well*, etc., §§ 227 and 228, etc. *omni tempore*: (every time), *on every occasion*. *de*: of.



185. *vastari, abduci*: complementary infinitives with *non debuerint*. In cases where words are expressed with one phrase and understood with others, English usually expresses them with the first, Latin with the last.

188. *depopulatis*: § 262. *non facile*: (not easily), i.e. *with difficulty*. This is *litotes*, the use of a negative for a strong affirmative, or an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. *ab—prohibere*: (they were keeping the force of the enemy from their towns), *they were defending their towns from the attacks of the enemy*. Note that in l. 158 *prohibere* has no *ab*; §§ 65 and 66.

191. *sibi*: § 30. *agri*: § 47.

192. *reliqui*: § 49. *expectandum sibi (esse)*: §§ 31 and 278.

194. *pervenirent*: *should arrive*, or, less carefully in ordinary English, *arrived*; § 180. Caesar now finds a more immediate reason for attacking the Helvetians than the one mentioned in Chapter 10.

### *The slaughter of the Tigurini.*

#### CHAPTER 12.

195. *flumen est Arar*: *there is a river (called) the Arar* (now the Saône).

196. *incredibili lenitate ita ut*: (of incredible smoothness, so that), *so very slowly that*; §§ 80 and 165.

197. *fiuat*: § 243. *id*: emphatic, *this*; keep the same order in translating.

198. *ratibus, lintribus*: abl. of means, not abl. absolute; *iunctis* is used merely as an adjective modifying *lintribus*, (boats joined), *bridges of boats*. These were all rude affairs, which they either found there, intended for light weights, or built hastily on the spot.

199. *tres partes*: *three fourths*, the regular way of expressing such a fraction.

200. *flumen*: § 11.

201. *reliquam, de*: see vocabulary. *vigilia*: the night was divided into four equal *watches*. Hence the length of a watch would vary with the season, but the third would always begin at midnight. Since the time was now midsummer, the first watch would end at about 2 A.M.

205. *in*: see vocabulary under *abdo*; also § 94.

208. *domo*: § 96. *memoria*: § 89.

211. *quae pars, ea*: (which part, this), *that part which, this*; *pars*, the antecedent, is attracted into the subordinate clause, and the relative is used adjectively; § 135.

212. *princeps*: was the first to, etc.; § 115.

213. *re*: *affair*. *privatas*: notice how very *personal* it turns out to be!

214. *quod*, etc.: order, *quod* Tigurini *eodem proelio quo* (*interfecerant*) *Cassium*, *interfecerant* *L. Pisonem legatum*, *avum eius* (i.e. *Caesaris*) *soceri*. *Piso's daughter Calpurnia* was *Caesar's fourth wife*.

*The Helvetians treat with Caesar through ambassadors.*

CHAPTER 13.

218. *faciendum*: see §§ 269 and 270.

220. *cum*, etc.: the construction is: *cum intellegerent, illum . . . fecisse id, that he had done . . . that*, which is explained by *quod—confecerant*, and *ut flumen transirent*, (*namely*), *cross the river*.

223. *bello Cassiano*: see l. 122. This was 107 B.C., so *Divico* must have been a man of great age. From the standpoint of the Helvetians he was just the man to head the embassy.

224. *egit*: see vocabulary.

Here begins the first long speech in the indirect discourse. The direct discourse is given below. See first that you understand about direct and indirect discourse in English, as explained in §§ 217–226. Study the words that are changed and get the reasons for each change from §§ 227–246; these sections should all be read over, and then the special references looked up.

*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet* (§§ 228 and 242, 5), *in eam partem ibunt* (§§ 228 and 237) *atque ibi erunt* (like *ibunt*) *Helvetii* (§§ 222 and 237), *ubi eos tu* (§§ 222, 232 and 233) *constitueris* (*fut. perf. indic.*, see §§ 239, 200, 203 and 153) *atque esse volueris* (like *constitueris*): *sin bello persequi perseverabis* (like *faciet*), *reminiscere* (§§ 228 and 245) *et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum*. *Quod improvise unum pagum adortus es* (§§ 228, 239 and 215, 3), *cum ei qui flumen transierant* (§§ 239 and 153), *possent* (§ 182), *noli* (§ 347, note) *ob eam rem aut tuae* (§ 222) *magnopere virtuti tribuere* (§ 347, note) *aut nos* (§ 222) *despicere* (like *tribuere*): *nos* (§ 322) *ita a patribus maioribusque nostris* (like *nos*) *didicimus* (§237), *ut magis virtute contendamus* (§§ 239 and 208) *quam dolo aut insidiis nitamur* (like *contendamus*). *Qua re noli committere* (like *noli tribuere*) *ut hic locus ubi constitimus* (like *constitueris*, except for tense) *ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capiat* (like *contendamus*) *aut memoriam prodat* (like *capiat*).

224. si faceret, ituros, futuros (esse): § 242, 5.

225. partem: sc. Galliae. futuros: (be), remain.

226. ubi—voluisset: explains eam partem (Galliae) and ibi. ubi, being relative, is correlative to a form of is as well as to ibi. constituit: (should have decided), *should decide*; so *voluisset*. English rarely uses the future perfect or its representatives.

227. perseveraret: § 242, 5. reminisceretur: §§ 226 and 245.

228. incommodi, virtutis: § 59. This refers to the defeat of Cassius; see l. 123.

229. quod: § 215, 3.

231. ne tribueret: § 245.

232. patribus: § 67.

233. magis: see vocabulary and translate after contenderent. virtute: § 71. contenderent, niterentur: § 156. dolo: § 72.

234. ne committeret: like ne tribueret, l. 231.

236. memoriam proderet: i.e. to future generations.

#### CHAPTER 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given without references. The student may now find for himself the reasons for the changes.

**Hoc mihi minus dubitationis datur quod eas res quas vos, legati Helvetii, commemorastis, memoria teneo atque hoc gravius fero quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere; sed eo deceptus est quod neque commissum a se intellegebat quare timeret neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod me invito iter per provinciam per vim temptastis, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexastis, memoriam deponere possum? Quod vestra victoria tam insolenter gloriamini, quodque tam diu vos impune tulisse iniurias admiramini eodem pertinet. Consueverunt enim di immortales quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci volunt, his secundiore interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea, quae pollicemini, facturos intellegam et si Aeduis de iniuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciatis, ego vobiscum pacem faciam.**

237. eo: on this account, for this reason; § 84. minus: § 111. dubitationis: § 49.

239. *eo—minus*: sc. *se* as subject: (he bore them the more heavily by this, by which the less), *he was the more displeased, the less*, etc. *merito populi Romani*: (by the merit of the Roman people), *deservedly to the Roman people*. The mention by the Helvetian ambassadors of the defeat of Cassius made him grow more and more angry, the more he thought how little the Romans had deserved such a defeat. He could not allow himself to hesitate in the present matter, because this old disaster demanded revenge, and he considered that he was the man and here was the opportunity to inflict it.

240. *qui si*, etc.: he goes on to explain how this defeat had happened, how treacherously they had attacked Cassius. *qui, sibi, conscius, fuisset, deceptum, se, intellexeret, timeret, putaret*, all refer to *populus Romanus*, and so, though singular in Latin, they are all translated plural: e.g. *qui si*, *if they*. *sibi*: (to themselves); omit.

241. *fuisse*: *it would have been*. This would be *fuit* in direct discourse; § 192, note. *eo quod*: ll. 237, 238.

242. *commissum (esse)*: impersonal: (*that*) (*anything*) *had been done*. *qua re timeret*: (on account of which thing they should fear), *to make them afraid (of being attacked)*; § 163.

243. *timendum (sibi esse)*: (that it ought to be feared by them), *that they ought to fear*. Caesar says that the army of Cassius was taken off its guard because they thought the Helvetians had no reason for attacking them, and they didn't think it necessary to keep guard and be ready for battle unless they expected an attack. "A poor excuse is better than none." *quod*: see vocabulary. *vellet*: the subject here changes to *Caesar*. *num*: see vocabulary. *posse*: § 246.

244. *contumeliae*: § 59.

245. *iniuriarum*: objective genitive with *memoriam*. *quod*: § 215, 2, a. *eo*: *se* would have been more natural, as referring to *Caesar*, but *eo* leaves no ambiguity.

246. *Allobrogas*: for ending, see vocabulary.

247. *quod—gloriarentur, quod—admirarentur*: the use of *quod* is the same as in l. 245; the two clauses are subjects accusative of *pertinere*. These were just two more facts pointing to the vengeance that was coming.

250. *Consuesse*, etc.: Caesar implies that he is the instrument of the gods sent to punish the Helvetians for their sins. He says that punishment comes harder on men if it is delayed, because they have concluded

that it is not coming at all. From what we know of Caesar's character, it is hard to believe that this reference to a divine government of the fortunes of men was sincere. **quo—doleant:** § 160; do not translate this clause until after the rest. **ex:** as a result of.

251. **quos**, etc.: translate **his** immediately after **concedere**, then **quos—velint**, then the accusatives, finally **quo—doleant**.

253. **cum sint:** §§ 197 and 199. **si dentur:** § 242, 5. Divico had at first (l. 223–225) spoken of coming to terms, but had gone on from that to making threats as to what would happen if Caesar did not meet him halfway. Caesar first replies to his threats, and then offers terms which the Helvetians could not help thinking insulting, though he really could not afford to offer anything less. It was an encounter between a free, unconquered people and a man who would not yield an inch, both looking for the sovereignty of Gaul. The Gauls would despise whichever gave way: one or the other must be destroyed.

254. **facturos (esse):** sc. **eos** (Helvetios) as subject accusative.

255. **Aeduis:** sc. **satis faciant;** § 23.

257. **a maioribus:** compare the similar phrase in ll. 232, 233.

259. **consuerint:** = **consueverint**.

*Caesar's cavalry routed by the Helvetians. March of each army.*

#### CHAPTER 15.

261. **loco:** this was just across the Saône. See Chapter 12.

264. **coactum habebat:** § 266. **qui videant:** § 162; plural, because the antecedent, **equitatum**, is collective. **partes:** see vocabulary.

265. **faciant:** § 243. **qui:** § 136. **cupidius:** too eagerly; § 116.

266. **loco:** § 92.

267. **de nostris:** § 53.

268. **equitibus:** note the use of persons as means; see § 71 and compare **militibus**, l. 131.

269. **non numquam et:** (*and*) *sometimes even*, modifying **laccessere**.

270. **agmine:** § 92. **proelio:** § 72.

271. **satis:** see vocabulary.

272. **rapinis:** § 65.

273. **dies:** § 14. **prohibere:** subject accusative of (**esse**), **satis** being a predicate adjective.

274. **ita uti interesset:** §§ 165 and 166.

275. **amplius:** § 111. **milibus:** § 69.

*Caesar's conference with the Aeduan leaders Liscus and Diviciacus as to the condition of their state and the treachery of Dumnorix.*

## CHAPTER 16.

277. *Caesar flagitare*: § 258. *Aeduos frumentum*: § 15. *quod*: relative.

278. *essent*: § 229.

280. *frumenta*: see vocabulary, and contrast with *frumentum* and *pabulum*. *matura*: it was now probably well along in June.

283. *frumento*: § 73. *flumine*: § 72. *navibus*: § 71.

284. *a quibus = et ab eis*: § 201. *diem ex die*: see vocabulary. *ducere*: § 258, and see vocabulary.

285. *dicere*: historical infin., like *ducere* above; the other infinitives are ind. dis., with subj. acc. *frumentum* and conjunction omitted, as we might say hastily, "Said 't was being collected, brought to one spot, was right near." This historical infinitive generally occurs in groups, and *flagitare*, l. 277, is only an apparent exception, because what intervenes is parenthetical. *diutius*: too long; § 116.

287. *metiri*: a legionary soldier had four bushels of corn a month, a cavalryman twelve bushels of corn and forty-two bushels of barley. *oporteret*: § 228. *convocatis principibus, accusat*: (the chiefs having been called together, he blames them), *he calls together the chiefs and blames them*. After this long, loose sentence has been mastered as a whole, it should be broken into three parts. Translate *convocatis* by a main verb, as suggested above. Then make another sentence of *in his—potestatem*: among these (*were*), etc. Then the remainder—*these chiefs he blames*, etc.

288. *copiam*: number. *in*: among. *Diviciaco, Lisco*: § 4.

289. *magistratui praeerat*: held the office; § 27.

290. *annuus*: § 114.

291. *in suos*: over his (*countrymen*).

292. *possit*: sc. *frumentum* as subject.

293. *tempore, hostibus*: § 88; (the time so critical, the enemy so near), *at so critical a time, with the enemy so near*.

294. *ex in*. *cum suscepit*: § 172. *quod sit destitutus*: that, as he said, he was deserted (by them); §§ 170 and 215, 2, a.

## CHAPTER 17.

297. *quod*: see l. 84.

298. *esse*: the indirect discourse is in apposition with (*id*) *quod tacuerat*; that there were some, etc.

299. *plurimum valeat*: see vocabulary under *valeo*, and § 13. *plus possint*: *were more powerful*; § 13. This state of affairs exists as much to-day as it did then. Almost any community can show a politician or a man of great wealth who by his influence can nullify a law.

301. *ne conferant*: § 209.

302. *praestare*: for impersonal *praestat* (see vocabulary) in direct discourse; (*saying that*) *it was better*. *si possint*; § 242, 1.

304. *debere*: sc. *multitudinem* as subject; *and that they ought not*. *quin sint*: §§ 214 and 277. *si superaverint*: § 242, 5.

305. *una*: adverb. *Aeduis*: § 29.

306. *sint erepturi*: § 277. *quaeque* = *et quae*; see l. 84.

308. *quin etiam*: see vocabulary. *quod*: § 215, 3. *coactus*: see vocabulary.

309. *id fecerit*: i.e. had made the statement; the antecedent of *id* is the thought of clause *quod—enuntiarit*; for the mood of *fecerit*, see § 243.

310. *potuerit*: § 228.

## CHAPTER 18.

314. *ex solo quaerit*: sc. *eo*, *he asks from him alone about*; § 8.

316. *vera*: agrees with *ea* understood, from *eadem*, whose antecedent is *ea*, l. 314. *ipsum*: *the very one*.

317. *summa audacia*: (*a man*) *of the greatest boldness*; § 80; so *magna gratia*.

318. *rerum novarum*: see vocabulary under *novus*, and § 58.

319. *pretio*: § 75.

320. *redempta habere*: § 266. It was a common practice in those days for a government to get its revenue by selling the right to collect taxes to the highest bidder. Then, armed with the authority of the state, this man collected all the money he could and pocketed the difference between what he got and what he had bid. This process is known as *farming the revenues*. Tax collectors are never very popular, and since under this system they usually resorted to every means of extorting money, they were always the most hated and dreaded class of people. Such were the publicans mentioned in the Bible. *illo licente*: (*he bidding*), *when he bid*. *contra*: *against (him)*. It was not safe to oppose Dumnorix.

321. *his rebus*: *by these means*. *auxisse*: *augeo* is transitive; so *familiam* is object, and *se*, understood, the subject.

323. *suo sumptu*: § 72.

324. domi: § 93. apud civitates: § 101.

325. huius potentiae: of (increasing) this power. causa: see vocabulary and § 84.

326. in: among; order, homini in Biturigibus nobilissimo ac potentissimo illic.

328. nuptum: § 275; together with collocasse, here it has the same force as collocasse alone, l. 327.

329. Helvetiis: § 23.

332. gratiae: § 36.

333. si quid accidat: §§ 139 and 242, 5; we use exactly the same indefinite expression; it means here, if any disaster should occur. spem: see vocabulary.

334. imperio: under the government; § 89.

336. quod proelium: (in regard to what battle), in regard to the (adversum equestre) battle which. ante: adverb. diebus: §§ 81. 107.

339. equitatui: § 27. auxilio Caesari: § 32.

#### CHAPTER 19.

343. accederent: see vocabulary and § 172. quod traduxisset: § 215, 2, b.

344. dandos: § 270.

345. et: connecting a possessive pronoun and a genitive (i.e. possessive) case. So this is only an apparent, not a real, exception to the rule that coördinate conjunctions connect like constructions.

346. ipsis: refers to suo et civitatis, Caesar and the Aeduans.

347. qua re—iuberet: § 243.

349. rebus: § 23. quod—cognoverat: § 215, 2, b.

350. Diviciaci—studium: §§ 39, 41. fratris: § 1. ne offenderet: § 211.

352. eius supplicio: (by the punishment of him), by punishing Dumnorix; § 40.

353. animum: feelings. itaque, etc.: this incident shows Caesar's statecraft. As a deliberate policy, he never offended any one unnecessarily, though never hesitating to do so when there was no other way. Here the situation was critical. If the Aeduans were alienated, he would be forced out of the country for lack of a base of supplies. So he made his interests coincide with those of the better class of Aeduans, and held them loyal to him for six years.

354. conaretur: § 181.



357. cui: *in whom*; §§ 23, 24. omnium rerum: *in all matters*.

358. ipso: *i.e. Diviciacus*. quae dicta sint: § 243.

360. apud se: *before him* (Caesar).

361. ut ipse statuat: (that he himself may take measures), *that he* (Caesar) *be allowed to take measures*; § 208. sine—animi: (without hurting his feelings), *but in such manner as not to hurt his feelings*; § 40.

362. causa cognita: (the case having been ascertained), *after investigating the case*.

## CHAPTER 20.

363. multis cum lacrimis: *modifies obsecrare*. complexus: § 261.

364. in: *against*. ne—statueret: *see vocabulary and § 139*.

365. illa: *those (charges)*, referring to the matters mentioned in ll. 358–360. scire se: § 227; (*saying that*) *he knew (that)*, etc. eo: *that fact*. plus doloris capere: (took more of grief), *was more grieved*; §§ 47, 49 and 111. Note carefully the use of pronouns in this passage, and in translation use names of persons referred to whenever the meaning of the translation would be obscure without them.

366. cum ipse plurimum (posset et) ille minimum posset, per se crevisset: *when he* (Diviciacus) *was very powerful and Dumnorix had very little power, the latter had increased (his power) at his expense*.

368. opibus: *power*.

370. fraterno: = *fratris*, objective genitive. suam: *this refers to Diviciacus, and is understood with gratiam*. uteretur: *coördinate with crevisset; this might have been considered a main clause, and the infinitive used*.

371. si accidisset: *see § 242, 5 or 6*. a: *at the hands of*. existimatione vulgi: (the thought of the common people), *public opinion*.

373. apud: *with*. neminem existimatum (esse) non factum (esse): *no one would think that it had not happened, i.e. every one would think that it had happened*.

374. futurum (esse): *it would (be) happen*.

377. faciat: § 212. tanti: § 62.

378. rei publicae: § 40.

379. condonet: §§ 165 and 166. The dative accompanying this verb is the indirect object, due to the original meaning *present*; when not a person, use *at* in translating; otherwise, as below, *for the sake of*.

380. quae: *interrogative, and so below*.

381. quae queratur; § 8.

*Caesar's plan is foiled by the mistake of Publius Considius.*

## CHAPTER 21.

386. *hostes consedis*: indirect discourse after *certior factus*.

387. *milia*: § 99.

388. *qui*: antecedent omitted because indefinite,—(*men*) *who*; the indefiniteness is kept by translating by the infinitive, *he sent to ascertain*; §§ 162 and 164. *facilem*: agrees with (*ascensum*), subject of *esse*.

390. *legatum pro praetore*: a lieutenant acting temporarily as commander. This was a special designation for Labienus, as second in command.

391. *iis ducibus qui*: (*as*) *guides, those who*.

393. *consili*: § 46.

394. *quo*: *by which*; §§ 71 and 72.

395. *rei*: § 58.

## CHAPTER 22.

398. *luce*: § 104. *summus*: § 113.

399. *ipse*: (*and when*) *he himself*.

400. *passibus*: § 103. *neque . . . aut . . . aut*: *and neither . . . nor*.

404. *Gallicis*: i.e. Helvetian. Caesar concluded from this information that Labienus had been repulsed in his attempt to seize the hill, that perhaps his force had been overwhelmed, and that he himself with diminished forces might be attacked at once.

406. *erat ei praeceptum*: (it had been commanded him), *he had been commanded*; § 27. The subject is *ne—committeret*, a substantive clause of purpose (§ 208), while it is modified by *ut—fieret*, an adverbial clause of purpose (§ 157).

407. *nisi visae essent*: § 242, 5.

409. *expectabat, abstinebat*: translate accurately; § 148.

410. *multo die*: see vocabulary and § 113. *et . . . et . . . et*: omit the first in translation; the English *both* implies only two statements. Notice the effect of leisurely progress here as compared with the hurried report of Considius above.

412. *quod*: see l. 84. *vidisset*: § 168. *pro viso*: (for seen), *as a fact*.

413. *quo—intervallo*: (at the interval at which he had become accustomed), *at the usual interval*. Caesar now resumes the pursuit, looking for another opportunity to attack the Helvetians.

*The slaughter of the Helvetians, their flight and return to their own country.*

## CHAPTER 23.

416. *diei*: § 56. *omnino*: (in all), *only*.  
 417. *cum*: *before*. *oporteret*: § 182  
 419. *milibus*: § 103. *rei*: § 23.  
 420. *prospiciendum* (*sibi esse*): (that it ought to be looked out for by him), *that he ought to look out for*; §§ 31 and 278. His conference with Liscus and Diviciacus had not yet had the effect of securing grain.  
 421. *Bibracte*: § 94.  
 422. *Aemilii*: i.e. who belonged to the troop of Aemilius; hence the genitive (§ 37).  
 423. *seu quod existimarent—sive eo*: *either because they thought* (§ 170) —or on this account, explained by *quod—confident*. *timore perterritos*: (having been terrified by fear), *because they* (the Romans) *were afraid of them*.  
 424. *eo magis—commisissent*: this is a parenthesis, explaining that the Helvetii thought that the Romans were afraid of them (*timore perterritos*), not only on general principles, but especially on account of their curious movements the day before; translate, *and still more for this reason, because*, etc.; § 170. *superioribus locis occupatis*: *absolute absolute, although they had seized*, etc.; § 264, 4.  
 427. *commutato, converso*: translate as finite verbs,—*changed their plan, reversed their direction, and*, etc. The Helvetians would have done better to go about their business; they could then have got a long distance ahead; but they could not resist the opportunity of turning on the man who had caused them so much trouble and the loss of one-fourth of their number.

## CHAPTER 24.

429. *id animum advertit*: § 11.  
 430. *qui sustineret*: §§ 162 and 163.  
 431. *medio*: see vocabulary and § 113.  
 432. *triplicem aciem*: see introduction. *legionum*: § 36.  
 433. [*ita uti supra*]: these words do not make sense and probably got into the manuscript by mistake; omit in translating.  
 435. *ac*: *and (in this way)*.  
 436. *eum*: sc. *locum*.  
 439. *acie*: § 78. *reieto . . . facta*: *having driven back . . . (and)*

having formed ; the cavalry were generally used in such cases to check the advance of the enemy until the legions were ready for battle.

440. sub: see vocabulary.

## CHAPTER 25.

442. suo: sc. equo remoto. omnium: i.e. of all his staff officers.

443. aequato periculo: (the danger having been made equal), *by making the danger equal.*

444. cohortatus: a Roman army always expected a few words of encouragement before going into battle. e loco: limits missis.

445. pilis missis: § 264, 6. The position of advantage in the ancient style of fighting was of course the higher ground.



PILA.

447. ad pugnam: *in fighting.* impedimento: § 32.

448. quod: § 215, 2, a. scutis transfixis et colligatis: ablative absolute ; translate as coördinate with poterant,—*their shields would be pierced and pinned together, and, cum ferrum, etc.*

449. se inflexisset: (had bent itself), *bent.* The tip of the Roman spear was of hardened iron, but the shank was of soft iron, and the weight of the long wooden shaft caused the shank to bend.

451. ut: translate before multi. iactato: as the shields overlapped one another and the Roman javelins had pierced several, there was no freedom of motion for the soldiers holding the shields, but they were pulled about by every movement of the phalanx.

454. eo: adverb. capto, succedentibus: notice the change of tense and voice;—*when they had gained the mountain and our men were coming up.*

456. milibus: § 71.

457. praesidio: § 32; see impedimento, l. 447, and vocabulary. latere aperto: this means the right flank, because the shield was carried on the left arm. Hence the right was the post of honor in battle.

458. circumvenire: sc. coeperunt from l. 460; in military language, they tried to turn the right flank of the Romans.

460. conversa, etc.: see vocabulary. The first and second lines kept



GLADIUS.

the same front, while the third wheeled and faced the oncoming Boii and Tulingi.

461. *victis ac submotis*: see §§ 23 and 111; (*those who had once been conquered and driven back*, i.e. the Helvetians).

462. *venientes*: (*those who were*) *coming*, i.e. the Boii and Tulingi.

#### CHAPTER 26.

463. *pugnatum est*: § 144, 2.

465. *alteri . . . alteri*: i.e. the Helvetians—the Boii and Tulingi; see vocabulary.

467. *proelio*: § 92. *cum pugnatum sit*: §§ 199 and 144, 2.

469. *pro vallo*: as a *barricade*.

470. *in*: *upon*. *venientes*: (*coming*), as *they came up*.

471. *coniciebant*: notice the change of tense, and see § 148. Perhaps the most common error in translating arises from a lack of care in observing these things. The Latin is very exact in its use of tenses,—much more so than English.

473. *impedimentis castrisque*: § 73.

474. *e filiis*: § 53. *captus est*: not the usual form of agreement; § 110.

476. *nocte*: it is impossible to draw a distinct line between the three expressions of time, see §§ 104, 105 and 106; this seems like duration of time, but the Latin might regard it as answering the question, *When?* This is regularly the case when *totus* is employed.

477. *partem*: § 106; contrast with *nocte* above.

479. *occisorum*: (*of the having-been-slain*), *of the dead*. *triduum morati*: this statement, together with the reasons assigned for the delay, shows that the Romans were pretty severely handled in the battle.

481. *alia*: see vocabulary. *ne iuvarent*: § 208; *not to help*. *qui si iuissent*: §§ 227 and 242, 5; (*saying that*) *if they did help them*.

482. *loco quo Helvetios (haberet) habiturum*: (*he would hold them in the place in which he held the Helvetians*), *he would treat them like the Helvetians*.

#### CHAPTER 27.

485. *rerum*: § 40.

486. *qui cum*: *when they*.

488. *iussisset*: supply *Caesar* as subject.

489. *essent*: § 203.

491. *perfugissent*: § 168.

492. *conquiruntur*: § 178.

494. *perterriti*: agrees with *milia* in number and case, but takes its gender from *hominum*, which is here the real but not the grammatical gender of *milia*. *ne-afficerentur*: in apposition with *timore*, which takes the construction of a verb of fearing; § 211.

496. *occultari*: i.e. from Caesar.

497. *prima*: § 113. *existimarent*: § 171.

#### CHAPTER 28.

499. *quod*: *this*. *quorum*: antecedent *his*.

500. *his*: § 23. *uti-reducerent*: §§ 25 and 208. *sibi*:  
(with reference to him), *in his sight*; § 28.

501. *reductos habuit*: (he held them, having been brought back), *when they were brought back, he considered them*. *in numero hostium*: see vocabulary under *numerus*; this is a grim way of implying that they were all put to death; they had broken the terms of surrender, and Caesar wished to make an example immediately of men who did not keep their word with him.

504. *suos*: by emphasis here referring to *Helvetios*, etc., instead of to Caesar; § 123.

505. *quo tolerarent*: § 168.

506. *Allobrogibus*: § 23. *ut facerent*: §§ 25 and 208; *to furnish*.

509. *ne*: § 159.

512. *provinciae*: § 33. *Boios*: object of *collocarent*.  
*petentibus Aedu*: (the Aeduians seeking), *at the request of the Aeduians*.

513. *virtute*: § 84.

516. *atque-erant*: = *atque erat condicio in quā ipsi erant*, *as was the condition in which*, etc. Adjectives of similarity are followed often by *atque* for *quam*.

#### CHAPTER 29.

517. *litteris Graecis*: not in the Greek language, but merely using the Greek characters and numeral signs; perhaps they had become acquainted with them through traders from Marseilles, originally a Greek colony. The Greek system of numerals was easier to handle than the Roman.

518. *relatae*: sc. *sunt*.

519. *qui*: interrogative adjective, *what*.

520. *exisset*: § 243. *possent*: § 168.

522. *capitum*: omit; we use the expression, "so many head," of cattle, but we do not apply it to human beings.

The figures in this last chapter tell the story of the campaign so plainly that no comment is required.

### III. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS.

#### CHAPTERS 30-54.

The assembled Gallic chieftains congratulated Caesar on his victory, and besought him to assist them against the inroads of Ariovistus, a German prince who had settled with his followers on this side of the Rhine. Caesar assented, and after fruitless negotiations took the field. Hearing that Ariovistus was advancing towards Vesontio (Besançon), a Sequanian town about 110 miles from his camp, in the country of the Lingone, Caesar hastened forward by forced marches and occupied this town.

He remained a few days in the neighborhood and then started out to find Ariovistus. He tells us that he reached his final camping-ground on the seventh day.

Where was Ariovistus? Apparently he had annexed to his German dominions the northern part (third) of the Sequanian territory, the modern Alsace. The distance from Vesontio to Caesar's camping-ground is in doubt. He says, *B. G. I.* 41, that the circuitous route he took, in order to have open country, was more than fifty miles. It is thought by many that this means that the distance by the route he took was greater by fifty miles than the distance by the most direct route. It is likely that the distance was 100 miles at least.

Here was fought Caesar's great battle with Ariovistus, and the German invasion of Gaul was checked and the career of Ariovistus practically ended. This battle was fought in September, and immediately afterwards the Roman army went into winter quarters.

*Having called a general council of Gaul, the chiefs of the various states confer with Caesar secretly. Complaints about Ariovistus, a German king.*

#### CHAPTER 30.

528. *confecto*: about the first of July. *Galliae*: i.e. Celtic Gaul. The other two divisions (see Chapter 1) had not yet fully realized Caesar's arrival.

529. *gratulatum*: § 275.

530. *intelligere sese . . . tamen eam rem accidisse: (saying that) they understood that, (tametsi—repetisset), this (thing) campaign nevertheless (had happened) had been. tametsi—repetisset: § 198; direct discourse, tametsi—repetisti, tamen ea res accidit, although you have sought satisfaction, nevertheless this thing has happened; since the tenses are present perfect, this is a concessive sentence of the present time. Helvetiorum, populi Romani: § 42.*

531. *his: if this is translated before its antecedent, Helvetiorum, the noun should be used here and the pronoun afterward.*

533. *eo consilio: (this being their design), with this design. florentissimis rebus: (things being most flourishing), though enjoying a season of great prosperity; § 87.*

534. *uti: introduces a clause with four predicates, which explains eo consilio; quem—iudicassent is parenthetical and explains locum; § 203.*

536. *domicilio: § 32. magna copia: (the great supply), the many localities that lay open to their choice.*

539. *concilium: they wished to forestall objection to a convention on the part of Caesar by obtaining his consent beforehand, although technically he had nothing to do with the matter.*

540. *sese habere: see l. 530, intelligere sese. liceret: see vocabulary.*

541. *ex: in accordance with.*

543. *ne quis enuntiaret: (that not any one, etc.), that no one should disclose (its proceedings); this is the object of sanxerunt; §§ 139, 209. nisi (ei) quibus mandatum esset (enuntiarent): (unless those to whom it was ordered should disclose), except those who were directed to do so; §§ 23 and 242, 5.*

#### CHAPTER 31.

545. *eo concilio dimisso: the briefest possible way of saying that the assembly met and decided upon a plan of action, to be disclosed in the present chapter. idem = iidem.*

548. *Caesari: § 28.*

549. *non minus quam: (not less . . . than), as much . . . as. se laborare: (saying that) they strove and labored for. id: § 8; it is explained by ne—enuntiarentur, and contrasted with uti—impetrarent.*

550. *dixissent: this would be the future perfect in direct discourse; (should have said), were going to say.*

553. *Galliae totius: i.e. eastern Gaul.*

554. *alterius: see vocabulary and § 40.*

556. *contenderent: translate by pluperfect. Latin emphasizes the*



continuance, English the beginning, of the act.  
*came about*; the subject is the following clause.

**factum esse:** *it*

558. **postea quam:** see vocabulary.

561. **milium:** § 35.

562. **clientes:** *dependent states*.

563. **accepisse:** sc. **eos** (i.e. **Aeduos eorumque socios**), as subject of **accepisse** and **amisisse**, modified by **pulsos**; (*that*) *they, having been routed, had suffered*, etc. **omnem:** the triple repetition of the word adds to the pathos of the complaint.

565. **fractos:** agreeing with (**eos**), which would be the antecedent of **qui**, and the subject of **coactos esse**; (*that*), *crushed . . . , (they) who*, etc. . . . , *had been forced*, etc.

567. **obsides:** (*as*) *hostages*.

569. **sese**, etc.: this indirect discourse is in apposition with **iure iurando**,—*that they would neither*, etc.

570. **quo minus essent:** § 210.

571. **unum:** *the only one*.

573. **potuerit:** §§ 168 and 152, note.

574. **Romam:** § 94.

575. **postulatum:** § 275.

576. **peius:** subject of **accidisse**; see vocabulary.

581. **iuberet:** notice the change of tense; direct discourse, **iubet**, *he is ordering*; indirect discourse, *he was ordering*. **mensibus:** § 107.

582. **eum:** i.e. **Ariovistus**.

583. **futurum esse:** *it would happen*. **quibus:** = **et iis**, *and for them*; § 201. **locus ac sedes:** see vocabulary under **sedes**; and

§ 280. **pararentur:** *was being provided*. **paucis annis:** §§ 89 and 105.

584. **omnes:** i.e. the natives.

585. **neque enim:** *for neither*, introducing a strong point of confirmation. **conferendum:** § 270.

586. **Gallicum:** sc. **agrum**. **hanc—suam:** i.e. **Gallorum**.

587. **illa:** *that (of the Germans)*. **comparandum:** means nearly the same as **conferendum** and may be omitted in translation.

588. **ut:** in direct discourse **vicerit** would be indicative; hence **ut** means *as or when*; § 176. For tense of **vicerit**, see § 152, note.

590. **nobilissimi cuiusque:** § 140.

591. **exempla cruciatusque:** § 280. **edere:** *inflict publicly*.

592. **hominem esse**, etc.: observe this characterization of **Ariovistus** and see if it is borne out by subsequent proceedings.

593. **imperia:** (commands), *rule or authority*.

594. nisi—sit: § 242, 1.      quid: § 139.      auxilii: with quid;  
 §§ 47 and 49.      Gallis: § 31.  
 596. ut emigrant: in apposition with idem; *namely, emigrate*; § 213.  
 599. dubitare: sc. se; *that he did not doubt*.      Quin: § 214.  
 de: see vocabulary under sumo.  
 602. ne—traducatur: § 209.  
 603. Rhenum: §§ 10 and 11.

## CHAPTER 32.

607. unos: see vocabulary.  
 609. quae—esset: with miratus; § 243.  
 610. respondere: § 258.  
 611. taciti: with an historical infinitive a predicate adjective is  
 in the nominative like the subject; § 258.  
 613. hoc: *for this reason*, explained by quod—horrent.  
 614. reliquorum: sc. fortunam; *that of the rest*.  
 616. crudelitatem: § 8.      velut si adesset: § 196.  
 617. reliquis: indirect object; *to the rest*.  
 618. Sequanis: dat. of agent; *by the Sequanians*.

*A conference, asked by Caesar, is refused by the king. Ambassadors are  
 sent by Caesar. The reply of Ariovistus.*

## CHAPTER 33.

622. curae: see vocabulary and § 32.      futuram: § 227.  
 623. se habere: (*saying that*) *he had*.      et: both.      beneficio,  
 auctoritate: Caesar thought that Ariovistus might be influenced by the  
 service Caesar had rendered him in getting for him the title "friend  
 of the Roman people,"—a formal *recognition* of him, as Cuba was *recog-*  
*nized* by this country when fighting for independence; or if this did not  
 weigh with Ariovistus, then perhaps the prestige which the Helvetican  
 campaign had given Caesar would be just as effective in a different  
 way.  
 624. Ariovistum facturum (esse): in apposition with spem.  
 625. secundum: see vocabulary.      multae res: *many (other)*  
*considerations*.  
 626. qua re putaret: (why he should think), *to think*; § 208.  
 sibi: § 31.  
 627. Aeduos teneri: object of videbat.

631. *quod*: relative, the antecedent being the indirect discourse, *Aeduos teneri* and *obsides esse*; translate, (*a condition of affairs*) which in : in the case of, under. *populi*: (*as that*) of, etc.

632. *sibi*: § 33.

633. *Germanos consuescere*: these words and *multitudinem venire* taken together are the subject accusative of (*esse*) *periculosum*, which is indirect discourse governed by *videbat*; he saw that it was dangerous that the Germans, etc.

634. *populo*: § 33.

635. *sibi*: § 23.

636. *quin exirent*: § 214. *cum*—*occupavissent* should be translated before *quin*.

637. *ut fecissent*: indirect discourse, *ut fecerunt*; what then is the meaning of *ut* here? see l. 77, or vocabulary. See note on l. 768.

639. *cum divideret*: § 172.

640. *Rhodanus*: i.e. nothing but the Rhone; which we have been told (l. 100) was fordable. *rebus*: § 27, note. *occurrentum*: sc. *sibi esse*; see vocabulary.

642. *ferendus*: § 270.

## CHAPTER 34.

644. *ei*: § 23. *ut mitteret, qui postularent, uti deligeret*: distinguish the use of these three clauses; §§ 208, 162; condense each to infinitive in translating.

646. *utriusque*: § 58; see vocabulary under *medius*. *colloquio*: § 32. *velle sese*: see l. 623, note to *se habere*.

647. *summis utriusque rebus*: (the most important matters of each), *matters of the greatest importance to each*.

648. *si—esset*: (that if there were any need to himself from Caesar), *that if he needed anything of Caesar*; § 30; for form of condition in protasis, see § 242, 2; for *venturum fuisse* in apodosis, see § 242, 4. *ipsi*, and *se* in ll. 649, 650, refer to Ariovistus. Why Ariovistus sent such a message is a matter of conjecture. In all probability it was merely for effect, intended to increase his prestige among his own people. He must have known, as his subsequent message shows, that the occasion was a serious one.

649. *si—velit*: (if he wished him at all), *if Caesar wanted anything of him*; § 242, 1. *quid*: § 13.

654. *mirum*: predicate adjective agreeing with clause *quid—esset*, subject accusative of *videri*.

655. *quid Caesari negotii esset*: (what of business there was to Caesar), *what business Caesar had*; §§ 30, 49, 243. For the variations in sequence in this speech, see § 152.

## CHAPTER 35.

657. *quoniam . . . affectus*, (*cum—appellatus esset*), *hanc . . . gratiam referret*, (*ut—putaret*), *haec esse*: (*that*) *since . . . having been treated* (explained by the *cum* clause), *he returned this (sort of) thanks* (explained by the *ut* clause), **THESE WERE THE THINGS. tanto suo beneficio**: (with his so great kindness), *with such kindness on his part (and that of, etc.)*.

658. *consulatu suo*: 59 B.C., one year before.

659. *cum appellatus esset*: § 172.

661. *invitatus*: (having been invited), *when asked to do so.* **de—cognoscendum**: *that he ought to talk or learn about their common interests.*

663. *quam*: § 139.

666. *permitteret ut illis liceret*: (allow that it might be permitted to them), *allow the Sequanians.* **illi**: i.e. the Sequanians. **eius**: i.e. Ariovistus.

667. *iniuria*: see vocabulary.

669. *sibi populoque Romano cum eo*: (to himself and the Roman people with him), *between him (on the one side) and himself and the Roman people (on the other).*

670. *impetraret*: subject, Caesar. **sese**: translate here.

672. *provinciam*: (*as a*) province. **quod**: § 215, 4. **commodo**: § 79.

674. **se**: a repetition of **sese**, l. 670, for emphasis; to be repeated in English for the same reason; *he, since, etc., HE would not, etc.*

## CHAPTER 36.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given for comparison :

**Ius est belli ut qui vicerunt eis quos vicerunt quem ad modum velint imperent** ; item **populus Romanus** victis non ad alterius praescriptum . . . imperare consuevit. Si ego populo Romano non praescribo quem ad modum suo iure utatur, non oportet me . . . in meo iure impediri. **Aedui mihi**, quoniam belli fortunam temptaverunt et . . . superati sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti. **Magnam Caesar iniuriam facit** qui suo adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat. **Aeduis (ego) obsides non reddam**, neque his . . . bellum inferam, si in eo manebunt quod con-

venit stipendiumque . . . pendent ; si id non fecerint, longe eis frater-num nomen populi Romani aberit. Quod mihi Caesar denuntiat se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, nemo mecum sine sua pernicie contendit. Cum volet, congregiatur ; intellet quid invicti Germani . . . qui inter annos xiv tectum non subierunt (subierint) virtute possint.

677. qui: sc. ei as antecedent. iis: § 23. vellent: § 243.

678. ad: at, according to.

679. alterius: another's ; the genitive of alius is not in common use, so alterius takes its place.

680. si praescriberet, oportere: § 242, 1.

681. suo, uteretur: plural in translation, because referring to populus Romanus. Suo below refers to Ariovistus.

685. facere: in the direct discourse, facit is progressive, is doing; hence, in indirect discourse, was doing. se: i.e. Ariovistus.

qui: because he ; § 173. sibi: § 28. deteriora: § 16.

686. non: very emphatic. neque, etc.: but on the other hand he would not.

687. si—manerent: § 242, 5; see also vocabulary.

688. convenisset: vocabulary; so with fraternum, afuturum below.

689. iis: § 28.

690. populi Romani: this modifies fraternum as if it were fratrum, to which it is equivalent. sibi: § 23.

691. se: refers to Caesar. neminem contendisse: in such a sentence both English and Latin may omit what is logically the main clause; in regard to the fact that Caesar had threatened him, (he would say) that no one, etc. se cum: refers to Ariovistus.

692. sua: antecedent neminem; translate, without being annihilated. congrederetur: §§ 245 and 226.

694. qui, etc.: this he states as evidence of their vigor.

695. possent: could (effect).

*Alarmed by the complaints of the Aeduans, Caesar hastens against Ariovistus and occupies Vesontio.*

#### .CHAPTER 37.

697. Aedui: sc. veniebant.

698. questum: § 275. quod, etc.: §§ 170, 229.

700. datis: by giving; § 264, 6. Treveri: sc. veniebant questum.

704. *vehementer commotus*: the only use of this expression in Caesar. It marks a very serious condition of affairs, in Caesar's opinion, for he was very seldom *seriously alarmed*. ne: § 159.

706. *resisti posset*: sc. *iis*; (it could be resisted them), *they could be resisted*; §§ 23 and 26.

707. *quam*—*potuit*: see *quam potest*, l. 112.

## CHAPTER 38.

709. *tridui*: §§ 44 and 45. *viam*: § 12, note.

711. *Vesontionem*: Caesar's description fits very nearly the site of the modern French town of Besançon (see map), and excavations have brought to light many remains of an ancient town.

713. *magnopere praecavendum*: (it ought to be guarded in advance earnestly), *that he ought to take great precaution*.

714. *usui*: see vocabulary and § 32.

717. *ut (flumen) circumductum*: (as a river drawn around), *as though its course had been described*.

719. *pedum*: §§ 45 and 70. The distance given in the manuscripts is 600 feet, but since the distance now is found to be nearly 1,600 feet, it is thought that the M of the Roman MDC may have disappeared in process of manuscript transmission.

720. *altitudine*: § 80. *radices*: accusative. *ripae*: nominative.

722. *hunc (montem)*: § 11. *circumdatus*: (having been put around), *surrounding*.

*Panic in the Roman camp; Caesar's speech, and march against Ariovistus.*

## CHAPTER 39.

727. *percontatione*, etc.: the soldiers naturally inquired about this unknown foe from those traders who always follow and mingle with an army.

728. *qui*—*praedicabant*: this with the following parenthesis would best be omitted until the rest of the sentence is understood. *magnitudine*: § 80; so *virtute* and *exercitatione*, all predicate with *esse*.

731. *cum his congressos*: (having met with them), *when they encountered them in battle*. This, then, is a statement of the Gauls, not of the traders.

732. *timor*, etc.: i.e. the army was thrown into a panic. The description that follows, while very brief, shows exactly the way in which

a body of men becomes demoralized. You can see the spread of the panic in each successive sentence, until it culminates in the report (really a threat) that not a man will stir from Vesontio except to retreat.

733. *non* : modifies *mediocriter* ; another example of litotes ; see l. 188.

735. *tribunis*, etc. : see introduction.

736. *amicitiae causa* : (for the sake of friendship), *out of friendship*; these men were politicians, who had attached themselves to Caesar for the patronage he had to bestow ; they were after what they could get for themselves, were ready to desert when danger threatened, and Caesar is either ironical or politic in using this expression.

737. *alius* : see vocabulary. *quorum* : §§ 47 and 136.

738. *diceret* : § 229 ; singular, agreeing with *alius*, but may be translated plural. *voluntate* : *with his consent* ; § 86.

744. *castris* : § 92.

745. *horum vocibus ac timore* ; *from their expressions of fear* ; § 280.

747. *centuriones*, etc. : these officers had risen from the ranks, in contrast to those mentioned in l. 735.

748. *qui ex his* : *those of these who* ; § 53.

751. *ut posset* : § 211.

754. *dicto* : see vocabulary under *audio* and § 33.

#### CHAPTER 40.

756. *convocatis, adhibitis* ; *calling, admitting*.

757. *omnium ordinum* : as a rule only centurions of the first rank were admitted to such assemblies, but in this case Caesar wanted to get at a man in every manipule, so that his words could reach the whole army more quickly ; not so much for the purpose of argument as to inspire every officer in the army with confidence instead of fear, through his own wonderful personality and magnetism.

758. *vehementer eos incusavit* : *he lectured them severely, or he reproached them bitterly*. In the same way that the successive steps in the spread of the panic are shown in Chapter 39, note the course of Caesar's speech to quiet it. It is wonderfully shrewd.

758-760. Censure for breach of discipline. Obedience was the first duty of a Roman soldier. They had no business to ask or even to think where they were going or why.

759. *ducerentur* : § 243. *sibi quaerendum (esse)* : (it ought to be asked by them), *they ought to ask*. *putarent* : § 229.

760-765. But (since they had made these things their business) he wanted to tell them that Ariovistus was not going to fight at all; he would find there was no reason for it; so there was no need for them to be afraid of those Germans.

760. *Ariovistum appetisse*: all the rest of the speech is in indirect discourse; the introductory conjunction *that* of English indirect discourse may be omitted. *se consule*: § 88.

761. *hunc*: § 128.

762. *iudicaret*: direct discourse, *iudicet*; § 155. *sibi*—*persuaderi*: (it was persuaded him indeed), *HE, indeed, was persuaded (that)*; § 28.

764. *eum*: *Ariovistus*.

765-780. But just supposing (merely for the sake of argument), that Ariovistus was fool enough to fight, what in the world were they afraid of? The Cimbri and Teutones, a generation before, and more lately the Gladiators, many of whom were Germans, trained to Roman methods of fighting, had gone down before Roman armies; and two weeks ago they themselves had annihilated the Helvetii, who had fought on equal terms with these very Germans.

765. *quod*: see vocabulary.

766. *intulisset*: *did declare war*; § 242, 5. *quid*—*vererentur*: see synopsis above; § 228.

767. *sua*: *their own*. *ipsius*: *his*; § 132. By this he puts the soldiers in the position of going back on themselves as well as on him.

768. *desperarent*: § 155. *factum*: supply *esse*. *hostis*: § 40. *periculum*: see vocabulary. Rome (all but the capitol) had once been taken and sacked by the Gauls, in 390 B.C. After that time, the words *Gaul* and *German* struck terror to the Romans. A similar threatened invasion by the Cimbri and Teutones had been checked in northern Italy (102 and 101 B.C.) by Marius, to the intense relief of Rome. *memoria*: § 105.

771. *meritus*: sc. *esse*, forming complementary infinitive with *videbatur*. *videbatur*: §§ 182 and 240. *factum*: supply *eius* *hostis periculum* from l. 768. *servili*: *quos* follows as if we had *servorum*, to which *servili* is equivalent.

772. *aliquid*: *somewhat*; § 13.

773. *ex quo*: *from this (experience)*.

774. *quantum*—*constantia*: (how much of good firmness has in itself), *how much advantage there is in firmness*.

775. *quos, hos*: (*those whom, these*; the antecedent is postponed in Latin, and repeated in English, for emphasis.



777. *quibuscum saepe numero Helvetii congressi plerumque superarint:* (with whom the Helvetii having met had generally defeated), *whom the Helvetii had very often encountered . . . and generally defeated.*

779. *exercitui:* § 33.

780-788. It was true that Ariovistus had defeated the Gauls at Magetobriga; but it was by a threadbare stratagem, which he would scarcely try to repeat against the Romans.

780. *quos:* *any*, i.e. of these men who were so scared. *proelium:* see synopsis above, and l. 589.

781. *hos:* antecedent *quos*, l. 780. *posse:* the structure of the rest of the sentence, in indirect discourse after *reperire*, is as follows: *Ariovistum, cum tenuisset . . . (Gallos) desperantes et dispersos adortum, vicisse:* (*that*) *Ariovistus, after he had, etc., having attacked the Gauls when they were despairing and were dispersed, had conquered them.*

782. *defatigatis Gallis:* ablative absolute, *when the Gauls, etc.*

783. *castris ac paludibus:* § 92. *sui:* § 43.

784. *de:* *of.*

786. *cui rationi, hac (ratione):* *by this stratagem for which.* Compare *si quos . . . hos*, above.

787. *locus:* *opportunity.* *ipsum:* Ariovistus.

788. *capi:* see vocabulary.

788-794. The supply of grain would be all right; three tribes were furnishing it. As for the road, they would soon have a chance to judge for themselves.

788. *rei:* *concerning, etc.;* § 40.

790. *facere arroganter:* *were assuming a good deal.* *cum viderentur:* *in seeming;* § 172.

791. *praescribere:* i.e. *to him.* *curae:* § 32.

793. *de itinere:* see synopsis above. This is a good example of Caesar's "nerve." He knew nothing at all about the country into which they were going, and he could rely on no one except Diviciacus to tell him anything. But so thoroughly had he shamed and at the same time encouraged the officers that, when he came to the one point on which he could not give them assurances, he felt that he could just pass over it, though a few minutes before it had been one chief reason for the panic.

794-800. It was said that the army would mutiny if ordered to advance. He did not believe it, for an army never mutinied except for one of two reasons, neither of which applied in his case.

794. *quod non fore dicantur:* *in regard to the fact that* (they were said not to be about to be) *it was said that they would not be;* Latin uses the

*personal* construction where English prefers the *impersonal*. dicto:  
see l. 754.

795. nihil: § 13.

796. scire, quibuscumque . . . aut fortunam (eis) defuisse: *he knew that, to whomsoever . . . either fortune had failed them.* male: see vocabulary.

797. vita: § 105.

798. innocentiam: Caesar has said that an army loses confidence in a general because he has been proven either *inefficient* (male re gesta) or *dishonest* (aliquo—convictam). He now speaks first of his *honesty*, then of his *success*. This shift in the order is rhetorical.

800-806. So he would put them to the test at once and find out immediately whether they were a set of cowards or not. The tenth legion, he knew, would go with him and the rest might do as they chose.

800. quod: *what*.

801. collaturus fuisset: (he had been going to put off), *he had intended to put off*; § 277.

803. utrum—an: double or alternative question; in direct discourse utrum is not translated.

804. quod: cf. l. 765.

806. sibi eam futuram: (it would be to him), *he would make it*; § 30.

807. legioni: § 23. Though the Latin style requires the verb at the end of the clause, the position here lays particular stress on *praecipue* and *maxime*.

#### CHAPTER 41.

811. princeps: § 115.

813. iudicium: see vocabulary. fecisset: § 170.

814. paratissimam: see vocabulary.

816. egerunt: *arranged*. satis facerent: see vocabulary under satis, and § 208. se: (*saying that*) *they*, etc. nec umquam = numquam.

817. de summa: *as to the conduct*. suum: predicate after esse.

818. imperatoris: § 46; in the same construction as suum, one being a possessive adjective, the other a possessive case.

820. ei: *in him*; §§ 23 and 24.

821. circuitu amplius: (*though*) *by a circuit of more than*, etc.; § 70. locis: § 92. The idea is that Caesar thought best to march through an open country even if he had to take a roundabout way to do it.

822. duceret: § 157; limits exquisito.

*Caesar's conference with Ariovistus is broken off by an attack of the Germans.*

## CHAPTER 42.

827. quod: (*saying that*) *what*. postulasset: the subject is Caesar. per se: *as far as he was concerned*.

828. quoniam accessisset: §§ 170 and 228. se: supply another se as subject of posse.

831. petenti: sc. sibi, (*to him asking*), *when he asked it*.

832. magnam—veniebat: see vocabulary under venio, and note the tense. pro—beneficiis: see note on l. 657; translate after the *that* suggested in the next note.

834. fore uti desisteret: (*that it would be that he would desist*) *that he would give up*; fore is in indirect discourse, in apposition with spem. uti—desisteret is the subject accusative of fore; § 213, 2. colloquio: § 32.

837. vereri: see note on se, l. 816.

838. ne: § 211. uterque venerit: § 155, 1

839. non esse venturum: supply introductory verb again as for vereri.

843. equitibus: § 29. detractis: ablative absolute with equis; translate coördinate with imponere, *to take—and place*. eo: adv. (*thither*), *on them*, i.e. in his equis.

845. quid: § 13. facto: § 74.

846. non irridicule: another example of litotes; see note on l. 188.

847. ex militibus: § 53.

848. facere: progressive, *was doing*; direct discourse, facit, *is doing*. pollicitum: (*having promised*), *while he had promised merely that*, etc.

849. ad equum rescribere: this is Caesar's famous pun (hence irridicule above); and like almost every play upon words it is untranslatable. The point is that these three words were the regular formula for enrolling a man among the knights (equites) at Rome, while the soldier considered that the phrase also described pretty well what Caesar was doing with the legion. Translate, *he was actually knighting them*.

## CHAPTER 43.

850. terrenus: (*of earth*), perhaps *smooth*.

851. spatium: § 99. castris: here plural in sense.

862. cum haberet: § 199. postulandi: sc. aditum.

864. *quam*: *how*.  
 865. *cum*: *and*.  
 866. *quotiens*: adv., (how often); translate as adjective, *how frequent*.  
 867. *ut*: *how*.  
 869. *prius quam appetissent*: § 181.  
 871. *sui nihil*: (nothing of their own), *none of their prestige*. *gratia*: § 82.  
 872. *auctiores*: *more (and more) increased*.  
 873. *iis*: § 29. *posset*: §§ 228, 243 and 244. *postulavit eadem*: (demanded the same things), *made the same demands*; § 12.  
 877. *quos*: § 139.

## CHAPTER 44.

- 878-879. *pauca respondit, multa praedicavit*; cf. *postulavit eadem*, ll. 873, 874; § 12.  
 881. *spe praemiisque*: hendiadys = *spe praemiorum*; § 280.  
 882. *ipsis*: i.e. *Gallis*.  
 884. *capere*: *exacted*. *quod*: antecedent, *stipendium*.  
 889. *si velint*: § 242, 1.  
 892. *ornamento*, etc.: § 32.  
 893. *petisse*: sc. *eam* (i.e. *amicitiam populi Romani*), as object. *si remittatur*: § 242, 5.  
 896. *appetierit*: § 228. *quod*: § 215, 3.  
 897. *traducat*: progressive; cf. l. 848; so *facere*, in the next line. *sui muniendi causa*: §§ 55 and 272.  
 899. *quod*: § 215, 2, b.  
 900. *defenderit*: sc. *bellum*, and see vocabulary.  
 903. *quid—vellet*: see vocabulary under *volo*, and § 28. *sibi* refers to *Caesar*, *suas* to *Ariovistus*.  
 904. *veniret*: §§ 243 and 244. *hanc Galliam*: i.e. *Celtic Gaul*, contrasted with *Transalpine Gaul*; the latter was limited, as *Ariovistus* considered, to the small territory near the Mediterranean coast and bounded by the Rhone; this was all that had really been subdued to Rome before *Caesar* came.  
 905. *ut oporteret*: (as it ought not to be yielded to him, i.e. by the Roman people), *as we ought not to yield to him*; *ut* would have the indicative in direct discourse.  
 909. *rerum*: § 58. *ut non sciret*: (that he did not know), *as not to know*; §§ 165 and 166.  
 913. *debere*: see vocabulary. *simulata Caesarem amicitia*:

(that) *Caesar under the pretence of friendship, had, etc.* When an ablative absolute has a word inserted which does not belong to it, this word is almost always one which denotes the real agent of the participle; so here the friendship was feigned by Caesar.

914. *sui opprimendi causa*: see l. 897.

915. *nisi decedat*: § 245, 5.

916. *pro: as*.

917. *eum*: i.e. Caesar. *interfecerit*: § 245, 5. The statement here given was probably true, but Caesar had as little fear of his enemies at Rome as of Ariovistus, and he publishes this threat to show it.

918. *se id compertum habere*: (he had this found out), *he had found this out*; § 266.

921. *discessisset*: same construction as *interfecerit* above; these two verbs show how little the law of sequence is regarded in a long speech. Other examples may easily be found.

922. *praemio*: § 75.

923. *eius*: *on his (Caesar's) part*; § 39.

#### CHAPTER 45.

926. *qua re posset*: § 243. The clause is in apposition with *sententiam*.

927. *uti desereret*: (that he desert), *him to desert*. *optime meritos*: *well-deserving*.

929. *Ariovisti*: § 46.

930. *quibus*: § 23. With *redegisset* we ought strictly to have *quos*, and with *imposuisset* we would have *quibus* again, but with different construction; English uses the objective in each case.

932. *quod: therefore*. *si oporteret*: § 242, 1. *antiquissimum—tempus*: (each most ancient time), *priority of arrival in Gaul*.

935. *si oporteret*: § 242, 1. *liberam*: i.e. from such encroachments as that of Ariovistus. Caesar does not allow for a moment that he is taking away the freedom of Gaul, but poses as the champion of an invaded country.

936. *victam*: (*though*) *conquered*. *suis*: *its own*, referring to *Galliam*. *voluisset*: § 228; the subject is *is* (i.e. the senate), *it*.

The argument beginning with l. 929 is as follows: Rome had established a claim to Gaul before Ariovistus, though she had not made it a province; so Ariovistus had no claim on the ground of previous possession. Furthermore, if he still paid any regard to the Roman senate, he was in the wrong, for the senate had taken the ground that Gaul

was to remain free. Caesar's coming was no encroachment, that of Ariovistus was.

## CHAPTER 46.

937. propius tumultum: § 33, note.

940. suis: § 23.

941. quod: § 139.

942. legionis: § 40.

943. committendum ut dici posset: (that it ought to be permitted that it could be said), *that he should give the enemy a chance to say*; the subject of committendum is ut dici posset, and the subject of dici posset is the following infinitive clause.

944. pulsus hostibus: *when they were routed*.

946. usus: see vocabulary.

947. Gallia: § 65. Romanis: § 27. interdixisset: § 243.

948. ut: *how*.

949. multo: § 81.

950. exercitui: § 27.

*Two Gauls, sent to Ariovistus as ambassadors, are thrown into chains.*

## CHAPTER 47.

951. biduo: § 81.

952. coeptae essent: see vocabulary.

953. uti—constitueret: object of velle; § 208.

954. minus: *less*, i.e. than the other proposition; translate, *not*.  
ex legatis: § 53.

955. Caesari visa non est: *there did not seem to Caesar (to be)*.

956. diei: § 56.

957. quin conicerent: *from hurling*; § 214.

958. legatus ex suis: as we say, "a lieutenant of his"; *one of his legati*.

959. missurum (esse) cum: (would send with), *could not send without*.

960. visum est: subject, mittere, l. 866.

961. virtute: § 80.

962. civitate: §§ 20 and 21.

963. et: *both*.

964. qua multa utebatur: (which he used much), *which he spoke freely*; multa agrees with qua.

965. in eo: (in the case of him), *in his case*.

Germanis: § 30.

970. *quid venirent*: *why did they come* : §§ 243 and 244.

971. *conantes*: *sc. eos*: (trying), *when they tried*.

*A cavalry battle.*

CHAPTER 48.

972. *promovit*: Caesar had been marching northeast toward Ariovistus. The latter now moves forward, i.e. south. *milibus*: § 81.

973. *diei*: § 56.

974. *traduxit*: he probably took his line of march some distance up the slope of neighboring hills, so that, if Caesar tried to attack him, as he undoubtedly would have done had he tried to pass in the plain, the Romans would have to fight uphill. Thus he really outgeneralled Caesar.

976. *supportaretur*: § 203; the tense indicates continued action; use past progressive to translate.

980. *ei*: § 30. *non deesset* = *esset*; litotes again.

981. *diebus*: § 105; contrast with *dies*, l. 977.

984. *numero*: § 82.

985. *singuli singulos*: *each selecting a man*. *cum*: *in company with*.

986. *versabantur*: § 148; so with the following imperfects.

987. *hi*: i.e. *pedites*. *quid erat durius*: (there was anything harder), *the engagement was unusually sharp*. *quid, qui*: § 139. *concurrabant*: *ran to their aid*.

988. *quo*: see vocabulary.

989. *longius*: *further (than usual)*, and so *celerius*. *prodeundum*: § 278.

990. *exercitatione*: *as a result of their practice*; § 84. The method of fighting here described was afterwards adopted by Caesar.

*Ariovistus attacks Caesar's smaller camp, but does not dare to fight a pitched battle.*

CHAPTER 49.

992. *castris*: § 92. *ut—prohiberetur*: this shows that Ariovistus was succeeding in his design; see ll. 972–977.

993. *ultra*: i.e. to the south, along the line of his communications.

994. *passus*: § 99.

995. *castris*: § 32 or § 33.

999. *numero*: § 82. *hominum milia expedita*: (light-armed thousands of men), *thousand light-armed troops*.

1000. *quae prohiberent*: § 162.

1001. *nihilo*: see vocabulary and § 81.

#### CHAPTER 50.

1006. *instituto suo*: § 86.

1007. *paulum*: § 99.

1009. *circiter*: this adverb modifies the adjectival idea in *meridie*.

1012. *pugnatum est*: § 144, 2.

1013. *multis — vulneribus*: (many wounds having been both inflicted and received), *after an indecisive engagement*.

1015. *quam ob rem*: see vocabulary under *ob* and § 243.

1016. *quod—esset*: § 215, 2, *a*.

1017. *ut—declarent*: § 213.

1018. *utrum—esset*: § 243.



LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.

*Being finally forced to fight, the Germans are conquered and flee to the Rhine. The Gallic ambassadors are freed.*

#### CHAPTER 51.

1021. *praesidio*: § 32.

1024. *minus valebat*: (was less strong), *was weaker*. *multitudine*: § 82. *pro hostium numero*: (in proportion to the number of the enemy), *than the enemy*.

1031. *eo*: (thither), *on these*; see l. 843.

1032. *proficiscentes*: (setting out), *as they advanced*.

1033. *manibus*: § 78. *fientes*: with *quae*. *se*: i.e. *mulieres*.

#### CHAPTER 52.

1035. *legionibus*: § 27. *quaestorem*: Caesar perhaps had only five *legati*, and had to use his *quaestor* as general officer for the other legion.

1037. *a*: § 98.



1039. *ita*: with *acriter*.

1040. *itaque*: = *et ita*, with *repente celeriterque*.

1041. *ut daretur*: §§ 165 and 166.

1043. *ex*: as a result of, according to; § 85.

1045. *insilirent*: § 168.

1047. *a*: § 98; see l. 1037.

1051. *tertiam aciem*: for the use of the third line in battle, see introduction.

1052. *laborantibus*: see vocabulary. *subsidio*: § 32.

This was the end of the battle. "The victory was decisive. The Suevi, who were on the point of crossing the Rhine, lost heart and set out homewards. And Caesar—where was he to go? What was he to make of his victory? It would be fatal to withdraw his legions into the Province. That would be to invite the German to attempt a new invasion: to confess weakness to the Gaul. Fortune beckoned him on. Gaul was disunited: her foremost state was on his side: and others felt the spell of his success. For the present indeed he must return to Cisalpine Gaul to conduct the civil duties of his government and watch the politics of Italy: but leaving his legions under the command of Labienus, he quartered them for the winter in the stronghold of Vesontio. In this last act of his we may read the registration of a great resolve: and doubtless he reflected, as he travelled southward, upon the magnitude of the undertaking to which he had committed himself. For to all who had eyes to see and ears to hear he had made it evident that his purpose was nothing less than the conquest of Gaul."—HOLMES.

#### CHAPTER 53.

1056. *viribus*: § 72.

1057. *inventis, reppererunt*: *invenio* means *find* (by chance), *come upon*; *reperio*, *find* (by seeking).

1060. *consecuti interfecerunt*: (having followed, killed), *followed and killed*.

1061. *natione*: § 82. *duxerat*: *had brought*.

1063. *duxerat*: sc. *in matrimonium*.

1064. *filiae*: sc. *fuerunt*, from l. 1060.

1066. *trinis*: (triple), *three sets of*. *hostes*: object of *insequentem*.

1071. *restitutum*: sc. *et*, connecting with *ereptum*. *calamitate*. *loss*. *tanta*: (so great as his), *his great*.

1073. *consultum (esse)*: impersonal;—(it had been consulted), *the Germans had consulted*.

1075. *beneficio*: see vocabulary.

*The Suebi return home. The army is stationed in winter quarters.  
Caesar hastens into nearer Gaul.*

## CHAPTER 54.

1077. Suebi: the most powerful German tribe; see ll. 700-708.

1078. quos: *that they*; § 136.

1079. Ubii: the most civilized German tribe. Rhenum: § 33,  
note. perterritos: sc. esse.

1081. paulo: § 81.

1084. ad conventus agendos: see vocabulary under ago; § 271.

## BOOK II.

57 B.C.

For the heading *Commentarius Secundus*, see note on similar heading for Book I. Those who have not studied the first book should read the summaries of the two campaigns given on pp. 3 and 28.

### *I. THE WAR WITH THE BELGIANS.*

#### CHAPTERS 1-33.

The campaign of 58 B.C. had brought to Caesar the submission of central Gaul, at least for the time being. But the Belgians were as yet unterrified. They formed a league to resist the further progress of Caesar and, if possible, to drive him from the country. The Remi cast in their lot with Caesar. Every other Belgian tribe joined the league against him. Galba, king of the Suesiones, was chosen commander-in-chief, and was able to muster more than 200,000 men, while Caesar had less than 50,000.

But Caesar was not caught napping for a moment. He made preparations during the late winter and crossed from Cisalpine Gaul in the early spring. He marched from the country of the Sequani, entered the territory of the Remi and remained there some days. His headquarters probably were near Durocortorum (Rheims), their chief town.

Hearing that the Belgae were marching against him, he crossed the Axona by a bridge which was within an easy march of the eastern frontier of the Suesiones, and there, close to the right bank of the river, pitched his camp. The camp was on a hill, which, with the defences which he constructed, is described in Chapter 8. It was probably situated near the modern town of Berry-au-Bac, about seven miles from Bibrax, a stronghold of the Remi, which the Belgae proceeded to attack.

Caesar came to the assistance of the garrison and defeated the Belgae, but did not care to attack the camp of so vast a host. The armies faced each other for some time, neither caring to make an advance, although the Roman cavalry was making havoc with the Belgian forces. Caesar at length led his army back into camp.

The Belgae finally moved down the Axona about two miles, to a place where the river was fordable. Caesar attacked them while

they were crossing with his cavalry and light-armed troops and inflicted serious losses upon them. Disheartened by this, they decided to disband and go home. Caesar pursued with his cavalry and slaughtered them in great numbers. He then pushed on to the westward, down the river to Noviodunum, the stronghold of the Suessiones. This town surrendered shortly after and Caesar moved on still farther westward to Bratuspantium, chief town of the Bellovaci, which also surrendered. Continuing northward, he received the submission of the Ambiani.

"But now he learned that his progress was about to be disputed. On the northeast, among the inhospitable forests of the Sabis (Sambre) and the marshes of the Scaldis (Scheldt), dwelt a tribe whose primitive virtues had not yet been enfeebled by contact with civilization. No traders were suffered to cross their frontier, for fear the luxuries of which the rude warriors were still ignorant might sap their manhood." These people would not yield without a stubborn resistance, and here was fought one of the hottest fights of Caesar's career. After the battle, Caesar moved eastward against the Aduatuci, whose stronghold was finally taken; and the campaign of 57 B.C. ended in the complete overthrow of the Belgian Confederacy.

*Confederation of the Belgians, with the exception of the Remi, who intrust themselves to Caesar's protection.*

#### CHAPTER 1.

1. *cum esset*: §182. *citeriore Gallia*: this was the part of modern Italy north of the Po. *ita*: omit in translation. *uti*: for the meaning with the indicative, see vocabulary. *supra demonstravimus*: this refers to the closing statement of Book I.

2. *afferebantur, fiebat*: note the imperfect tense used of repeated action; §148.

3. *certior*: see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. *omnes Belgas coniurare*: in direct discourse, *omnes Belgae coniurant*, progressive, *all the Belgians are uniting*; hence in indirect discourse, *that all the Belgians were uniting*; it is governed by *certior fiebat*, an expression of *saying*. If indirect discourse has not been studied before, see §§ 217-246.

4. *quam*: subject accusative of *esse*; it agrees with *partem*, but in English we must make it agree with its antecedent and say *whom*. *dixeramus*: see Book I, Chapter 1. In such an expression the English prefers the present perfect, which the Latin may use, as in l. 2, above.

5. *dare*: like *coniurare*; see l. 3. For the phrase *inter se dare*, see vocabulary under *inter*.

6. *coniurandi*: §§ 40 and 267. *has esse*: indirect discourse, like *coniurare* and *dare*; *that these were*, etc.; for the case, see § 1. *quod vererentur*, *quod sollicitarentur*: substantive clauses in apposition with *causas*: §§ 215, 2, a, 170 and 228. *ne adducerentur*: § 211.

7. *omni pacata Gallia*: (all Gaul having been "pacified"), *now that all (Celtic) Gaul was subdued*. For the sense in which *Gallia* is used, see notes on Book I, Chapter 1. *ad*: *against*.

8. *ab non nullis Gallis*: § 68.

9. *qui*: *sc. eis* as antecedent, in distributive apposition with *non nullis Gallis* (§ 4); *those who*. *Germanos versari noluerant*: § 257. The subjunctive might have been expected instead of *noluerant*, *ferebant*, etc. (§ 228). In using the indicative, Caesar gives the explanations as a fact; § 170.

10. *hiemare*, *inveterascere*: progressive, like *coniurare*, l. 5.

11. *qui*: see note, l. 9. *mobilitate*, etc.: § 84. *ferebant*, *studebant* and *occupabantur*: these imperfects denote a continued condition; § 148.

12. *novis imperiis*: see vocabulary under *novus*, and § 23. *ab non nullis*: this is in addition to those designated by the *non nullis* of l. 8.

13. *ad conducendos homines*: § 272.

14. *regna*: plural, because the Latin thinks of a *regnum* in each state; translate, *the power in individual states*.

15. *imperio nostro*: *under our rule*; a combination of the idea of time and cause: §§ 84 and 89.

This chapter means that the Belgians feared " (1) annexation, (2) foreign garrisons, (3) repression of irregular native greatness founded on birth or wealth."—MOBERLEY.

## CHAPTER 2.

17. *duas legiones novas*: the thirteenth and fourteenth; he already had six in transalpine Gaul, numbered seventh to twelfth inclusive; see Book I, Chapter 10.

18. *inita aestate*: ablative absolute; see vocabulary under *ineo*.

19. *qui deduceret*: §§ 156, 162 and 163. *legatum*: §§ 1 and 2.

20. *cum primum inciperet*: (when first began), *as soon as there began*; § 182. This would be late in June; see Book I, Chapter 16. *cum primum* almost always takes the indicative.

21. *dat negotium*: see vocabulary under *negotium*, and §147.

22. *Belgis*: § 33. *uti cognoscant, faciant*: in apposition with *negotium*: § 208. *quae gerantur*: § 203.

24. *de*: *of*. *certiorem*: see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. *manus, exercitum*: the former refers to small numbers of men from single localities, the latter to the force that was organized when the small bands had been drilled and brought together. So in this country in 1861 companies were recruited in towns and villages, and regiments were organized in the cities, which were afterwards united into brigades, divisions and corps. *cogi, conduci*: progressive passive: *were being collected*, etc.

25. *dubitandum (sibi esse)*: §278.

26. *quin proficiaceretur*: § 214. *re frumentaria comparata*: (a grain supply having been prepared), *after he had provided for a supply of grain*.

27. *castra movet*: (he moves camp), *he breaks up his winter quarters*. *diebus*: §§ 89 and 105.

### CHAPTER 3.

29. *cum venissent*: § 182. *opinio*: see vocabulary and § 69.

30. *Galliae*: § 33. *ex Belgis*: § 53.

31. *primos*: § 111.

32. *qui dicerent*: §§156, 162 and 163. The rest of the chapter is indirect discourse. For the use to be made in study of the direct form given below, see Book I, l. 224.

*Nos* (§ 222) *nostraque* (like *nos*) *omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus* (§ 237); *neque [nos]* (§§ 222 and 122) *cum Belgis reliquis consensimus* (like *permittimus*) *neque contra populum Romanum coniuravimus, paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare: reliqui omnes Belgae* (§ 237) *in armis sunt, Germanique, qui cis Rhenum incolunt* (§§ 239 and 202), *sese cum his coniunxerunt, tantumque est eorum omnium furor ut ne SueSSIONES quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utuntur* (like *incolunt*), *unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent, detertere potuerimus* (§§ 239 and 165) *quin cum his consentiant* (§§ 239 and 214).

32. *se*: this is object, as shown by *suaque omnia* (§ 111); another *se* is to be understood as subject accusative of *permittere*; *that they intrusted*, etc.

35. *et*: see note, Book I, l. 410. *dare*: this and the three following infinitives are complementary to *paratos*, which is to be considered as a predicate adjective.

36. *facere*: see vocabulary. *oppidis*: §92. *frumento*: §71. *recipere*, *iuvare*: supply object.

37. *esse*, *coniunxisse*, *esse*: these are infinitives of indirect discourse after *dicerent*, like *permittere*, etc.

38. *cis*: *on this side of*, i.e. on the side towards Rome, the southwestern side. *incolant*: §228.

40. *ut potuerint*: §§ 151, 152, note, 165 and 166. *Suessiones*: accusative; this may be translated after *ut ne quidem*, then the following appositives and clauses, finally *detertere potuerint*, *could they prevent*.

41. *iure*: § 73. *isdem* = *iisdem*. *utantur*: § 228; after it *supply et qui*, with *habean*.

43. *quin consentirent*: § 214.

### *The origin of the Belgians and their forces.*

#### CHAPTER 4.

44. *ab his*: § 67. *quae*, *quanta*: interrogative adjectives.

45. *essent*: § 243. *quid*: interrogative pronoun; contrast with *quae* above. *quid possent*: (what they were able), *how strong they were*; §13. *sic reperiebat*: the direct discourse of the rest of the chapter would be as follows:

*Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque antiquitus traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi consederunt, Gallosque qui ea loca incolebant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos fines ingredi prohibuerint: qua ex re fit uti . . . magnam sibi auctoritatem . . . sumant. De numero eorum omnia (nos) habemus explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci . . . valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti (sunt) ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc . . . summa totius belli . . . deferitur; oppida habent numero duodecim, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta: totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; quindecim milia Atrebatas, Ambiani xxv milia, Morini,*

etc. . . Condrusos, Eburones, etc. . . qui . . . Germani appellantur arbitramur ad XL milia.

46. ab Germanis: § 67.

48. Gallos: object of *expulisse*; Belgas is the subject of all the infinitives in this sentence.      solos: *the only ones*.

49. patrum: § 39.      memoria: see vocabulary and §§ 89 and 105.  
omni Gallia vexata: *when all, etc.*; §§ 87 and 264, 1.

50. ingredi prohibuerint; see vocabulary under *prohibeo*, and § 168. Verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid* (e.g. *iubeo* and *prohibeo*) govern the infinitive as a rule; *impero*, which takes an *ut* clause, means *command*.

51. qua ex re fieri: (from which fact it was happening), *the result was*; the subject accusative of *fieri* is the clause *uti—sumerent* (§ 213).  
rerum: § 40; contrast with *patrum*, l. 49.      memoria: § 84.

53. omnia habere explorata: § 266.

54. propterea: modifies *habere*.

55. coniuncti: agrees with the subject of *cognoverint*.      quantam—polliciti sint: indirect question after *cognoverint*.

57. cognoverint: §§ 170 and 228. For the primary tenses of the subjunctive here and below, as compared with *sumerent*, l. 53, see § 152, note.      plurimum valere: (availed most), *were strongest*; § 13. *virtute, etc.*; § 84.

59. conficere: see vocabulary.      armata milia: (armed thousands), *thousand armed men*.      pollicitos: sc. *esse*.      electa: agrees with *milia*; translate similarly, *picked men*.

61. suos: i.e. of the Remi.      fines—agros: notice the so-called chiasmic arrangement of the words—noun, adjective; adjective, noun.

62. possidere: subject, *eos* (i.e. *Suessiones*).

63. memoria: see vocabulary and § 105.

64. cum . . . tum: § 279, 3.

66. hunc: § 128.      summam: see vocabulary under *summa*.

67. voluntate: § 86.

68. numero: § 82.      milia armata: see l. 59.

69. maxime feri: superlative, *fiercest*; this adjective is not compared by terminations.      inter ipsos: (among themselves, i.e. the Belgians), *among them*.      habeantur: *were considered*; this is a quite common meaning of *habeo*.

70. absint: i.e. from the Remi; they were in the northwest of Belgic Gaul.      quindecim milia Atrebates, Ambianos decem milia: see note on l. 61. This and the different forms of expression employed here serve to break the monotony of the passage.



74. *appellantur*: § 240. Contrast with *habeantur*, l. 69.

75. *arbitrari*: i.e. (Remos) *arbitrari* Condrosos, . . . *ad XL milia* (*conficere posse*); *that they (the Remi) thought that the Condrosi . . . (could furnish) about forty thousand; or, they rated them at, etc.*

*Caesar's camp at the Aisne.*

#### CHAPTER 5.

76. *cohortatus*: § 261.

77. *prosecutus*: see vocabulary. *senatum venire*: § 255.

78. *obsides*: § 2, note. This was a characteristic act on Caesar's part. He took the Remi at their word when they said they intrusted *se suaque omnia* to him, and thus got security that they would assist him. The Gauls were notably fickle (see Chapter 1 of this book), and Caesar never felt that he could trust them unless their direct interests or their fears compelled them to side with him. In this case, however, as it turned out, the Remi proved the most faithful to Caesar of all the Gallic states. *quae*: § 136. *omnia*: § 111. *ab his*: § 68.

79. *diem*: see vocabulary. *Diviciacum Aeduum*: the year before, Caesar had taken the part of the Aeduans, one of the strongest states of Celtic Gaul, in their contests with other states for the leadership; Diviciacus was the most influential leader of the conservative party among the Aeduans, and a trusted adviser of Caesar.

80. *quanto—distineri*: § 63.

82. *ne configendum (sibi) sit*: (that it might not have to be contended by him), *that he might not have to contend*; §§ 31, 156 and 278.

83. *id*: i.e. *manus hostium distineri*. *posse*: sc. *docet*.

84. *si introduxerint*: § 242, 5 or 6.

85. *postquam vidit*: § 176.

86. *venire*: in direct discourse, *veniunt*, *are coming* (§145, a); hence in indirect discourse, *were coming*. *neque*: connects *vidit* and *cognovit*, but negatives *longe*. *abesse*: sc. *a se*, *from him*; the subject is *copias Belgarum*. *ab iis . . . exploratoribus et ab Remis*: ablatives of source modifying *cognovit*; translate immediately after it.

88. *flumen*: § 11.

90. *quae res*: *this movement*. *et*: see note, Book I, l. 410.

91. *ripis*: § 71. *post eum quae essent*: (what were behind him), in military language, *his communications*.

92. *tuta*: predicate adjective agreeing with *ea* understood, the antecedent of *quae*; § 16. *commeatus ut possent efficiebat*: (effected that provisions were able), *made it possible for provisions*; § 213.

95. *in altera parte*: i.e. on the southern side; see map.

97. *pedum duodecim*: §§ 44 and 45.

98. *munire*: sc. *eum* (i.e. *Sabinum*), as subject.

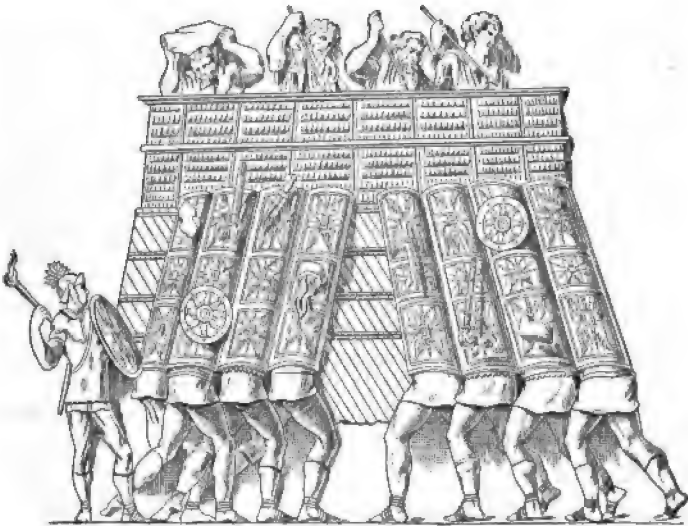
*Bibrax, a town of the Remi besieged by the Belgians, is relieved by Caesar.  
The Belgians, while withdrawing, suffer heavy loss.*

#### CHAPTER 6.

99. *nomine*: § 82.

100. *milia*: §§ 14 and 99.      *magno impetu*: § 78.

101. *die*: § 104.      *sustentatum est*: § 144, 2.



TESTUDO.

102. *eadem atque Belgarum*: (*which is*) the same as that of the Belgians; parenthetical.

103. *moenibus*: § 27.

105. *defensoribus*: § 65.      *testudine facta*: (a "testudo" having been made), they form a *testudo* and.

106. *quod*: § 136.

*tum*: i.e. in the storming of Bibrax.

107. *conicerent*: § 143.

108. *potestas erat nulli*: § 30. Note the emphatic position of *nulli*.  
*finem oppugnandi*: § 267.

109. *summa nobilitate*: § 80.  
 110. *oppido*: § 27. *ex iis*: § 53.  
 111. *legati*: § 2, note. *de*: concerning, to sue for.  
 112. *nisi*, etc.: (*saying that*) unless, etc.; § 227. For mood and tense, see § 242, 5.

## CHAPTER 7.

114. *de media nocte*: (from, i.e. after, the middle of the night), about midnight; § 113. *iisdem* = *iisdem hominibus*. *ducibus*: § 2, note. So *nuntii*, l. 115.  
 115. *Cretas*: notice Greek ending. *sagittarios*: appositive to *Numidas et Cretas*, but the latter may be translated as adjectives.  
 116. *subsidio*: § 32.  
 117. *et . . . et*: not only . . . but also. *Remis*: § 27.  
 118. *hostibus*: § 29. *potiundi*: old form of gerundive. For the use of the gerundive of such verbs, see § 273, 2.  
 121. *quo adire potuerant*: (whither they were able to go to), which they could get at. *omnibus vicis aedificisque incensis*: this ablative absolute is coördinate with *morati* and *populati*, but since deponent verbs have no passive participle and active verbs have no perfect active participle, we find this awkward combination. In translating make the voices of all the participles the same, here rendering *incensis* by the perfect active. *omnibus copiis*: § 77.  
 122. *a*: adverb, away. *milibus duobus*: §§ 70 and 81.  
 123. *quae*: § 136.  
 124. *milibus*: § 69. This statement is given to show the great number in the Belgian army. See Chapter 4.

## CHAPTER 8.

126. *primo*: § 115.  
 127. *virtutis*: § 40. *proelio*: § 65.  
 128. *quid—posset*: (what the enemy could in bravery), how brave the enemy was; §§ 13, 82 and 243.  
 129. *quid—auderent*: like the above clause, how daring our men were. *periclitabatur*: notice tense; § 148.  
 130. *loco pro castris idoneo*: the ground in front of the camp (being) convenient. This use of *pro*, local, is rare. It is so employed only when it means immediately before, practically, on the edge of.  
 131. *natura*: § 84.  
 132. *quod redibat*: this gives the reason for opportuno atque idoneo.

133. *editus*: agrees with *collis*; *rising*. *tantum*—*patebat*: (extended in breadth, turned toward the camp, so much of place as a line drawn up could occupy), covered as much space in front of the camp as his line of battle would fill. In describing a hill it is hard to use definitely such terms as *width*, *end*, *side*, etc., unless it has a very distinct ridge, which was not the case here. *tantum*: § 14.

134. *quantum*: object of *occupare*. *loci*: § 47.

135. *ex utraque parte*: on each end (of the ridge); § 98. *lateris deiectus*: (slopes of side), comparatively steep slopes.

136. *ab utroque latere*: compare *ex utraque parte* above. It means, on either side of the ridge at the end near which the camp was.

137. *transversam*: at right angles (to the front of his line of battle); this was on his right, the *latus apertum*; see Book I, line 457, note.

"The camp was situated on rising ground between the river (Aisne) and its tributary, the Miette, a small stream flowing through a marshy ooze. The camp was, as usual, quadrilateral, as nearly square as the lie of the land permitted. The rampart, eight feet high, was faced with sods and revetted with timbers and fascines, to keep its slope of the requisite steepness; along the top of it was set a palisade of interlaced branches, and the ditch which surrounded it was eighteen feet wide and ten feet deep. Caesar's rear was protected by the Aisne; and his supplies could be brought up in safety by the Remi."—HOLMES.

138. *extremas*: § 113.

139. *tormenta*: engines, which corresponded exactly to modern artillery. *ne possent*: § 158. *cum instruxisset*: § 182.

140. *quod*—*poterant*: because they were so strong in numbers; with their superior numbers; it modifies *possent*, and should be translated immediately after it. *ab lateribus circumvenire*: (to come around on the sides), to outflank.

141. *pugnantes*: (while) fighting; during the battle.

143. *si quo*: (if anywhere), wherever; *quo*, adverb, is indefinite after *si*, like forms of *quis* and *qui* (§ 139). *opus*: the indeclinable noun; see vocabulary. *esset*: § 242, 5. *subsidio*: § 32.

145. *copias eductas instruxerunt*: (drew up their troops, having been led out), led out their troops and drew them up.

## CHAPTER 9.

147. *si transirent*: § 243, note. *expectabant*: § 148.

148. *si*—*fleret*: (in case a beginning of crossing should be made

by them), *if they began to cross*; § 242, 5. **transeundi**: § 267. **impeditos**: sc. **eos**; for translation, see vocabulary.

150. **proelio equestri contendebatur**: impersonal; (it was contended by means of a cavalry battle), *a cavalry battle was going on*; § 144. **ubi faciunt**: § 176.

151. **neutri**: *neither army*; when designating one of two *bodies of men*, the plural of this word, as of **alter**, is used. **secundiore proelio**: §§ 87 and 88. For the translation of **secundiore**, see § 116.

152. **nostris**: § 33.

156. **eo consilio**: (this being their plan), *with this design*. **si possent**: § 242, 5. **cui**: § 27.

157. **pontemque interscinderent**: they would thus have the Romans cut off from provisions and from retreat. It was good strategy, if they could have carried it out.

158. **minus potuissent**: (should be less able), *could not do this*; § 242, 5. **popularentur, prohiberent**: sc. **ut**; they are coördinate with **ut expugnarent, interscinderent**, above. **qui**: the antecedent is **agros**.

159. **usui**: see vocabulary and § 32. **gerendum**: gerund or gerundive? See § 271. **commeatu**: § 65.

## CHAPTER 10.

161. **certior factus**: it is not stated of what he was informed, but it can be easily supplied,—*of their attack, of what was going on*, etc.

162. **levis armaturae**: § 44. He takes these troops because they can get there more quickly than the heavily armed legionaries. The fact that he goes with them shows that he understood the vital importance of preventing the enemy from crossing.

163. **ponte**: § 71. This is the bridge mentioned in l. 94. **eos**: i.e. the Belgians.

164. **pugnatum est**: § 144. **hostes**: the case is shown by **impeditos**; for the latter, see l. 148.

165. **per**: *on, over*. Without any fear or sentiment, the others tried to use the bodies of the men in the front ranks as a causeway across the stream, so as to be better able to get at the Romans.

166. **reliquos . . . conantes . . . reppulerunt**: keep the Latin order; *the rest, trying . . . , they drove back*. Observe Caesar's terse description of the fight. He divides the slaughter into three parts: first, those who were trying to cross when he came (**hostes impeditos in flumine**); second, those who tried to cross after them (**reliquos per eorum corpora audacissime transire conantes**); third, those who had crossed before he

arrived (*primos qui transierant*). He did not deal first, as might at first thought be expected, with this last division, because not enough had crossed to do any harm and it was more important to stop the rest; but he kept them occupied with the cavalry, while dealing with the others, and finally cut them to pieces.

168. *equitatu*: § 71. *primos circumventos interfecerunt*: keep the order and translate participle by main verb, *they surrounded and killed*.

169. *oppido*: i.e. Bibrax; see Chapters 6 and 7. *spem se fefellisse*: (that the hope had deceived them), *that they were disappointed in the hope* (of, etc.).

170. *neque*: = *et non*; take the negative part of the conjunction with *progredi*, *did not advance*. It was a great feature of Caesar's tactics in Gaul to get the enemy to attack him in a place of his own choosing.

171. *pugnandi causa*: §§ 54 and 55. *ipsos*: emphatic, contrasted with the Romans, whom a little while before they had hoped to cut off from their base of supplies.

172. *convocato consilio*: translate by main clause: *called a council and*, etc.

173. *optimum*: predicate adjective agreeing with the subject accusative of *esse*, i.e. the infinitive clauses following. *domum*: § 94. *suam quemque*: in this combination the possessive regularly precedes. *quemque reverti*: § 257. *quorum in fines*: *into whose territory*; the antecedent of *quorum* is *eos*, l. 175. *introduxissent*: *should lead*; §§ 153 and 203.

175. *convenirent*: this is the second object of *constituerunt*; the first was a mere statement of a fact, that a certain thing was best; hence the accusative and infinitive. The *purpose* of their decision was that they should reassemble; hence the subjunctive, which, used thus without *ut*, is much like the use that appears when an imperative becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse; §§ 208, 212, 221 and 245. *ut uterentur*: adverbial purpose clause modifying *convenirent*.

176. *finibus*: § 91. *copiis*: § 73.

178. *quod—cognoverant*: § 215, 2, *b*.

179. *finibus*: § 27. *appropinquare*: progressive, *was approaching*.

180. *his persuaderi non poterat*: (it could not be persuaded these), *these* (the Bellovaci) *could not be persuaded*; §§ 23 and 26. So this terrible league dissolved, and Caesar proceeds against the various tribes separately.

181. *neque*: *and not*; see l. 170.

## CHAPTER 11.

182. *ea re constituta*: *when this move had been settled on.* *magno*  
—*tumultu*: § 78.

183. *nullo*—*imperio*: attendant circumstance; § 78.

184. *cum*—*properaret*: § 172: this clause modifies *fecerunt ut*—*videretur*.  
*sibi*: § 28.

185. *ut videretur*: § 213.

186. *fugae*: § 33. *hac re cognita*: § 264, 4.

187. *veritus*: § 261. *qua de causa*: *for what reason, why.* *qua* is  
here an interrogative adjective.

188. *discederent*: § 245. Note the tenses of *perspexerat* and *discederent*;  
the latter is progressive.

189. *castris*: § 92.

190. *qui moraretur*: §§ 162 and 163.

191. *his*: § 27. *Pedium, Cottam*: these two *legati* were often de-  
tailed together. We find that they were men of different characteris-  
tics, so that perhaps Caesar thought that one would serve to balance the  
other.

192. *Labienum*: see vocabulary.

195. *fugientium*: (*while*) *fleeing.* *cum (ei) ab extremo agmine*,  
*ad quos ventum erat, consisterent* . . . (*et*) *priores* (i.e. *priores hostes*)  
*praesidium ponerent*: (since those on the extreme end of the line of  
march, to whom it had been come, made a stand, . . . and those in front  
placed a guard), *since, (while) those on the extreme rear who were overtaken*  
*made a stand . . . those in advance took refuge.* *ab*: § 98. *ex-*  
*tremo*: § 113.

197. *priores*: § 111. *quod viderentur*: § 170. *abesse a*: *be*  
*out of.*

199. *perturbatis ordinibus*: (their ranks having been disturbed),  
*broke ranks and.*

201. *tantam quantum fuit diei spatium*: *as great as* (was the space of  
the day) *the day allowed.* The comparison is careless and illogical.

*The Suessiones are received in surrender.*

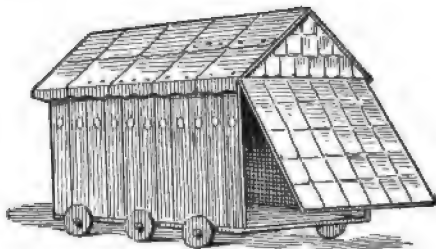
## CHAPTER 12.

205. *postridie eius diei*: § 56. *prius quam reciperent*: § 181.

207. *Remis*: what other case might have been used? See § 33, note.

208. *ex itinere*: i.e. without encamping or making any especial  
preparations.

209. *ab defensoribus*: § 65.  
 211. *paucis defendentibus*: § 264, 4.  
 212. *quaeque*: *and (the other things) which*.  
 213. *usui*: see l. 159.



VINEA.

215. *actis*: *being pushed*. For the methods of the Romans in siege operations, see introduction.

216. *quae*: *such as; the like of which*.

219. *petentibus Remis*: see note on Book I, l. 512. *ut conservaretur*: object of *petentibus*; § 208.

*At the request of Diviciacus, Caesar receives the Bellovaci in surrender; he inquires about the character and customs of the Nervii.*

## CHAPTER 13.

220. *primis*: (the first), *the chief men*; § 111.

221. *ex oppido*: we use an adjective phrase, *the arms in the town*; the Latin uses an adverbial phrase, *having been handed over out of the town*.

223. *qui—contulissent*: *when they had retired with all their possessions into the town (of) Bratuspantium*.

226. *natu*: see vocabulary under *magnus*, and § 276.

227. *voce*: *tone of voice*, for Caesar would not have understood their language.

230. *accessisset, ponerent*: notice tenses.

231. *ex muro*: (*standing*) *on the wall*. *more*: § 86.

## CHAPTER 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter would be as follows:

*Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae*



fuerunt; impulsus ab suis principibus, qui dicebant, "Aedui a Caesare in servitutem redacti omnes indignitates . . . preferunt," et ab Aeduis defecerunt et populo Romano bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consili principes fuerant, quod intellegebant quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugerunt. Petunt non solum Bellovaci sed etiam pro his Aedui ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utaris. Quod si feceris, Aeduum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas amplificabis, quorum auxilliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderunt, sustentare consuerunt.

235. omni tempore, fide: see vocabulary. civitatis: § 39.

236. impulsos, etc.: the construction is (eos), impulsos . . . , et defecisse et intulisse, (that) they (the Bellovaci), (having been) urged on . . . , had both revolted and waged. qui dicerent: § 228; this governs the indirect discourse, Aeduos . . . redactos, . . . perferre, that the Aeduians, having been, etc. . . . , were enduring.

239. Qui: sc. eos as antecedent and subject accusative of profugisse; that those who etc. . . . , had fled.

240. quod: conjunction. quantam—intulissent: § 243.

242. Bellovacos, Aeduos: subjects of petere, the object of which is the clause ut—utatur.

243. sua: his (usual), his (well known); this is not an unusual force of suus. quod si fecerit: if he did this; § 242, 5.

245. amplificaturum: sc. eum (Caesarem) as subject. si qua bella inciderint (Aedui) consuerint: for the form in direct discourse, see above; English, if any wars happen, we are accustomed. Indirect discourse, if any wars happened, they were accustomed; § 228. qua: this form may be used instead of quae in the feminine singular and neuter plural of the indefinite pronoun.

## CHAPTER 15.

247. honoris Diviciaci causa: (for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus), as a mark of honor to Diviciacus; honoris, § 54; Diviciacus, § 40.

249. magna auctoritate: § 80.

250. multitudine: § 82.

251. ex oppido: see note on l. 221.

254. quorum: § 135. Caesar cum quaereret: when Caesar inquired. It would be possible here to consider Caesar the subject of reperiebat; but often a nominative preceding a cum clause cannot be the subject of the main verb. This shows that, in such a sentence as we have here, the subject that is expressed belongs to the subordinate clause.

255. mercatoribus: § 30.

256. vini: § 49. pati: sc. eos as subject.

259. magnae virtutis: § 44.

260. qui: *because they*; § 173.

261. confirmare: progressive; see note on l. 179. It is coördinate with esse, increpitare and incusare. sese—accepturos: this is indirect discourse, object of confirmare.

*The Nervii, with the Atrebatas and Viromandui, are defeated by Caesar with heavy loss on both sides, and their surrender is accepted.*

#### CHAPTER 16.

263. cum fecisset: § 182. eorum: i.e. of the Nervii. tri-  
dum: § 14.

264. ex captivis: § 67. Sabim: note the ending.

265. milia: §§ 14 and 70.

266. consedissee, expectare: note change of tense, *had encamped, were waiting for*.

268. uti—experirentur: object of persuaserant; §§ 25 and 208. eandem: (the same), *with them*.

270. copias: notice the voice of expectari; then is copias subject or object? quique: = et eos qui.

271. coniecisse: notice voice; then is mulieres subject or object? eum locum quo: = talem locum ut eo, *such a place that to it*; §§ 165 and 166.

272. exercitui: § 30.

#### CHAPTER 17.

273. exploratores, centuriones: the former would try to find various possible sites; then the latter, experienced officers, would confer and select the best place.

274. qui deligant: §§ 162 and 163. castris: § 33. cum facerent: § 182. ex: § 53. Notice here the difference between a bad and a good translation. Following the Latin we might say, "When from the surrendered Belgians and the remaining Gauls, several, having followed Caesar, were making a march," etc. This is "Latin-English." Contrast the following: "When quite a number of other Gauls and of the recently surrendered Belgians had joined Caesar and were marching with him," etc.

276. *ex his*: cf. *ex*—Gallia, above. *ex captivis*: § 67.
277. *cognitum est*: § 148. *eorum dierum*: (of) *during these days*; with *itineris*; § 37. *consuetudine*: (custom), *order*.
278. *nostri exercitus*: with *itineris*; § 39. *nocte*: § 89.
279. *inter singulos legiones*: *between* (the single) *every two legions*.
280. *numerus*: *amount*. *neque—negotii*: (nor was anything of trouble), *and that it was not a difficult matter*; § 49.
281. *cum venisset*, *abessent*: in direct discourse, *cum venerit* (future perfect indicative), *aberunt*, (when it shall have come, shall be away), *when it has come, are behind*; § 182. In indirect discourse the English tenses are like the Latin.
283. *adoriri*: subject of *esse*. *qua pulsa*: (which having been driven), *that when this had been routed*.
284. *futurum (esse)*: *it would (be) happen (that, etc.)*; object of demonstrant.
285. *adiuvabat*, etc.: the subject is the clause *quod—effecerant*; (the fact that the Belgians had made . . . , aided the plan of those who . . . ); translate passively, *the advice of those who . . . , was reinforced by the fact that the Belgians . . .*
286. *equitatu nihil possent*: (since they were nothing able in respect to cavalry), *since they had no cavalry at all*; §§ 13 and 82.
287. *neque enim*: see vocabulary under *enim*. *ad hoc tempus*: (to this time), *at present*; i.e. when Caesar was writing. *ei rei*: *this arm of the service*. *quicquid possunt*: *so far as they can*.
288. *valent*, etc.: (they are strong in), *they rely on*. *quo facilius impedirent*: § 160.
289. *si venissent*: § 242, 5. *praedandi causa*: see vocabulary under *causa*.
290. *teneris*, etc.: (tender trees having been cut into and bent over, and numerous branches having grown out laterally, and brambles and briars having been planted among them); *had planted young trees and then cut into them and bent them over*; thus they would remain bent over but would keep on growing; *numerous branches would then grow out sidewise, and by planting briars and brambles among them they had made (that) these hedges (should) furnish, etc.*; § 213.
292. *instar*: in apposition with *munimentum*. *muri*: § 57.
293. *quo . . . intrari, . . . perspici posset*: § 168; verbs impersonal; (whither it was able . . . to be entered, . . . to be seen through), *such that one could . . . penetrate it, . . . see through it*.
294. *cum—impediretur*: this clause modifies *omittendum (esse)*; in indirect discourse the future indicative would be used (§ 182). *cum*

*iter agminis eorum impiedietur, non omittendum nobis consilium erit; when the advance of their column (shall be) is impeded, we ought not, etc.*

295. *sibi*: § 31.

## CHAPTER 18.

296. *haec*: (this), *as follows*. *castris*: § 32.

297. *ab summo*: *from the top*.

299. *pari acclivitate*: *with a similar slope*; § 80. *adversus*: note that this, with *contrarius*, *infimus*, *apertus* and *silvestris* are all adjectives modifying *collis*.

300. *huic*: § 33. *passus*: § 99. *infimus apertus*: the former of these adjectives is partitive in force (§ 113), the latter predicate; (the lower part open), *open at the base*.

301. *a superiore parte*: contrasted with *infimus*; (on the higher part), *towards the top*. *ut perspici posset*: see l. 293 and § 166.

303. *continebant*: compare the different uses of the imperfect in this chapter; § 148. *secundum*: a preposition; see vocabulary.

305. *pedum trium*: § 45. This is a clear description of a battlefield; try to imagine how it looked, and draw a plan.

## CHAPTER 19.

306. *subsequebatur*: note the imperfect again; with which imperfect in Chapter 18 does this correspond? Note also the meaning of the compounds of *sequor* with the various prepositions. *omnibus copiis*: § 77.

308. *hostibus*: § 27.

309. *consuetudine sua*: § 86.

311. *duae legiones*: see l. 18.

312. *praesidio*: § 32.

315. *illi*: i.e. *hostes*.

317. *quem—pertinebant*: (to what limit the open places extended, stretched out), *to the edge of the woods*. *quem ad finem*: = *ad eum finem ad quem*.

318. *cedentes*: sc. *eos* (i.e. *hostes*); (*when*) *retreating*. *interim*: i.e. while this game of hide and seek was going on between the two bodies of cavalry.

319. *opere dimenso*: this had been done by the centurions who had been sent ahead; see l. 273.

320. *prima*: § 113.

321. *abdit latebant*: *were lying hidden*. *quod*: relative pronoun, subject of *convenerat*, having for its antecedent the clause *ubi—visa sunt*. *tempus*: predicate nominative; (*as*) *the moment*; § 2, note.

322. *convenerat*: see vocabulary. *ut—confirmaverant*: *as they had formed . . . and had urged each other (to do)*.

323. *ipsi sese confirmaverant*: § 133.

327. *ut viderentur*: § 166.

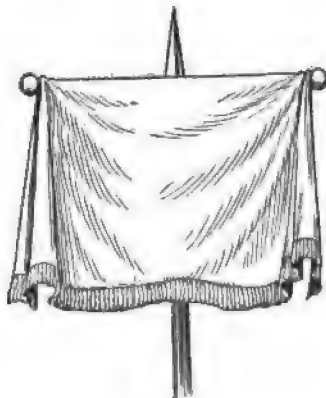
328. *in manibus nostris*: (*in our hands*), *within our reach*.

329. *adverso*: see vocabulary. *ad*: *toward*.

## CHAPTER 20.

This passage is one of the most brilliant in Caesar. Notice the directness of statement and the rapidity of style corresponding to the action described.

331. *Caesari—agenda*: (*all things were to be done by Caesar at one time*), *Caesar had to do everything at once*; §§ 31 and 278.

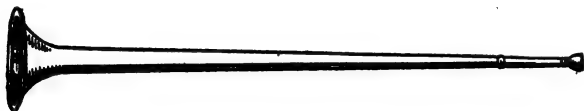


VEXILLUM.

332. *proponendum*, etc.: supply the proper form of *sum* with this and each of the following gerundives, and compare *erant agenda* for translation; these clauses explain *omnia*. *concurri oportebat*: both impersonal, § 144; (*it ought to be run*), *the soldiers were to rush*; *concurri* is the subject of *oportebat*.

333. *tuba*: those who did not see the *vexillum* might hear the *tuba*.

334. *qui*: the antecedent is *ei*, indefinite, the subject of *arcessendi* (*erant*). *longius*: § 116. *aggeris*: see vocabulary.



TUBA.

335. *milites cohortandi*: see note on Book I, l. 444.  
 336. *signum*: this means the signal to begin fighting or to charge.  
 337. *difficultatibus*: § 92.  
 338. *subsidio*: § 32.  
 339. *duae res*: the first of these is *scientia atque usus* taken together as a single thing, *discipline*, which is explained by the clause *quod—poterant*; the second is the clause *quod—vetuerat*, *the fact that*, etc. *superioribus*: *former*. *exercitati*: participle agreeing with *ei* (i.e. *milites*), the subject of *poterant*. *quid—oporteret*: § 243; it is the direct object of *praescribere* and the second object of *doceri* (§ 15, end). *quid fieri* taken as a whole is the subject of *oporteret*.  
 340. *non minus commode . . . quam*: (not less readily than), *as easily . . . as*. *ipsi sibi*: (themselves to themselves), *to each other*; § 133.  
 341. *singulis legionibus singulos legatos*: (the single legati from the single legions), *each commander from his particular command*.  
 342. *nisi munitis castris*: here we have an ablative absolute introduced by a subordinating conjunction. This happens most frequently after *nisi*, but also after conjunctions such as *tamquam*, *quasi*, *quamquam*, etc. Translate, *unless the camp was fortified*.  
 344. *nihil expectabant*: (awaited not at all), *did not wait a moment for*; § 13.  
 345. *per se*: *on their own responsibility*. *videbantur*: see vocabulary.

## CHAPTER 21.

It is part of Caesar's design to show his own part in the battle, and attention is called to him at the beginning of this and the preceding chapter.

346. *necessariis rebus imperatis*: (the necessary things having been ordered), *after giving the necessary orders*.  
 347. *quam [in] partem*: *in whatever direction; wherever*.

348. *non longiore oratione quam uti*: with a speech not longer than (to urge them) to, etc. "Keep cool, men, and remember the honor of the legion. Stand up against that rush."—HOLMES.

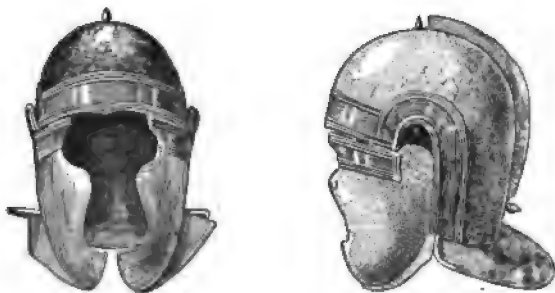
350. *animo*: § 82.

352. *non*—*posset*: the enemy were (away not farther than whither a javelin could be driven), "*within a javelin's cast*."

354. *pugnantibus occurrit*: (he ran against fighting men), he found them (already) fighting.

355. *temporis*—*exiguitas*: (so great was the shortness of the time); what does this mean? *hostium animus*: scarcely different from *hostes*.

356. *ut*: what Latin words should be translated directly after *ut*, to give the English order? *insignia*: decorations; i.e. badges indicating rank, medals won for bravery, and perhaps colored crests or some other sign for every soldier to indicate the legion and manipule to which he belonged. These latter would correspond to the different devices used to distinguish the army corps and divisions in the Union army in the Civil War.



GALEAS.

357. *galeas*: the helmets that were worn in battle would be too heavy and uncomfortable to be worn all the time. These, with the shields in their leather coverings (*tegimenta*) and the *insignia*, the soldier while marching carried in his pack or hung on his person, as our soldiers carry their cartridges and canteens. *scutis*: § 65.

358. *quam in partem*: see l. 347. *defuerit*: this sequence of tense is exceptional in a result clause.

359. *prima*: were the first that; § 115.

360. *ad haec*: (at these), here.

## CHAPTER 22.

363. *rei—ordo*: (the reason and custom of military affairs), *the principles of military science*. The first subjects of *postulabat* are *natura, delectus and necessitas*, which are contrasted with *ratio atque ordo*. For the agreement of *postulabat*, see § 142.

364. *cum legiones resisterent, -que prospectus impediretur*: § 172. *aliae alia in parte*: (some in another part), *some in one place, and others in another*. Such an abridged form of expression is called *brachylogy*.

365. *saepibusque*, etc.: repeat the *cum* here to keep the connection clear; and *since*, etc. *saepibus interiectis*: *by the intervening hedges*; § 264, 7.

367. *neque*: *neither*; this begins the main clause. *neque pro- videri (poterat)*: impersonal; the subject is the clause *quid—esset*; *nor could it be foreseen what need there would be in each part (of the field)*.

370. *fortunae eventus*: *vicissitudes of fortune; fortunes*.

## CHAPTER 23.

Having described the circumstances under which the battle began, Caesar now begins to tell what actually happened,—what the *fortunae eventus varii* were. He begins with the success of his own left wing.

372. *cursu—confectos*: translate this after *compulerunt* and its modifiers and the parenthesis; (out of breath from running and weariness and exhausted with wounds), *because they were tired out with running and (so many) were wounded (by the javelins)*.

375. *conantes*: accusative, agreeing with *eos* understood; (*when they were*) *trying*. *transire*: i.e. *to recross the river*. *gladiis*: if this modified *secuti*, it would probably be before it, so we may conclude that it modifies *interfecerunt*. *impeditam*: (*while thus*) *embarrassed; by taking them at this disadvantage*.

376. *ipsi*: i.e. *legionis nonae et decimae milites*, l. 371.

377. *locum iniquum*: *an unfavorable position*; i.e. they were now fighting up hill.

378. *rursus—proelio*: *resistentes hostes* is accusative, object of *coniecerunt*, *the enemy, (who were) beginning to resist again and trying to renew the battle*.

381. *ex—proeliabantur*: *were fighting from their higher position right on the bank of the river*; i.e. they had driven the Viromandui back down the hill, but the latter were making a stand on the edge of the water and were between this and the Romans, who were still fighting down hill.



The plural (*ripis*) refers to different points on the same side of the river.

382. *at totis nudatis*: and so, while the whole, etc. At the start the eighth and eleventh legions were in front of the camp, the ninth and tenth on the left, and the twelfth and seventh on the right. By the success of those in the front and on the left, and because of their pursuit of the flying enemy, the places they had occupied were left open and the camp exposed on these two sides.

385. *confertissimo agmine*: § 78. *duce Boduognato*: under the lead of; § 88.

386. *summam*: see vocabulary. *imperii*: § 47. *ad eum locum*: where they saw the two legions.

387. *ab aperto latere circumvenire*: (to come around on the exposed flank), to turn their right flank. They had numbers enough so that those in front could divide and pass to either side of the two legions so as to attack them more advantageously, and, at the same time, those coming behind could attack them and keep them busy in front.

388. *summum castrorum locum*: (the highest part of the camp's location), the top of the hill where the camp was; § 113.

## CHAPTER 24.

More than anything that has preceded, the description of this battle marks Caesar as an artist in literature. He begins with the left, the point of the easiest and most complete Roman success, then takes the less decisive victory of the centre, and at the close of Chapter 23 he hints of disaster on the right. Chapter 24 might be omitted; but like a dramatist he waits before telling the outcome of the Nervian attack, and details the movements of the cavalry, the camp-followers and the mule-drivers in such a manner as to present to the reader in the most vivid form the picture of the crushing reverse which had apparently been inflicted on the Roman arms.

389. *levis armaturae*: see l. 162.

390. *quos pulsos (esse) dixeram*: either, whom I had said to have been routed, or, who, I had said, had been routed; do not mix the two.

391. *cum recipere*: § 182; the action is progressive.

392. *adversis, occurrebant, partem*: see vocabulary.

393. *porta*: sc. *castrorum*.

394. *summo*: § 113.

395. *egressi*: i.e. e *castris*; they had followed the ninth and tenth legions.

396. *versari*: (were turning about), *were actually*; it is a strong synonym for *esse*. *praecipites*: § 114.

398. *oriebatur*: (was rising), *began to be heard*. *alii—partem*: compare ll. 364, 365.

401. *virtutis*: § 40. *opinio*: see vocabulary.

402. *cum*: conjunction, introducing *vidissent*; § 182.

405. *dispersos dissipatosque fugere*: *were fleeing, dispersed and scattered*. As a result of this report, the Treveri lost pretty much all their respect for Caesar and gave him repeated trouble. Had such a report gone out three years later, it is probable that there would instantly have been a general uprising of Gaul.

## CHAPTER 25.

For the time being, we have lost sight of Caesar. The last mention of him was in l. 354. Notice how he brings out his own part in the battle. He had started the successful charge on the left. Now, after the scene showing the desperate pass to which affairs had come without him, he reappears and assumes command in person.

409. *Caesar*, etc.: the structure of this, the longest sentence in the *Bellum Gallicum*, is as follows: *Caesar, . . . profectus, ubi . . . vidit* (l. 412) . . . *vidit* (l. 421), *processit . . . -que . . . iussit*; each *vidit* governs some clauses of indirect discourse; *quarta*—*posset* consists of ablatives absolute and their modifiers, giving various circumstances; *scuto—detracto* is an ablative absolute that is practically coördinate with *profectus* (l. 410). The sentence should first be mastered as it stands, then broken up into shorter sentences in translation, as suggested below. *cohortatione*: see ll. 346–348.

410. *signis collatis*: ablative absolute denoting cause (§ 246, 2); *and* (*that*), *because the standards were collected*, etc.

411. *confertos*: *being* (*therefore*) *huddled together*. *sibi ipsos esse impedimento*: (themselves were for a hindrance to themselves), *hindered each other*; §§ 32 and 133.

416. *multis—confecto*: (overcome by many and severe wounds), *who had received many severe wounds*. When *multi* is followed by another attributive adjective, the two are regularly connected by a conjunction, contrary to the English idiom.

418. *tardiores esse*, etc.: here begins the indirect discourse which is the object of the second *vidit* (l. 421); this verb should be translated here, repeating the *ubi* for clearness, and supplying a conjunction; (*and when*) *he saw that the rest were*, etc. *tardiores*: § 116. *non*

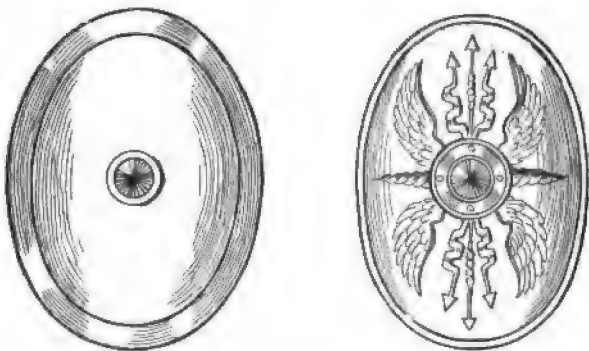
**nullos:** for clearness express the introductory particle *that* (§ 220) before each clause of indirect discourse; *and that some*, etc. **ab:** *at or in*; § 98.

**419. deserto loco:** ablative absolute, (their place having been deserted), *deserting their posts*. **proelio:** § 65. **discedere:** progressive, *were withdrawing*; so also **vitare**. **hostes neque:** = **et hostes non**; *and that the enemy did not*.

**420. subeuntes intermittere:** an example of what is called the *supplementary participle*, agreeing with the subject but really adding to the predicate; *cease coming*. **ab:** § 98.

**421. neque:** see note on **neque**, l. 419; take the negative with **ullum. rem esse in angusto:** (that the thing was in a narrow place), *that a crisis had come*; compare our colloquial expression, "things were in a tight place."

**422. scuto detracto:** (a shield having been seized), *seizing a shield*; see note on l. 409. **ab novissimis:** see l. 418.



CLIPPEI

**423. [uni]:** omit. See note on Book I, l. 433. **militi:** § 29.

**424. centurionibusque appellatis:** *and, calling*, etc. "Among them (his soldiers) there was hardly one not known to him by name or one who had not formed more or less of a personal relation to the general."  
—MOMMSEN.

**425. cohortatus:** (*and*) *encouraging*.

**426. quo posset:** § 160.

The sentence may now be broken up as follows. Make the first statement include what he saw when he came, i.e. as far as **vidit**, l. 412,

—"When Caesar reached the right wing, he saw that . . ." Next, state in simple sentences what is told in the following ablatives absolute,—"All the centurions were killed . . ." Then bring in the second *vidit* with its indirect discourse,—"He saw *also that . . .*" Finally tell what he did,—"So, seizing a shield, . . ."

The effect of this long sentence may be explained. Caesar takes in at a glance all the varying conditions of the field. With the same instantaneous decision he takes his resolution to put his own life to the hazard, the last resort of a desperate position. All the confusion of the field, all the quickness and resoluteness of Caesar's marvellous mind, are shown in the structure of this sentence, and by this single event in his life he made his reputation as one of the world's greatest commanders secure. *He did not lose his head.*

427. *cuius*: § 135. *militibus*: § 27.

428. *cum cuperet*: § 172.

429. *in extremis suis rebus*: (in his own extreme affairs), *though his own danger was extreme.*

#### CHAPTER 26.

431. *Caesar cum*: see note on l. 254.

433. *conversa*: see vocabulary. Just what manœuvre this phrase describes we do not know, but it appears that one line, probably the third, took a new front: to right, to left, or to the rear. Here if the third line of the twelfth legion swung around to the left, and that of the seventh legion to the right, the two legions would then form three sides of a rectangle with double line to the front where the attack was heaviest. This formation could then easily be closed in to nearly a hollow triangle if necessary. See plan, and Book I, l. 461.

435. *cum—ferrent*: (since some bore aid to others), *since they aided each other.* *aversi*: see vocabulary.

438. *impedimentis*: § 32. *proelio nuntiatio*: *learning of the battle.*

439. *cursu incitato, conspiciebantur*: *quickened their speed and began to be seen*; § 148.

441. *gererentur*: see vocabulary.

442. *subsidio*: like *impedimentis*, l. 438.

443. *qui cum*: *when they.* *quo—esset*: (in what place the thing was), *what was the condition of affairs.*

446. *reliqui*: see vocabulary. The whole phrase means that they came as fast as their legs would carry them.

## CHAPTER 27.

448. **qui:** (*those*) *who*. **volneribus confecti:** (finished with wounds), *severely wounded*. **procubissent:** § 168.

449. **scutis:** § 72. **innixi:** *leaning*; § 261. So **conspicati** below. **calones:** *sc. et* before it.

450. **inermes:** (*though*) *unarmed*.

451. **vero:** emphasizing *equites*; *while* THE CAVALRY.

452. **pugnando:** § 82.

453. **extrema spe salutis:** (their last hope of safety), *their last stand*.

455. (**eis**) **iacentibus:** modifies **insisterent** (§ 27); observe that this cannot be a form of **iacio**.

456. **his**, etc.: the result clause, **ut . . . insisterent atque . . . pugnarent**, is continued by **remitterent**; to show this clearly, repeat a part of the main statement before beginning the ablatives absolute; (*such courage, indeed, that,*) *when these*, etc.

457. **qui:** as in l. 448. **ut:** see vocabulary.

458. **pila intercepta remitterent:** (sent back intercepted javelins), *caught javelins as they flew past and threw them back*. **ut non—deberet:** this clause expresses the result of all that has preceded. **nequiquam:** modifies **ausos esse**; translate after it.

459. **virtutis:** § 44. **homines:** the subject of **iudicari deberet** (impersonal) is **homines tantae virtutis nequiquam ausos esse**, etc. The sense is, that the Belgians were so brave that they were justified in expecting success in the execution of their daring plan. Nowhere else does Caesar pay such a tribute to the Gauls, which is at the same time an indication of the peril he had himself so narrowly escaped.

461. **ex:** *instead of*.

462. **animi magnitudo:** (the greatness of their courage), *their great courage*.

"The two legions which guarded the baggage had heard of the fight and were marching up at their utmost speed. Suddenly above the ridge they appeared, and presently the tenth, despatched by Labienus, recrossed the river, hurried up the hill-side and threw themselves upon the enemy's rear. The effect was electrical. Even the wounded leaned on their shields and plied their swords; the scattered camp-followers plucked up courage and turned upon the enemy; while the cavalry did all they could to atone for their flight.

"The Nervii in their turn were hemmed in. But in their last agony they made good their proud boast [ll. 260, 261]. Man by man, beneath the javelin and the thrust of the short sword, their front ranks fell.

Higher rose the heap of prostrate bodies; and leaping into them, the survivors snatched up the fallen javelins and flung them back, till they too fell; and all was still. So ended this wild fight, a soldier's battle, and withal the battle of a great man. Within an hour it was over, fought and wellnigh lost and won."—HOLMES.

## CHAPTER 28.

463. *prope ad internecionem*: this is greatly overstated. They had plenty of men left, as events three years later proved.

464. *natu*: § 82. *quos coniectos dixeramus*: see note on l. 390.

466. *cum*: § 172. *victoribus*: § 28.

467. *impeditum (esse)*: *stood in the way of*.

468. *consensu*: § 86.

470. *sexcentis*: *sc. senatoribus*.

471. *vix*: modifies *quingentos*. *qui possent*: § 168.

473. *usus (esse)*: we would use the present infinitive. This is a cynical confession that his humane action was also partly politic.

474. *uti*: (to use), *to return to*.

475. *finitimis*: (their neighbors), *the chiefs of the neighboring tribes*.

*The Aduatuci also are subdued.*

## CHAPTER 29.

478. *venirent*: progressive. *nuntiata*: see note on l. 438. *ex itinere*: modifies *reverterunt*; it means, *without stopping to encamp*.

480. *sua omnia*: *sc. possessions*; § 111. *egregie natura munitum*: (conspicuously fortified by nature), *naturally well fortified*.

481. *quod cum*: *while this*; § 199. *ex—partibus*: *on all sides in succession*; if one began at a certain place and followed around, he found himself facing ledges and cliffs all the way until he got nearly around.

484. *pedum*: §§ 45 and 70. *duplici altissimo muro*: = *duobus altissimis muris*; these had a space between them so that, if the enemy succeeded in getting through the first, they would be more or less between two fires.

485. *tum*: i.e. when Caesar arrived. Notice *tenses*. *magni ponderis*: § 44.

486. *in muro collocabant*: i.e. for ammunition.

488. *iis impedimentis depositis*: (that baggage having been put down), *had deposited that baggage . . . and*.

489. *agere ac portare*: (to drive and carry), *to take*. The *impedimenta* included not only the ordinary baggage of an army, but cattle, sheep, etc., taken along for food; also prisoners and captured spoils. The Latin word (literally, *hindrances*) is much more inclusive in its meaning than the English *baggage*. We cannot speak of *driving baggage*, so we must use one less accurate word that will combine the idea of the two employed in Latin.

490. *custodiam ex suis*: (a watch of theirs), *some of their number as a watch*, to take care of it. *praesidium*: a guard, to defend it.

491. *eorum*: (their), *of the rest of the two tribes*. *obitum*: see note on Book I, l. 769.

492. *annos*: § 14. *alias*: adverb. *cum bellum inferrent, illatum (bellum) defenderent*: (since they were either bringing on war and warding off war brought on), *since they were waging offensive and defensive war*.

493. *eorum omnium*: *of all those concerned*.

494. *pace facta*: in translating, make this a main clause, like *impedimentis depositis*, ll. 488, 490.

#### CHAPTER 30.

495. *primo*: adverb.

496. *faciebant*: § 148. The subject is *Aduatuci*.

498. *milium*: sc. *pedum* from l. 497. *circummuniti*: (having been), *being hemmed in* by Caesar. *oppido*: § 93.

499. *ubi, vineis actis*, etc.: *when, after the vineae*, etc.

500. *constitui*: progressive; *was being built*. *irridere*: § 258.

501. *a*: see *ab*, l. 122.

502. *spatio*: § 81. *instrueretur*: § 170. *quibusnam*, etc.: (*asking*) *with what*, etc.; §§ 223 and 227.

503. *praesertim homines*: *especially (being) men*. *nam*, etc.: reserve the parenthesis until the end.

504. *omnibus*: emphatic, including Belgians, Celts and Aquitanians.

505. *contemptui*: see vocabulary and § 32.

506. *sese posse confiderent*: *did they trust that they could*; § 243.

#### CHAPTER 31.

507. *moveri, appropinquare*: progressive; see line 500; sc. *turrim* as subject.

509. *de*: see l. 111. *qui*, etc.: the construction is: *qui, locuti, dixerunt*; (who, having spoken, said), *who spoke and said*. *ad*

**hunc modum:** *to this effect*; this is explained by the indirect discourse **non—possent**; **dixerunt** governs **se—permittere**.

510. **non se existimare:** the negative makes a difference in the form of translation; **existimamus**, *we think*; **non existimamus**, *we do not think*; indirect discourse of the latter, *that they did not think (that, etc.)*.

511. **qui possent:** § 172.      **tanta celeritate:** § 78.

512. **se:** this, as shown by **suaque omnia**, is object accusative; strictly, another **se** is to be supplied as subject accusative, but it is regularly omitted in such cases. This phrase is the formula for “surrender at discretion,” or “unconditional surrender.”

513. **unum petere:** *sc. se* as subject; keep the Latin order; *one thing they sought*. **unum** is explained by the clause **ne—spoliaret** (§ 208), *that he would not*, etc. In translating, place the *that* before the **si** clause. **petere ac deprecari:** (*sought and entreated*), *most earnestly begged*. Latin frequently emphasizes one idea by employing two words of similar meaning to express it; see **clementia ac mansuetudine**, l. 514.

514. **pro sua:** *in accordance with his usual*; this force of **suus** is not uncommon. **audirent:** the direct discourse would be the imperfect indicative, *were (continually) hearing of*.

515. **esse conservandos:** § 278.      **se:** i.e. **Aduatucos**; § 123.

516. **armis:** § 65.      **sibi:** § 33.

517. **virtuti:** § 23.      **traditis armis:** *if their arms were surrendered*; § 264, 3.

518. **possent:** § 228. It might be expected that this would have been treated as a main clause, with the verb in the infinitive. **praestare:** direct discourse, **praestat**, impersonal, *it is better* (subject, **pati**); indirect discourse, *that it was better* (subject, **pati**). **si—deducerentur:** *if they were brought to this pass*, i.e. if they must submit to somebody; § 242, 1.

519. **a:** *at the hands of*.

520. **per cruciatum interfici:** (to be killed through torture), *to be tortured to death*.

## CHAPTER 32.

522. **merito eorum:** (because of their merit), *because they deserved it*; § 84.      **si dedidissent:** § 242, 5.

524. **prius quam attigisset:** § 181.

525. **nisi armis traditis:** see note on l. 342.

526. **in:** *in the case of*.

527. **quam:** § 139.



529. *facere*: progressive; see l. 500.

531. *summam altitudinem*: *the greatest height*, i.e. the height where it was greatest.

534. *portis patefactis*: *they opened . . . and*, etc. die: § 89.  
pace: § 73. usi: see vocabulary.

### CHAPTER 33.

535. *sub vesperum*: *towards evening*. Caesar uses *sub* in a temporal sense only with *lucem*, *occasum solis*, *noctem* and *vesperum*.

536. *quam*: § 139.

537. *ante inito consilio*: (the plan having been gone into before), *according to a plan previously arranged*. ut *intellectum est*: that is, by the subsequent attack.

539. *denique*: see vocabulary. *indigentius*: the standard of comparison is often omitted when it is self-evident; so here, supply *than usual*.

540. *partim*—*partim*: this is in distributive apposition with *illi*, the subject of *fecerunt* below; it may be loosely translated: *some—others*.

541. *ex cortice*: § 67. *viminibus intextis*: § 71.

542. *pellibus*: § 71.

543. *qua*: adverb.

545. *fecerunt*: the whole sentence beginning with *illi* is apparently very complicated, but, like most of Caesar's long sentences, is clear and easy if the proper relation of the clauses is observed.

547. *concursum est*: (it was run together), *the soldiers all ran*; § 148. Treat in the same way *pugnatum ab hostibus est*. ita: *as*. in—*salutis*: see l. 453.

548. *a viris fortibus pugnari debuit*: compare l. 547.

550. *iacerent*: (*were so situated as*) to throw; § 168.

551. *consisteret*: see vocabulary. ad: adverb.

553. *diei*: § 56.

555. *Caesar vendidit*: Caesar's constant purpose in dealing with the Gauls was, indeed, to subdue them to Rome, but to make subjection as easy as possible for them; to absorb them ultimately into the Roman state as contented people, rather than to hold them down, discontented, under an iron rule. To do this he granted them easy terms, but insisted that these be strictly kept. So when a tribe broke faith with him they were made a terrible example, for the warning and ultimate benefit of the rest.

556. *milium*: explanatory to *numerus*; § 36. The translation should be the nominative.

## II. THE EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO THE AREMORICAN STATES.

### CHAPTER 34.

559. *miserat*: this is the first intimation of the detachment of Crassus. It must have been after the battle with the Nervii, for all the eight legions were engaged there. Crassus seems to have been a very energetic officer, who was quite capable of independent command.

561. *Oceanum*: except for the description of the geography of Gaul in Book I, Chapter 1, we have had no reference to the ocean. Of course the Atlantic is meant, although it was understood to include also the North Sea, into which the Rhine empties; see Book IV, l. 138.

## III. OCCURRENCES AT THE CLOSE OF THE YEAR.

### CHAPTER 35.

564. *omni Gallia pacata*: this ablative absolute should be distinguished in translation from *his rebus gestis*. The latter is the means by which Gaul was subdued: *when all Gaul had been subdued by these operations*.

565. *opinio*: see vocabulary.

566. *incolerent*: § 203.

567. *qui pollicerentur*: § 162. *daturas, facturas*: feminine, because *se* refers to *nationibus*. The conjunction *et* is omitted between these two participles, to increase the effect. There is thus brought about a kind of rhyme, which under ordinary circumstances the Romans avoided.

569. *inita aestate*: see vocabulary and l. 537.

570. *quae civitates*: (what states), *those states which*. in Carnutes, etc.: modifies *deductis*.

572. *legionibus . . . deductis*: the location of these legions was thus such that the Gallic tribes on different sides of the river could not combine. This was characteristic of all Caesar's plans.

573. *ex litteris*: on receipt of despatches. *supplicatio*: this was a religious ceremony, a thanksgiving and a rejoicing for victory, with which the people were ordered by the senate to honor the gods when there was cause for it. And now there *was* cause for it; as Plutarch says: "The enemies from the north who had so long threatened Italy had been followed to their remote fastnesses, conquered, slaughtered and sold." Now for the first time the republic was released from the fear of Gallic invasion, the only dread the Romans had.

574. *quod*: the antecedent is the preceding clause; (*an honor*) *which*. *accidit nulli*: note the position of the pronoun; *had been bestowed upon no one*. This action of the senate was partly spontaneous as shown above, partly political; for no doubt Caesar's supporters made the most of the opportunity to shower honors upon him for political effect. The longest previous thanksgiving was of twelve days, in honor of Pompey after the war with Mithradates.

## APPENDIX

The grammars cited are those of Gildersleeve (G.), Allen & Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), Harkness (H.), and West (W.).

### SYNTAX OF NOUNS

**Agreement of Appositive and Predicate Substantive.** G. 321, 211; A. 281-284; B. 169, 168; H. 393; W. 291, 292, 290.

- 1 **RULE:** An appositive or a predicate substantive agrees in case with the word it explains; when possible, it agrees in gender and number also.

*reperit ipsum esse Dumnorigem*, I. 18, 3, *he finds that Dumnorig is THE VERY ONE.* *cōnitrandī hās esse causās*, II. 1, 2, *that the causes of uniting were THESE.*

In these examples both words are accusative in Latin and nominative in English, but the rule holds equally.

- 2 An appositive is placed beside the word it explains without a connecting verb.

**NOTE.**—When an appositive has also a predicate force, it is often best shown in translation by inserting the word *as*.

*hominēs bellicōsōs . . . finitimōs habere*, I. 10, 2, *to have warlike men (AS) NEIGHBORS.* *liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit*, II. 5, 1, *he ordered the children to be brought to him (AS) HOSTAGES.*

- 3 A predicate substantive occurs after *sum*, and *fiō*, *become*, *videor*, *seem*, *appear*, *appellor*, *be called*, etc. See § 17.

*quī Celtæ appellantur*, I. 1, 1, *who are called CELTS.* So II. 4, 10.

- 4 An appositive may explain in part the word it modifies; e.g. *alius*, *alter*, *pars*. This is called *distributive apposition*.

*Helvētīi, . . . alīī vadīs Rhodanī*, I. 8, 4, *the Helvetians . . . SOME by the fords of the Rhone.*

## NOMINATIVE CASE.

**Subject of Verb.** G. 203; A. 339; B. 170; H. 387; W. 289.

- 5 **RULE :** The subject of a finite verb (i.e. one that has person and number) is in the nominative.

The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the accusative (§ 257). But the subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative (§ 258).

## VOCATIVE CASE.

**Vocative of Address.** G. 201, Remark 1; A. 340; B. 171; H. 402; W. 307.

- 6 **RULE :** The name of a person or thing addressed is in the vocative.

It is independent of the rest of the sentence in construction, and therefore has no real syntax (i.e. relation to another word).

*dēsilitē, commilitōnēs*, IV. 25, 6, *jump down, FELLOWS !*

## ACCUSATIVE CASE.

**Accusative of Direct Object.** G. 328-330; A. 387, 388; B. 172-174; H. 404, 405; W. 308-310.

- 7 **RULE :** The direct object of a verb is in the accusative.
- 8 Many verbs of emotion and the like, which are intransitive in English, may be transitive in Latin; they then require the addition of a preposition in translating, as follows : *queror complain (of)*, *contendō, strive (for)* *labōrō, labor (for)*, *horreō, shudder (at)*, *dēspērō, despair (of)*, etc.; the last only in the ablative absolute passive (see vocabulary).
- 9 Some verbs of motion, usually intransitive, may be used transitively, especially *fugiō, flee*, and its compounds *dēfugiō* and *effugiō*, in the sense of *escape, shun* or *avoid*. See vocabulary.

**Accusative with Compounds.** G. 331; A. 388, *b*, 395; B. 175, 2, *a*, 179; H. 406, 413; W. 311.

- 10 **RULE :** Verbs compounded with prepositions take the accusative, *when they become transitive*, as follows : all with

circum, per, praeter, trans and subter, many with ad, in and super, some with ante, con, inter, ob and sub.

id Helvëtiî transibant, I. 12, 1, *THIS the Helvetians (were going across) were crossing.* suôs circumvenire, II. 8, 4, *to surround HIS MEN.*

So praecedunt in the following example, a very unusual use. See lexicons.

reliquôs Gallôs praecedunt, I. 1, 5, *they (go before) surpass THE REST OF THE GAULS.*

- 11 If the simple verb is transitive, the compound verb may take two accusatives, (1) one the object of the verb, (2) the other of the preposition. In the passive the object of the verb becomes the subject (1), the object of the preposition (2) remains accusative.

trës partës<sup>1</sup> cöpiarum id flûmen<sup>2</sup> tradûxerunt, I. 12, 2, *they have led THREE FOURTHS<sup>1</sup> of their troops across THIS RIVER.<sup>2</sup>* So II. 5, 4. multitûdô<sup>1</sup> Rhënum<sup>2</sup> tradûcitur, I. 31, 16, *A GREAT NUMBER<sup>1</sup> is being led across THE RHINE.<sup>2</sup>* So II. 4, 1.

With many of these compounds the preposition may be repeated, but never circum.

#### Accusative of Inner Object (Accusative of Result Produced).

G. 332, 333; A. 390, c; B. 176, 2; H. 409; W. 312, 313.

- 12 RULE: Neuter pronouns and adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive idea that lies in the verb.

idem cönari, I. 3, 5, *(to attempt THE SAME THING), make the same attempt.* id eis persuadëre, I. 2, 3, *(to persuade them IT), to persuade them of it, or to persuade them (to do) it.*

NOTE.—When this accusative takes the form of a noun of kindred derivation or signification with the verb, it is called the *cognate accusative*. Examples in English are,—*to dream a dream, to run a race, to see a sight or vision.*

tridui viam procëdere, I. 38, 1, *to proceed A three days' MARCH.* So IV. 4, 5.

#### Accusative of Extent in Degree (Adverbial Accusative). G. 334;

A. 390, c, d, 397, a; B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; W. 316.

- 13 RULE: The accusative is used adverbially to denote extent in degree.

This accusative answers the question, *How much? To what extent?* It is an extension of the preceding use (§ 12), and is mostly confined to the neuter singular of adjectives and pronouns (often classed as adverbs), e.g. multum, *much*, plûs, *more*, plûrimum, *very much*, *very*, the

*most, paulum, a little, nihil, not at all, quid (indefinite), at all, aliquid, nōn nihil, somewhat, etc.* It also includes some special expressions.

*plūrimum posse*, I. 3, 7, II. 4, 5, *to be THE MOST powerful.* *māximam partem vivunt*, IV. 1, 8, *they live FOR THE MOST PART.*

**Accusative of Extent in Time and Space (Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space).** G. 335, 336; A. 423, 2, 425; B. 181, 1; H. 417; W. 324.

- 14 **RULE:** Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

This construction appears in English as one form of the *adverbial objective* (see translation of examples below). It answers the question, *How long? How far?* Or, with *longus, lātus* or *altus*, simply, *How?*

*rēgnum multōs annōs obtinēre*, I. 3, 4, *to hold royal power MANY YEARS.* *mīlia passuum CCXL patēre*, I. 2, 5, *to extend two hundred and forty MILES.*

**Two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing.** G. 339; A. 396; B. 178; H. 411; W. 318.

- 15 **RULE:** Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching* and *concealing* may govern two accusatives, (1) one of the person, (2) the other of the thing.

With verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, the English may also have the same construction, e.g. *he asked me<sup>1</sup> my opinion,<sup>2</sup> he teaches me<sup>1</sup> Latin.<sup>3</sup>* With the verb *to demand*, the name of the person is expressed with *of*; and with *to conceal*, with *from*, e.g. *he concealed it<sup>2</sup> from me.<sup>1</sup>*

*Aeduōs<sup>1</sup> frūmentum<sup>2</sup> flāgitāre*, I. 16, 1, *he was demanding (§ 258) GRAIN<sup>2</sup> (OF) THE AEDUANS.<sup>1</sup>* Only example in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

In the (rare) passive of this construction, either of the accusatives may become nominative, the other remaining accusative.

**NOTE.**—Verbs of asking more frequently express the person by the ablative of source (§ 67).

*ab eō pōstulāre*, I. 34, 1, *to demand OF HIM.*

**Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing.** G. 340; A. 393; B. 177; H. 410; W. 317.

- 16 **RULE:** Verbs of *naming, making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing* and the like may govern two accusatives of the same person or thing.

*quem vergobretum appellant*, I. 16, 5, *WHOM they call "VERGO-*

BRET." **Caesarem certiorē faciant**, I. 11, 4, (they make CAESAR MORE CERTAIN), *they inform Caesar*.

- 17 In the passive of this construction the first accusative becomes subject nominative, the second a predicate nominative (§ 3).

(Caesar) **certior fiēbat**, II. 1, 1, (CAESAR was made MORE CERTAIN), *Caesar was informed*. See also example under § 3.

**Two Accusatives with Compounds.** See § 11.

**Terminal Accusative (Place to Which, Place Whither).** See § 94.

**Accusative, Subject of Infinitive.** See § 257.

**Accusative with Prepositions.** G. 416; A. 220, *a*; B. 141; H. 420; W. 242.

- 18 The accusative is used with all prepositions which do not govern the ablative. For the list of the latter and of those that govern either case, see § 90.

## DATIVE CASE.

**Dative of Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.** G. 345; A. 362-365; B. 187, 1; H. 424; W. 326, 327.

- 19 **RULE:** The dative is used to denote the indirect object, with transitive verbs which already have a direct object expressed or understood in the active voice, or which are in the passive.

It is translated in English by the indirect object or by *to* or *for*, and may be distinguished from other uses of the dative translated by the same prepositions by inquiring if it *can* be translated by an indirect object.

**eī filiam suam dat**, I. 3, 5, *he gives HIM his daughter*, or, *he gives his daughter TO HIM*. **ea res est Helvētīs enūntiāta**, I. 4, 1, *this conspiracy was made known TO THE HELVETIANS*, or, *was told THE HELVETIANS*. **illīs rēgna conciliāre**, I. 3, 6, *to win (FOR) THEM the power*.

- 20 Some verbs, especially **dōnō**, *present*, **circumdō**, *put around*, *surround*, and **circumiciō**, *throw around*, may take either (1) the dative of the person and (2) the accusative of the thing, or (3) the accusative of the person and (4) the ablative (of means) of the thing. See next page.



*patrem* 'civitate' *dōnāre*, I. 47, 4, to present HIS FATHER' WITH CITIZENSHIP; 'this might have been written, *patri* 'civitatem' *dōnāre*, to present HIS FATHER' CITIZENSHIP.' Compare VII. 11, 9. *circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus*, II. 6, 2, (a multitude of men having been thrown around THE WHOLE WALLS), after stationing a large force of men all around the walls.

- 21 In Caesar *circumdō* always takes the accusative and the ablative, except in VII. 72, 3, where there is the accusative of the thing and the locative ablative.

**Dative of Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs.** G. 346; A. 366; B. 187, II; H. 424; W. 330.

- 22 **RULE:** The dative is used to denote the indirect object with intransitive verbs.

*fortūnae cedere*, VII. 89, 2, to yield TO FORTUNE.

Under this construction is included the so-called

**Dative with Special Verbs.** G. 346; A. 367; B. 187, II. a; H. 426, I, 2; W. 330 f.

- 23 **RULE:** With certain verbs the Latin uses a dative which with the corresponding English verbs is translated by an objective. These are,—

"Verbs of *advantage* or *disadvantage*, *yielding* and *resisting*, *pleasure* and *displeasure*, *bidding* and *forbidding*."—GILDERSLEEVE.

"Most verbs signifying to *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their contraries; also to *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, *spare*."—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH.

"Verbs signifying *favor*, *help*, *injure*, *please*, *displease*, *trust*, *dis-trust*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like."—BENNETT.

"Verbs meaning to *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, *benefit* or *injure*, *favor* or *oppose*, *trust* or *distrust*, and the like; and to *indulge*, *aid*, *spare*, *pardon*, *believe*, *persuade*, *flatter*, *threaten*, *envy*, *be angry*, and the like."—HARKNESS.

"Verbs meaning to *favor*, *please*, *trust*, *assist*, and their opposites; *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *threaten*, *pardon*, *spare*, *persuade*, and the like."—WEST.

A dative put, remember, pray,  
 After *envy, spare, obey,*  
*Persuade, believe, command* ; to these  
 Add *pardon, succor and displease*;  
 With *vacāre, to have leisure,*  
 And *placēre, to give pleasure,*  
 With *nūbere, of the woman said,*  
 The English of it is *to wed.*  
*Servire* add, and add *studēre,*  
*Heal, favor, hurt, resist and indulgēre.*

*cīvitātī persuāsit ut exirent*, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded* (THE STATE) THE  
 CITIZENS *to emigrate.* *novīs imperiīs studēre*, II. 1, 3, *to desire*  
 CHANGES OF GOVERNMENT.

- 24 The verbs in the *Bellum Gallicum* that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: *persuādeō* (17), *studeō* (16), *noceō* (6), *parcō* (6), *resistō* (5), *ignōscō* (3), *indulgeō* (3), *placeō* (3), *pareō* (3), *cōnfidō* (3), *dēspērō* (3), *diffidō* (2), *serviō* (2), *faveō* (2), *imperō* (2), *cupiō* (1), *dēnūtiō* (1), *invideō* (1), *medeor* (1), *temperō* (1), *obtemperō* (1), *repugnō* (1); perhaps also *prōsum* (1), *cōsulō* (9), *prōspiciō* (2); and *audiens sum* (4) = *oboediō, obey*, and *fidem habeo* (1) = *cōnfidō*; and *satis faciō* (4).

- 25 Some of these verbs may also take as a direct object an accusative of a neuter pronoun, an accusative and infinitive, or a clause. But the English, having translated the dative by a direct object, has to express the Latin accusative by some other method. See the first example under § 23 and the second under § 12.

- 26 In the passive these verbs are used impersonally, thus: *mihi persuādētur*, I. 40, 3, (it is persuaded me), *I am persuaded.* So *tibi persuādētur*, *you are persuaded*, *ei persuādētur*, etc.

**Dative with Verbs compounded with Prepositions.** G. 347; A. 370-372; B. 187, III; H. 429; W. 332.

- 27 **RULE:** The dative of indirect object is used with many (but not all) verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super*, and sometimes with *circum*.

This dative is due to the meaning of the compound verb and really follows the principles laid down in §§19, 22 and 23.

1. When one of these prepositions is compounded with a transitive verb, there may be both an accusative and a dative, and the construction is that of § 19; the dative is usually rendered as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin verb.

**Initimīs bellum Inferre**, I. 2, 4, *to wage war on THEIR NEIGHBORS.*  
**His legātōs praefecit**, II. 11, 3, *he placed legati in command of THESE.*

2. When the simple verb is intransitive the construction is the same as that of § 22; if the English verb used in translation is transitive, the dative is translated by the objective (compare § 23); otherwise as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin.

**omnibus praestāre**, I. 2, 1, *to surpass ALL.* **Rēmīs studium prōpugnandī accessit**, II. 7, 2, (a desire of fighting forth came to THE REMI), *a disposition to make sorties was inspired in the Remi.*

The *intransitive* verbs in the *Bellum Gallicum* that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: **appropinquō** (11), **occurrō** (10), **succedō** (6), **subveniō** (4), **obveniō** (3), **intercedō** (2), **succurrō** (2), **accedō** (1), **adsum** (1), **insistō** (1), **obsistō** (1), **praestō** (1), **succumbō** (1), **intersum** (1).

Note.—The passive of these verbs must be used impersonally; compare § 26.

**Quibus rēbus occurrendum est**, I. 33, 5, (it must be run against WHICH THINGS), *these conditions must be met.* **hūc rei praevertendum existimāvit**, VII. 33, 3, *THIS MATTER he thought should be forestalled.*

**Dative of Reference.** G. 345, 352; A. 376–379; B. 188; H. 425, 4; W. 335.

- 28 **RULE:** The dative denotes the person with reference to whom a statement is true.

This use of the dative may be tested by trying the translation “*with reference to*”; it is frequently rendered by a possessive. It does not modify the verb directly but belongs to the thought of the whole predicate.

**Caesarī ad pedēs sēsē prōiēcērunt**, I. 31, 2, (they threw themselves, WITH REFERENCE TO CAESAR, at his feet), *they threw themselves at Caesar’s feet.* **millibus spem minuit**, V. 33, 1, (WITH REFERENCE TO THE SOLDIERS, it lessened hope), *it lessened the soldiers’ hope.*

**Dative of Separation.** G. 345, 1; A. 381; B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; W. 337.

- 29 This term is applied to a dative of reference which occurs with verbs of *taking away* and the like, usually with verbs compounded with *ab*, *dē* or *ex*. It is usually best translated as the object of the preposition *from*, suggested by the verb, though the Latin thought was simply *with reference to* (§ 28).

*Aeduīs libertātem ēripere*, I. 17, 4, *to take away liberty FROM THE AEDUANS.* *hostibus spēs discēssit*, II. 7, 2, *FROM THE ENEMY hope departed.*

**Dative of the Possessor.** G. 349; A. 373; B. 190; H. 430; W. 340.

- 30 **RULE:** The dative is used with forms of the verb *sum* to denote the person possessing the subject.

In this construction three points are to be noticed:

	<i>Person Possessing.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Thing Possessed.</i>
Latin	<i>mihi</i> , dative	<i>est</i>	<i>liber</i> , nominative
English	<i>I</i> , nominative	<i>have</i>	<i>a book</i> , objective

*nōbīs nihil est*, I. 11, 5, (nothing is TO US), *we have nothing.* *nōbīs est in animō iter facere*, I. 7, 3, (to make a march is TO us in mind; WE have it in mind to march), *we intend to march.* *potestās erat nūllī*, II. 6, 3, (the power was TO NO ONE, NO ONE had the power), *no one could.*

Some compounds of *sum*, especially *absum* and *dēsum*, also take this construction.

**Dative of (Apparent) Agent.** G. 354, A. 374; B. 189; H. 431; W. 339.

- 31 **RULE:** The dative is used to denote the agent with the passive periphrastic conjugation or the gerundive alone.

Since the preposition *by* is used to express agency in English, it must be employed in translating this dative. For the passive periphrastic conjugation, see § 278.

*mihi exspectandum est*, I. 11, 6, (it must be waited BY ME), *I must wait.* *omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum*, I. 31, 14, *the same thing must be done BY ALL THE GAULS.* (*mihi*) *dubitandum est*, II. 2, 5, (it ought to be hesitated BY ME), *I ought to hesitate.*

**Dative of the Object for Which (Dative of Purpose or End).**

G. 356; A. 382; B. 191; H. 433; W. 341-343.

- 32 **RULE:** A dative is used to denote the object for which a thing serves, or the purpose of an action.

This may be accompanied by another dative of indirect object or of reference, and the construction is then sometimes termed the *double dative*,—*object for which and person to whom*.

The dative of the object for which is literally translated as the object of the preposition *for*; but the best translation when used with a form of *sum* is by a predicate noun; in most other cases after *as*.

*equitatus quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui miserant*, I. 18, 10, *the cavalry which the Aeduans had sent to Caesar (FOR AID)*, AS AN AUXILIARY FORCE. So II. 8, 5. *Gallis impedimentō erat*, I. 25, 3, *it was (for) A DIS-*

ADVANTAGE *to the Gauls. praesidiō impedimentis erant*, II. 19, 3, (were FOR A GUARD to the baggage), *guarded the baggage*.

**Dative with Adjectives.** G. 359; A. 383-385; B. 192; H. 434; W. 333.

- 33 **RULE:** Adjectives of *likeness, fitness, friendliness, nearness*, and the like, with their opposites, are modified by a dative.

*proximī Germānīs* I. 1, 4, *nearest (TO) THE GERMANS* So II. 3, 1. *castrīs idoneus*, I. 49, 1, II. 17, 1, *suitable FOR A CAMP*.

An adverb derived from such an adjective may also take this construction.

*legiōnī feliciter*, IV. 25, 3, *fortunately FOR THE LEGION*.

NOTE.—*Propior* and *proximus*, and corresponding adverbs, *may* govern the accusative, as if prepositions.

*proximī Rhēnum*, I. 54, 1, *nearest THE RHINE*. So III. 7, 2.

**GENITIVE CASE.***I. Genitive with Nouns.*

**Adnominal Genitive (Genitive with Nouns).** G. 360, 1; A. 342; B. 195; H. 439; W. 347.

- 34 **RULE:** A substantive in the genitive is used to limit or describe another usually denoting a different person or thing.

The genitive with nouns is usually equivalent to the English possessive case or to the objective, with *of*, but the following subdivisions of its use need to be distinguished.

**Appositional Genitive.** G. 361, 1; A. 343, *d*; B. 202; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

- 35 The genitive is sometimes used in the sense of an appositive after such words as *vox*, *expression*, *nōmen*, *name*, *verbum*, *word*, etc.  
*nōmen obsidum*, III. 2, 5, *the name (of) HOSTAGES*.

**Epexigetical Genitive (Explanatory Genitive, Genitive of Material).** G. 361, 2; A. 344; B. 197; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

- 36 The genitive is sometimes used to explain the noun it modifies.  
*locus grātiaē*, I. 18, 8, *a position OF FAVOR*. *cōpia pābuli*, II. 2, 1, *plenty OF FODDER*.

**Possessive Genitive.** G. 362; A. 343; B. 198; H. 440, 1; W. 353.

- 37 The possessive genitive designates a person, more rarely a thing, to whom something (denoted by the modified noun) belongs. It may include the idea of origin or of fitness.  
*finēs Belgārum*, I. 1, 5, II. 2, 6, *the territory OF THE BELGIANS*.

- 38 Possession in the first and second persons and in the third person *if reflexive* is indicated by the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns), instead of by the genitive of a personal pronoun. But when *omnium* is added, *nostrum* and *vestrum* (genitives plural of *ego* and *tū*) are used. Distinguish these forms from *nostrī* and *vestrī*, used as objective genitives (§ 43).

*prōvinciam nostram*, I. 2, 3, *OUR province*. *suīs finibus*, I. 1, 4, *from THEIR OWN territory*. *in eōrum finibus*, I. 1, 4, *in THEIR (i.e. some one's else) territory*. *omnium vestrum cōsēnsū*, VII. 77, 4, *by the consent OF YOU all*.

**Subjective and Objective Genitives.** G. 363, 364; A. 343, Note 1, 348; B. 199, 200; H. 440, 1, 2; W. 350, 351.

- 39 The subjective genitive (§ 39) and the objective genitive (§ 40) are  
 40 used *only with nouns having corresponding verbal ideas*.

When the thought of the two words is expanded into a sentence, the genitive is *subjective* if it would become the subject of an active verb in such a sentence, *objective* if it would become the object of an active verb or the subject of a passive verb, or any adverbial modifier.

The subjective may also be described as denoting the one *on whose part* the action takes place or the condition is true; the objective as denoting that *toward which* the action is directed, or *with reference to which* the condition is true.

SUBJECTIVE: *occāsus sōlis*, I. 1, 7, (the setting of THE SUN), *sunset*; the sun sets; the setting on the part of the sun. *omnium opiniō*, II. 3, 1, *the expectation of ALL*; all expected; expectation on the part of all. *patrum nostrōrum memoria*, II. 4, 2, *the memory (OF OUR FATHERS) of the last generation*; our fathers remembered; memory on the part of our fathers.

OBJECTIVE: *rēgnī cupiditās*, I. 2, 1, *desire (of) FOR ROYAL POWER*; royal power was desired; desire directed toward royal power. *eārum rērum memoria*, II. 4, 3, *the memory OF THESE DEEDS*; remembering these deeds.

- 41 The sense is the only guide to the relation of the two nouns, for in an isolated expression it may be impossible to tell which is meant. E.g. *amor Dei*, *the love of God*, may mean in either Latin or English, (1) *the love which God has for some one, love on the part of God* (God loves), subjective, or (2), *the love which some one has for God, love directed toward God* (God is loved), objective.

To avoid this ambiguity both languages may substitute prepositional phrases for the objective genitive, Latin *in*, *ergā*, English *for*, *toward*, *to*.

*Diviciāci* (subjective) *summum in populum Rōmānum studium*, I. 19, 2, *the great devotion OF DIVICIACUS TO THE ROMAN PEOPLE*. *dēspectus in mare*, III. 14, 9, *a view OF THE SEA*. So *ergā*, V. 54, 4.

- 42 Both these genitives may be connected with the same noun.

*veterēs Helvētiōrum* (subjective) *iniūriæ populī Rōmānī* (objective), I. 30, 2, (THE HELVETIANS' ancient injuries OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE), *the ancient injuries inflicted by the Helvetians upon the Roman people*.

- 43 The subjective genitive, like the possessive (§ 38), is used only of the third person, not reflexive. For the first and second persons and the third person *if reflexive*, the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns) are used. But for the objective relation in such cases the forms *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī* and *vestrī* are generally used.

SUBJECTIVE: *sui mōrēs*, I. 4, 1, *THEIR customs*. *nostra memoria*, II. 4, 7, *OUR memory*. But, *scelus eōrum*, I. 14, 5, *THEIR crime*. OBJECTIVE: *sui potestās*, I. 40, 8, *a chance OF (getting at) HIM*. But *suum periculum*, IV. 28, 2, *danger TO THEMSELVES*.

**Genitive of Quality (Descriptive Genitive, Genitive of Characteristic).** G. 365; A. 345; B. 203; H. 440, 3; W. 354.

- 44 The genitive, when modified by an adjective or its equivalent, is used to denote a quality.

*levis armātūræ Numidæ*, II. 10, 1, (Numidians OF LIGHT ARMOR), *light-armed Numidians.* *hominēs māgnæ virtūtis*, II. 15, 4, *men OF GREAT BRAVERY.*

With this use compare the ablative of quality (§ 80). The use of the genitive is limited chiefly to essential qualities and is therefore used of number, measure, time and space; but often the use seems indifferent.

- 45 Under this use is included the *genitive of measure.* *trium mēnsium molita cibaria*, I. 5, 3, *THREE MONTHS' flour*; i.e. *flour enough to last three months.*

NOTE 1. The adjective may be implied in the noun.

*tridui viam*, I. 38, 1, IV. 4, 5, *a THREE DAYS' march.*

NOTE 2. This genitive may be connected with the predicate.

*erat altitudo pedum trium*, II. 18, 3, *the depth was (OF) THREE FEET.*

**Predicate Possessive Genitive.** G. 366; A. 343, b; B. 198, 3; H. 439, second part, and 3; W. 359, 360.

- 46 The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate, with a form of *sum* or a similar verb. *Sum* with this construction may often be translated *belong to*.

*quid sui sit cōsiliū ostendit*, I. 21, 2, *he shows (what is OF HIS PLAN, what belongs to his plan), what his plan includes.* *iudicium est imperatoris*, I. 41, 3, *the decision is THE COMMANDER'S, belongs to the commander.*

*Gallia est Ariovisti*, I. 45, 1, *Gaul belongs TO ARIOVISTUS.*

**Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).** G. 367-372; A. 346; B. 201; H. 440, 5-444; W. 355-358.

- 47 The partitive genitive denotes the whole of a class, of which the modified noun denotes a part. It is used especially as follows :

- 48 (1) With substantives of quantity, number and weight. This use is often hardly to be distinguished from the genitive of material (§ 36).

*carrōrum numerus*, I. 3, 1, *a number OF CARTS.* *multitudo eōrum*, II. 11, 4, *a great number OF THEM.*



- 49 (2) With the neuter singular of many adjectives and pronouns of quantity, in the nominative and accusative. *Here the English uses no preposition.*

**nihil reliquī**, I. 11, 5, *nothing* (of) **LEFT**. **minus dubitātīōnis**, I. 14, 1, *less* (of) **HESITATION**. **satis causae**, I. 19, 1, *sufficient* (of) **REASON**, *reason enough*. **tantum quantum locī**, II. 8, 3, (so much as of PLACE), *as much SPACE*. **nihil vinī**, II. 15, 4, (nothing of WINE), *no WINE*.

This genitive is often widely separated from its noun. E.g. **quid . . . auxiliī**, I. 31, 14; **quid . . . negotiī**, I. 34, 4.

NOTE.—Adjectives of the second declension can be used as substantives in the neuter in this construction; e.g. **reliquī** (see above). But adjectives of the third declension cannot be so used, unless (rarely) when combined with one of the second.

- 50 (3) With numerals, both general and special if used substantively; *with the latter the English uses no preposition.*

GENERAL: **multi eōrum**, V. 22, 2, *many OF THEM*. SPECIAL: **mīlia passuum**, I. 2, 5, II. 6, 1, (thousands OF PACES), *miles*. **hominum mīlia**, I. 26, 5, II. 28, 2, (thousands OF MEN), *thousand men*.

- 51 **Uterque** is commonly used as an adjective with nouns but as a substantive with pronouns.

**uterque eōrum**, VII. 32, 3, *each OF THEM*. Not so, however, II. 16, 2, and IV. 17, 6.

- 52 (4) With comparatives and superlatives, of either adjectives or adverbs.

**Hōrum fortissimī**, I. 1, 3, *the bravest OF THESE*. **tōtīus Galliae plūrimum possunt**, I. 3, 7, *they are the most powerful (§ 13) OF ALL GAUL*. **quārum interior**, VII. 72, 3, *the interior OF WHICH*.

- 53 Instead of the partitive genitive with numerals, pronouns, comparatives and superlatives, the ablative with **dē** or **ex**, or, less often, the accusative with **inter** or **apud**, may be used; especially with cardinals (except **ūnus** when denoting the first of a series) and with **quīdam**. In such cases these prepositions should be translated *of*.

**paucī dē nostrīs**, I. 15, 2, *a few OF OUR MEN*. **proximī ex Belgīs**, II. 3, 1, *the nearest OF THE BELGIANS*.

**Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.** G. 373; A. 359, b; B. 198, 1, 2, 201, 3; H. 475, 2, 446, 4, 5; W. 348, 349.

- 54 The genitive precedes **causā** and **grātiā**, *because*, *on account*, *for the sake*, *for the purpose*. Examples follow on next page.

**hūlus potentiae causā**, I. 18, 6, *for the sake OF (increasing) THIS POWER.* **reī frumentariae causā**, I. 39, 1, *for the purpose OF (procuring) GRAIN; for grain.* **auxiliī causā**, II. 24, 4, *(for the purpose OF AID), as an auxiliary force.*

- 55 A gerund or gerundive preceding **causā** or **gratiā** forms an expression of purpose.

**suī mūlendi causā**, I. 44, 6, *(for the purpose OF PROTECTING HIMSELF), to protect himself; see § 272.* **pūgnandi causā**, II. 10, 4, *(for the purpose OF FIGHTING), to fight; see § 267.*

- 56 The genitive **ēius diēi** is used with the adverbs **pridīe** and **postridīe** (old case forms; see vocabulary). In the *Bellum Gallicum*, **pridīe** is used alone four times and with the genitive once; **postridīe**, six times, always with the genitive.

**pridīe ēius diēi**, I. 47, 2, *the day before (THIS DAY).* **postridīe ēius diēi**, I. 23, 1, *the day after (THIS DAY); the next day.*

- 57 The genitive is used with the indeclinable noun **īstar**, *likeness*.

**īstar mūrī**, II. 17, 4, *(the likeness OF A WALL), like a wall.* Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

## II. Genitive with Adjectives.

**(Objective) Genitive with Adjectives.** G. 374; A. 349; B. 204, 1; H. 450, 451, 1, 2; W. 352.

- 58 **RULE:** The objective genitive is used with some adjectives denoting *fulness* and *want*, *participation*, *power*, *knowledge*, and *ignorance*, *desire* and *disgust*.

"*Desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt and their opposites.*"—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH. "*Desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fulness and their opposites.*"—BENNETT. "*Desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, and the like, with their contraries.*"—HARKNESS.

**bellandi cupidus**, I. 2, 4, *desirous OF CARRYING ON WAR.* **cūlus reī peritissimus**, III. 21, 3, *very skilled IN SUCH MATTERS.*

This construction occurs in the *Bellum Gallicum* 21 times, as follows:—with **perītus** (3), **imperītus** (6), **cupidus** (4), **medius** (3), **īnūētus** (2), **plēnus** (1), **cōnsciūs** (1), and with **similis** in the phrase **vērī simile**, III. 13, 6; elsewhere **similis** takes the dative (§ 33).

The corresponding English meanings do not always admit of as a following preposition; the proper ones in such cases are suggested in the vocabulary.

### III. Genitive with Verbs.

**Genitive with Verbs of Memory.** G. 376; A. 350, 351; B. 206; H. 454; W. 364.

- 59 **RULE:** Verbs of *reminding, remembering and forgetting* govern the genitive.

This genitive is translated by the objective in English.

*reminiscere veteris incommodi*, I. 13, 4, *remember THE FORMER DEFEAT*. So with *obliviscor*, I. 14, 3 and VII. 34, 1. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Genitive with Verbs of Emotion (Genitive with Impersonals).**

G. 377; A. 354; B. 209; H. 457; W. 368.

- 60 **RULE:** *Misereor* and the impersonals *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet*, take<sup>1</sup> the accusative of the person and<sup>2</sup> the genitive of the thing.

*cōsilia, quōrum<sup>2</sup> eōs<sup>1</sup> paenitet*, IV. 5, 3, *plans, OF WHICH<sup>2</sup> (it repents THEM<sup>1</sup>) THEY repent*. Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Genitive with Verbs of Judicial Action.** G. 378; A. 352; B. 208; H. 456; W. 367.

- 61 **RULE:** Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning and acquitting* govern the genitive of the charge.

*inīquitātis condemnārī*, VII. 19, 5, *to be condemned FOR MISCONDUCT*. *prōditiōnis insimulātus*, VII. 20, 1, *accused OF TREASON*. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Genitive with Verbs of Buying, Selling and Rating (Genitive of Price or Value).** G. 379; A. 417; B. 203, 3, 4; H. 448; W. 361-363.

- 62 **RULE:** With verbs of *buying, selling and rating* the genitive is usually employed to express indefinite price.

*tantī tua apud mē grātia est*, I. 20, 5, *your favor with me (is worth so MUCH, is OF SO GREAT ACCOUNT), is so great*. *cūius auctōritās māgnī habebātur*, IV. 21, 7, *whose influence was considered (OF GREAT WEIGHT), great*. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum* besides the two under the following rule.

**Genitive with *Interest* and *Rēfert*.** G. 381, 382; A. 355; B. 212, 2; H. 458, 3; W. 369.

- 63 **RULE:** *Interest* and *rēfert*, *it concerns*, take<sup>1</sup> a genitive of the person, rarely of the thing, concerned.

The degree<sup>1</sup> of concern is expressed by an adverb, an adverbial accusative, or a genitive of value.

The thing<sup>1</sup> about which there is concern is expressed by the subject, which may be a neuter pronoun, an infinitive with subject accusative, or an indirect question.

*docet quantō opere<sup>1</sup> rei publicae<sup>1</sup> intersit manūs<sup>1</sup> hostium distinērī,*<sup>2</sup> II. 5, 2, *he shows* (HOW GREATLY<sup>1</sup> it concerns), *how important it is to THE REPUBLIC,*<sup>1</sup> *that THE FORCES<sup>1</sup> of the enemy BE DIVIDED.*<sup>3</sup> This is the only example of (1) in the *Bellum Gallicum*. *māgnī<sup>1</sup> interest,* with accusative and infinitive, V. 4, 3, VI. 1, 3, *it GREATLY concerns, it is OF GREAT IMPORTANCE.*

*neque interest, ipsōsne<sup>1</sup> interficiāmus an impedimentis exuāmus,*<sup>2</sup> VII. 14, 8, *and* (it does not concern *us*), *it makes no difference, WHETHER<sup>1</sup> WE KILL THEM OUTRIGHT, OR<sup>3</sup> STRIP THEM OF THEIR BAGGAGE.* These are the only instances of *interest* in the *Bellum Gallicum*; *rēfert* does not occur.

**Genitive with Verbs of Plenty and Want.** See § 65, note.

**Genitive with *Potior*.** See § 73, note.

#### ABLATIVE CASE.

- 64 The ablative case unites in its different uses the functions of three cases that were originally distinct in form and meaning,—the true ablative (*ab*, *ferō*), denoting separation, the instrumental and the locative.

**Ablative of Separation.** G. 390; A. 400–402; B. 214; H. 461–466; W. 374–377.

- 65 **RULE:** Separation is expressed by the ablative sometimes with, sometimes without, the prepositions *ab*, *dē* or *ex*.

The preposition is regularly omitted with verbs and adjectives of *freeing*, *excluding*, *depriving*, *lacking*, *abstaining* and *removing*, but is expressed if the substantive denotes a person.

*Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna dividit,* I. 1, 2, *the Garonne separates the Gauls FROM THE AQUITANIANS.* *suīs finibus eōs prohibent,* I. 1, 4, *they keep them (forth FROM) out of THEIR OWN TERRITORY.*

**tūta ab hostibus, II. 5, safe FROM THE ENEMY. ab his castris oppidum aberat, II. 6, 1, FROM THIS CAMP a town was distant.**

**NOTE.** Instead of the ablative, the genitive may be used with certain verbs of *plenty and want*. The *Bellum Gallicum* shows but one example.

**auxiliū egēre, VI. 11, 4, (to be destitute OF AID), to lack aid.**

- 66** The words with which the ablative of separation is used without a preposition can be learned only by practice. The following list contains all the verbs that are *ever* used without a preposition in the *Bellum Gallicum*. The first number in parenthesis indicates the number of times it is used *with* a preposition, the second the number of times it is used *without* a preposition.

Verbs and adjectives of *freeing*, etc. (§ 65): **abstineō** (1, *ā mulieribus*; 1, *proeliō*), **careō** (0; 2), **dēpellō** (0; 3), **dēspoliō** (0; 1), **exspoliō** (0; 1), **exuō** (0; 1), **interclūdō** (6, not collective or personal; 2, *ab exercitū, ā praesidiō et impedimentis*), **interdicō** (0; 3), **levō** (0; 1), **liberō** (0; 3), **nūdō** (0; 2), **spoliō** (0; 3), **supersedeō** (0; 1).

Other verbs: **absum** (25; 1, *tōtō bellō*), **cēdō** (0; 1, *locō*), **dēcidō** (0; 1, *equō*), **dēiciō** (0; 6), **dēassistō** (0; 8), **ēdūcō** \* (18, including *castris*; 2, *castris*), **ēgredior** \* (13; 5), **ēruptiōnem faciō** (1, *ex oppidō*; 4, *portis*, including idea of means), **excēdō** \* (6; 10), **expellō** (2, *ex civitate, ex silvis*; 6), **labor** (0; 1, *spē*), **praecipitō** (0; 1, *mūrō*), **prohibeō**, in sense of *keep away* (2; 14), **prohibeō** in other senses (5; 0).

**Ablative of Place from Which (Place Whence).** See § 91.

**Ablative of Origin (Source).** G. 395, 396; A. 403; B. 215; H. 467, 469, 470; W. 378.

- 67** **RULE:** Origin or source is expressed by the ablative, generally with **ab** or **ex**.

Besides the ordinary forms of source, this use includes *paren'age* and *material*. Parentage is expressed without a preposition except in the case of remote ancestors, when **ab** is used, and in the case of personal pronouns, when **ex** is used. Material is expressed with **dē** or **ex**.

**SOURCE:** **ab aliquō quaerere**, cf. I. 18, 2, II. 4, 1, *to inquire (FROM) of ANY ONE.* **ex sōlō quaerere**, I. 18, 2, *to inquire OF (him) ALONE.*

**Rhēnus oritur ex Lepontīis**, IV. 10, 3, *the Rhine rises (FROM) among THE LEPONTII.*

**MATERIAL:** **nāvēs factae ex robore**, III. 13, 3, *ships made (out) OF OAK.*

**PARENTAGE:** **amplissimō genere**

\* Takes and omits preposition, sometimes with the same noun, without apparent difference in meaning.

*nātus*, IV. 12, 4, (born) OF MOST DISTINGUISHED FAMILY. *ortū*  
*ab Germānīs*, II. 4, 1, (SPRUNG FROM THE GERMANS), of German de-  
*scent.*

**Ablative of Agent.** G. 401, second part; A. 405; B. 216; H. 468;  
 W. 379.

- 68 **RULE:** Agency is regularly expressed by the ablative with  
*ab*, except in connection with the gerundive.

This ablative answers the question, *By whom?* It is the name of a  
 person and is used with the passive voice.

*quī ā senātū amicus appellātus erat*, I. 3, 4, *who had been called friend*  
 BY THE SENATE. *quod ab nōn nullīs Gallīs sollicitārentur*, II. 1, 3,  
*because they were stirred up by some (of the) Gauls.*

For the dative of the agent see § 31.

The person through whom an action takes place is expressed by the  
 accusative with *per*.

**Ablative of Comparison.** G. 398; A. 406, 407; B. 217; H. 471;  
 W. 380.

- 69 When a comparison between two substantives is expressed in full,  
 the comparative word is usually followed by *quam*, *than*, with the  
 second substantive in the same case as the first. This construction  
 may sometimes be condensed, however, in Latin, as follows:

**RULE:** The ablative may be used after comparatives, in-  
 stead of *quam* with the nominative or accusative.

This ablative is translated by *than* with the case of the first sub-  
 stantive.

*nōn amplius quīnīs mīllibus passuum*, I. 15, 5, *not more than five*  
*miles (a day).* So II. 7, 3, 4.

- 70 After *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius* and *longius*, *quam* may be omitted with-  
 out changing the construction to the ablative. In such cases *than* must  
 be supplied in translation.

*spatium quod nōn amplius pedum sēscentōrum*, I. 38, 5, *a distance*  
*which is not more (than) (of) six hundred feet (§ 45).* *flūmen*  
*nōn amplius mīllia passuum X abest*, II. 16, 1, *the river is not more (than)*  
*ten miles away (§ 99).*

**Ablative of Means or Instrument.** G. 401; A. 409, c; B. 218; H. 466; W. 386.

- 71 **RULE:** Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *By what means?* It is translated with the prepositions *by* or *with*, when the sense of these is *by means of*. It is almost always the name of a *thing*; if of a person, it is one considered as a "tool."

*flumine continetur*, I. 1, 5, *it is bounded BY THE RIVER.* *legione militibusque murum perducit*, I. 8, 1, *WITH THE LEGION AND THE SOLDIERS he constructs a wall.* *litteris certior fiebat*, II. 1, 1, *he was informed BY THE DISPATCHES.*

- 72 This ablative is sometimes translated otherwise than as above; for example, when some other idea that is denoted by the ablative is combined with it, or when the English thought is different from the Latin.

*proeliis contendere*, I. 1, 4, *to contend IN BATTLES.* *dolo niti*, I. 13, 6, *to rely ON TREACHERY.* *flumine subvehere*, I. 16, 3, *to bring up (by) THE RIVER.* *viribus confidere*, I. 53, 2, *to rely ON ONE'S STRENGTH.* *victoriis frui*, III. 21, 1, *relying ON THEIR VICTORIES.* *peditatu contentus*, VII. 64, 2, *content WITH INFANTRY.*

**Ablative with Deponents.** G. 407; A. 410; B. 218, 1; H. 477. I; W. 387.

- 73 **RULE:** The ablative of means is used with *utor*, *use*, *fruor*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *potior*, *obtain (control of)*, *vescor*, *eat*, and their compounds.

This ablative is translated by the objective in English.

*imperio potiri*, I. 2, 2, *to obtain CONTROL.* *eodem iure et iisdem legibus uti*, II. 3, 5, *(to use THE SAME RIGHT AND THE SAME LAWS), to have the same constitution and the same laws.*

**NOTE.** Instead of the ablative, the genitive is once used with *potior* in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

*totius Galliae potiri*, I. 3, 8, *to obtain control OF ALL GAUL.*

**Ablative with *opus* and *usus*.** G. 406; A. 411; B. 218, 2; H. 477, III.; W. 389.

- 74 **RULE:** The ablative of means is used with *opus* (indeclinable), *need*, and *usus*, *need*, to denote the thing needed.

**si** quid (acc.) opus (nom.) factū erit, I. 42, 5, (if there shall be need at all, § 13), *if there is any need OF ACTION.* **si** quō opus erit, II. 8, 5, (if there shall be need OF ANYTHING), *if there is any need.* Only examples in the Bellum Gallicum.

**Ablative of Price.** G. 404; A. 416; B. 225; H. 478; W. 395.

- 75 **RULE:** Price is expressed by the ablative when **pretiū** or a similar word is used, or when the amount is definite.

**parvū pretiū**, I. 18, 3, AT A SMALL PRICE. So IV. 2, 2. **levi mōmentū**, VII. 39, 3, OF SLIGHT CONSEQUENCE. **quantū dētrimentū vīctōria cōnstat**, VII. 19, 4, WITH HOW GREAT LOSS *victory would be obtained, how great a loss the victory would cost.* Only examples in the Bellum Gallicum. Compare the genitive of price, § 62.

**Ablative of Attendance (Accompaniment).** G. 392; A. 413; B. 220; H. 473; W. 390.

- 76 **RULE:** Attendance or accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum**.

This ablative answers the question, *With whom? In company with what?*

**cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre**, I. 2, 1, *to set out WITH ALL THEIR POSSESSIONS.* **Sabinum cum sex cohortibus reliquit**, II. 5, 6, *he left Sabinus WITH SIX COHORTS.*

- 77 **cum** may be omitted in military descriptions when the noun is modified by an adjective that is not a numeral.

**omnibus cōpiīs contendere**, II. 7, 3, *to hasten WITH ALL THEIR TROOPS.*

**Ablative of Manner (including Attendant Circumstance).** G. 399; A. 412; B. 220; H. 473, 3; W. 390, 391.

- 78 **RULE:** Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, which may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative answers the question, *How? Under what circumstances?* **māgnū cum periculū erit**, I. 10, 2, *it will be (WITH GREAT DANGER), very dangerous.* **multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāre**, I. 20, 1, *to beseech WITH MANY TEARS.* **māgnū impetū oppugnāre**, II. 6, 1, *to*



*attack* WITH GREAT VIGOR. **māgnō cum strepitū egredi**, II. 11, 1,  
*to set out* WITH GREAT NOISE.

- 79 A few words, many of which have practically become adverbs, are used without a preposition: e.g. **iniūriā**, (with injustice), *unjustly, wrongfully*; **silentiō**, (in silence), *silently*; **commodō**, (with advantage), *advantageously*.

**Ablative of Quality (Characteristic).** G. 400; A. 415; B. 224; H. 473, 2; W. 394.

- 80 **RULE:** A quality or characteristic is expressed by the ablative modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative always modifies a substantive, and may be tested by the translation "characterized by," which in actual rendering should be replaced by *of*.

**Allobrogēs bonō animō nōn vidēbantur**, I. 6, 3, *the Allobroges did not seem* (CHARACTERIZED BY A GOOD FEELING), *of friendly disposition, well disposed*. **Iccius summā nōbilitāte**, II. 6, 4, *Iccius, (a man) (characterized by), OF THE GREATEST PROMINENCE*.

With this construction compare the descriptive genitive, § 44.

**Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference.** G. 403; A. 414; B. 223; H. 479; W. 393.

- 81 **RULE:** The amount (degree) of difference between two objects or actions is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *How much?* It appears before comparatives and words implying a comparison, and in expressions of distance.

In translation it takes the construction of the English adverbial objective; hence *there is no preposition in the English rendering*.

**nihilō minus**, I. 5, 1, (less BY NOTHING, NONE the less), *nevertheless*. **multō facilius**, I. 6, 2, (easier BY MUCH), *MUCH easier*. **paucīs ante diēbus**, I. 18, 10, (before BY A FEW DAYS), *A FEW DAYS before*. **a** (adverb) **mīllibus passuum duōbus**, II. 7, 3, *TWO MILES away*. **paulō longius**, II. 20, 1, (too far BY A LITTLE), *A LITTLE too far*.

**Ablative of Specification.** G. 397; A. 418; B. 226; H. 480; W. 396.

- 82 **RULE:** Specification is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *In respect to what? In what respect?* It is translated as the object of *in*, or, less frequently, of *by*. It modifies verbs, adjectives and, more rarely, nouns.

*virtūte praecedunt*, I. 1, 4, *they excel* IN (respect to) COURAGE. *oppida numero duodecim*, II. 4, 7, *towns twelve* IN (respect to) NUMBER. *nomine Bibrax*, II. 6, 1, *Bibrax* BY NAME.

- 83 Under this use of the ablative is generally considered to belong that with *dignus*, *worthy* (of), VII. 25, 1, and *indignus*, *unworthy* (of), V. 35, 5, VII. 17, 3. ALLEN and GREENOUGH, however, class this under the ablative of cause.

**Ablative of Cause.** G. 408; A. 404; B. 219; H. 475; W. 384, 385.

- 84 **RULE:** Cause is expressed by the ablative generally without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *Why? On what account? For what reason?* It is translated *because of*, *on account of*, *for*, *from*, etc., according to the English word with which it is connected.

*gratiā plurimum poterat*, I. 9, 3, *he was very influential* ON ACCOUNT OF HIS POPULARITY. *virtūte cogniti*, I. 28, 5, *noted* FOR THEIR VALOR. *mōbilitāte animi novis imperiis studēbant*, II. 1, 3, ON ACCOUNT OF THEIR FICKLENESS (of mind) *they desired changes of government*.

- 85 Instead of the simple ablative prepositions are often used; especially *dē* or *ex* with the ablative, or *ob* (see vocabulary) and *propter* with the accusative.

*quā dē causā*, I. 1, 4, *FOR THIS REASON*. *ex cōsuētūdine*, I. 52, 4, *ACCORDING TO THEIR CUSTOM*.

**Ablative of Accordance.**

- 86 An ablative translated *in accordance with* is classed by GILDER-SLEEVE and ALLEN and GREENOUGH as specification, by BENNETT and WEST as manner, by HARKNESS as cause.

*mōribus suis*, I. 4, 1, *according to their customs*. So II. 13, 3.

**Ablative Absolute.** G. 409, 410; A. 419; B. 227; H. 489; W. 397-399.

- 87 **RULE:** A noun and a participle or their equivalents are

used in the ablative to add an attendant circumstance to a sentence.

This construction corresponds to the independent *nominative* with participle in English, hence no preposition is used to translate the Latin case. On account of the rarity of this construction in good English, however, the literal translation should rarely be retained, but should be changed to an active participial construction, a phrase or a clause.

While connected logically or in thought with the rest of the sentence, it has no grammatical connection; hence the name *absolute*.

**rēgnō occupātō**, I. 3, 8, (the control of the government having been seized), *having seized control of the government; after seizing control of the government.*

**initā aestāte**, II. 2, 1; see vocabulary under **ineō**. See also § 364.

- 88 Instead of a noun and a participle there may be (a) two nouns, (b) a noun and an adjective, when the lacking participle of the verb **sum** is understood.

**Messālā, Pisōne cōsulibus**, I. 2, 1, (MESSALA AND PISO) *being CONSULS, in the consulship of Messala and Piso.* **sē invitō**; see vocabulary.

**Ablative of Place Where (Place in Which).** See § 91.

**Ablative of Time.** G. 393, 394; A. 423, 1; B. 230, 231; H. 486–488; W. 406, 407.

- 89 **RULE:** The time when or within which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *When?* It is translated with the preposition *at* or *on* if it is “*time when*,” with the preposition *within* if it is distinctly “*time within which*.”

**eō tempore**, I. 3, 5, **AT THAT TIME.** **eō diē**, II. 6, 2, (ON) **THAT DAY.** **patrum nostrōrum memoriā**, I. 12, 5, **WITHIN THE MEMORY** (of our fathers), *of the last generation.* So II. 4, 7. See also § 105.

**Ablative with Prepositions.** G. 417; A. 220, *b, c*; B. 142; H. 490; W. 243, 245.

- 90 The following prepositions, used in the *Bellum Gallicum*, govern the ablative only: **ā** (*ab, abs*), **cum**, **dē**, **ē** (*ex*), **prae** (*twice*), **prō**, **sine**.

**In** and **sub** govern either accusative or ablative. See vocabulary.

## EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE.

**Place Where (Place in Which or at Which).** G. 385-389, 411; A. 426-431; B. 228, 232; H. 482-485; W. 401-403.

- 91 **RULE:** Place where is expressed by the locative case when it exists (see § 93), otherwise by the ablative with *in*.

*domi*, I. 18, 5, *AT HOME*. *in eorum finibus*, I. 1, 4, *IN THEIR TERRITORY*. *in Galliā*, II. 1, 1, *IN GAUL*.

- 92 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition, and it is frequently omitted in expressions containing forms of *locus*, *pars*, or *tôtus*, and when some other idea is combined with that of place.

*nōn nullis locis*, I. 6, 2, *IN SOME PLACES*. So II. 33, 4. *tôtis castris*, I. 39, 5, *THROUGHOUT THE CAMP*. *castris se ac paludibus tenuerat*, I. 40, 8, *he had kept himself IN CAMP (and) AMONG THE MARSHES*. *proeliō Nervicō*, III. 5, 2, *IN THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII*.

- 93 **LOCATIVE.**—Forms of the locative case are confined to the names of towns and small islands in the singular of the first and second declensions, where it is like the genitive; to a very few in the singular of the third declension, where it is like the dative; and to the following forms of common nouns,—*domi*, *at home*, *rūri*, *in the country*, *humī*, *on the ground*, *militiae* and *belli*, *in war*.

The locative occurs as follows in the *Bellum Gallicum*: *domi*, I. 18, 5, 20, 2, 28, 3, IV. 1, 5, 6, VII. 4, 8, 39, 1; names of towns, V. 24, 1, VI. 44, 3, VII. 3, 3, 10, 4, 14, 1 (three times), 31, 4, 32, 1, 47, 5, 55, 5, 57, 1, 77, 1, 90, 7, 8.

**Terminal Accusative (Place Whither, Place to Which).** G. 337; A. 426-431; B. 182; H. 418, 419; W. 325.

- 94 **RULE:** Place whither or to which is usually expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

*pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis*, I. 1, 6, *they extend TO THE LOWER PART of the river*. *in interiorem Galliam deducere*, II. 2, 1, *to lead (them) INTO THE INTERIOR OF GAUL* (§ 113).

- 95 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also *domum*, *domōs*, when meaning *home*, and *rūs*, *into the country*. But *ad* may be used with the name of a town to denote motion to its vicinity.

*domum reditiō*, I. 5, 7, *a return HOME*. *domum pervenire*, II. 11, 1, *to get HOME*. *Bibracte ire*, I. 23, 1, *to go TO BIBRACTE*. *ad Genāvam pervenit*, I. 7, 1, *he arrives IN THE VICINITY OF GENEVA*.

**Place Whence (Place from Which).** G. 390, 391; A. 426–431; B. 229; H. 491, I. 2, II. 2; W. 404.

- 96 **RULE:** Place whence or from which is usually expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē* or *ex*.

*dē suis finibus exire*, I. 2, 1, *to go out FROM THEIR TERRITORY*. *ex castris educere*, II. 8, 5, *to lead out FROM CAMP*.

- 97 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also *domō*, *from home*, and *rūre*, *from the country*. But *ab* may be used with the name of a town to denote motion from its vicinity.

*domō efferre*, I. 5, 3, *to take FROM HOME*. So IV. 7, 3. *Metiosēdō fugere*, VII. 58, 6, *to flee FROM METIOSEDUM*. *ab Ocelō*, I. 11, 5, *FROM THE VICINITY OF OCELUM*.

- 98 **THE POINT OF VIEW** is expressed by the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; English use, *at* or *on*.

*ūnā ex parte*, I. 2, 3, *ON ONE SIDE*. *ab utrōque latere*, II. 8, 3, *ON EACH SIDE*.

- 99 **DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS EXTENT OF SPACE** is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14).

- 100 **THE WAY BY WHICH** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. This is generally considered as a subdivision of the ablative of means (§ 71).

- 101 **LOCATION AMONG TRIBES** is expressed by the ablative with *in* or by the accusative with *inter* or *apud*.

- 102 **LOCATION NEAR A PLACE** is expressed by the accusative with *ad*, *near*, *at*.

- 103 **DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS AN INTERVAL BETWEEN TWO PLACES** is expressed by the ablative of degree of difference (§ 81).

## EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

- 104 TIME WHEN (TIME AT WHICH) is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89).
- 105 TIME WITHIN WHICH is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89), or, for clearness, with the preposition *in* (e.g. *in cōsulātū suō*, I. 35, 2).
- 106 TIME DURING WHICH (TIME HOW LONG) is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14). See also note to Book I., line 476.
- 107 THE INTERVAL OF TIME before or after an event is generally expressed by *ante* or *post* as prepositions with the accusative, or by *ante* or *post* as adverbs, modified by an ablative of degree of difference (§ 81). E.g. *post trēs annōs*, *after three years*, or *tribus annis post*, *three years after*.

**Roman Dates.** G. Appendix; A. 424, *g*, 631; B. 371; H. 754, 755; W. 718-754.

- 108 The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (*Kalendae*), Nones (*Nōnae*), and Ides (*Idūs*), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: *Kalendae Iānuāriæ*, *Nōnae Februariæ*, *Idūs Martiæ*. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May,  
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,  
The Nones the seventh; but all besides  
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward the Romans used for "the day before" *pridiē* with the accusative. E.g. *pridiē Kalendās Iānuāriās*, Dec. 31.

The longer intervals are expressed by *ante diem tertium, quārtum, etc.*, before the accusative, so that *ante diem tertiam Kal. Iān.* means "two days before the Calends of January;" *ante diem quārtum*, or *a.d. iv.*, or *iv. Kal. Iān.*, "three days before," and so on. (See note on Book I. line 176.) These expressions are idiomatic; the nouns cannot be parsed separately, and the whole may be treated as an indeclinable noun.

TO TURN ROMAN DATES INTO ENGLISH.—For Nones and Ides, add one to the date on which these fall, and subtract the given number;

for Kalends, add two to the number of days in the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlis), I. 6, 4, (31 + 2 — 5), *March 28*.

## SYNTAX AND USES OF ADJECTIVES.

**Agreement of Adjectives.** G. 289, 286; A. 286, 287; B. 234, 235; H. 394, 395; W. 293–295.

- 109 **RULE:** An adjective, a participle (verbal adjective) or an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) agrees with the substantive it modifies in gender, number and case.

- 110 The common attributive modifier of two or more substantives usually agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important.

vir et cōsiliū māgnū et virtūtis, III. 5, 2, a *man of (both) GREAT wisdom and courage*. So V. 11, 5.

**Substantive Use of Adjectives.** G. 204, Notes 1–4; A. 288, 289; B. 236–238; H. 494, 495; W. 409–411.

- 111 Any gender of an adjective may be used alone as a substantive, the ending or the context showing the appropriate sense.

nōbilissimus, adjective, I. 2, 1, *THE MOST PROMINENT*. nōbilissimōs civitātis, I. 7, 3, *THE MOST PROMINENT (men) of the state*. sua omnia, II. 3, 2, *ALL THEIR (possessions)*.

- 112 A certain adjective may have been used most frequently with a particular noun, which comes to be regularly omitted. The gender remains that of the noun with which it was combined.

hīberna (sc. castra), I. 10, 3, III. 2, 1, (*WINTER camp*), *WINTER quarters*. hominēs ferī, I. 31, 5, II. 15, 5, *FERCE men*; but fera (sc. bestia, *beast*), VI. 25, 5, 28, 2, *WILD beast*.

**Partitive Use of Adjectives.** G. 291, 1, Remark 2; A. 293; B. 241, 1; H. 497, 4; W. 416.

- 113 The following adjectives in the *Bellum Gallicum*, being superlatives, or implying order or sequence, sometimes designate a *part* of a following substantive,—primus, extrēmus, summus, medius, infimus (*Imus*), reliquus. See vocabulary. Examples follow.

**summus mōns**, I. 22, 1, **THE HIGHEST PART OF the hill, THE TOP OF the hill.**  
**ad extrēmās fossās**, II. 8, 4, **at THE ENDS OF the ditches.**

**Predicate or Adverbial Use of Adjectives.** A. 191; B. 290; H. 497, 1; W. 412.

- 114 Certain adjectives are best rendered adverbially when they modify the subject;—in the *Bellum Gallicum*, **annuus, laetus, invitus, frequēns, tristis, praeceps**. See vocabulary.

**quī creatur annuus**, I. 16, 5, *who is chosen* **ANNUALLY.** **prae-**  
**cipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant**, II. 24, 2, *they took to flight* **PRECIPITATELY.**

**Adjective Contrasted with Adverb.** B. 241, 2; H. 497, 3, W. 417.

- 115 **Primus** and some similar adjectives must be carefully distinguished from the corresponding adverbs.

**primus prōgressus est**, (he, **FIRST**, advanced), *he was the first to advance*; others, it is implied, advanced afterward. So II. 19, 5. **primum prōgressus est**, *he FIRST advanced*; afterward, it is implied, he did something else. So I. 25, 1, II. 10, 4. **prīmō celeriter prō-**  
**gressus est**, *AT FIRST he advanced quickly*, but presently, it is implied, he slackened his pace. So I. 31, 5, II. 8, 1.

**Translation of the Comparative of Adjectives and Adverbs.**  
 G. 297; A. 291, a; B. 240, 1; H. 298; W. 414, 2.

- 116 The Latin comparative is translated not only by the English comparative, but by *too, rather, somewhat, or quite*, with the positive; and by *very* when the comparative is negated.

**Translation of the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs.**  
 G. 302, 303; A. 291, b; B. 240, 2, 3; H. 498; W. 414, 3, 4.

- 117 The Latin superlative may be translated not only by the English superlative but by *very* with the positive. It may be strengthened by **vel** (compare VII. 37, 6, where **principēs** = **prīmī**), or by **quam** with a form of **possum** expressed or understood (see **quam** in vocabulary).

## SYNTAX AND USES OF PRONOUNS.

- 118 All Latin pronouns may be divided into two classes as regards their syntax: substantive pronouns and adjective pronouns (pronominal adjectives).



**SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUN:** *erant itinera duo quibus exire possent, there were two routes BY WHICH they could emigrate.*

**ADJECTIVE PRONOUN:** *erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent, I. 6, 1, there were two routes BY WHICH ROUTES they could emigrate.*

- 119 The syntax of an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) is the same as of any adjective,—it agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number and case (§ 109).

### Agreement of a Substantive Pronoun.

- 120 **RULE:** Any substantive pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person, number, and gender. Its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

**NOTE.**—The distinction is not always made clear in English grammars. Thus *my* or *mine* is sometimes considered the possessive case of the personal pronoun, *I*, sometimes a possessive adjective. Contrast, "*this box came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative adjective), with "*this came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative pronoun).

### 121 Table of Personal and Possessive Pronouns.

		<i>First Person.</i>		<i>Second Person.</i>	
		Ordinary.	Reflexive.	Ordinary.	Reflexive
Personal		<i>ego, I</i>	_____	<i>tū, (thou), you</i>	_____
		<i>mei, my</i>	<i>mei, of myself</i>	<i>tui, your</i>	<i>tui, of yourself</i>
		<i>mihi, to me</i>	<i>mihi, to myself</i>	<i>tibi, to you</i>	<i>tibi, to yourself</i>
		etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
Possessive	Sing.	<i>meus, a, um, my</i>		<i>tuus, a, um, (thy), your</i>	
	Plu.	<i>noster, tra, trum, our</i>		<i>vester, tra, trum, you</i>	

		<i>Third Person.</i>	
		Ordinary.	Reflexive.
Personal		<i>is, he, ea, she, id, it</i>	_____
		<i>ēius, his, her, its</i>	<i>sui, of himself, of herself, of itself</i>
		<i>ei, to him, to her, to it</i>	<i>sibi, to himself, to herself, to itself</i>
		etc.	etc.
Possessive	Sing.	<i>ēius, his, her, its</i>	
	Plu.	<i>eōrum, eārum, their</i>	<i>suus, a, um, his, her, its (own)</i> <i>suus, a, um, their (own)</i>

**Nominative of the Personal Pronouns Omitted.** G. 304, 1; A. 295, a; B. 242, 1; H. 500; W. 419.

- 122 The personal pronoun is regularly omitted when it would be the subject of a finite verb, being expressed only for emphasis or for contrast.

is coniuratiōnem fēcit, I. 2, 2, *HE made a conspiracy*. Compare also *ego*, IV. 25, 3.

For the use of the possessive pronouns for the genitive of the personal pronouns see §§ 38 and 43.

**Direct and Indirect Reflexives.** G. 309; A. 299–301; B. 244, I, II; H. 502–504; W. 421, 422.

- 123 The reflexive personal and possessive pronouns may refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive); but often, especially in indirect discourse, they refer to the subject of the main clause (indirect reflexive); sometimes to another particularly emphatic word.

- 124 Since the possessive pronouns (except the substitute possessive genitives, *ēius, eōrum, eārum*) are adjectives (see §§ 118 and 121), they take their gender, number and case from the word they modify, not from their antecedent. Therefore it is necessary to find the antecedent of a form of *suus, a, um*, in order to translate it correctly.

*Casticus rēgnum in suā civitatē occupat*, I. 3, 4, *Casticus seizes the royal power in HIS state*.

- 125 For illustration of the contrast between the two possessives of the third person (§ 121), note the following sentence.

*Helvētīi aut suī* (i.e. *Helvētīōrum*) *finibus eōs* (i.e. *Germānōs*) *prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum* (i.e. *Germānōrum*) *finibus bellum gerunt*, I. 1, 4, *the Helvetians either keep them (the Germans) out of THEIR OWN territory or carry on war themselves in THEIR (the Germans') territory*.

- 126 Sometimes two reflexives stand in the same clause of indirect discourse, one referring to the subject of the main verb, the other to the subject of the infinitive. English has the same ambiguity.

*Ariovistus respondit . . . nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse*, I. 36, 6, *Ariovistus answered . . . that no one had fought WITH HIM without HIS OWN destruction, i.e. without being destroyed*. Here *sēcum* refers to *Ariovistus*, and *suā* to *nēminem*.

**Demonstrative Pronouns.** G. 305–308; A. 296–298; B. 246–249; H. 505–509; W. 426–428.

- 127 The three especial demonstrative pronouns are (1) *hic, haec, hoc*, *this* (of mine, or near me), called the demonstrative of the *first* person; (2) *iste, ista, istud*, *that* (of yours, or near you), called the demonstrative of the *second* person, and (3) *ille, illa, illud*, *that* (of his, or near him), called the demonstrative of the *third* person.

When only two objects are contrasted, *hic* and *ille* are generally used; in such cases *hic* usually means *the nearer*, if referring to real position, *the latter*, if referring to that which is nearer in thought; and *ille*, *the more remote*, *the former*.

*Iste* has often a contemptuous, sneering force, as in VII. 77, 5, its only occurrence in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 128 These pronouns, like the English demonstratives (see § 120, note), may be used either as adjectives or as substantives. When used substantively, *especially when referring to persons*, they are generally best translated by personal pronouns.

*huic* (i.e. *Galbae*) *permisit*, III., 1, 3, *he permitted HIM*. It is very bad English ever to say, "He permitted this one," or "He permitted this man."

- 129 *is*, when used *adjectively*, is demonstrative and means either *this* or *that* (*these* or *those*), according to the sense. When used simply as the antecedent of the relative pronoun, it is to be translated *that* (*those*).

PERSONAL PRONOUN: *eī filiam dat*, I. 3, 5, *he gives HIM his daughter*.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE: *ad eās rēs cōficiendās*, I. 3, 3, *for completing THESE preparations*. *eō tempore*, I. 3, 5, *at THAT time*.

ANTECEDENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: *īd quod*, I. 5, 1, *THAT which*.

- 130 *ipse* is the intensive or emphatic pronoun, like the English *himself*, etc., when the latter is *not reflexive* (see § 121); it emphasizes the word with which it is joined. When it is nominative its translation is shown by the person of the verb.

*ipsī bellum gerunt*, I. 1, 4, *they THEMSELVES carry on war*. *ipsī bellum gerimus*, *we OURSELVES carry on war*.

- 131 When *ipse* is used to strengthen a noun not the name of a person it may be translated in various ways.

*in ipsīs ripis*, II. 23, 3, *RIGHT on the bank(s)*. *hōc ipsō tempore* VI. 37, 1, *at this VERY time; JUST at this time*.

- 132 The genitive case of *ipse* is often used, for contrast or emphasis, instead of forms of the possessive reflexive pronoun, *suus*, *a*, *um*, and is then translated *his own*, *their own*, etc.

*ipsōrum linguā*, I. 1, 1, *in THEIR OWN language*. Here *suā* might have been used, but contrast with the following *nostrā* is desired. So I. 21, 1.

- 133 *Ipse* is often used in the nominative to intensify a reflexive pronoun. In such cases it may often be omitted in translation; it sometimes gives the reciprocal force (*each other*). See the examples.

*ipse sibi mortem cōscrivit*, I. 4, 4, (he **HIMSELF** decreed death to himself), *he committed suicide.* *sibi ipsī sunt impedimentō*, II. 25, 1, (they **THEMSELVES** are for a hindrance to themselves), *they hinder each other.*

**Relative Pronouns.** G. 614-619; A. 303-308; B. 250, 251; H. 510; W. 229-304.

**134** **RULE:** A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number. Its case is determined by the structure of the clause in which it stands. See § 120.

**135** Note the use of the relative *adjective* in Latin, much more common than in English.

*quae civitās*, I. 10, 1, (**WHICH** state), *a state which.* See also the first example under § 118.

**136** The Latin often uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence. This should never be translated literally, but generally by a demonstrative (regularly so if it is used adjectively), sometimes by a personal pronoun.

*quārum*, I. 1, 1, **OF THESE.** *quā dē causā*, I. 1, 4, *for THIS reason.*  
*quī*, I. 15, 2, **THEY.** *quī cum*, II. 13, 2, *when THEY.*

For the compound relatives, *quisquis*, *quicumque*, see vocabulary.

**Interrogative Pronouns.** G. 467, Remark 2, 106; A. 148, 104; B. 90; H. 511; W. 148.

**137** In both English and Latin the relative and interrogative words are almost the same if not identical in form. Compare the following sentences:

*Interrogative.*

*Relative.*

Who came? What boy came? Which boy came?

The boy who came.

What happened? What event happened? Which event happened?

The event which happened.

I know who came. I know what boy came. I know which boy came.

I know the boy who came.

**138** For the interrogative pronouns used in the *Bellum Gallicum*, *quis*, *quī*, *quisnam*, and *uter*, see vocabulary. The last is used adjectively, I. 12, 1, and substantively, V. 44, 14, VI. 19, 2.

**Indefinite Pronouns.** G. 313-319; A. 309-315; B. 252; H. 512-515; W. 430-435.

- 139 Forms of *quis* and *qui* are usually indefinite (meaning *any, any one*) after *si, nisi, nē* and *num*.

See vocabulary for the uses of the other indefinite pronouns used in the *Bellum Gallicum*,—*aliquis, aliqui, quidam, quispiam, quisquam, quivis, quisque*.

- 140 *Quisque* following a superlative is to be noted, as an idiom.

*nōbilissimī cūiusque liberī*, I. 31, 12, (the children OF EACH most prominent man), *the children of all the most prominent men*. So I. 45, 3.

### SYNTAX OF VERBS.

**Agreement of Verb.** G. 211, 285-287; A. 316, 317; B. 254, 255; H. 388-392; W. 296-298.

- 141 **RULE:** A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

- 142 The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural unless the two are considered together as a unit.

*Matrona et Sēquana dividit*, I. 1, 2, *the Marne-and-Seine divides*. Here the principal river and its tributary are considered as one, like the "Missouri to the sea."

- 143 Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the plural.  
*cum tanta multitudō cōnicerent*, II. 6, 3, *when such a great number (WERE) was throwing*. Similarly *exirent* (sc. *civitas*), I. 2, 1.

**Impersonal Verbs.** G. 208, 528, 2; A. 208; B. 138; H. 302, 611; W. 233, 442, 4.

- 144 Besides the impersonal verbs common to both Latin and English pertaining to the state of the weather (*it rains*, etc.), which do not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*, and those which are active and take a neuter pronoun, an infinitive or a clause as the subject (*oportet, licet, interest* (§ 63), etc.), there are the following impersonal uses of *passive verbs*.

1. Verbs that take an indirect object in the active voice. See §§ 26 and 27, note.

2. Verbs that take no object in the active voice. These are used impersonally, especially in the compound tenses. The literal translation should not be retained.

*pugnātum est*, I. 26, 1, (*it was fought*), *they fought; the battle raged*.  
*sustentātum est*, II. 6, 1, (*it was sustained*), *the attack was sustained*.

**Tenses of the Indicative.** G. 222-245; A. 465-479; B. 257-264; H. 526-540; W. 445-460.

- 145 **SPECIFIC PRESENT.** The present tense is used of (a) *that which is now going on* or of (b) *that which is undefined or habitual* in the present.

(a) **quō proficiscimur**, VII. 38, 2, *where ARE WE GOING?* (b) **turpissimam servitutē dēditionis nōmine appellant**, VII. 77, 3, *THEY TERM the basest slavery a surrender.*

- 146 **UNIVERSAL PRESENT.** The present tense is used of statements *that apply to all time.*

**omnēs hominēs nātūrā libertātī student**, III. 10, 3, *all men naturally DESIRE liberty.*

- 147 **HISTORICAL PRESENT.** The present tense is used far more frequently than in English *as a lively representation of the past*, or in an annalistic sense.

**profectionem cōfirmant**, I. 3, 2, *THEY DECREE (decreed) their departure.*

- 148 **IMPERFECT TENSE.** The imperfect indicative primarily denotes an action as continued in the past, or a past condition of affairs. It is then accurately translated by the English past progressive. But if the idea of continuance is not strong, or if the voice is passive, the simple past should be used.

**hiemābant**, I. 10, 3, *were passing the winter.* So **populābantur**, I. 11, 1; **exspectābant**, II. 9, 1. Contrast the following: **arbitrābantur**, I. 2, 5; *they thought.* **patēbant**, I. 2, 5, *extended.* **māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur**, I. 2, 4, *(they were being affected with great grief), they were greatly grieved.*

The imperfect also denotes (1) attempted, (2) repeated, (3) accustomed or habitual action in the past.

(1) **prohibēbant**, V. 9, 6, *they tried to prevent.* (2) **cōniciēbant**, I. 26, 3, *they kept throwing.* (3) **versābantur**, I. 48, 6, *they would engage.* **servī cremābantur**, VI. 19, 4, *slaves used to be burned.*

- 149 **PERFECT TENSE.** The Latin perfect has two distinct uses. It is equivalent either to (1) the English past, or to (2) the English present perfect (e.g. **dēmōnstrāvimus**, II. 1, 1, *we have shown*).

**Tenses of the Subjunctive.** G. 277; A. 480-485; B. 266-269; H. 541-550; W. 461-472.

- 150 *The tenses of the subjunctive do not express absolute time. (Over.)*

In independent clauses (§§ 154 and 155) the tenses of the subjunctive generally have especial uses.

In dependent clauses the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive express incomplete action, the perfect and pluperfect completed action. Further than this, the choice of tense is usually determined by the law of *sequence of tenses*.

- 151 **SEQUENCE OF TENSES.** If the tense of the principal verb is *present*, *future* or *future perfect* (the so-called *principal* tenses), it is followed by the *present* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *perfect* subjunctive to denote completed action; if the tense of the principal verb is *imperfect*, *perfect* or *pluperfect* (the so-called *historical* tenses), it is followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *pluperfect* subjunctive to denote completed action.

- 152 This rule is subject to several modifications. (1) The historical present (§ 147) may be considered according to its form as present or according to its sense as past; in the *Bellum Gallicum* it is considered a principal tense about three times out of every four. (2) The present perfect (§ 149, 2) may be felt as giving the past starting point and so be considered as historical, or as giving the present completion and so be considered as principal.

#### PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Pr. (Pure or Hist.),	cōgnōscō,	<i>I am finding out,</i>	{ quid faciās, <i>what you are doing;</i> quid fēcērīs, <i>what you have done,</i> what you have been doing (what you did), what you were doing (before).
Fut.,	cōgnōscam,	<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>	
Pure Pf.,	cōgnōvī,	<i>I have found out (I know),</i>	
Future Pf.,	cōgnōverō,	<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>	

#### HISTORICAL TENSES.

Hist. Pr.,	cōgnōscō,	<i>I am (was) finding out,</i>	{ quid facerēs, <i>what you were doing;</i> quid fēcissēs, <i>what you had done,</i> what you had been doing, what you were do- ing (before).
Impf.,	cōgnōscēbam,	<i>I was finding out,</i>	
Hist. Pf.,	cōgnōvī,	<i>I found out,</i>	
Plupf.,	cōgnōveram,	<i>I had found out (I knew),</i>	

It will be noticed from the above examples that the English has the same rule. Compare also "He comes that he may see," with "He came that he might see."

NOTE.—Exceptions to all these rules of sequence are common, especially in indirect discourse, being sometimes required by the sense, sometimes by clearness, and being often used for vividness.

- 153 FUTURE TIME IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. Since the subjunctive tenses do not represent absolute time, but only complete or incomplete action relative to the time of the principal verb, it follows that *any tense of the subjunctive may refer to the future*, when the action of the principal verb looks to the future. For especial clearness in this respect the active periphrastic conjugation is used (§ 277).

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

**Subjunctive as an Imperative (Hortatory Subjunctive).** G. 263, 1; A. 439; B. 274; H. 559, 1; W. 482.

- 154 RULE: The present subjunctive, first person plural, is used to express an exhortation. The negative is *nē*.  
*persequāmur eōrum mortem*, VII. 38, 8, LET US AVENGE *their* death. So *interficiāmus*, following, and *respiciāmus*, VII. 77, 7.

- 155 NOTE.—The following uses of the subjunctive appear in the *Bellum Gallicum* only in the changed form made necessary by indirect discourse.

**1. Subjunctive as an Imperative (Jussive Subjunctive).** G. 263, 3; A. 439; B. 275; H. 559, 2; W. 482.

RULE: The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the third person, more rarely in the second. The negative is *nē*.

*cum volet, congregiātur* I. 36, 7, LET HIM COME ON *when he* (shall wish) *wishes*.

**2. Deliberative Subjunctive.** G. 265; A. 444; B. 277; H. 559, 4; W. 493.

RULE: The subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt or indignation. The negative is *nōn*.

*Cūr quisquam iūdicet*, I. 40, 2, *why* SHOULD ANY ONE JUDGE?



## MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

**Pure Final Sentences (Subjunctive of Purpose).** G. 545; A. 531; B. 282; H. 564; W. 506-508, 517, 518.

- 156 **RULE:** The subjunctive is used to express purpose or design with **ut (utī), nē, quō, quō minus**, forms of the relative pronoun, and relative adverbs.
- 157 **ut**, the normal introductory word in this construction, means *in order that*, or simply *that*. When either of these conjunctions is used in English, the subjunctive is translated by *may* or *might*. See § 152, end, and § 164.
- sēmentēs facere, ut cōpia frūmentī suppeteret**, I. 3, 1, (to make plantings), *to plant corn*, IN ORDER THAT A SUPPLY OF grain MIGHT BE AVAILABLE. **duās legiōnēs in castris reliquit ut subsidiō dūci possent**, II. 8, 5, *he left the two legions in camp* (IN ORDER THAT THEY MIGHT BE ABLE to be led for aid) *to act as reserves* (§ 164).
- 158 **nē** is the negative of **ut**; it means *in order that . . . not*, or simply *that . . . not*. The verb is translated as with **ut** (§ 157).
- id nē accidat, mihi praecavendum est**, I. 38, 2, *I must be on my guard* THAT THIS MAY NOT HAPPEN. **ibi tormenta collocāvit nē hostēs suōs circumvenire possent**, II. 8, 4, *he placed his artillery there*, THAT THE ENEMY MIGHT NOT BE ABLE to surround his troops.
- 159 When the sentence involves the idea of fearing that a thing *will* happen, though the purpose is that it shall *not* happen, **nē** is translated *lest*, and the subjunctive, usually, by *shall* or *should*.
- nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī trānsīrent**, I. 28, 4, *he did not wish this region to be unoccupied*, LEST THE GERMANS SHOULD CROSS.
- 160 **quō** is really an ablative of means (or degree of difference) and is generally used when there is a comparative in the purpose clause. **quō**, *by which*, = **ut eō**, *that thereby*, or simply *that*.
- castella commūnit, quō facilius prohibēre posset**, I. 8, 2, *he constructed forts* THAT (THEREBY) HE MIGHT BE ABLE more easily to prevent them (from crossing). So II. 17, 4.
- 161 **quō minus** is used after verbs of *hindering, refusing, preventing*, and the like. See § 210.
- 162 The relative pronoun is used chiefly when its antecedent is the object of an active or the subject of a passive or intransitive verb. The equiva-

lent translation is by the periphrastic use of the infinitive with forms of *to be*, or by *shall* or *should*.

*légatōs mittunt quī dicerent*, I. 7, 3, *they sent ambassadors (WHO WERE TO ASK) to ask*. So *quī dēdūceret*, II. 2, 1.

- 163 A form of the relative pronoun in such clauses is equivalent to *ut* with the corresponding form of *is*.

*diem dicunt quā (= ut eā) diē convenient*, I. 6, 4, *they appoint a day ON WHICH (day) THEY SHALL ASSEMBLE*; i.e. they appoint a day that on this day they may assemble.

- 164 Since after many English verbs purpose is regularly expressed by the infinitive, this often forms the best translation for Latin purpose clauses. But this is impossible when the subject of the subjunctive is an expressed noun. See examples, §§ 157–163.

For substantive clauses of purpose, see §§ 208–212.

**Consecutive Sentences (Subjunctive of Result).** G. 552; A. 537; B. 284; H. 570; W. 519, 527, 528.

- 165 **RULE:** The subjunctive is used to denote result with *ut* (*utī*), *ut nōn* and *quān*.

*ut* means *that* or *so that*; the subjunctive is usually translated by the English indicative. *ut nōn* is the negative of *ut*.

*tantī tua grātia est utī condōnem*, I. 20, 5, *your favor is so great (§ 62) THAT I PARDON*. (*collis*) *silvestris ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset*, II. 18, 2, *a hill wooded (SO THAT IT COULD NOT easily be seen into), so thickly that one could not easily see anything among the trees*.

- 166 **Purpose or Result?** Negative result clauses cannot be mistaken for purpose clauses, since *nē*, the introductory word for a negative purpose clause, is not used in expressions of result. Compare the rules.

Clauses of result frequently follow such words as *tantus*, *so great*, *tālis*, *such*, *ita*, *so*, *eius modī*, *hūius modī*, *of such sort*, etc. A sentence containing one of these words is incomplete without a result clause following, so that the presence of such a word indicates this construction.

- 167 If there is no such word as those mentioned above (§ 166), the matter is entirely a question of *meaning*,—was there any *intention* or *will* on the part of the subject of the main clause? If so, the subordinate clause denotes *purpose*; if not, it denotes *result*.

*mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibere possent*, I. 6, 1, a *mountain rose sharply near by, so THAT A VERY FEW (men) could check (them)*. Here, of course, the mountain did not have any *intentions*; hence the clause is one of result.

For substantive clauses of result see §§ 213 and 214.

**Subjunctive of Characteristic.** G. 631; A. 535; B. 283; H. 591; W. 587.

- 168 **RULE:** The subjunctive with *quī* or any relative word may be used to characterize an antecedent, especially when it is general, indefinite or unexpressed.

This subjunctive usually needs an expansion in accurate translation if its force is to be clearly shown. This may be done by supplying words to show its limitations.

*obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, popōscit*, I. 27, 3, *he demanded (of the Helvetians) hostages, their arms, and the slaves THAT HAD DESERTED to them, or what slaves had deserted to them*. If the indicative had been used, the sense would have been different,—*he demanded the slaves, a class which had all escaped to them*. *domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent*, I. 28, 3, *there was nothing at home (BY WHICH THEY COULD SUSTAIN a famine, i.e. such that by it they could endure a famine), to live on*. *duo itinera quibus itineribus exire possent*, I. 6, 1, *two routes (BY WHICH ROUTES THEY COULD go out), (such that) by them they could emigrate*. *soli sunt quī prohibuerint*, II. 4, 2, *they are the only ones THAT PREVENTED*.

- 169 A subjunctive introduced by *quī* follows *dignus*, *indignus* and *idoneus*. This use is generally referred to the above construction, but by Bennett, to § 156. Caesar shows but one example, VII. 31, 2.

### *Causal Clauses.*

**Causal Clauses with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* and *quandō*.** G. 539, 542; A. 540; B. 286, 1; H. 588; W. 543, 544.

- 170 **RULE:** Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *because*, *quia*, *quoniam* and *quandō*, *since*, take the indicative when the reason is stated as a fact, the subjunctive when it is given doubtfully or upon the authority of another person.

The force of the subjunctive can be given in English only by adding parenthetically, "as we said," or a similar phrase.

**INDICATIVE:** *fortissimi sunt Belgae propterea quod longissime absunt*, I. 1, 3, *the bravest are the Belgians (on this account) BECAUSE THEY ARE farthest AWAY.* [*sollicitabantur*], *quod regna vulgo occupabantur*, II. 1, 4, *they were stirred up BECAUSE THE POWER (in individual states) WAS GENERALLY SEIZED.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE:** *quod sit destitutus queritur*, I. 16, 6, *he complains BECAUSE (AS HE SAYS) HE HAS BEEN DESERTED; he complains that he has been deserted.* *Ubi orabant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur*, IV. 16, 5, *the Ubi were asking him to aid them BECAUSE, AS THEY SAID, THEY WERE HARD PRESSED by the Suebi.*

- 171 Verbs of *thinking* and *saying* are occasionally put in the subjunctive when the sense is the same as that which would be given by the subjunctive of the verb they govern, only less clearly expressed.

*Bellovacum suum numerum non contulerunt, quod se suo nomine bellum gesturos esse dicerent*, VII. 75, 5, *the Bellovacii did not furnish their complement (of men), (BECAUSE THEY SAID THAT) because, as they said, they were going to wage war on their own account.* Similarly, *quod viderentur*, II. 11, 5, *because they thought that they were.*

**Causal Clauses with *cum*.** G. 586; A. 549; B. 286, 2; H. 598; W. 542.

- 172 **RULE:** Causal clauses introduced by *cum*, *since*, take the subjunctive.

This subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

*his cum persuadere non possent, legatos mittunt*, I. 9, 2, *SINCE THEY COULD not persuade them, they send ambassadors.* So. II. 11, 1.

**Causal Clauses with *quoniam*.** G. 633; A. 535, e; H. 592; W. 586, 5.

- 173 **RULE:** Causal clauses introduced by *quoniam* take the subjunctive.

The relative is here equivalent to *cum*, causal (§ 172), and the corresponding form of *is*.

*magnum Caesar iniuriam facit quoniam vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat*, I. 36, 4, *Caesar is doing me great injury, SINCE HE IS MAKING my revenues less.* So V, 33, 1, 2, VI. 31, 5.

- 174 A peculiar use of *quod*, *because*, for *eod quod*, *for this reason, because*, occurs once in the phrase *magis eod . . . quam quod*.

mercatoribus est aditus magis eō ut (ea) quae bellō ceperint, (eōs) quibus vendant, habeant, quam quō . . . dēsiderent, IV. 2, 1, *the traders are allowed access to them MORE FOR THIS REASON, that they may have men to whom they may sell what they have captured in war, THAN BECAUSE they desire . . .*

### Temporal Clauses.

- 175 The action of a temporal clause may be in one of three relations to the action of the principal verb:—it may be antecedent (conjunction, *after*) contemporaneous (conjunction, *while, as long as*), subsequent (conjunction, *before*).

**Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, etc.** G. 561–567; A. 543; B. 287; H. 602; W. 530–532.

- 176 **RULE:** Temporal clauses introduced by *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *after*, *ut*, *ubi*, *when*, *simul ac* (*atque*), *as soon as*, take the indicative, usually the perfect.

The historical present is used with *ubi* II. 9, 2, and the pluperfect IV. 26, 2. The English translation is frequently past perfect.

*Ubi certiorēs facti sunt, legātōs mittunt*, I. 7, 3, *WHEN THEY WERE INFORMED, they sent ambassadors.* *postquam . . . cōgnōvit, exercitum trādūcere mātūravit*, II. 5, 4, *AFTER HE HAD LEARNED (this), he hastened to lead his army across.*

**Temporal Clauses with *dum*, *dōnec* and *quoad*.** G. 568–573; A. 553–556; B. 293; H. 603, 604; W. 533.

- 177 The English word *while* has two distinct meanings,—(1) *as long as*, and (2) *at some time during the time that*. Compare the following sentences:—(1) *he waited while* (i.e. *as long as*) *his friend was talking*; (2) *he arrived while* (i. e. *at some time during the time that*) *his friend was talking*.

- 178 **RULE:** Temporal clauses with *dum* in the sense of *while* (= *at some time during the time that*), take the (historical) present indicative.

*dum ea conquiruntur, ē castris ēgressi sunt*, I. 27, 4, *WHILE THESE WERE BEING SOUGHT FOR, they set out from camp.* So III. 17, 1.

- 179 **RULE:** Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, and

**quam diū**, in the sense of *while* (= *as long as*), take the indicative.

**quoad potuit, restitit**, IV. 12, 5, *he resisted AS LONG AS HE COULD*. So V. 17, 3, and **dum**, VII. 82, 1.

- 180 **RULE**: Temporal clauses with **dum**, **dōnec** and **quoad** in the sense of *until* take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or* to represent an act as expected or anticipated).

Compare the construction with **antequam** and **priusquam**, § 181. The subjunctive is idiomatically translated by *can* or *could*.

**SUBJUNCTIVE**: **ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs convenirent, respondit**, I. 7, 6, *in order that time might* (be able to) *intervene*, UNTIL THE SOLDIERS COULD ASSEMBLE, *he answered*. So IV. 13, 2, 23, 4, VII. 23, 4; and I. 11, 6, where the direct discourse would be the same. **Quoad**, IV. 11, 6, V. 24, 8.

The indicative under this construction does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*. An example is: **Epaminōndās ferrum in corpore retinuit quoad renūtiātum est vicisse Boeōtiōs**, Nepos, xv. 9, 3, *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body UNTIL WORD WAS BROUGHT BACK that the Boeotians had conquered*.

**Temporal Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam***. G. 574-577; A. 551; B. 292; H. 605; W. 534.

- 181 **RULE**: Temporal clauses with **antequam** and **priusquam** take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or* to represent an act as expected or anticipated).

Compare the construction with **dum**, § 180. The subjunctive is sometimes idiomatically translated by *can* or *could*. The words are often separated,—**ante quam, prius quam**, *sooner than* = *before, until*. **antequam** does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**INDICATIVE**: **nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt**, I. 53, 1, *and they did not stop fleeing* (SOONER THAN) UNTIL THEY REACHED the Rhine. So VII. 25, 4, 47, 3.

**SUBJUNCTIVE**: **prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciacum vocāri iubet**, I. 19, 3, (SOONER THAN) BEFORE HE ATTEMPTED (*to do*) anything, *he ordered Diviciacus to be summoned*. **prius quam hostēs sē ex**

**terrōre recipērent, in finēs Suessōnum exercitum dūxit, II. 12, 1, BEFORE THE ENEMY COULD RECOVER from their fright, he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.** The indicative would mean "before the enemy recovered," and would imply that they did recover afterward. The subjunctive indicates that they did *not* recover.

**Temporal Clauses with cum.** G. 578-588; A. 545-548; B. 288-290; H. 600-601; W. 535-539.

- 182 **RULE:** Temporal clauses with **cum** take the indicative of any tense when they define the *date* at which the action of the leading verb took place, takes place or will take place; the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive to define the *circumstances* under which the action of the leading verb took place.

Either mood is translated by the indicative.

**INDICATIVE: contendunt cum suis finibus prohibent, I. 1, 4, they fight WHEN THEY ARE KEEPING THEM OUT of their own territory. his cum funēs comprehēnsi adductique sunt, praerumpēbantur, III. 14, 6, WHEN THE ROPES HAD BEEN CAUGHT by these (hooks) AND DRAWN TAUT, they were snapped off short.**

**SUBJUNCTIVE: cum civitās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est, I. 4, 3, WHEN THE STATE WAS TRYING to assert its lawful power by force of arms, Orgetorix died.**

- 183 **Cum INVERSE.** When the two actions are independent, **cum** is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

**iam nōn longius bidui viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs cōgnōscunt, VI. 7, 2, they were now not more than two days' march away, WHEN THEY LEARNED that the two legions had come.**

### Conditional Sentences.

**Conditional Sentences with si, nisi, sin.** G. 589-597; A. 511-525; B. 301-306; H. 572-583; W. 551-562.

- 184 Conditional sentences with **si, nisi, sin**, may be divided into three classes as regards *time*,—present, past, and future; and into two classes as regards *form*,—whether the condition is regarded as a *fact*, or not. A condition is thus fully described by two terms.

- 185 When a condition is regarded as a *fact*, it may be called a "logical" condition; or, in the present and past a "simple" or "assumed" condition, and in the future a "more vivid" or "probable" condition.
- 186 When a condition is regarded not as a fact but as an assumption, it may be called in the present and past an "unreal" or "contrary to fact" condition, and in the future an "ideal," "less vivid," or "possible" condition.
- 187 In both English and Latin, a condition that is regarded as a fact is put in the indicative, in whatever tense is required. A condition that is regarded as an assumption is put in the potential or subjunctive in English, the subjunctive in Latin.

## 188 TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

		REGARDED AS A FACT Called "LOGICAL," "SIMPLE," or "ASSUMED"	REGARDED AS AN ASSUMPTION Called "UNREAL" or "CON- TRARY TO FACT"
Time of Condition	Mood	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
		Tense of the Indicative	Tense of the Subjunctive
<i>Present</i>		Present, sometimes (Present) Perfect	Imperfect
<i>Past</i>		Imperfect or Perfect, sometimes Pluperfect	Pluperfect
<i>Future</i>		Future or Future Perfect	Called "IDEAL," "POSSIBLE," or "LESS VIVID"
			Present or Perfect

*Type Conditional Sentence in All Its Ordinary Forms.*

- 189 PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). Present indicative.  
*Si iter facit, bene est.*  
*If he marches (or is marching), it is well.*
- 190 PRESENT UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Imperfect subjunctive.  
*Si iter faceret, bene esset.*  
*If he were marching, it would be well.*  
 This form implies that he is NOT marching.



- 191 PAST LOGICAL (SIMPLE or ASSUMED). Any past tense of the indicative.

*Si iter faciēbat, bene erat.*

*If he was marching, it was well.*

*Si iter fēcit, bene fuit.*

*If he marched, it was well.*

- 192 PAST UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Pluperfect subjunctive.

*Si iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.*

*If he had marched, it would have been well.*

This form implies that he *did* NOT march.

NOTE.—The indicative is the regular construction in the conclusion, with verbs which signify *possibility* or *power*, *obligation* or *necessity*.

*si* [populus Rōmānus] *alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre*, I. 14, 2, *if the Roman people had been conscious (to themselves) of any injury, IT WOULD NOT HAVE BEEN DIFFICULT (for them) to be on their guard.*

- 193 FUTURE LOGICAL (PROBABLE or MORE VIVID). Future indicative, sometimes the future perfect (usually in the condition).

*Si iter faciet (fēcerit), bene erit.*

*If he marches [for shall march (shall have marched)] it will be well.*

In this form the English is peculiar in using the present tense to refer to the future.

- 194 FUTURE IDEAL (POSSIBLE or LESS VIVID). Present subjunctive, sometimes the perfect (usually in the condition).

*Si iter faciat (fēcerit), bene sit.*

*If he should march, it would be well.*

This form implies that the speaker considers the condition only as *possible*.

- 195 MIXED CONDITIONS. The above are the ordinary types of conditional sentences. But a conditional sentence may be "mixed," that is, it may have a condition of one form and a conclusion of another; in this case the two parts must be described separately. Especially, the condition and conclusion may be in different *tenses*, or the condition may be compound, containing two clauses, one of one tense and the other of another tense. E.g. "If he *was* there yesterday and *is* coming home to-day, we *shall* be glad." "If he *had been* here yesterday and *were* going away to-day, it *would* be different."

**Conditional Clauses of Comparison.** G. 602; A. 524; B. 307; H. 584; W. 566-568.

- 196 **RULE:** Conditional clauses of comparison introduced by *ac si, ut si, quasi, quam si, tamquam (si), velut si*, etc., *as if, than if*, take the subjunctive.

The uses of tenses is under the law of sequence.

*absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si adsit, horrent*, I. 32, 4, *they shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus (though) absent*, AS IF HE WERE PRESENT. So VII. 38, 7.

### *Concessive Clauses.*

- 197 **Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *quamquam*.** G. 605; A. 527, d; B. 309, 2; H. 586; W. 570.

**RULE:** Concessive clauses introduced by *quamquam* take the indicative.

*quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt humaniores*, IV. 3, 3, *ALTHOUGH THEY ARE of the same race, they are more civilized*. Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *etsi*, etc.** G. 604; A. 527; B. 309, 2; H. 585; W. 572.

- 198 **RULE:** Concessive clauses introduced by *etsi, etiamsi*, etc., take the same construction as conditional clauses with *si* (§§ 189-194).

*nam etsi... vidēbat, tamen putābat*, I. 46, 3, *for ALTHOUGH HE SAW... , yet he thought*.

The subjunctive under this construction does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum* in direct discourse.

**Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *cum, ut*, etc.** G. 606-608, 587, 634; A. 313, 320, e; B. 309; H. 586, II., 569, II.; W. 571, 586, 7.

- 199 **RULE:** Concessive clauses introduced by *cum, ut, nē, licet*, or the relative pronoun, take the subjunctive.

The subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

*cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit*, I. 26, 2, *THOUGH THE BATTLE CONTINUED from one o'clock until evening, nobody could see one of the enemy in retreat*.

*Cicerō, quī... milites in castris continuisset, quinque cohortes*

mittit, VI. 36, 1, (Cicero WHO), THOUGH *Cicero* HAD KEPT the soldiers in camp, he sent out five cohorts.

ut is concessive, III. 9, 6.

### Relative Clauses.

**Relative Sentences.** G. 624–637; A. 534, 535; B. 311, 312; H. 589–593; W. 580–589.

- 200 A relative clause is most often introduced by the relative pronoun, *qui*; also by relative adjectives, *quantus* (antecedent, *tantus*), *qualis* (antecedent, *talis*), *quot* (antecedent, *tot*), etc.; and by relative adverbs, *ubi*, *where*, *when* (antecedent, *ibi*), *unde*, *whence*, *from which* (antecedent, *inde*), *quō*, *whither*, *where* (antecedent, *eō*), etc.
- 201 Relative clauses taken as a class have no especial rules of construction; the relative may take the place of almost any conjunction, coordinate or subordinate, together with its corresponding demonstrative form.
- 202 **INDICATIVE MOOD.** When a relative clause simply describes the antecedent of the relative, or states an additional fact, the indicative mood is used.  
[*Helveticis*] *proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt*, I. 1. 4, the *Helvetians* are nearest to the *Germans*, WHO LIVE across the *Rhine*, WITH WHOM THEY CARRY ON war. Here *qui*—*incolunt* simply describes the *Germans*, and *quibuscum*—*gerunt* merely gives an additional fact about the *Helvetians*.
- 203 **SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.** Relative sentences which depend on infinitives and subjunctives and form an integral part of the thought (i.e. a part which could not well be omitted if the sense is to be preserved), are put in the subjunctive.  
*cum . . . eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectare iussisset, paruerunt*, I. 27, 2, *when he had ordered them to await his arrival at that point WHERE THEY then WERE, they obeyed*. So *quae gerantur*, II. 2, 3.

For the subjunctive in relative clauses see the rules for the various kinds of subordinate clauses and examples of the use of the relative pronoun given under them, as follows:

Subjunctive of Purpose, §§ 156–164.

Subjunctive of Characteristic, §§ 168, 169.

Causal Clauses, § 173.

Concessive Clauses, § 199.

*Kinds of Subordinate Clauses.*

204 Subordinate clauses may be divided into three kinds as regards their use in sentences,—(1) *attributive* (used like an adjective), (2) *adverbial* (used like an adverb) and (3) *substantive* (used like a noun).

205 ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES. Relative clauses which explain the antecedent of the relative word are attributive. See §§ 168 and 202, and examples.

206 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES. The following kinds of clauses may be adverbial, and all the examples given are such:—purpose (§§ 156–164), result (§§ 165–167), causal (§§ 170–173), temporal (§§ 175–183), conditional (§§ 184–197), and concessive (§§ 198, 199), including the equivalent relative clauses (§ 203, end).

207 SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES. Various adverbial clauses have developed into substantive clauses. Thus in the sentence, *suus ut idem faciant imperat*, V. 37, 1, the clause is not thought of as answering the question, *For what purpose?* but as defining *what order was given*. It becomes practically the internal object of *imperat*,—*he orders his men to do the same*.

Substantive clauses are therefore described according to the adverbial clauses from which they are developed or according to the introductory word.

**Complementary Final Sentences (Substantive Clauses of Purpose).**

G. 546–550; A. 563–566; B. 295; H. 564; W. 510–516.

208 Verbs of *will* and *desire*, including those of *warning* and *beseeking*, of *urging* and *demanding*, of *resolving* and *endeavoring*, are followed by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive.

*civitātī persuāsīt ut exīrent*, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded (the state) the citizens TO EMIGRATE*. See § 164. *obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius statueret*, I. 20, 1, *he began to beseech (him) NOT TO TAKE any very severe measures*.

209 Verbs of *hindering*, including verbs and phrases signifying to *prevent*, *forbid*, *refuse* and *beware*, are often followed by *nē* with the subjunctive *if they are not negated*.

*nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit*, I. 4, 1, *he saved himself FROM PLEADING his case; he escaped PLEADING his case*. *multitudinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōferant*, I. 17, 2, *they prevent the people FROM BRINGING grain*. So I. 31, 16.

- 210 Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing* may be followed by *quō minus* (= *ut eo minus, that thereby the less*). See §§ 160 and 161.

*recūsare quō minus essent*, I. 31, 7, *to refuse TO BE*. *nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent*, IV. 22, 4, *the ships were prevented by the wind (FROM BEING ABLE to come to the same port) from reaching the same port*. So VII. 49, 2. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 211 After verbs of *fearing*, *ut* means *that . . . not*, and *nē* means *that*.

*rem frumentāriam timēmus ut supportāri posset*, I. 39, 6, (we fear the grain supply, THAT IT CAN NOT be furnished), *we are afraid THAT a supply of grain can NOT be furnished*. Only instance of *ut* in this construction in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

*nē offenderet verēbatur*, I. 19, 3, *he was afraid THAT HE WOULD HURT*. So. II. 1, 2.

- 212 *ut* is sometimes omitted in object clauses, especially after verbs of *wishing, necessity* and *permission*.

*rogat finem orandī faciat*, I. 20, 5, *he asks (him) (TO MAKE an end of his entreating), to end his entreaties*.

**Substantive Clauses of Result.** G. 553, 557; A. 567–571; B. 297; H. 571; W. 521–526.

- 213 Substantive clauses of result include chiefly those used (1) after verbs of *effecting* and *accomplishing*, (2) as subjects of impersonal verbs signifying *to happen, to follow*, etc., (3) to explain a noun or pronoun.

(1) *nōlī committere ut hīc locus . . . nōmen capiat*, I. 14, 7, (be unwilling to allow THAT THIS PLACE TAKE a name), *do not allow this place to get a name (in history)*. *fēcērunt ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur*, II. 11, 2, (they made THAT THEIR DEPARTURE SHOULD SEEM similar to a flight), *they made their departure seem like a flight*.

(2) *fiēbat ut vagārentur*, I. 2, 4, *it happened THAT THEY WANDERED*. *erit ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audeant*, II. 17, 3, *it will (be) happen THAT THE REST WILL NOT DARE to stand against (us)*.

(3) *id . . . ut flūmen trānsīrent*, I. 13, 2, *this . . . NAMELY, CROSS the river*. *iūs est belli ut quī vicērunt eis quōs vicērunt imperent*, I. 36, 1, *it is a law of war THAT (those who have conquered) the conquerors GIVE COMMANDS TO (those whom they have conquered) the conquered*.

**Substantive Clauses with *quīn*.** G. 555, 556; A. 557–559; B. 298; H. 594, II, 595, 596; W. 573–579.

- 214 Substantive clauses with *quīn* are used after sentences and phrases of *doubting, hindering*, and the like when they are *negatived* or *questioned*. The general translation of *quīn* is *but that* (taken together as a subordinate conjunction), often shortened to *that*; but *quīn* and its verb are often condensed into an entirely different idiom.

*nōn est dubium quīn Helvētīī plūrimū possint*, I. 3, 6, *there is no doubt (BUT) THAT THE HELVETIANS ARE the most POWERFUL*. Similarly I. 4, 4, 17, 4, 31, 15, VII. 38, 8, 86, 6. *nōn dubitāre quīn*

*proficiscātur*, II. 2, 5, *not to hesitate (BUT THAT HE SHOULD SET OUT) to set out*.

*nōn cunctārī quīn pūgnā dēcertet*, III. 23, 7, *not to delay (BUT THAT HE SHOULD FIGHT IT OUT in close conflict) fighting a pitched battle*. Similarly V. 55, I, and VII. 36, 4. *expectārī nōn oportet*

*quīn eātūr*, III. 24, 5, (it ought not to be awaited BUT THAT IT SHOULD BE GONE), *he ought not to defer going*. *neque longius abest quīn . . .*, III. 18, 5, (and it is not further off BUT THAT), *and not later than . . .*

*neque multum abest ab eō quīn paucis diēbus dēdūcī possint*, V. 2, 2, (and it is not very far from this stage, THAT THEY CAN be launched within a few days), *and they will, in a few days, be nearly ready for launching*. Similarly VII. 11, 8. *sine sollicitūdine quīn acciperet*, V. 53, 5, *without anxiety (THAT HE WOULD RECEIVE), lest he should receive*.

*nōn sibi temperābunt quīn exeant*, I. 33, 4, (they will not restrain themselves BUT THAT THEY SHOULD GO OUT), *they will not refrain from passing out*.\* Similarly I. 47, 2, II. 3, 5. *nōn recūsāre quīn contendant*, IV. 7, 3, *not to refuse TO FIGHT*.

*neque aliter sentiunt quīn . . .*, VII. 44, 4, (and they do not think otherwise THAN THAT), *and they certainly think that . . .*

These are the only instances of *quīn* in the *Bellum Gallicum* except in the conjunctive phrase *quīn etiam* (see vocabulary).

**Substantive Clauses with *quod*.** G. 524, 525; A. 572; B. 299; H. 588, 3, 4; W. 549.

- 215 Causal clauses with *quod* (§ 170) shade into substantive clauses. As a conjunction *quod* has four principal meanings, (1) *because*, (2) *that* or *the fact that*, (3) *in regard to the fact that*, (4) *so far as*.

1. When *quod* means *because*, the clause may be,—(a) adverbial (see § 170), or (b) substantive, in apposition with some such word as *propterea*, *eō*, *hōc*, *on this account*; this usage shades into (2).

(a) *Caesar quod...memoriā tenēbat, concēdendum nōn putābat*, I. 7, 4, *Caesar, BECAUSE HE REMEMBERED... , did not think that (it) their request ought to be granted.* (b) *eō minus dubitātiōis mihi datur quod...memoriā teneō*, I. 14, 1, (less of hesitation is given to me), *I can hesitate less (in this matter) FOR THIS REASON, BECAUSE I REMEMBER.*

2. When *quod* means (a) *that* or (b) *the fact that*, it is a substantive clause, used either as subject, object, or appositive.

(a) *num recentium iniuriarum memoriam depōnere possum, quod...vexastis?* I. 14, 3, (can I lay aside the memory of your recent wrongdoing, *THAT YOU HAVE HARASSED*), *can I forget your recent wrongdoing, in plundering...?* (b) *accēdēbat quod...dolēbant*, III. 2, 5, (there approached *THE FACT THAT THEY GRIEVED*), *an additional fact was that they grieved...*

3. When *quod* means *in regard to the fact that*, as *for the fact that*, it introduces a substantive clause that has also an adverbial force with reference to the whole sentence.

*quod multitudinem Germanōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id mei mūniendi causā faciō*, I. 44, 6, *IN REGARD TO THE FACT THAT I AM BRINGING a host of Germans into Gaul, I am doing it for the purpose of protecting myself.*

4. Similar to the above is *quod*, *so far as*.

*quod commodō rei publicae facere poterit, Aeduōs dēfendet*, I. 35, 4, *SO FAR AS HE SHALL BE ABLE to do (so) with advantage to the public interests, he shall defend the Aeduans.* Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 216 CLAUSES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The accusative and infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 228) and indirect questions (§ 245) are also substantive clauses.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN ENGLISH.

- 217 DEFINITION OF DIRECT DISCOURSE. Direct discourse (Latin, *ōrātiō rēcta*) is the quotation of words in the exact form in which they were spoken. E.g. *He said, "I AM GOING."*
- 218 DEFINITION OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Indirect discourse (Latin, *ōrātiō obliqua*) is the quotation of words *with adaptations in grammatical construction, in person, or in tense* to the standpoint of the person who quotes. E.g. *He said THAT HE WAS GOING.*
- 219 INTRODUCTORY VERB. Indirect discourse occurs after verbs of

*saying, hearing, believing, thinking* and the like. Such a verb is said to introduce or govern the indirect discourse and is called the introductory verb.

**220** **INTRODUCTORY PARTICLE.** Indirect discourse is further introduced by the subordinate conjunction *that*, expressed or understood, which is called the introductory particle.

**221** **CHANGE OF TENSE.** When indirect discourse occurs after an introductory verb that is in any *past* tense, all the verb forms that were in the present tense in the direct discourse, both main verbs and auxiliaries, change to the corresponding past tense.

*Direct Discourse.*

My son **WRITES** daily.

My son **IS** writing.

My son **MAY** write.

My son **CAN** write.

My son **HAS** written.

My son **WILL** write.

My son **SHALL** write.

He said that

*Indirect Discourse.*

his son **WROTE** daily.

his son **WAS** writing.

his son **MIGHT** write.

his son **COULD** write.

his son **HAD** written.

his son **WOULD** write.

his son **SHOULD** write.

Observe that number and voice do not change; a change in the former would alter the *sense* of the original statement, a change in the latter would alter its *form*.

**NOTE.**—An exception to this change of tense occurs when the verb of the direct discourse is a universal present (§ 146).

**DIRECT:** *All men naturally DESIRE liberty.* **INDIRECT:** *he knew that all men naturally DESIRE liberty.* Compare B. G., III. 10, 3.

**222** **CHANGE OF PRONOUNS.** In passing from direct to indirect discourse changes of pronouns often occur. These changes depend entirely upon the relation of the person quoting to the one who is addressed. Thus, A says to B, "I will help you."

If A quotes this to B, it becomes,— I said that I would help you.

"A " C, " I " I " him.

"B " A, " You " you " me.

"B " C, " He " he " me.

"C " D, " He " he " him.

**23** **INDIRECT QUESTIONS.** When an interrogative sentence is quoted, it often has an introductory verb different from those that introduce declarative sentences; especially verbs and phrases signifying *to ask, to*



*doubt, to be a question, etc.*, though such a verb as *to know* may introduce either a declarative or interrogative clause.

The rule for changing a question to the indirect form divides into two parts.

- 224 1. If an interrogative sentence contains an interrogative word (a pronoun, an adjective or an adverb), it is put into the indirect form in the same manner as a declarative sentence. E.g. "Who is going?" I know who is going. He **ASKED** who **WAS** going.
- 225 2. If an interrogative sentence is one that can be answered by "Yes" or "No" and has the inverted order (i.e. verb or auxiliary before the subject), the declarative is restored in the indirect form, and *whether* or *if* is added after the introductory verb as an introductory particle. E.g. "Are you ready?" I doubt if you are ready. I do not know whether he is ready. I could not see whether he was ready.
- 226 **INDIRECT FORM OF IMPERATIVES.** An imperative is changed to indirect discourse by the use of (1) the auxiliary *should*, or (2) the infinitive. E.g. "Shut the door." (1) He said you should shut the door. (2) (He said to shut the door.) He told you to shut the door.
- Other English colloquial forms, such as the auxiliary *might*, or *for* with the infinitive, should be avoided.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN LATIN.

**Indirect Discourse** (*Ōrātiō Obliqua*). G. 648-663; A. 573-592; B. 313-323; H. 641-653; W. 597-619.

- 227 The definition of indirect discourse is the same for Latin as for English. The construction, however, is far more widely extended and *the introductory verb is very often merely implied*. E.g. He persuaded the citizens to emigrate; [saying] that it was very easy.
- 228 **RULE:** Declarative principal clauses of direct discourse, on becoming indirect, change the indicative (or subjunctive) with subject nominative to infinitive with subject accusative. Interrogative and imperative principal clauses and all subordinate clauses become subjunctive.
- 229 **SUBJUNCTIVE IN IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE.** Under the construction of subordinate clauses of indirect discourse are included many

subjunctives which depend on an infinitive or another subjunctive, where the idea of indirect discourse is merely implied.

- 230 TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE.** A present indicative of direct discourse becomes present infinitive in indirect; an imperfect, perfect or pluperfect indicative becomes perfect infinitive; and a future or future perfect indicative becomes future infinitive.

*The tense of the introductory verb has nothing to do with the tense of the infinitive.*

- 231 TENSE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.** The tense of the subjunctive is determined by the general law of the sequence of tenses (§ 151). If either the introductory verb or the infinitive is a past tense, the subjunctives are regularly imperfect or pluperfect. But the law of sequence is frequently suspended for vividness.

NOTE.—An imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive of the direct discourse, as in unreal (contrary to fact) conditions, is always retained in the indirect.

- 232 CHANGES IN PERSON** depend upon the same principles as in English (§ 222).

- 233** As in English (§ 221) **VOICE** and **NUMBER** do not change.

- 234 TRANSLATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.** The subjunctive is usually translated by the indicative (the tense being according to the English rules), unless in the direct discourse it would be a use of the subjunctive that requires some special auxiliary in translation (e.g. a purpose clause, see § 156).

- 235 TRANSLATION OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.** English sometimes employs the accusative and infinitive like the Latin, in such expressions as, "I thought the man to be honest," "I understood him to say it"; but the use of this construction is limited. It is *not* English to say, "He declares himself to be about to win"; and such expressions should be changed to the regular construction of English indirect discourse, viz. a subordinate clause introduced by *that*, with subject nominative and a finite mood.

- 236 CHANGE FROM INDIRECT TO DIRECT DISCOURSE.** For a complete understanding of a sentence of indirect discourse it must be changed to the direct form in Latin, this translated to the direct in English, and the last changed to the English indirect, when it becomes a translation of the given Latin. See next page.

Latin Indirect; *dixit perfacile esse*, I. 2, 2, cf. I. 3, 6, 7, etc.

Latin Direct; *dixit "perfacile est."*

English Direct: *He said, "It is very easy."*

English Indirect: *He said that it was very easy.* This is the translation of the first.

**237 RULES FOR CHANGING PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.** 1. *Subject accusative changes to nominative of the same number.* If it is a pronoun, there may be a change of person. For this no rule can be given because it depends upon circumstances (see § 222); but forms of the reflexive pronouns and adjectives usually become first person.

2. Present infinitive changes to present indicative of same voice.

Perfect	"	"	"	{ imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect }	"	"	"	"
Future	"	"	"	{ future or future perfect }	"	"	"	"

The person and number is determined by the subject, already found by Rule 1.

3. Pronouns (other than the subject) require change *in person only*.

(Orgetorix) *cōfirmat sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum (esse)*, I. 3, 7.

1. The subject accusative is *sē*, which refers to the subject of *cōfirmat*, namely, *Orgetorix*. Since *Orgetorix* is speaking of himself, in his own words he must have used the first person. For the same reason the number of *sē* is singular. Hence according to the rule, the direct discourse of *sē* is first person, singular, nominative, *ego*.

2. *conciliātūrum (esse)* is future, active. It therefore changes to future, indicative, active, and agrees with *ego*; hence *conciliābō*.

Since the person and number are shown by the personal ending, *ego* may be omitted (§ 122).

3. Like *sē*, the possessive adjectives *suis* and *suō* refer to the subject, and for the same reason would become first person; their construction is in no way affected and they change to the corresponding forms of *meus*, namely, *meis* and *meō*.

*illis* refers to *Dumnorix* and *Casticus*, to whom this promise was made. Hence this changes to the corresponding form of the second personal pronoun, namely *vōbīs*.

The sentence in direct discourse thus reads, *meis cōpiis meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō*.

English Direct: I WILL win the power (in your states) for YOU with MY forces and MY army.

English Indirect: *Orgetorix* { declares } that HE { WILL } win the power (in their states) for THEM with HIS forces and HIS army.

Notice that it is not necessary to translate a Latin sentence before finding the Latin direct discourse, but only that the relations of any persons mentioned shall be understood.

Notice also that after changing the English direct to indirect, the pronouns are a translation of those in the Latin indirect; so that, as far as concerns getting a translation of Latin indirect discourse, there is nothing that requires attention except the accusative and infinitive.

- 238 The following type sentences should be kept thoroughly in mind. They cover all cases that occur in the *Bellum Gallicum* (if the historical present is translated by the past), except such as are mentioned especially in the notes. If these are used, it will not be necessary to go through the process of changing to direct discourse in order to get the translation.

Dixit sē	{ appellāre, appellārī, appellāvisse, appellātum esse, appellātūrum esse, appellātum irī, fore ut appellārētur,	he said that he	{ called (was calling). was called. had called. had been called. would call. would be called.
----------	---	-----------------	--

- 239 CHANGE OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TO DIRECT DISCOURSE. The mood of a subordinate clause of direct discourse depends upon its construction under the various rules that have been given (§§ 156-215). Therefore in changing from indirect to direct discourse, the mood of a subordinate clause may or may not change.

If the indicative is to be used in the direct discourse, the tense may be prescribed (e.g. in clauses with *dum*) or may depend upon the sense (e.g. in clauses with *quod*).

If the subjunctive is to be retained (e.g. in a purpose clause), the tense may or may not change, under the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 151).

perfacile esse probat propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset, I. 3, 6.

Here *quod* introduces a reason which was certainly assigned by

Orgetorix as a fact. Hence the indicative in direct discourse; tense, present periphrastic or future (§ 153).

*perfacile est, propterea quod ipse meae civitatis imperium obtenturus sum (obtinēbō), it is very easy, because I AM GOING TO HAVE (shall have) control of MY state MYSELF.* Indirect: *He proved that it was very easy, because HE WAS GOING TO HAVE (WOULD HAVE) control of HIS state HIMSELF.*

(dicit) *nōn esse dubium quā plūrimū Helvētīū possent, I. 3, 7.*

Clauses introduced by *quā* always take the subjunctive (§ 214), hence the mood of the direct discourse is the same. As it stands, *possent* is imperfect because it depends upon an historical present (*probat, I. 3, 6*), which may take the sequence of an historical tense (§ 152). In the direct discourse the subjunctive will depend upon *est*, and hence will change to the present.

*nōn est dubium, quā plūrimū Helvētīū possint, there is no doubt that the Helvetians ARE the most powerful.* Indirect: [*He said*] *that there WAS no doubt that the Helvetians WERE the most powerful.*

240 INDICATIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. The indicative is sometimes used in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse, (1) when the clause is inserted by the writer by way of explanation and does not form a part of the quotation (e.g. II. 4, 10), (2) to show that the writer himself considers the matter as a fact (e.g. I. 40, 5).

241 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, while following the same general rules as other complex sentences, present peculiarities of sequence, periphrastic forms, etc., so that all the regular forms of condition are presented for reference.

242 When reference is made to this article, see what tense, mood and auxiliary is used in translating the type sentence, and use the same in translating the desired passage.

1. PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). See § 189.

*Sī iter facit, bene est.*

*If he marches (or is marching), it is well.*

*Dicit sī iter faciat, bene esse.*

*He says that if he marches (or is marching), it is well.*

*Dixit sī iter faceret, bene esse.*

*He said that if he marched (or was marching), it was well.*

## 2. PRESENT UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). See § 190.

**Si iter faceret, bene esset.**

*If he were marching, it would be well.*

**Dicit si iter faceret, bene futurum esse.**

*He says that if he were marching, it would be well.*

**Dixit si iter faceret, bene futurum esse.**

*He said that if he were marching, it would be well.*

## 3. PAST LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). See § 191.

**Si iter faciēbat, bene erat.**

*If he was marching, it was well.*

**Si iter fēcit, bene fuit.**

*If he marched, it was well.*

(For either) **Dicit si iter faceret, bene fuisse.**

*He says that if he marched (or was marching), it was well.*

**Dixit si iter faceret, bene fuisse.**

*He said that if he marched (or was marching), it was well.*

## 4. PAST UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). See § 192.

**Si iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.**

*If he had marched, it would have been well.*

**Dicit si iter fēcisset, bene futurum fuisse.**

*He says that if he had marched, it would have been well.*

**Dixit si iter fēcisset, bene futurum fuisse.**

*He said that if he had marched, it would have been well.*

NOTE.—A sentence of this type, the conclusion of which is passive, requires a periphrastic form in indirect discourse.

**Si iter fēcisset, victus esset.**

*If he had marched, he would have been conquered.*

**Dicit } si iter fēcisset, futurum fuisse ut vinceretur.**

**Dixit } that if he had marched, (it would have been that he**  
*He says } would be conquered), he would have been conquered.*  
*He said }*

## 5. FUTURE LOGICAL (PROBABLE OR MORE VIVID). See § 193.

**Si iter faciet (fēcerit), bene erit.**

*If he marches [or shall march (shall have marched)], it will be well.*

**Dicit si iter faciat (fēcerit, subjunctive), bene futurum esse.**

*He says that if he marches, it will be well.*

**Dixit si iter faceret (fēcisset), bene futurum esse.**

*He said that if he marched, it would be well.*

## 6. FUTURE IDEAL (POSSIBLE OR LESS VIVID). See § 194.

**SI** iter faciat (fēcerit), bene sit.

*If he should march, it would be well.*

**DICIT** si iter faciat, bene futurum esse.

*He says that if he should march, it would be well.*

**DIXIT** si iter faceret, bene futurum esse.

*He said that if he should march, it would be well.*

243 **INDIRECT QUESTIONS.** It has been said (§ 228) that interrogative principal clauses of direct discourse on becoming indirect discourse (indirect questions) take the subjunctive.

Such clauses present no difficulties in translation since the English has the same construction, including the rules for the sequence of tenses. See §§ 152 and 223. This use of the subjunctive in Latin is easily recognized from the fact that there is always an interrogative word in the clause.

To change to the direct form follow the principles of the changes for declarative sentences. Thus:

**oculis** in utram partem [Arar] fluat iudicārī nōn potest, I. 12, 1.

**DIRECT:** in utram partem Arar fluit? *In what direction does the Saône flow?* **INDIRECT:** *It cannot be judged by the eye(s) in what direction it flows.*

**NOTE.**—**SI** is sometimes used in the sense of *to see if*, introducing an indirect question after verbs of trial. E.g. si perrumpere possent, cōnāti, I. 8, 4; see note. So II. 9, 1.

## 244 Indirect questions usually have different introductory verbs in Latin as in English (§ 223). But when a long speech in Latin is quoted in indirect form, neither Latin nor English takes the pains to insert a different introductory verb before an interrogative clause.

[dixit] Ariovistum populi Rōmāni amicitiam appetisse; cūr quisquam iudicāret...? I. 40, 2, *he said that Ariovistus had sought the friendship of the Roman people; why should any one judge...?* [he asked why any one should judge...]. So I. 40, 4, 43, 8, 44, 8, etc.

245 **IMPERATIVES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.** It has been said (§ 228) that imperatives of direct discourse on becoming indirect become subjunctive. The tense is according to the rules of sequence. For the different methods of translation see § 226.

respondit... si quid vellent, reverterentur, I. 7, 6. **DIRECT:** si quid vultis, revertimini, *if you want an answer, RETURN.* **INDIRECT:** *He answered... that if they wanted an answer, THEY SHOULD (MIGHT)*

RETURN; or, *he answered . . . if they wanted answer, (FOR THEM) TO RETURN.* So I. 13, 4.

*nē . . . suae virtūtī tribueret*, I. 13, 5. DIRECT: *nōlī . . . tuae virtūtī tribuere*, (BE UNWILLING TO ATTRIBUTE), DO NOT ATTRIBUTE (*it*) to YOUR OWN *valor*. INDIRECT: HE SHOULD NOT ATTRIBUTE *it* to HIS OWN *valor*; or, (FOR HIM) NOT TO ATTRIBUTE *it* to HIS OWN *valor*.

- 246 RHETORICAL QUESTIONS. When a question is asked merely for effect, it is usually equivalent to a strong declarative statement. Such questions, like a declarative sentence, take the accusative and infinitive in indirect discourse.

*num memoriam dēponere posse*, I. 14, 3, COULD *he* (lay aside the memory) *forget*? So V. 28, 6.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

**First or Present Imperative.** G. 268, 270, and Remark 2; A. 448, 450; B. 281; H. 560; W. 473, 474, 495, 496.

- 247 The use of the present imperative in Latin is the same as in English: The imperative occurs seven times in the *Bellum Gallicum*, IV. 25, 3 (see § 6), V. 30, 1, VII. 38, 3, 50, 4, 6, 77, 9 (see note), 16. The other imperative does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 248 A negative imperative sentence or prohibition is most frequently expressed by *nōlī* (sometimes *cavē*) with the infinitive, sometimes by *nē* with the imperative, or perfect subjunctive.

*nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō expoliāre*, VII. 77, 9, (BE UNWILLING TO DEPRIVE), DO NOT DEPRIVE *them of your aid*. Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum* of a prohibition in direct discourse.

### INFINITIVE.

- 249 The Latin infinitive has two uses, (1) as a substantive, (2) as a representative of the indicative.

**The Infinitive as a Substantive.** G. 280; A. 451–458; B. 326–328; H. 606–612; W. 622–626.

- 250 As a substantive the infinitive has two tenses, present and perfect.

- 251 The present is the common form of the infinitive used as a substantive; it has to do with continued action. The perfect infinitive used as a sub-



stantive, having to do with completed action, does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 252 The infinitive as a substantive is used only as the subject and object of verbs. For the oblique cases and for the objective after a preposition, the gerund is used (§ 267).
- 253 As subject the infinitive is used chiefly with forms of *sum* and impersonal verbs.  
*praestat perferre*, I. 17, 3, *it is better TO ENDURE*.
- 254 As an object (complementary infinitive) it is used to complete the meaning of verbs meaning to *wish, decide, fear*, etc., which take the same construction in English.  
*constituērunt comparāre*, I. 3, 1, *they determined TO PREPARE*.
- 255 An accusative and a complementary infinitive may both be used as the objects of verbs meaning to *bid and forbid, to permit*, etc.  
*eōs ire pati*, I. 6, 3, *to allow THEM TO GO*. So II. 5, 1.

**The Infinitive as the Representative of the Indicative.** G. 281; A. 459; B. 329-331; H. 613-619; W. 628-635.

- 256 As the representative of the indicative, the infinitive has three tenses, —present, perfect and future.
- 257 The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as a substantive clause (i.e. as subject or object) like the infinitive alone. See §§ 253 and 254.  
*poenam sequi oportēbat*, I. 4, 1, (*PUNISHMENT-TO-FOLLOW* was fitting), *it was the law for the punishment to follow; or, that the penalty . . . be inflicted*.  
*quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est*, I. 1, 5, (*GAULS-TO-CONSTITUTE*-which, has been said), *which it has been said that the Gauls constitute*.  
*optimum est quemque reverti*, II. 10, 4, *it is best (for) EACH ONE TO RETURN, or, THAT EACH ONE RETURN*.

This construction is essentially that of indirect discourse. The first and third examples show instances which are *informal* indirect discourse, and show the development of the construction from that of § 255.

**Historical Infinitive.** G. 647; A. 463; B. 335; H. 610; W. 631.

- 258 The infinitive with subject nominative is sometimes used instead of the imperfect indicative for vividness in historical narration.  
*Caesar flāgitāre*, I. 16, 1, *Caesar WAS DEMANDING*. So I. 16, 4, 32, 3; II. 30, 3; III. 4, 1, 2, 3; V. 33, 1.

## PARTICIPLES.

**259** A participle is a verbal adjective. All Latin participles are declined like adjectives and agree with some substantive expressed or understood in gender, number and case, while at the same time they have tense and voice.

**260** TENSE OF PARTICIPLES. The participle, both in Latin and in English, denotes time *relative* to that of the principal verb. Thus:

The present participle denotes action that is continuing at the time of the principal verb. E.g. *he comes running, he came running, he will come running.*

The perfect participle denotes action prior to that of the principal verb. E.g. *he is coming (came, or will come), having run all the way.*

**261** COMPARATIVE TABLE OF PARTICIPLES.

	Active	Passive
Present	<i>dūcēns, leading</i>	———, <i>being led</i>
Past		} <i>ductus, { led</i> } <i>having been led</i>
Perfect	———, <i>having led</i>	
Future	<i>ductūrus, (going to lead)</i>	
		<i>dūcendus, (to be led)</i>

A deponent verb has the three active participles and the gerundive. E.g. *cōnāns, trying, cōnātus, having tried, cōnātūrus, going to try, and cōnandus, gerundive.* See however § 262.

NOTE.—Latin is more exact than English in the use of participles, especially the perfect. E.g. *Seizing the bone, the dog ran away.* Strictly, this would mean that the dog was seizing the bone all the time that he was running. Therefore the perfect participle should be used,—*Having seized the bone, the dog ran away.* But the former has come to be an English idiom and should be used in translation.

**262** Perfect participles of deponent verbs are sometimes passive in meaning. So *dēpopulātus*, I. 11, 4, *dīmēnsus*, II. 19, 5; IV. 17, 3, *partītus*, VII. 24, 5.

**263** Participles often imply some especial relation to the thought of the sentence aside from merely limiting a substantive. E.g. “*Running as fast as he could, he caught the train.*” Here the participle implies *cause*; the thought is that he caught the train *because* he ran.

Again, “*Running as fast as he could, he was unable to catch the train.*” Here the participle implies *concession*; the thought is that he could not catch the train *although* he ran.

Participles may also denote merely an attendant circumstance. E.g. "*Entering the water, he waded out.*" This merely notes two acts,—he entered the water, he waded out. Latin often employs a participle in this way where English requires two coördinate verbs.

**Uses of Latin Participles.** G. 664–668; A. 488–499; B. 336–337; H. 636–640; W. 645–652.

**264** Latin participles or participial phrases may express,—1, *time*, 2, *cause*, 3, *condition*, 4, *concession*, 5, *attendant circumstance*, 6, *means*, 7, the thought of a *relative clause*.

1. *patrum nostrorum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexatā*, II. 4, 2, (in the memory of our fathers, ALL GAUL HAVING BEEN OVERRUN), *within the memory of the last generation, when all Gaul was in confusion*. 2. *timōre perterritī Rōmānī discēdunt*, I. 23, 3, *the Romans are withdrawing* (HAVING BEEN TERRIFIED by fear), BECAUSE THEY ARE AFRAID. 3. *datā facultāte nōn temperābunt*, I. 7, 5, (AN OPPORTUNITY HAVING BEEN GIVEN), IF OPPORTUNITY IS GIVEN, *they will not refrain*. 4. *hāc rē cōgnitā exercitum castris continuit*, II. 11, 2, (THIS THING HAVING BEEN ASCERTAINED), *though he found this out, he kept the army in camp*. In the same sentence the participle *veritus* denotes cause. 5. *persuādēt finitimis, uti... ūsī... oppidīs... exūstīs... proficiscantur*, I. 5, 4; see note, Book I., l. 88. 6. *ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs phalangem perfrēgerunt*, I. 25, 2, (SPEARS HAVING BEEN THROWN), BY THROWING THEIR SPEARS *from the higher position, they broke the line*. 7. *frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferēbat*, IV. 12, 5, (he was bearing aid to his brother, CUT OFF by the enemy), *he was trying to help his brother who had been cut off (from retreat) by the enemy*.

**265** The perfect passive participle modifying a substantive is sometimes translated by a verbal noun with an object.

*iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum*, III. 10, 2, (the wrong of RETAINED Roman knights), *the crime of retaining Roman knights*.

**266** *Habeō* with a direct object modified by a perfect passive participle is often used in a sense that is practically equivalent to the pluperfect tense of the latter verb. Strictly, however, it denotes more than the pluperfect, laying emphasis on the *maintenance of the result*.

*portōria... redēpta habet*, I. 18, 3, (HE HAS the import duties BOUGHT UP), *he has bought up the import duties, (and still holds them)*. *omnia explōrātā habēmus*, II. 4, 4, (WE HAVE all things FOUND OUT), *we have found out everything*.

Besides the above examples this construction occurs as follows,—  
I. 9, 3 (see note), 15, 1, 44, 12; III. 2, 5; VI. 13, 6, 20, 1; VII. 29, 6, 54, 2.

For uses of the future passive participle (the gerundive) see §§ 269, 270, and 278.

### THE GERUND.

The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used in the nominative and as the object of verbs (not of prepositions).

**Uses of the Gerund.** G. 426–433; A. 502–507; B. 338; H. 625–631; W. 637–639.

- 267** The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used as the nominative and the accusative after verbs (the gerund after prepositions).

The uses of the gerund in the *Bellum Gallicum* are as follows:

**GENITIVE:** Objective, explanatory, with adjectives (I. 2, 4; V. 6, 3), with *causā* and *grātiā*. See examples under §§ 56 and 58.

**DATIVE:** Of purpose or end (III. 4, 1; V. 27, 5).

**ACCUSATIVE:** Only after *ad*. E.g. *ad proficiscendum*, I. 3, 1, (to setting out), *for leaving home*.

**ABLATIVE:** Of means (IV. 13, 5; V. 54, 1; VII. 71, 4), and after *dē* and *in*.

- 268** The gerund *may* take an object in the case which the verb regularly governs, accusative, dative (with special verbs), genitive (with verbs of *remembering*, etc.), but for this use the gerundive construction is generally substituted, regularly so after prepositions.

### THE GERUNDIVE.

- 269** The gerundive has two uses,—(a) as the future passive participle, (b) as a substitute for the gerund.

**Gerundive as a Participle.** G. 251, 2, note; A. 500; B. 337, 7; H. 621–622; W. 638, 643, 644.

- 270** As the future passive participle the gerundive implies *necessity*, *obligation*, or the idea of *deserving*. In these senses it is used in the *Bellum Gallicum* as follows:

1. As a predicate adjective.

*nōn ferendus*, I. 33, 5, (not to be borne), *unendurable*. Similarly

*conferendum, comparandam*, I. 31, 11, (to be compared,) *comparable*; *laudanda*, V. 8, 4, (to be praised), *praiseworthy*. *māximē admīrandum*, VI. 42, 3 (most to be wondered at), *most remarkable*.

2. As a predicate accusative after *cūrō*, *provide for*, *cause*, *dō*, *give*, *trādō*, *hand over*, and similar verbs.

*pontem faciendum cūravit*, I. 13, 1, *he caused a bridge to be built*. *Sabinum mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet*, III. 11, 4, *he sent Sabinus (who was to cause this force to be kept separate), to see that that force was kept separate*. *exercitum Sabinō in Menapiōs dūcendum dedit*, IV. 22, 5, *he gave the army to Sabinus to be led among the Menapii*.

See also § 278.

**Gerundive for Gerund.** G. 427; A. 503; B. 339; H. 623; W. 640.

271 When the gerund might be used but would have an object, the gerundive construction is often substituted, regularly so after a preposition. Also III. 25, 1, in the ablative of means; see example below.

272 The gerundive construction consists in putting the substantive in the case which the gerund would have had, and making the gerundive agree with it, as a verbal *adjective*, in gender, number, and case.

**GERUND: ad effēminandum animōs**, I. 1, 3, *to weakening the minds*. Here the construction is identical in both languages: *effēminandum* is the object of *ad*, and *animōs* is the object of *effēminandum*, just as *weakening* is the object of *to*, and *minds* is the object of *weakening*.

**GERUNDIVE: ad animōs effēminandōs**. Here *animōs* is the object of *ad*, and *effēminandōs* agrees with it in gender, number, and case. English has no such verb form as the gerundive, and cannot translate any differently from above,—(to weakening the minds), *to weaken the character*.

**GERUNDIVE: lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs**, III. 25, 1. **GERUND: lapidēs tēlaque subministrandō**, BY FURNISHING STONES AND SPEARS. So *caespitibus comportandīs* following. What would be the form of these two words if the gerund were used?

273 1. With *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī*, and *vestrī*, the gerundive is employed with the same ending, regardless of gender or number, since these forms were originally neuter singular.

*sui colligendī* *hostibus facultātem relinquunt*, III. 6, 1, *they leave the enemy a chance* (OF COLLECTING THEMSELVES), OF COLLECTING

**THEIR WITS.** Here *sui*, referring to *hostibus*, is plural, and strict agreement would require *colligendōrum*.

2. The gerundive construction would naturally be confined to transitive verbs, but the deponent verbs which govern the ablative (§ 73) regularly admit it.

*spēs potiundī oppidī*, II. 7, 2, *hope of capturing the town*. So III. 7, 6.

### SUPINES.

274 The supines are the accusative and ablative of a fourth declension verbal noun.

**Accusative Supine (Supine in -um, Former Supine).** G. 435; A. 509; B. 340, 1; H. 632-634; W. 654.

275 **RULE:** The accusative supine is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose (design). It may take an object. It is translated by the infinitive.

*lēgātōs mittunt rogātūm auxilium*, I. 11, 2, *they send envoys to ask help*.

This construction occurs 14 times in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Ablative Supine (Supine in -ū, Latter Supine).** G. 436; A. 510; B. 240, 2; H. 635; W. 655.

276 **RULE:** The ablative supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. It never takes an object.

It is translated by the infinitive, if retained in English at all.

*perfacile factū*, I. 3, 6, *very easy (to do)*. So IV. 30, 2, VII. 64, 2. *horribiliōrēs āspectū*, V. 14, 2, *more terrible in appearance*. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

**Active (First) Periphrastic Conjugation.** G. 247; A. 194, a; B. 115; H. 236; W. 188.

277 The active periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future active participle with forms of *sum*.

The participle is translated separately in its usual way (§ 261), and the form of *sum* according to its tense, mood, use, etc.

**quod portātūrī** || **erant**, I. 5, 3, *what THEY WERE* || GOING TO CARRY.  
**ubi bellum gestūrī** || **essent**, III. 9, 6, *where THEY WERE* || GOING TO WAGE  
*war*. See also example under § 239.

**Passive (Second) Periphrastic Conjugation.** G. 251; A. 194, b;  
 B. 115; H. 237; W. 188.

- 278 The passive periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future passive participle (the gerundive) with forms of *sum*.

From the adjective use of the future passive participle (§ 270) there is developed the idea of *obligation* or *necessity*, which is expressed in various ways in English.

**agendum est**, *it has to be done, it must be done, it ought to be done.*

**agendum erat**, *it had to be done.*

**agendum erit**, *it will have to be done.*

For examples in the *Bellum Gallicum* see §§ 31 and 215.

Note that this construction does not correspond to that of § 277 in the ordinary relations of active and passive. Obligation in the active voice is expressed with *dēbeō* or *oportet*. But intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in this construction.

The agent under this construction is expressed by the dative (§ 31).

### USES OF *Cum*.

- 279 1. Preposition with ablative, *with*.  
 2. Subordinate conjunction, *when, since, although*.  
 If it introduces an indicative, it certainly means *when*. If the clause is followed by *tamen, nevertheless*, it certainly means *although*.  
 In other cases the meaning can only be determined by the connection, and there is often a combination of the ideas of time and cause, or of time and concession.  
 3. Practically a correlative conjunction, **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but also, both . . . and*, II. 4, 7, V. 4, 3, etc. Note **cum . . . etiam . . . tum**, *not only . . . and . . . but also*, III. 16, 2.

### HENDIADYS.

- 280 Hendiadys (ἑν δὶά δυοῖν) is a figure of syntax whereby two nouns connected by a conjunction are used for one with an adjective or a genitive.

**exempla cruciātūsque**, I. 31, 12, (examples and cruelties), *sorts of cruelty*.

## PARADIGMS.

## NOUNS.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

F. *lingua*, -ae, -ae, -am, -a, -ā; -ae, ārum, -is, -ās, -ae, -is.

For locative, see § 93; for *filia*, see vocabulary; *dea*, *goddess*, like *filia*.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

M. *animus*, -ī, -ō, -um, -e, -ō; -ī, -ōrum, -is, -ōs, -ī, -is.

*ager*, *agrī*, *agrō*, *agrum*, *ager*, *agrō*; *agrī*, *agrōrum*, etc.

*puer*, *puerī*, *puerō*, *puerum*, *puer*, *puerō*; *puerī*, *puerōrum*, etc.

*vir*, *virī*, *virō*, *virum*, *vir*, *virō*; *virī*, *virōrum*, etc.

N. *bellum*, -ī, -ō, -um, -um, -ō; -a, -ōrum, -is, -a, -a, -is.

For locative, see § 93. Nouns of this declension ending in -ius or -ium often have a single i for the ending of the genitive singular, without change of accent; so also the vocative singular of *filius* and of proper names. For *deus* and *vulgus*, see vocabulary.

## \* THIRD DECLENSION.\*

## I. Consonant Stems.

M. †*cōnsul*, *cōnsulis*, -ī, -em, -e; -ēs, -um, -ibus, -ēs, -ibus.

N. *flūmen*, *flūminis*, *flūminī*, *flūmen*, *flūmine*; *flūmina*, -um, -ibus, -a, -ibus.

F. *lēs*, *lēgis*, *lēgī*, *lēgem*, *lēge*; *lēgēs*, -um, -ibus, -ēs, -ibus.

N. *caput*, *capitis*, *capiti*, *caput*, *capite*; *capita*, -um, -ibus, -a, -ibus.

\*The vocative is hereafter omitted in these paradigms.

† A feminine noun does not differ in endings from a masculine noun.



II. *I and Mixed Stems.*

- M. or F. *hostis*, *hostis*, *hosti*, *hostem*, *hoste*; *hostēs*, -ium, -ibus, -ēs  
(or -is), -ibus.
- N. *vectigal*, *vectigālis*, *vectigālī*, *vectigal*, *vectigālī*; *vectigālia*,  
-ium, -ibus, -ia, -ibus. See also in vocabulary *mille*.
- F. *pars*, *partis*, *parti*, *partem*, *parte*; *partēs*, -ium, -ibus, -ēs  
(or -is), -ibus.

*Note.*—Declined like (1) *hostis*, (2) *vectigal*, or (3) *pars* are the following: (1) Nouns ending in *is* or *ēs*, having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative; (2) neuters ending in *e*, *al*, *ar*; (3) nouns ending in *ns* or *rs*, and monosyllables ending in *s* or *x*, if these letters are preceded by a consonant.

The accusative singular of *nāvis*, *puppis*, *sēmentis*, and *turris* may end in *im*; the ablative singular of *avis*, *cīvis*, *clāssis*, *collis*, *finis*, *ignis*, *nāvis*, *orbis*, *puppis*, *sēmentis*, *turris*, and *imber* may end in *i* or *e*. In the plural *imber*, *linter*, and *nox* are declined like nouns having *i* stems; while *iuvenis* is not so declined.

Many names of tribes have (Greek) accusative plural in *-as*; e.g., *Allobrogas*, I. 14, 3.

For the locative see § 93. For *senex*, *vis*, *bōs* and *Iuppiter*, see vocabulary.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

- M. *passus*, -ūs, -uī (or -ū), -um, -ū; -ūs, -uum, -ibus, -ūs, -ibus.
- N. *cornū*, -ūs, -ū, -ū, -ū; -ua, -uum, -ibus, -ua, -ibus.
- For *domus*, *lacus*, and *portus*, see vocabulary.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

- M. and F. *diēs*, *diēī*, *diēī*, *diem*, *diē*; *diēs*, *diērum*, *diēbus*, *diēs*, *diēbus*.
- F. *rēs*, *rei*, *rei*, *rem*, *rē*; *rēs*, *rērum*, *rēbus*, *rēs*, *rēbus*.
- For all other nouns of this declension, see vocabulary.

## ADJECTIVES.

## FIRST-AND-SECOND DECLENSION.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	māgnus	māgna	māgnum
Gen.	māgni etc.	māgnæ etc.	māgni etc.
Voc.	māgne	māgna	māgnum
Nom. and Voc.	noster	nostra	nostrum
Gen.	nostrī etc.	nostræ etc.	nostrī etc.
Nom. and Voc.	liber	libera	liberum
Gen.	liberī etc.	liberæ etc.	liberī etc.

For *alius*, *alter*, *ūllus*, *nūllus*, *uter*, *neuter*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ūnus*, see vocabulary.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	celeris	celeris	celeris	celerium	-ium	-ium
Dat.	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	celerem	celerem	celere	celerēs(-is)	-ēs(-is)	-ia
Abl.	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	-ibus	-ibus
Nom.	equester	equestris	equestre	equestrēs	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	equestris etc.	equestris	equestris	equestrium etc.	-ium	-ium
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.		
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia		
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium		
Dat.	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus		
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs(-is)	fortia		
Abl.	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus		

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōri	fortiōri	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs(-is)	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre(-i)	fortiōre(-i)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Nom.	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
Gen.	orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
Dat.	orienti	orienti	orientibus	orientibus
Acc.	orientem	oriēns	orientēs(-is)	orientia
Abl.	orienti(-e)	orienti(-e)	orientibus	orientibus

The ablative singular in *i* is more common in the case of adjectives, and that in *e* in the case of participles.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Adjective	longus, -a, -um	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	longē	longius	longissimē

Adjective	fortis, -e	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē

Adjective	potēns, potentis	potentior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	potenter	potentius	potentissimē

For irregular comparisons see page 227 and vocabulary.

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

*Cardinals.*—ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quinque, sex, septem, octo, novem, decem, undecim, duodecim, trêdecim, quattuordecim, quindecim, sêdecim (sexdecim), septendecim, duodêviginti, ûndêviginti, viginti; 30, trîgintâ; 40, quadrâgintâ; 50, quinquâgintâ; 60, sexâgintâ; 70, septuâgintâ; 80, octôgintâ; 90, nōnâgintâ; 100, centum; 200, ducenti (ae, a); 300, trecenti; 400, quadringenti; 500, quingenti; 600, sexcenti; 700, septingenti; 800, octingenti; 900, nongenti; 1000, mille.

*Ordinals.*—primus, secundus, tertius, quârtus, quîntus, sextus, septimus, octâvus, nōnus, decimus, ûndecimus, duodecimus, tertius decimus, quârtus decimus, quîntus decimus, sextus decimus, septimus decimus, duodêvicêsimus, ûndêvicêsimus, vicêsimus.

## PRONOUNS.

	1st Pers.	2nd Pers.	3rd Pers. (Reflex.)
Nom.	ego	tū	—
Gen.	meī	tui	sui
Dat.	mihi (mī)	tibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
Voc.	—	tū	—
Abl.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

Nom.	nōs	vōs	—
Gen.	{ nostrum nostrī	{ vestrum vestrī	sui
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
Voc.	—	vōs	—
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	cae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Nom.	idem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem iīdem, iīdem	caedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

For all other pronouns, see vocabulary.

## VERBS.

## FIRST

*Indicative.*

Pres. Act.	laudō, -ās, -at; laudāmus, -ātis, -ant.
Pass.	laudor, -āris or -re, -ātur; laudāmur, -āmini, -antur.
Imp. Act.	laudābam, -ābās, etc.
Pass.	laudābar, -ābāris or -re, etc.
Fut. Act.	laudābō, -ābis, -ābit; laudābimus, -ābitis, -ābunt.
Pass.	laudābor, -āberis or -re, -ābitur; laudābimur, -ābimini, -ābuntur.

Gerund. laudandī, -ō, -um, -ō.

*Subjunctive.*

laudem, -ēs, -et; laudēmus, -ētis, -ent.
lauder, -ēris or -re, -ētur; laudēmur, -ēmini, -entur.
laudārem, -ārēs, etc.
laudārer, -ārēris or -re, etc.

## SECOND

Pres. Act.	moneō, -ēs, -et; monēmus, -ētis, -ent.
Pass.	moneor, -ēris or -re, -ētur; monēmur, -ēmini, -entur.
Imp. Act.	monēbam, -ēbās, etc.
Pass.	monēbar, -ēbāris or -re, etc.
Fut. Act.	monēbō, -ēbis, -ēbit; monēbimus, -ēbitis, -ēbunt.
Pass.	monēbor, -ēberis or -re, -ēbitur; monēbimur, -ēbimini, -ēbuntur.

Gerund. monendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

moneam, -eās, -eat; moneāmus, -eātis, -eant.
monear, -eāris or -re, -eātur; moneāmur, -eāmini, -eantur.

monērem, -ērēs, etc.
monērer, -ērēris or -re, etc.

## THIRD

Pres. Act.	regō, -is, -it; regimus, -itis, -unt.
Pass.	regor, -eris or -re, -itur; regimur, -imini, -untur.
Imp. Act.	regēbam, -ēbās, etc.
Pass.	regēbar, -ēbāris or -re, etc.
Fut. Act.	regam, -ēs, -et; regēmus, -ētis, -ent.
Pass.	regar, -ēris or -re, -ētur; regēmur, -ēmini, -entur.

Gerund. regendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

regam, -ās, -at; regāmus, -ātis, -ant.
regar, -āris or -re, -ātur; regāmur, -āmini, -antur.

regerem, -erēs, etc.
regerer, -erēris or -re, etc.

## VERBS.

## CONJUGATION.

*Imperative.*

laudā;  
laudāte.  
laudāre;  
laudāmini.

*Infinitive.*

laudāre.  
laudāri.

*Participles.*

laudāns, -antis.

laudātō, -ātō;  
laudātōte, -antō.  
laudātor, -ātor;  
—, -antor.

laudātūrum esse.

laudātūrus, -a, -um.

laudātum (*sup.*) Irī.

laudandus, -a, -um.

Supines. laudātum, laudātū.

## CONJUGATION.

monē;  
monēte.  
monēre;  
monēmini.

monēre.

monēns, -entis.

monēri.

monētō, -ētō;  
monētōte, -ento.  
monētor, -ētor;  
—, -entor.

monitūrum esse.

monitūrus, -a, -um.

monitum (*sup.*) Irī.

monendus, -a, -um.

Supines. monitum, monitū.

## CONJUGATION.

rege;  
regite.  
regere;  
regimini.

regere.

regēns, -entis.

regi.

regitō, -itō;  
regitōte, -untō.  
regitor, -itor;  
—, -untor.

rēctūrum esse.

rēctūrus, -a, -um.

rēctum (*sup.*) Irī.

rēgendus, -a, -um.

Supines. rēctum, rēctū

## VERBS.

## FOURTH

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Pres. Act.	audiō, -ia, -it; audimus, -itis, -iunt.	audiam, -iās, -iat; audiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
Pass.	audior, -iris or -re, -itur; audimur, -imini, -iuntur.	audiar, -iāris or -re, -iātur; audiāmur, -iāmini, -iantur.
Imp. Act.	audiēbam, -iēbās, etc.	audirem, -irēs, etc.
Pass.	audiēbar, -iēbāris or -re, etc.	audirer, -irēris or -re, etc.
Fut. Act.	audiam, -iēs, -iet; audiēmus, -iētis, -ient.	
Pass.	audiar, -iēris or -re, -iētur; audiēmur, -iēmini, -ientur.	
	Gerund. audiendi, -ō, -um, -ō.	

## THIRD CONJUGATION

Pres. Act.	capio, -ia, -it; capimus, -itis, -iunt.	capiam, -iās, -iat; capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
Pass.	capior, -eris or -re, -itur; capimur, -imini, -iuntur.	capiar, -iāris or -re, -iātur; capiāmur, -iāmini, -iantur.
Imp. Act.	capiebam, -iebās, etc.	caperem, -erēs, etc.
Pass.	capiebar, -iebāris or -re, etc.	caperer, -erēris or -re, etc.
Fut. Act.	capiam, -iēs, -iet; capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.	
Pass.	capiar, -iēris or -re, -iētur; capiēmur, -iēmini, -ientur.	
	Gerund. capiendi, -ō, -um, -ō.	

## PERFECT, PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE

NOTE.—The perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses are conjugated

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Perf. Act.	laudāvi, -isti, -it; laudāvimus, -istis, -erunt or -ere.	laudāverim, -eris, -erit; laudāverimus, -eritis, -erint.
Pass.	laudātus sum, es, est; laudāti sumus, estis, sunt.	laudātus sim, sis, sit; laudāti simus, sitis, sint.
Plup. Act.	laudāveram, -erās, etc.	laudāvissem, -issēs, etc.
Pass.	laudātus eram, erās, etc.	laudātus essem, essēs, etc.
F. P. Act.	laudāverō, -eris, -erit; laudāverimus, -eritis, -erint.	
Pass.	laudātus erō, eris, erit; laudāti erimus, eritis, erunt.	

## VERBS.

## CONJUGATION.

*Imperative.*

audi;  
audite.  
audire;  
audimini.

*Infinitive.*

audire.  
audiri.

*Participle.*

audiens, -ientis.

auditō, -itō;  
auditōte, -iuntō.  
auditor, itor;  
—, -iuntor.

auditūrum esse.

auditum (*sup.*) iri.

auditūrus, -a, -um.

audiendus, -a, -um.

Supines. auditum, auditū.

## IN -iō.

cape;  
capite.  
capere;  
capimini.

capere.

capī.

capiens, -ientis.

capitō, -itō;  
capitōte, -iuntō.  
capitor, -itor;  
—, -iuntor.

captūrum esse.

captum (*sup.*) iri.

captūrus, -a, -um.

capendus, -a, -um.

Supines. captum, captū.

## PERFECT TENSES OF ALL VERBS.

with the same endings for all verbs, regular and irregular.

*Imperative.**Infinitive.*

laudāvisse.

*Participle.*

laudātum (*partic.*) esse

laudātus, -a, -um.



## IRREGULAR

(For the perfect, pluperfect and future

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Sum, esse, fui,

Pres.	sum, es, est; sumus, estis, sunt.
Imp.	eram, erās, etc.
Fut.	erō, eris, erit; erimus, eritis, erunt.

sim, sis, sit; simus, sitis, sint.
essem, esses, etc.

Pres.	possum, potes, potest; possumus, potestis, possunt.
Imp.	poteram, poterās, etc.
Fut.	poterō, poteris, poterit; poterimus, poteritis, poterunt.

Possum, posse, potui,
possim, possis, possit; possimus, possitis, possint.
possem, possēs, etc.

Pres.	fiō, fis, fit; fimus, fitis, fiunt.
Imp.	fiēbam, fiēbās, etc.
Fut.	fiam, fies, fiet; fiēmus, fiētis, fient.

Fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made,
fiam, fias, fiat; fiāmus, fiātis, fiant.
fierem, fierēs, etc.

Pres.	eō, is, it; imus, itis, eunt.
Imp.	ibam, ibās, etc.
Fut.	ibō, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

Eō, ire, ivi
eam, eas, eat; eāmus, eātis, eant.
irem, irēs, etc.

Gerund. eundī, -ō, -um, -ō.

Pres. Act.	ferō, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
Pass.	feror, ferris, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.

Ferō, ferre, tuli,
feram, ferās, etc.
ferar, ferāris or -re, etc.

Imp. Act.	ferēbam, ferēbās, etc.
Pass.	ferēbar, ferēbāris or -re, etc.

ferrem, ferrēs, etc.
ferrer, ferrēris or -re, etc.

Fut. Act.	feram, ferēs, feret; ferēmus, ferētis, ferent.
Pass.	ferar, ferēris or -re, ferētur; ferēmur, ferēmini, ferentur.

Gerund. ferendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

## VERBS.

perfect tenses, see pages 210 and 211.)

<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
futūrus, be.		
es; este.	esse.	—
estō, estō; estōte, suntō.	futūrum esse (or fore)	futūrus, -a, -um.
—, be able, can.	posse.	potēns, -entis.

be done; happen, become.

fi; fite.	fieri.	—
	factum (sup.) iri.	faciendus, -a, -um.

(ii), itum, go.

i; ite.	ire.	iēns; euntis.
------------	------	---------------

itō, itō;  
itōte, euntō.

itūrum esse.

itūrus.

Supines. itum, itū.

lātum, bear.

fer; ferte. ferre. ferimini.	ferre. ferri.	ferēns, -entis.
---------------------------------------	------------------	-----------------

fertō, fertō;  
fertōte, feruntō.  
fertor, fertor;  
—, feruntor.

lātūrum esse.

lātūrus, -a, -um.

lātum (sup.) iri.

ferendus, -a, -um.

Supines. lātum, lātū.

*Indicative.*

Pres.	<b>volō, vīs, vult;</b> <b>volumus, vultis, volunt.</b>
Imp.	<b>volēbam, volēbās, etc.</b>
Fut.	<b>volam, volēs, etc.</b>

Pres.	<b>nōlō, nōn vīs, nōn vult;</b> <b>nolumus, nōn vultis, nōlunt.</b>
Imp.	<b>nōlēbam, nōlēbās, etc.</b>
Fut.	<b>nōlam, nōlēs, etc.</b>

Pres.	<b>mālō, māvīs, māvult;</b> <b>mālumus, māvultis, mālunt.</b>
Imp.	<b>mālēbam, mālēbās, etc.</b>
Fut.	<b>mālam, mālēs, etc.</b>

*Subjunctive.*

<b>Volō, velle, volui, —,</b> <b>velim, velis, velit;</b> <b>velimus, velitis, velint.</b>
<b>vellem, vellēs, etc.</b>

<b>Nōlō, nolle, nōlui, —,</b> <b>nōlim, nōlis, nōlit;</b> <b>nōlimus, nōlitis, nōlint.</b>
<b>nōllem, nōllēs, etc.</b>

<b>Mālō, malle, mālui, —,</b> <b>mālim, mālis, mālīt;</b> <b>mālimus, mālitis, mālīnt.</b>
<b>māllem, māllēš, etc.</b>

## DEFECTIVE

Perf.	<b>meminī, -istī, etc.</b>	<b>Meminī, meminisse,</b> <b>meminerim, -eris, etc.</b>
Plup.	<b>memineram, -erās, etc.</b>	<b>meminissem, -issēs, etc.</b>
F. P.	<b>meminerō, -eris, etc.</b>	

Perf.	<b>ōdī, -istī, etc.</b>	<b>Ōdī, ōdisse,</b> <b>ōderim, -eris, etc.</b>
Plup.	<b>ōderam, -erās, etc.</b>	<b>ōdissem, -issēs, etc.</b>
F. P.	<b>ōderō, -eris, etc.</b>	

Perf.	<b>coepl, -istī, etc.</b>	<b>Coepl, coepisse, coeptus,</b> <b>coeperim, -eris, etc.</b>
Plup.	<b>coeperam, -erās, etc.</b>	<b>coepissem, -issēs, etc.</b>
F. P.	<b>coeperō, -eris, etc.</b>	
Fut.		

For the present system and the passive of this verb, see vocabulary.

<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>wish, be willing.</i>	<i>velle.</i>	<i>volēns, -entis.</i>
<i>not wish, be unwilling.</i>		
<i>nōli;</i> <i>nōlite.</i>	<i>nōlle.</i>	<i>nōlēns, -entis.</i>
<i>nōlītō, nōlītō;</i> <i>nōlītōte, nōluntō.</i>		
<i>wish more, prefer.</i>	<i>mālle.</i>	

## VERBS.

<i>—, remember.</i>	
<i>mementō;</i> <i>mementōte.</i>	<i>meminisse</i>
<i>ōsus, hate.</i>	
	<i>ōdisse.</i>
	<i>ōsūrum esse</i>
<i>began, have begun.</i>	
	<i>coepisse.</i>
	<i>coeptūrum esse.</i>

*ōsus, -a, -um.**ōsūrus, -a, -um.**coeptus, -a, -um.**coeptūrus, -a, -um.*

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

*Oportet, oportere, oportuit, it behooves, it is proper.*

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Pres.	<i>oportet.</i>	<i>oporteat.</i>	<i>oportere.</i>
Imp.	<i>oportēbat.</i>	<i>oportēret.</i>	
Fut.	<i>oportēbit.</i>		
Perf.	<i>oportuit.</i>	<i>oportuerit.</i>	<i>oportuisse.</i>
Plup.	<i>oportuerat.</i>	<i>oportuisset.</i>	
F. P.	<i>oportuerit.</i>		

## INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES OF DEPONENT VERBS.

Pres.	<i>arbitrāri.</i>	<i>arbitrans, -antis.</i>
Perf.	<i>arbitrātum (partic.) esse.</i>	<i>arbitrātus, -a, -um.</i>
Fut.	<i>arbitrātūrum esse.</i>	<i>arbitrātūrus, -a, -um.</i>
	Gerundive.	<i>arbitrandus, -a, -um.</i>

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

For the periphrastic conjugations see §§ 277 and 278. They are conjugated in all tenses of the indicative and subjunctive, and have the present and perfect infinitives.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

The following list contains the principal parts of all the different simple verbs which should be learned, except those in -ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum and -or, -ārī, -ātus sum, in the order of their first occurrence in simple or compound form. If any compound that occurs in this work is different from its simple verb, an example is given.

## BOOK I

- CH. 1. **sum, esse, fui, (futūrus), be.**  
**dividō, dividere, divisī, divisum, divide.**  
**in-colō, colere, coluī, cultum, cultivate.**  
**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear.**  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, hold.**  
**per-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum, extend; pertain.**  
**gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, carry.**  
**cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum, go (from); yield.**  
**tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsum or tentum, stretch.**  
**con-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, hasten; fight.**  
**habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, have, hold.**  
**pro-hibeō, hibēre, hibui, hibitum, keep out; prevent.**  
**dēbeō (for de-hibeō), dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitum, owe,**  
*tough. So praebeō (for prae-hibeō), furnish.*  
**dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, say.**  
**capiō, capere, cēpi, captum, take.**  
**in-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum, begin.**  
**tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, touch.**  
**at-tingō, tingere, tigī, tāctum, touch upon.**  
**vergō, vergere, —, —, incline, lie.**  
**orior, oriri (orī), ortus sum (oritūrus), rise.**
- CH. 2. **dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, lead.**  
**faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, do, make. PASSIVE: fiō, fieri,**  
**factus sum, be done, be made, happen, become. So**  
**compounds with words other than prepositions;**  
**others like**  
**dē-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, fail; passive regular.**  
**suādeō, suādere, suāsi, suāsum, advise.**  
**eō, ire, ivi (iī), itum, go.**

- stō, stāre, steti, stātum, *stand* (intransitive).  
 prae-stō, stāre, stiti, —, *stand before*.  
 potior, potiri, potitus sum, *become master (of)*.  
 possum, posse, potui, —, *be able; can*.
- CH. 3. pateō, patēre, patui, —, *lie open, extend*.  
 statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, *stand* (transitive).  
 cōn-stituō,stituere, stitui, stitūtum, *determine; station*.  
 moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move*.  
 proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, *set out*.  
 emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, *take, buy*. So co-emō; other compounds like  
 red-imō, imere, ēmi, ēmptum, *buy back, purchase; except*  
 sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, *take*.  
 petō, petere, petivī (ii), petitum, *seek*.  
 legō, legere, lēgi, lēctum, *pick; read*.  
 dē-ligō, ligere, lēxi, lēctum, *choose*. So all compounds, except  
 dī-ligō, ligere, lēxi, lēctum, *love*;  
 intel-legō (ligō), legere (ligere), lēxi, lēctum, *understand*;  
 neg-legō, legere, lēxi, lēctum, *neglect*.  
 dō, dare, dedi, datum, *give*. So compounds with dissyllabic prepositions; others like  
 ab-dō, dere, didi, ditum, *hide*.
- CH. 4. agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, *drive, put through*.  
 red-igō, igere, ēgi, āctum, *drive back, reduce*. cōgō contracts in present system.  
 sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, *follow*.  
 oportet, oportēre, oportuit, —, *it is fitting*.  
 rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptum, *seize*.  
 ē-ripiō, ripere, ripui, reptum, *snatch away*.
- CH. 5. in-cendō, cendere, cendi, cēsum, *set fire to*.  
 tollō, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum, *raise; take away*.  
 iubeō, iubēre, iūssi, iūssum, *order*.  
 ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, (*serve one's self*), *use*.
- CH. 6. im-pediō, pedire, pedivī (ii), peditum, (*get one's foot in*), *impede*.  
 fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxus, *flow*.  
 videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*.

- patior, pati, passus sum, *suffer, allow.*  
 veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum, *come.*
- CH. 7. mittō, mittere, misi, missum, *send, let go.*  
 licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *it is permitted; may.*  
 caedō, caedere, cecidi, caesum, *cause to fall, cut, kill.*  
 oc-cidō, cidere, cidi, cisum, *kill.*  
 pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsum, *drive.*  
 ex-pellō, pellere, puli, pulsum, *drive out.* But  
 re-pellō has perfect re-ppuli, for re-pepuli.  
 spondeō, spondēre, sponendi, spōnsum, *promise.*  
 re-spondeō, spondēre, spondi, spōnsum, *answer.*  
 volō, velle, volui, —, *wish, be willing.*  
 vertō, vertere, verti, versum, *turn.* So the compounds,  
 except re-vertor, verti, verti, versum, *turn back*  
 (deponent in present system).
- CH. 8. pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, *place.*  
 mūniō, mūnīre, mūnivi (ii), mūnītum, *fortify.*  
 iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw.*  
 dē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled dē-jiciō), icere,  
 iēcī, lectum, *throw down.*  
 iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūnctum, *join.*  
 sistō, sistere, (stīti), stātum, *cause to stand; in comp., stand.*  
 dē-sistō, sistere, stiti, stitum, *cease.* So all com-  
 pounds, except in-, circum-, which have no  
 supine; the last has perfect circum-steti.
- CH. 9. linquō, linquere, liqui, lictum, *leave.*  
 studeō, studēre, studui, —, *be eager.*
- CH. 10. scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, *write.*
- CH. 11. dē-fendō, fendere, fendi, fēnsum, *defend.*  
 mereō, merēre, merui, meritum, or deponent, *deserve.*
- CH. 12. gradior, gradi, gressus sum, *step.*  
 ag-gredior, gredi, gressus sum, *approach, attack.*  
 ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, *avenge.*
- CH. 13. tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribūtum, *allot.*  
 (dē-)spiciō, spicere, spexi, spectrum, *look (down upon).*  
 nitor, niti, nisus (nixus) sum, *rest, rely.*
- CH. 14. cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsum, *fall.*  
 ac-cidō, cidere, cidi, (cāsum), *happen.*  
 caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard (for).*  
 timeō, timēre, timui, —, *be afraid of, fear.*  
 suēscō, suēscere, suēvi, suētum, *become accustomed.*



- doleō, dolēre, dolui, —, *feel pain.*  
 polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise.*
- CH. 15. lacessō, lacessere, lacessivī, lacessitum, *provoke.*  
 coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began, have begun.*
- CH. 16. nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, *be unwilling.*  
 queror, querī, questus sum, *complain.*
- CH. 17. valeō, valēre, valui, —, *be strong.*  
 terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum, *frighten.*
- CH. 18. sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, *perceive.*  
 quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī (ii), quaesitum, *ask.*  
 con-quirō, quirere, quisivī (ii), quisitum, *seek for.*  
 re-periō, perire, pperi, pertum, *find.*  
 audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.*  
 augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum, *increase.*  
 faveō, favēre, fāvi, fautum, *favor.*  
 cupiō, cupere, cupivī (ii), cupitum, *desire.*
- CH. 19. (g)nōscō, (g)nōscere, (g)nōvī, (g)nōtum, *know.* So  
 i-gnōscō, *pardon*; other compounds like  
 cō-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnitum, *ascertain.*  
 vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear.*
- CH. 20. plectō, plectere, (plexi), plexum, *plait.*  
 com-plector, plectī, plexus sum, *embrace.*  
 sciō, scīre, scivī (ii), scitum, *know.*  
 fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *weep.*  
 prehēdō, prehendere, prehēdī, prehēnsus, sometimes  
 shortened to, prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus,  
*grasp.*  
 moneō, mōnēre, monui, monitum, *warn.*  
 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak.*
- CH. 21. sidō, sidere, sidī, —, *sit down.*  
 cōn-sidō, sidere, sēdī, sessum, *settle.*  
 scandō, scandere, scandī, scānsus, *climb.*  
 ā(ad)-scendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsus, *climb to.*
- CH. 22. com-periō, perire, peri, pertum, *find out.*  
 currō, currere, cucurri, cursum, *run.*  
 cōc-currō, currere, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run*  
*against.*  
 struō, struere, strūxi, strūctum, *build.*
- CH. 23. claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus, *close.*  
 inter-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsus, *shut off.*  
 fidō, fidere, fisis sum, *trust.*

- CH. 24. *plēō, plēre, plēvi, plētum, fill.*  
 CH. 25. *figō, figere, fixi, fixum, pierce.*  
*ā-periō, perire, perui, pertum, open.*  
*vincō, vincere, vici, victum, conquer.*  
 CH. 26. *iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, help.*  
 CH. 27. *fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitum, flee.*  
*pōscō, pōscere, popōsci, —, demand.*  
 CH. 31. *arcessō, arcessere, arcessivi (ii), arcessitum, summon.*  
*ex-periō, periri, pertus sum, try.*  
 CH. 32. *maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsu, remain.*  
 CH. 33. *premō, premere, pressi, pressum, press.*  
*ex-primō, primere, pressi, pressum, press out.*  
 CH. 34. *trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctum, draw.*  
 CH. 36. *pendō, pendere, pependi, pēnsu, hang (transitive).*  
 CH. 38. *cingō, cingere, cinxi, cinctum, encircle.*  
 CH. 39. *figō, fingere, finxi, fictum, shape.*  
*audiō, audire, audivi (ii), auditum, hear.*  
 CH. 40. *spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsum, scatter.*  
*di-spergō, spergere, spersi, spersu, scatter abroad.*  
*in-dulgeō, dulgere, dulsei, dultu, indulge.*  
 CH. 43. *doceō, docere, docui, doctum, teach.*  
 CH. 45. *dē-serō, serere, serui, sertu, join.*  
 CH. 51. *pandō, pandere, pandi, passu, spread.*  
 CH. 53. *nanciscor, nancisci, nactus (nactus) sum, find.*  
*vinciō, vincere, vinxi, victu, bind.*  
*cōn-sulō, sulere, sulu, sultu, consult.*

## BOOK II

- CH. 13. *nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum (nāscitūrus), be born.*  
 CH. 19. *regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, rule.*  
*lateō, latere, latui, —, lie hidden.*  
 CH. 25. *urgeō (urgueō), urgere, ursi, —, press.*  
 CH. 27. *-cumbō, -cumbere, cubui, cubitu, topple.*

## IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES

The following substantives require notice as having irregular, extra, or lacking forms. See vocabulary or grammars.

- Book I. 1. *bellu, sol.* 2. *lacus, locus, milia.* 3. *fidēs, filia.*  
 4. *arma.* 5. *nihil, domus, spēs.* 6. *vīs.* 9. *angustiae.* 10. *hī-*

berna. 11. liberi. 12. deus. 18. nēmō. 20. ops, vulgus. 22. aciēs. 24. phalanx. 26. vesper. 34. opus. 50. fās.

## GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES

### GENERAL RULES

*Masculine.* Names of male beings, rivers, winds, months and mountains.

*Feminine.* Names of female beings, countries, towns, plants and trees.

*Neuter.* Indeclinable nouns.

### SPECIAL RULES—SUBORDINATE TO THE ABOVE

Declensions I. and V., *feminine*.

Declensions II. and IV., *masculine* or *neuter*, according to ending.

Declension III. *Masculine*: those ending in ō (except dō, gō, and iō), or, ōs, er, es. *Feminine*: those ending in dō, gō, and iō, ās, ēs, is, ūs, x, and s following a consonant. *Neuter*: all others.

### EXCEPTIONS

Book I. 1. finis (*m.*), mōns (*m.*), sōl (*m.*). 2. locus (*m.* and *n.* plural). 3. iter (*n.*). 4. diēs (*m.*, sometimes *f.*, see vocabulary), ignis (*m.*), iūs (*n.*). 5. domus (*f.*), mēnsis (*m.*). 6. pōns (*m.*). 7. Īdūs (*f.*). 8. pēs (*m.*). 10. Alpēs (*f.*). 12. linter (*f.*). 20. vulgus (*n.*, accusative rarely *m.*). 22. collis (*m.*). 25. manus (*f.*). 38. Vesontīō (*m.*). 40. ōrdō (*m.*) 46. lapis (*m.*). 50. meridiēs (*m.*).

Book II. 17. arbor (*f.*), sentis (*m.*). 27. cadaver (*n.*). 33. cortex (*m.* and *f.*).

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

The following adjectives and adverbs require notice on account of irregular comparison.

Book I. 1. parvus and adv., saepe, propior and adv., exterus. 2. facilis and adv., māgnus and adv. 3. multus and adv. 6. bonus and adv., difficilis and adv. 7. ulterior. 9. novus. 10. citerior, prior and adv., superus. 13. aeger and adv., vetus. 15. posterus, audāx and adv., diū. 18. celer and adv., liber and adv. 26. ācer and adv. 36. dēterior. 49. idōneus.

Book II. 1. crēber.

# ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

## EXERCISE I

**A. Objective Genitive, §§ 40-43.** Study the examples very carefully, and note that this use of the genitive is sometimes the translation of *to* or *for*.

**B. Predicate Possessive Genitive, § 46.** Notice carefully the models and their translation.

**C. Partitive Genitive, §§ 47-53,** especially the uses mentioned in § 49 and the last part of § 50, which do not have *of* in English.

**D. Prepositions instead of the Partitive Genitive, § 53.** It will be better to use *ex* or *dē* with the ablative, instead of the genitive, after *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *quidam*.

**A.** 1. The desire for royal power. 2. The wrong to the Roman people. 3. A hope for power. 4. A reputation for bravery. 5. Danger to the legion.

**B.** 6. This duty is the commander's. 7. Gaul does not belong to Ariovistus, but to the Roman people. 8. This place belongs to the bravest legion. 9. What does the plan include?

**C.** 10. Two thousand men. 11. Three miles. 12. No grain. 13. Nothing left. 14. Less danger. 15. Sufficient reason. 16. More grain. 17. Some(-thing of)<sup>1</sup> help. 18. What business is it to Caesar (dat.)?

**D.** 19. One of the soldiers. 20. Two<sup>2</sup> of the legions. 21. Certain of the Belgians. 22. A lieutenant of (*ex*) ours. 23. A few of our [men].<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Words in parentheses are explanatory.

<sup>2</sup> What gender?

<sup>3</sup> Words in brackets are to be omitted in translation.

## EXERCISE II

**Indirect Questions, § 243.** Learn thoroughly the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 151), and study the examples under § 152. Review the subjunctive mood, pages 208–215.

**Past Tenses, §§ 148, 149.** In translating the simple past tense of English into a Latin indicative, always use the perfect tense, unless the English verb distinctly denotes *attempted, repeated, accustomed, or continued* action, when the imperfect is to be used.

1. I know what you are doing. 2. I know what you have done. 3. I knew what you were doing. 4. I knew what you had done. 5. I saw what you did. 6. He understands what you did. 7. They reported where the enemy were. 8. It was seen what had been done. 9. They will ask why you are coming. 10. We know what legions were sent.

11. They had found out what towns were being fortified. 12. We know why the towns are being fortified. 13. Part of our army and all the allies<sup>1</sup> will be sent. 14. He asked what help there was. 15. A thousand Gauls and thousands of Belgians came. 16. They found out where there was more grain. 17. Many of our soldiers and certain of the allies had been seen. 18. Three of the legions had started. 19. We know why the enemy's reputation for bravery is great. 20. We saw men who had even less grain.

## EXERCISE III

**Accusative of Direct Object, § 7.**

**Accusative of Extent, § 14.** This may be used exactly like the adverbial objective in English, as the examples are translated; it may also be the translation of *for*, e.g. *they marched (for) many miles*.

**Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing, § 16, and the passive construction of the same, § 17.**

**Accusative with Prepositions, § 18.**

**Accusative Subject of Infinitive, § 257.**

<sup>1</sup> Not partitive in sense, and hence not genitive.

**Uses of Infinitives.** The infinitive is a verbal noun having the following uses:

1. Nominative Case. *To see is to believe.* The same in Latin.
2. Accusative Case.
  - a. Direct object. *He decided to go.* The same in Latin.<sup>1</sup>  
 (With subject.) *He allowed us to go.* The same in Latin.<sup>1</sup>
  - b. Complementary. *He is able to do it.* The same in Latin.  
*He can do it.* The same in Latin.
  - c. Used adverbially. *He came to see us.* Latin, Exercise IV.

1. The traders often come to the Celts. 2. We call the Celts Gauls. 3. The Celts are called Gauls. 4. For many years we shall fight among the Germans across the Rhine. 5. They marched a mile into our territory. 6. They will march ten miles through the province. 7. You ordered the army to set out across the river. 8. They will not allow the traders to come to the town. 9. They can remain two days. 10. For many miles he had built strong fortifications.

11. The traders also reported why the army had been led across the river. 12. For three days two of the legions which you see will remain near the town. 13. There is sufficient reason why they are coming. 14. We had allowed no grain to be sent. 15. It is easy to understand why they came. 16. Certain of the soldiers could not be sent for a longer distance. 17. I see where he is. 18. I see where (whither) he went. 19. These places belonged to the Helvetians. 20. He wishes to have more grain.

## EXERCISE IV

**Adverbial Clauses of Purpose, §§ 156, 157, 158, 164.** Since a purpose is never a completed act, only the tenses of incomplete action in the subjunctive mood, the present and imperfect, are used in purpose clauses.

<sup>1</sup> Object infinitives that are not translated into Latin by infinitives will not be found until Exercise XX.

Distinguish carefully the infinitive used adverbially in English to express purpose, which becomes subjunctive in Latin, from the subject and object uses, which are the same in Latin as in English, and occurred in Exercise III.

1. We are doing this (in-order-) that we may defend the town. 2. We were doing this (in-order-) that we might defend the town. 3. We are doing this that the town may not be seized. 4. We did this that the town might not be seized. 5. They are coming to drive back the enemy. 6. They came to drive back the enemy. 7. We set out to attack them. 8. We shall start out to attack them. 9. We shall fortify the town that it may not be taken. 10. We fortified it that it might not be taken.

11. They will wait for many days to do this. 12. He showed what his plan included. 13. He understands why we could send no grain. 14. One of the soldiers came to see a friend. 15. They led the troops across the river so that they might not be seen. 16. They had marched several miles to attack the town. 17. You allowed the enemy's troops to come into the village. 18. We shall try to send the cavalry to meet the attack. 19. Three of the scouts returned to ask where <sup>1</sup> the others had been sent. 20. The towns which were taken belonged to the Germans.

## EXERCISE V

**Dative of Indirect Object, §§ 19, 22, contrasted with Accusative of Limit, § 94.**

Either of these constructions may be the translation of *to*. The dative is generally used when the English phrase can be changed to an indirect object of the same or a similar verb (but not with *send*); e.g. *he gave the grain to him* = *he gave him the grain*; *he said this to him* = *he told him this*.

The dative is used especially with the following verbs: *dō* and *nūntiō* and their compounds, *respondeō*, *polliceor*, *dīcō*, *licet*,

<sup>1</sup> *quō* or *ubi*?

(con-)cēdō. The accusative with *ad* is used with verbs that denote motion.

1. He came to Caesar. 2. He reported the fact to Caesar. 3. They sent ambassadors to him. 4. He gave them this answer (answered them this). 5. The Aeduans did not bring the grain to the river. 6. This was not permitted to the soldiers. 7. The territory of the Belgians extended to the Ocean. 8. He had promised many things to his friends. 9. Orgetorix will go to the nearest states. 10. More grain was given to the men.

11. They told him what nations lived across the Rhine. 12. He is doing these things that an embassy may not be sent to that state. 13. The magistrates will collect a thousand men to bring back Orgetorix to the town. 14. Casticus will not be called a friend of the Roman people. 15. For two years the Helvetians will try to establish peace. 16. All the grain will be sent to the army. 17. Orgetorix had some influence among the Sequanians. 18. It will be reported to the lieutenant where the enemy have encamped. 19. We shall set fire to their private buildings in order that their hope may be taken away. 20. He asked what business it was to Caesar.

## EXERCISE VI

**Dative with Special verbs, §§ 23, 24, 26.** Notice carefully from the examples in § 26 how the passive is expressed.

1. He persuaded the Helvetians. 2. The Helvetians were persuaded. 3. The Belgians do not desire (*studeō*) cavalry. 4. Caesar usually pardoned the Gauls. 5. The Gauls were usually pardoned. 6. Orgetorix desired (*cupiō*) royal power. 7. We shall not be harmed. 8. He had trusted our friends. 9. They did not obey their commander. 10. They had resisted the enemy bravely.



11. It was not easy to take away all the grain. 12. They will not allow us to go through their territory. 13. The legions advanced one by one to attack the enemy. 14. Certain of our soldiers were persuaded. 15. Either a wall or a ditch was built for several miles. 16. We cannot judge in which [of two] direction the river flows. 17. Caesar answered the ambassadors what seemed best. 18. They returned to camp and returned their horses to the Gauls. 19. We are giving hostages that we may not be harmed. 20. We know why Orgetorix desired a revolution.

### EXERCISE VII

**Dative with Compound Verbs, § 27, 1, 2.**

A. The following are the most common compound transitive verbs that take the dative and accusative in Caesar: *infero*, *prae-ficiō*, *suscipiō*, *obiciō*; the verb *imperō*, when meaning *levy upon* or *demand from*, and the verb *mandō*, when meaning *entrust*, take the dative and accusative, and when meaning *command*, take a dative and an *ut* or *nē* clause (see Exercise XX).

B. The following are the most important intransitive compound verbs that take the dative in Caesar: *praesum*, *praestō*, *occurrō*, *accidō*. For the use of the passive of *occurrō*, see § 27, 2, note.

A. 1. We did not easily make war on the Helvetians. 2. War was not easily made on the Helvetians. 3. Caesar placed Labienus in command of the fortification. 4. Labienus was placed in command of the fortification. 5. Caesar levied soldiers on the province [*or*, demanded soldiers from the province]. 6. A great number of soldiers was demanded from the province. 7. They took to flight and hid in the woods. 8. I shall expose him to uncivilized [men]. 9. He will be exposed to uncivilized [men]. 10. He took upon himself (undertook) this mission to the states.

B. 11. Dumnorix commanded (was in command of) the cavalry which we had sent. 12. The Helvetians surpassed the rest of the Gauls. 13. I shall face these conditions (*rēs*).

14. These conditions will be faced. 15. Something will happen to the Romans.

16. One of the soldiers was persuaded. 17. For four miles they marched rapidly to overtake the enemy. 18. An embassy came to see me. 19. We shall give a pledge and an oath to him. 20. This fact was reported to the Helvetians. 21. Some help was sent to the garrison, that the town might not be taken. 22. Orgetorix was not pardoned. 23. He had collected all his friends to free himself. 24. Orgetorix had promised more help to Cassicus and Dumnorix. 25. Those new troops cannot easily be resisted.

### EXERCISE VIII

**A. Purpose Clauses introduced by a Relative, §§ 156, 162, 163.** This construction occurs especially after *mittō* and *venio*.

**B. Adverbial Clauses of Result, §§ 165-167.** Contrast the negative of these clauses with the negative of purpose clauses.

The pluperfect subjunctive is not used in clauses of result, completed action being expressed by the perfect subjunctive after any tense.

**A.** 1. They sent ambassadors (who were) to say as follows (these things). 2. Men came to fortify the town. 3. Caesar is sending the cavalry ahead to learn the road. 4. Men were sent to build a bridge. 5. Ariovistus sent light-armed troops, which forces were to frighten our [men].

**B.** 6. The mountains are so high that we are shut in. 7. The river was so wide that we did not hear him. 8. Their hope was so great that they started out into Gaul. 9. They fought so bravely that they were not conquered. 10. The river was very deep, so that our [men] could not cross it.

11. The Gauls tried to find out where Caesar was going. 12. They marched so that there was less space between the two armies. 13. No one who tried to return was harmed. 14. It was reported to the commander in what direction

the enemy was marching. 15. This lieutenant is not in command of a legion; he has been placed in command of the cavalry. 16. He told the men who were present who he was. 17. The cavalry was sent to sustain the attack, so that the legions might not be disturbed. 18. We have deserved so [well] that our fields ought not to be laid waste. 19. A very high mountain was near, so that we could not go forward. 20. They did not dare to cross the river to attack us.

### EXERCISE IX

Simple Indirect Discourse, §§ 217-224, 228 (first part), 230, 232, 233, 235-238.

Note especially (1) that simple indirect discourse consists of subject accusative and infinitive only; (2) that the tense of the infinitive is the same as the time of the same verb in direct discourse; (3) that when the infinitive is a compound of a participle and *esse*, the participle must agree with the subject accusative.

1. He says that he is coming. 2. He says that he came. 3. He says that he will come. 4. He said that he was coming. 5. He said that he had come. 6. He said that he would come. 7. He says that they are being sent. 8. He said that they were being sent. 9. He says that they have been sent. 10. He said that they had been sent. 11. He says that they will be sent. 12. He said that they would be sent. 13. We think that we are ready for (ad) this movement (*rēs*). 14. It was reported that they were trying to march through the farther province. 15. They thought that they would persuade the Allobroges.

16. They are hurrying to the walls to resist the enemy. 17. The soldiers asked who I was. 18. I told them that I was a Roman. 19. Three of our [men] were pardoned. 20. They were so exhausted that they did not reach the town. 21. One force was sent to keep the enemy away. 22. The Helvetians will ascertain that Caesar has come.

23. They fought sharply that they might not be surrounded.
24. They fought so sharply that they were not surrounded.
25. The bridge of which I was in command was not harmed.

## EXERCISE X

Participles, §§ 259-264.

Ablative Absolute, §§ 87, 88.

In translating participles into Latin, determine first the *real tense* (§ 261, note), then see what voice must be used in Latin. Remember that a participle is a verbal adjective, and see with what it agrees to determine its gender, number, and case.

1. Greatly excited, they started out. 2. Having given this pledge, he tried to seize the royal power. 3. Sending ambassadors to Caesar, they sought peace. 4. Wandering to the Rhine, they tried to cross. 5. Fortifying the camp, he left a garrison there. 6. He found the legions fortifying the camp. 7. Fearing an ambush, he sent the cavalry ahead. 8. Having killed a large number of the enemy, he led back the army into camp. 9. I am going-to-hold the royal power. 10. Having defeated these tribes, he led back the army unharmed. 11. Peace being made, the ambassadors returned to their own [people]. 12. Having formed this plan, he ordered the army to advance. 13. [After] delaying around (*apud*) the town and setting on fire all the villages of the Remi, they hastened against Caesar. 14. Caesar [being] unwilling, the Helvetians could not cross the river. 15. Dropping their spears, they attacked the enemy sharply.

16. Orgetorix persuaded Casticus and Dumnorix, whom he saw [when] going to their states. 17. He found out that his plan had been reported to the Helvetians. 18. Having collected ten thousand men, he freed himself. 19. The Helvetians were going to carry sufficient grain, in order that they might not be compelled to return. 20. They

hoped that the Allobroges would allow them to go through their territory. 21. Having prepared everything, they were informed that Caesar was coming. 22. They were so alarmed that they sent ambassadors to him to say that they wished to march through the province. 23. They also said that they would harm no one. 24. Caesar remembered (*memoriā tenēre*) that Cassius had been killed and his army routed and sent under the yoke. 25. Therefore he told the ambassadors that he would not allow them to march through the province.

## EXERCISE XI

A. Translations of "By," §§ 68, 71.

B. Direct Questions.

- I. Introduced by interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb.  
The same in Latin as in English.
- II. Asked by placing a verb or auxiliary before the subject.
  1. Asked for information, or not hinting at an expected answer:  
"Did you *see* the men?" "Did you see the *men*?"  
In Latin the enclitic *-ne* is appended to the word about which the question centers, and this word is put first:  
"Vidistine hominēs?" "Hominēsne vidisti?"
  2. Hinting at the answer "Yes."  
"Didn't you see the men?" "Nōne hominēs vidisti?"
  3. Hinting at the answer "No."  
"You didn't see the men, did you?" (Or, in a tone of indignation or surprise, "Did you see the men?")  
"Num hominēs vidisti?"

NOTE. — These Latin questions, on becoming indirect, are introduced by *-ne* or *num* (without difference in meaning), *whether*.

A. 1. Caesar constructed works, by which he kept the Helvetians away. 2. The soldiers drove them back by their missiles. 3. Many missiles were thrown by the soldiers. 4. Dumnorix was the man by whom the Sequanians were persuaded. 5. They are bounded by wide rivers.

6. They were elated by their recent victory. 7. This was the route by which the Helvetians finally went.

B. 8. Are you going? 9. Aren't you going? 10. You aren't going, are you? 11. Don't you want to go? 12. Can't you go? 13. Why can't you go? 14. Did you do this? 15. Did you do *this*? 16. Did you *do* this? 17. You didn't do this, did you? 18. We want to know whether you can go. 19. They asked why you had gone. 20. We know why you came. 21. They asked whether you could go. 22. They are asking whether you have gone.

23. Dumnorix, who was very powerful among the Sequanians, desired a revolution. 24. It was reported to Caesar that the Helvetians were going to march through the province. 25. They tried to do this in order that they might no longer be shut in by mountains. 26. Caesar knows by whom this will be done. 27. He thinks that they will make war on the province. 28. The danger is so great that I am going into Italy to bring back larger forces. 29. I shall place you in command of the fortification that I have made. 30. Having seized the higher positions, the natives tried to check the Roman army. 31. Did Caesar send a lieutenant to lead the army back? 32. Didn't he go to Italy himself to bring back stronger forces?

## EXERCISE XII

Translations of "With," §§ 71, 76, 78.

When feasible, the order of words in expressions of manner or attendant circumstance is: *adjective, cum, noun*.

*Cum* is enclitic with the relative and personal pronouns.

1. They were going out with all their forces. 2. With my army I shall seize the royal power. 3. We are going-to-carry all the grain with us. 4. We shall go with you. 5. With the legion which he had with him he built a wall. 6. This will be [attended] with great danger to the province.

7. He went with five legions in all. 8. The river flows very swiftly (with great swiftness). 9. They were crossing the river with rafts. 10. With a few horsemen we have defeated their whole army. 11. They are going-to-take-away our liberty together with [that of] the rest of Gaul. 12. I understand with what great (how great) danger you have done this. 13. Caesar talked with him. 14. Considius was sent ahead with the scouts. 15. They will follow with all their baggage. 16. Some were exhausted with wounds. 17. They approached with about fifteen thousand men. 18. I cannot allow you to help them with grain. 19. We shall hasten to the river with all our troops. 20. I came into Gaul with great hope.

21. Caesar learned that the Helvetians had already led their troops through the territory of the Aeduians and were laying waste their fields. 22. The latter (these) sent ambassadors to him to ask help. 23. The Ambarri said that the enemy were attacking their towns. 24. The Allobroges informed Caesar that there was nothing left to them. 25. We are going to check the enemy, that the property of the allies may not be lost. 26. Starting out with three legions, he attacked them at a disadvantage (impeded). 27. Having killed a great part of them, he put the rest to flight. 28. He crossed the river at once to follow up the rest. 29. The Helvetians were so frightened by this, that they sent ambassadors to seek peace. 30. Caesar asked whether they would give hostages to him. 31. The chief of the embassy replied to him that the Helvetians were accustomed to receive, not give, hostages.

### EXERCISE XIII

Translations of "From," §§ 65, 66, 67, 84, 96. If a preposition is to be used, think whether *ab*, *dē*, or *ex* best expresses the sense.

*Prohibeō* and *dēsistō* are the verbs which in Caesar most commonly omit the preposition.

1. A river separates the Gauls from the Germans. 2. The Helvetians kept the Germans from their territory. 3. The Helvetians are going out of their territory. 4. A bridge separates this town from the Allobroges. 5. We shall start out of the town at once. 6. I shall obtain my request from the Sequanians. 7. They are not far away from our territory. 8. Most of the Belgians are descended from the Germans. 9. You will learn this from the words of the traders. 10. Many returned from fear of the enemy. 11. They ceased from this attempt. 12. Ambassadors will come from other states also.

13. Caesar sent ahead all the cavalry to see in what direction (pl.) the Helvetians were marching. 14. Engaging-in battle with their cavalry, our [men] were driven back. 15. Elated by this battle, having driven back four thousand cavalry with five hundred horsemen, they began to fight more boldly, and even to provoke our [men] to (by) battle. 16. Restraining his men from battle, Caesar marched so that there was not a great distance between the enemy's rearguard and his own van. 17. In the meantime the Aeduians had promised Caesar grain, that there might be sufficient provisions. 18. Finally he understood that the grain could not be brought by the Aeduan chiefs. 19. So, calling together Liscus and other chiefs, he told them that he had undertaken the war partly owing-to (from) their prayers. 20. Liscus held (*praesum*) the highest office (*magistrātus*) among the Aeduians. 21. Therefore Caesar complained more bitterly that no grain was being brought to him (-self).

#### EXERCISE XIV

Translations of "In," "At," "On," §§ 72, 82, 89, 91. Note when a preposition is used.

1. The Helvetians surpassed the rest of the Gauls in bravery. 2. They fight in almost daily battles with the



Germans. 3. They carry on war in the Germans' territory. 4. Their towns were twelve in number. 5. They were disappointed in their hope. 6. That state is in our province. 7. Fields were being laid waste almost in sight of our army. 8. In this affair Caesar by chance avenged not only public but also personal wrongs. 9. Caesar did in one day what they had done with the greatest difficulty in twenty days. 10. Divico had been leader of the Helvetians in a former war. 11. He came at that time. 12. They arrived [on] that day. 13. Their boats are on the lake. 14. On this journey his friends were persuaded. 15. He started at daybreak. 16. They fought on the bank of the river.

17. Then at length Liscus explained that there were some very powerful [men] among the Aeduans. 18. "These will not allow the people to bring the grain which they ought." 19. "They say that the Romans are going to take away the liberty of all the Gauls." 20. "By these same [men] all your plans are reported to the enemy." 21. "I have reported this critical fact to you under compulsion (having been compelled)." 22. "But I understand with how much danger I have done this." 23. Caesar perceived from this speech that Dumnorix was the man (*ipse*). 24. But he did not wish to talk [any] more about this matter in the presence of others (more being present). 25. Therefore, quickly dismissing the council, he detained (retained) Liscus. 26. He found out from others that all these things were true. 27. He asked what could be done.

## EXERCISE XV

A. Ablative of Degree, § 81.

B. Ablative of Comparison, § 69. Note when *quam* may be omitted.

A. 1. The other road was much easier. 2. A battle had been fought (*facto*) a few days before. 3. The war was finished a little earlier than the time of year demanded.

4. He complained much more bitterly. 5. A few months after, several thousand men had crossed the Rhine.

Write the following sentences in two ways when possible. Sentence 8 may be written in three ways (§§ 69, 70).

B. 6. This road was quicker than that. 7. Aren't mountains higher than hills? 8. There are not more than five miles between the armies. 9. Ariovistus had conquered the Gauls more by wisdom than by bravery. 10. The Romans were not braver than the Gauls, were they? 11. The scouts saw more Germans than Gauls. 12. A better<sup>1</sup> [fate] had happened to the Aeduans than to the Sequanians. 13. He said that Dumnorix was more powerful than his father.

14. Caesar thought there was sufficient reason why he should punish Dumnorix. 15. At the same time he talked with his brother, and showed what each [man] had said about him. 16. He proved that Dumnorix had harmed him. 17. Diviciacus said that, if Dumnorix was put to death (Dumnorix having been put to death), no one would think that it had not happened with his consent; 18. and that the sympathies (*animus*) of the whole of Gaul would be turned from him (-self). 19. Therefore Caesar showed Dumnorix what he understood himself, and what the state complained of. 20. He also found out afterward what he did and with whom he talked.

## EXERCISE XVI

A. Genitive of Quality, § 44.

B. Genitive of Measure, § 45.

C. Ablative of Quality, § 80.

D. Ablative with Certain Deponent Verbs, § 73.

A. 1. Men of great bravery. 2. Rocks of smaller size. 3. A tower of greater height. 4. A man of extraordinary wisdom.

<sup>1</sup> Neuter.

B. 5. Three months' provisions. 6. The depth of the river was (of) two feet. 7. A wall (of) twelve feet in height (in with acc.). 8. A march of three days.

C. 9. Men of friendly or of unfriendly disposition. 10. A man of great popularity. 11. A mountain of great height. 12. The Germans were [men] of incredible bravery. 13. A man of the greatest<sup>1</sup> bravery. 14. A state of great influence. 15. An approach of not more than two hundred feet (§ 70).

D. 16. Our neighbors will use the same plan. 17. Our [men] obtained-possession-of the baggage and camp. 18. Ariovistus could use the Gallic language. 19. The Helvetians had left their homes to obtain control. 20. Proculus enjoyed the friendship of Ariovistus.

21. The same day Caesar was informed by scouts that the Helvetians had encamped at the foot of a mountain, a few miles from his own camp. 22. Labienus was sent with scouts to find out the road to the top of the mountain. 23. At daybreak Caesar went forward by the same road by which the enemy had gone. 24. Seizing the mountain, Labienus waited-for Caesar. 25. Caesar had been persuaded that the mountain was held by Labienus. 26. Therefore he did not attack them, for-fear-that (nē) he would be surrounded. 27. Afterwards he found out both that Labienus held the mountain, and that the Helvetians had gone ahead. 28. The next day he changed (turned) his route and hastened to go to the largest town of the Aeduians to get (capiō) a supply of grain. 29. The Helvetians thought he was so afraid of them that he did not dare to attack them. 30. And so, changing (turning) their route likewise, they began to follow and harass our men.

NOTE. — Sentences from Exercises XXV-XXX may be taken at any time after Exercise XVI, if desired.

<sup>1</sup> See vocabulary.

## EXERCISE XVII

- A. The Gerund, § 267.
- B. The Gerundive for the Gerund, §§ 271-273.
- C. The Gerundive as a Participle, §§ 269, 270.
- D. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, § 278.

A. 1. Time for fighting was not lost. 2. He gave the enemy no opportunity of stopping. 3. Time was not given for fighting. 4. This day had been set for starting (dat., or ad with acc.). 5. This is a necessary reason for (ad) starting. 6. He obtained his request by urging. 7. On asking, Caesar found the reason. 8. The troops were sent for the purpose of defending the city.

The following sentences may be written first with the gerund and an object, but must be written with the gerundive.

B. 9. He came for the purpose of seeing the city. 10. A day has been set for attacking the town. 11. They considered two years to be enough for (ad) completing these preparations (rēs). 12. We shall be more ready to undergo (for undergoing) dangers. 13. They led the army across by building a bridge. 14. The legion is ready for carrying on the war. 15. All the states of Gaul have come to attack (for attacking) me. 16. I am doing these things for the purpose of defending myself, not of attacking Gaul. 17. Time will be lost in asking-for my [own men]. 18. The hope of obtaining-possession-of the town vanished (discēdō).

C. 19. Ariovistus is not to be borne. 20. The fields of the Germans are not to be compared with ours. 21. He caused a bridge to be built. 22. He gave an army to his lieutenant to lead (to be led) into Gaul.

D. 23. This work is to be done. 24. The soldiers are to be sent into Gaul. 25. These things had to be prepared. 26. Ambassadors will have to be sent. 27. This is not to be feared. 28. All [sorts of] cruelties will have to be

endured. 29. These things must be done. 30. It ought not to be granted.

31. Seeing this, Caesar led up his forces to the nearest hill, and sent the cavalry to meet the enemy's charge. 32. Then, drawing up four legions in line of battle (a line of battle of four legions having been drawn up), he ordered the other two to fortify the place. 33. The Helvetians, [after] bringing their baggage to one place, came up to our first line. 34. Our soldiers, throwing their spears from their higher position, made an attack with their swords so sharply that the Helvetians could not meet [it]. 35. But the Boii and Tulingi, with about fifteen thousand men, attacking our men on (ab) the exposed flank, began to surround them and the Helvetians to advance again. 36. Our first and second line[s] advanced to resist the defeated Helvetians, [and] the third to meet the [on]-coming Boii and Tulingi. 37. At length, all the enemy being either driven back or conquered in the double battle, our men obtained possession of the baggage and camp. 38. There they captured a daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons. 39. Caesar sent scouts to find out where the enemy had gone. 40. Three days having passed, he learned that they had arrived in the territory of the Lingones.

## EXERCISE XVIII

A. Dative of Agent, § 31.

B. Dative of Possessor, § 30.

- A. 1. The same thing must be done by all the Gauls.
2. All [sorts of] cruelties must be endured by the Sequanians.
3. Troops will have to be sent by Caesar. 4. This work had to be done by the soldier. 5. Ambassadors must be sent by our friends.

Sentences like the following must be changed to the passive.

6. We must seize the hill. 7. The legion must fortify all these places. 8. I must send a letter. 9. You will have to take grain from the fields. 10. They had to make peace.

Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive (§ 144, 2).

11. You (sing.) must go. 12. I ought not to wait. 13. You (pl.) will have to fight. 14. You ought to find out about the common welfare (*rēs*). 15. We ought not to fear without reason. 16. They had to come.

Note the same construction in indirect discourse.

17. He says that you must go. 18. He thought that he ought not to wait. 19. He thought he ought not to hesitate. 20. He thought these conditions ought to be faced (§ 144, 1).

B. 21. We have nothing left. 22. Ariovistus had two daughters. 23. What business has Caesar in Gaul? 24. No one could stand (had the power of standing) on the wall. 25. Caesar (dat.) had six legions; he had (*habeō*) four with him.

26. The Helvetians, alarmed by their utter destitution (lack of all things), sent ambassadors to Caesar about surrendering. 27. These (who) threw themselves at his feet, and speaking humbly [and] weeping, sought peace. 28. Caesar nevertheless demanded their arms and many hostages. 29. These being given up, he received the surrender of the rest (received the rest into surrender). 30. About six thousand men however who had sought safety in flight, he held as (in the number of) enemies. 31. All their grain being lost, he ordered the Allobroges to give (make) them a supply. 32. He did this especially on this basis (*ratio*), that (*quod*) he did not wish the Germans to cross into the territory of the Helvetians. 33. The Aeduans gave lands to the Boii, who were noted for their bravery (§ 84); and afterwards admitted them (whom

they afterwards received) to equal rights and liberties (to an equal condition of right and liberty). 34. A reckoning had been made by the Helvetians, what number of men, women, [and] children had started from their territory. 35. The sum-total (*summa*) was three hundred sixty-eight thousand (§ 45) souls; of whom one hundred ten thousand returned.

### EXERCISE XIX

**A. Dative of Purpose, § 32.** This construction is limited to a few abstract and collective nouns, and is therefore usually singular.

**B. Dative with Adjectives, § 33.**

**A.** 1. We shall send cavalry to reënforce (as a help) to Caesar. 2. They chose a place for a conference. 3. It was a great hindrance to the Gauls. 4. They are the rear-guard (a guard for the rear). 5. This will be a matter of concern (this matter will be for a care) to me. 6. The friendship of the Roman people is a protection. 7. These things are of (for) use to us in (ad) war. 8. He sent troops as a reënforcement to the Gauls.

**B.** 9. They are nearest to the Germans. 10. Geneva is nearest the territory of the Helvetians. 11. The Germans will be near the province. 12. They will choose any place suitable for a camp. 13. Orgetorix was friendly to the Helvetians. 14. Their departure seemed like a flight. 15. The Allobroges were unfriendly to the Romans.

16. The Helvetians having been subdued, the Gauls considered that Caesar had done these things in-return-for (*prō*) the wrongs of the Helvetians to the Roman people; but that these things had happened not less to the advantage of Gaul than [to that] of the Roman people. 17. For the Helvetians had left their homes to make war upon the whole of Gaul. 18. They were permitted (it was permitted to them) to set a certain day for a council. 19. A

few days afterward, they told Caesar as follows (these things): that Ariovistus had now obtained control of almost all Gaul; 20. that a little [while] before, more Germans had come. 21. "In a few years we shall all be driven out, and all the Germans will cross the Rhine." 22. "Having conquered the Gauls in battle, Ariovistus is ruling haughtily, and demanding as hostages (§2) the children of all the most prominent men (§140)." 23. All the other Gauls began to seek some help from Caesar with many tears; the Sequanians alone of all did none of these things that the others did. 24. He asked what the reason of this was. 25. Diviciacus replied that the Sequanians did not dare to complain; that having received Ariovistus within their territory, they must endure all his cruelties.

## EXERCISE XX

### A. Substantive Clauses of Purpose (Volitive Subjunctive), § 208.

These clauses occur especially after *moneō*; *rogō*, *orō*, *petō*, *pōscō*, *pōstulō*; *mandō*, *imperō* (see Exercise VIII); *hortor*, *cohortor*; *persuādeō*, *impellō*; *committō*, *permittō*, *concēdō*; *contendō*, *impetrō*; *statuō*, *cōstituō*. Some of these verbs may also take indirect discourse, according to the sense; see Book II, 172-175, *cōstituērunt optimum esse . . . , et . . . cōvenīrent*.

B. Object Clauses with Verbs of Fearing, § 211. Besides taking the constructions with *nē* and *ut*, verbs of fearing may take a direct object in Latin as in English; e.g. *he feared him, he feared to come, he feared that he would come*.

A. 1. We shall persuade our neighbors to go out with us. 2. I ask you not to do this (I ask that you do not do this). 3. He commanded their neighbors to bring them back. 4. He was warned not to follow. 5. I begged [him] with tears not to do this. 6. I shall ask and urge him to do that. 7. I will permit you to place (that you place) the Boii in your territory. 8. We must not permit this place to take its name from a disaster. 9. Dumnorix



obtained his request from the Sequanians, that they allow the Helvetians to go through their territory. 10. I shall send messengers with a letter (a letter and messengers) to the Lingones, [commanding them] not to aid the Helvetians with grain or (*nëve*) anything else (another thing). 11. We are striving that these [things] may not be reported. 12. He decided that he would not go, but that others should be sent. 13. We were urged by our chiefs to come into Gaul.

B. 14. We are afraid that he is coming. 15. I was afraid that he was not coming. 16. They are afraid that our army will be led against them. 17. They were not afraid that they would be surrounded. 18. We are afraid that arms cannot be sent. 19. We do not fear the enemy. 20. We are afraid to advance.

21. So, as Caesar saw, the Germans were gradually becoming accustomed to cross the Rhine, and a great number of them had already come into Gaul. 22. Caesar thought that they would then cross into the province and hasten into Italy. 23. Besides, Ariovistus was so haughty that he was not endurable. 24. Therefore he sent ambassadors to him to ask where there was a place suitable for a conference. 25. Ariovistus replied that he would not come to a conference, and asked what business Caesar had in his Gaul. 26. Caesar demanded that he should not bring [any] more Germans across; that he should return the hostages to the Aeduians; and that he should not harass them unjustly or (*nëve*) make war on them and their allies. 27. Ariovistus replied that he would not return the hostages, nor would he make war on the Aeduians unjustly. 28. At this time ambassadors came from the Treveri to complain that a hundred thousand Suebi had encamped near the banks of the Rhine; [adding] that two well-known brothers were in command of them. 29. Caesar was afraid

that this new force, joined with the veteran (old) troops of Ariovistus, could not easily be resisted. 30. And so, preparing a supply of grain, he hastened toward Ariovistus by forced marches.

## EXERCISE XXI

**Substantive Clauses of Result, § 213.** These clauses are used especially after *faciō*, *efficiō*, *perficiō*, *cōficiō*; *fit*, *accidit*, *erit*; *iūs est*, *mōs est*, *cōsuētūdō est*. For the tenses in these clauses, see Exercise VIII, B.

1. It happened that they could not wander widely. 2. It had happened that Cassius had been defeated. 3. He has done this, [namely] cross the river in one night. 4. It will happen in a few years that all the Gauls will be driven out. 5. It is the right of war that victors rule the vanquished (*vincō*). 6. They made them leave their homes. 7. It is the custom of the Roman people not to wish their allies to be harmed. 8. It happened that the Germans were summoned. 9. They made their departure seem like a flight. 10. They made their baggage serve (be) as a protection like a wall.

11. Caesar was afraid that Ariovistus, who had advanced a three days' march from his territory, would seize Vesontio. 12. For in this town there is a great supply of everything that is of use in (ad) war. 13. And it is so fortified that it cannot easily be taken by storm. 14. For a river almost surrounds it. 15. A mountain of great height occupies (*contineō*) the space where the river leaves a gap (*intermittō*). 16. A wall surrounding this makes it possible for it to be defended (makes that it can be defended) more easily. 17. To this point Caesar hastened by forced marches, and seizing the town, placed a garrison there. 18. Here the soldiers were told (it was told to the soldiers) that the Germans were men of incredible size and training in arms. 19. And such great fear seized the army that it disturbed

(the minds of) all the soldiers greatly. 20. Some were afraid that the soldiers could not be persuaded to advance. 21. Caesar, however, calling a council of the centurions of all ranks, in a short time reassured them (strengthened the minds) by a speech. 22. Next day, during the fourth watch, he started out. 23. And the march not being interrupted (*intermittō*), he was informed on the seventh day that the enemy were not more than twenty-four miles away.

## EXERCISE XXII

### Causal Clauses with *quod*, *quoniam*, § 170.

**Indicative.** 1. The Belgians are bravest because they are farthest away from the province. 2. This road is much easier than the other, because the Rhine is fordable (is crossed by ford) in some places. 3. Caesar, because he remembered these things, did not think he ought to grant [their request]. 4. Dumnorix was friendly to the Helvetians because Orgetorix had tried to help him. 5. The Helvetians were elated because they had driven back the Roman cavalry. 6. Since you show (*referō*) this [sort of] gratitude, I make the following demands (demand these things).

**Subjunctive.** 7. Caesar sent Procillus, because [as he considered] the Germans had no reason for (of) harming [him]. 8. This seems to have been done because they feared him. 9. They attacked us because [as they thought] we were panic-stricken. 10. Caesar complained that he had been deserted by the Aeduans.

11. Because Caesar had approached nearer, Ariovistus voluntarily promised that he would come to a conference. 12. He demanded, however, that Caesar should bring cavalry; [saying] that he would not come on any other term[s]. 13. Caesar, because he did not trust the cavalry

of the Gauls, and because he had no Roman cavalry, wished to take the tenth legion with him. 14. Therefore he placed the soldiers on the horses of the Gallic cavalry, to have a guard as friendly as possible. 15. On their arrival, Ariovistus demanded that they should talk on horseback (from the horses). 16. Caesar, at the beginning of his speech, showed that Ariovistus had received favors and gifts; 17. that he had gained access to the senate and other rewards; 18. that the Aeduians had held the leadership of Gaul before; 19. that they had contributed their great influence to the alliance; 20. that it was the custom of the Roman people to protect [be a protection to] their allies. 21. He then asked him not to make war on the Aeduians; to return the hostages to them; and at least not to lead [any] more Germans into Gaul.

## EXERCISE XXIII

A. *Cum* causal, § 172.

B. *Cum* concessive or adversative, § 199.<sup>1</sup>

C. *Cum* temporal, § 182. *Cum* temporal, when introducing a statement of part fact, usually has the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, except when a date is given; then it has the indicative. It regularly has the indicative of present or future statement.

A. 1. This is easy, since we surpass all in bravery. 2. Since we cannot persuade the Sequanians, we will send ambassadors to Dumnorix. 3. They will hasten into Italy, since [only] the Rhone separates them from the province.

B. 4. Though the battle lasted (it was fought) for a long time, not one of the enemy (no enemy) turned his back. 5. Although the town has very high cliffs on all sides, in one place an approach is left. 6. Although the Sequanians had summoned the Germans, they could not send them back.

**C. Indicative.** 7. They fight when they keep away the Germans. 8. When they see (future) our men, they will attack them. 9. When we reach (future perfect) the town, we shall find our friends. 10. This happened then, when Caesar came into Gaul. 11. This had happened within the memory of the last generation, when the Cimbri were beaten by Marius.

**Subjunctive.** 12. When the magistrates were collecting men, Orgetorix fled. 13. When they understood this, they sent ambassadors. 14. When their arrival had been learned, our troops started. 15. When they could not sustain our attacks [any] longer, they began to retreat. 16. When this was reported to Caesar, he started from the city. 17. When they had met him, they threw themselves at (ad) his feet.

18. After Caesar had made these demands (these things having been demanded by Caesar), Ariovistus replied briefly (a few things) to (ad) them; 19. [saying] that the Gauls had attacked him, and that he had conquered them in battle. 20. He urged Caesar to go away and withdraw his army from these regions. 21. "When you go away, I will finish whatever wars you wish to be waged." 22. Caesar said that the senate had pardoned the Gauls [who had been] conquered, and had wished Gaul to be free and to enjoy peace. 23. While (when) he was saying this, the German cavalry began to approach nearer the mound, and to throw spears at (in) our men. 24. Caesar commanded his men not to throw back any spear at all. 25. For although he saw that a battle would be without dangerto his picked (chosen) legion, he did not think it ought to be begun. 26. Two days afterward Ariovistus asked Caesar to appoint a day for a conference again, or to send a lieutenant of his. 27. Caesar thought the lieutenant would be exposed to especially fierce men. 28. Therefore he sent

a Roman from the province, and a certain Gaul, who used the Gallic language.

## EXERCISE XXIV

**Complex Sentences in Indirect Discourse, §§ 228, 234.** If the introductory verb is a past tense, or if the perfect infinitive is used in the main clause of indirect discourse, a dependent subjunctive is historical.

1. The bridge which was near Geneva has been destroyed. 2. It was reported that the bridge which was near Geneva had been destroyed. 3. The legion which I have with me will come. 4. He said that the legion which he had with him would come. 5. He says that he will place Labienus in command of the fortification which he has made. 6. They reported that the Allobroges, who had villages across the Rhone, had fled to Caesar. 7. They say that this was done to frighten us. 8. Is it true that the things which are done in camp are reported to the enemy? 9. He said that he was going to advance by the same road by which the enemy had gone. 10. Did not Caesar say that the Helvetians were going to await his arrival in the place where (in which) they were then?

11. For several days in succession Ariovistus kept his army in camp, though Caesar gave him the opportunity of fighting. 12. Finally Caesar found out from the captives that it was the custom among the Germans for the matrons to use (that the matrons should use) lots to find out whether it was advantageous to begin battle. 13. These had said that the Germans must not fight at that time. 14. When Caesar found this out, drawing up [his troops in] a line of battle, he approached the enemy's camp. 15. Then the women, with [out-]spread hands, begged the soldiers not to give them up to the Romans. 16. Our men made the

attack so sharply on (ā) the right wing, that there was not space (space was not given) for (of) throwing their spears. 17. When Crassus noticed that the Romans were hard pressed, he sent the third line to reēnforce (as a reēnforcement to) our men. 18. Turning their backs, the enemy fled toward the Rhine. 19. There a very few, relying on their strength (§ 72), tried to cross; Ariovistus, finding a boat, escaped in it. 20. Caesar found that the two men whom he had sent to Ariovistus were unharmed. 21. Thus Caesar finished two very great wars in one summer.

## EXERCISE XXV

Irregular Place Constructions, §§ 92, 93, 95, 97.

1. Frequent letters were sent to Rome. 2. There is beginning to be plenty of grain at home. 3. Everywhere (in all places) the tribunes were encouraging the soldiers. 4. At Geneva there was a small force. 5. Each one hurried home. 6. They returned to their homes. 7. The battle was begun in an unfavorable place. 8. The Belgians had driven out the Gauls from home. 9. There were few defenders left at Noviodunum. 10. He kept himself in camp (and) [among] the marshes.

## EXERCISE XXVI

Special Translations of the Ablative, §§ 66, 67, 79, 84, 85, 86, 98.

1. On account of his popularity he is very powerful. 2. According to their custom, they met the attack with swords. 3. There was another kind of fight[-ing] on the left wing. 4. They sought peace of the king. 5. For this reason he dropped the shield from his arm. 6. He asked (of) his sister by what way they had come. 7. Under the rule (§ 78) of the Roman people we can in no way (manner)

seize the royal power. 8. It seemed more advantageous to cover (fill) the hill with men on each side. 9. He learned of the scouts that the enemy had arrived. 10. He learned of their arrival. 11. A tower was built at a great distance. 12. The wall was stripped of defenders. 13. They were noted for their bravery. 14. I will not make war on them unjustly. 15. In my opinion, this ought not to be done. 16. They went out of camp silently.

## EXERCISE XXVII

### Free Translations of Participles, § 264.

Express the subordinate clauses of the following sentences by participial phrases.

1. When the summer began, the Remi found out everything. 2. When the command had been conferred upon the king, he addressed the people courteously. 3. They wounded many who were approaching the gates. 4. Though few defended the town, he could not take it by storm. 5. After he had thrown up a causeway, the Gauls, who were greatly alarmed, sought to save themselves (to be saved). 6. Seeing the sudden danger, he moved his camp. 7. When they were retreating, we did not dare to follow them closely. 8. Since Caesar was away, his lieutenants carried out his orders. 9. When they were scattered, Ariovistus overwhelmed them. 10. Although he had refused Caesar's friendship, Ariovistus did not wish to fight.

Express the following sentences with a verb and a participle.

11. He led out his troops and drew them up. 12. The elders went out of the town and gave themselves up without delay. 13. They surrounded and killed the others. 14. The rest tried to cross and were driven back. 15. The soldier had been surrounded, and his brother tried to bring help to him.



## EXERCISE XXVIII

**Translations of *May, Must, Ought*.**

**Models.** — You may go, *tibi ire licet*.

You ought to go, *tē ire oportet*.

You ought to have gone, *tē ire oportuit*.

You must go, you ought to go, *tibi eundum est*  
(Ex. VIII, A).

1. Must we seek places remote from the Germans?
2. The day on which grain is due (we ought to give grain to) the soldiers is at hand.
3. May we give the signal to begin (of beginning) battle?
4. We ought not to have withdrawn from the battle.
5. Timbers ought to be placed on various parts of the wall.
6. We must lie hidden.
7. You must go to the seacoast states.
8. Didn't they ask you whether they might go?
9. They fought<sup>1</sup> as (so) fiercely as brave men ought to have fought.<sup>1</sup>
10. The soldiers know what ought to be done.

## EXERCISE XXIX

**Special Forms and Uses of Adjectives, §§ 111–117.**

1. Is [it possible that] this labor is too hard?
2. The bodies of the Germans are quite large.
3. The middle of the line was rather slow.
4. We were all dragged an equal distance.
5. Was not their running very swift?
6. They all fled headlong.
7. One was wounded, the other killed.
8. Some will be wounded, others killed.
9. He was a young [man] of the greatest bravery.
10. Some lay hidden in the thick woods; others were in the open places beside the river.
11. At the-end-of<sup>2</sup> the wall he placed a guard.
12. The-bottom-of<sup>3</sup> the hill was open.
13. They helped one another.
14. They fled, some in one direction, others

<sup>1</sup> Express by the impersonal passive.

<sup>2</sup> Super. of *exterus*.

<sup>3</sup> Super. of *inferus*.

in another. 15. The eighth legion was nearer the enemy than the ninth. 16. They placed the tower at the least possible distance.

17. The fields of the Sequanians were the best of all Gaul. 18. Some things are very easy, others very difficult. 19. Very many of the enemy were [actually] in our camp. 20. They came very quickly. 21. The attack was sustained with the greatest difficulty. 22. Liscus spoke very freely. 23. Did the Germans fight more sharply than the Helvetians? 24. Didn't the men do this very carefully? 25. This seemed to us the least suitable place for a camp. 26. Rather frequent letters were sent. 27. When the head (first) of the baggage[-train] is seen, we ought not to neglect this plan. 28. During the third hour they attacked us three times. 29. We wintered in three (triple) camps. 30. They could not see the top of the hill. 31. He was the first to come. 32. First he conquered them, then he demanded hostages. 33. At first they stayed at home. 34. We surrender ourselves and all our [property] to you. 35. They said that they surrendered themselves and all their [property] to him. 36. They were unwilling to come.

### EXERCISE XXX

**Various Ways of expressing Purpose, §§ 157, 162, 267, 272, 275.**

**Models.** — Men were sent to burn the city.

**Hominēs missi sunt —**

ut urbem incenderent;  
 quī urbem incenderent;  
 ad urbem incendendam;  
 urbem incendi cāusā;  
 urbis incendendae cāusā;  
 urbem incēsum.

Write the following sentences in as many ways as possible.

1. He will be sent to lead the army into Gaul. 2. They crossed to attack the town. 3. We are going to place

rocks on the wall to keep the enemy away. 4. They fought bravely to drive back the enemy. 5. We are putting the women and children among the marshes to save them.

### EXERCISE XXXI

**Clauses with *postquam*, *postea quam*, *ubi*, *ut*, § 176.** Note the tense that is regularly used.

1. After Caesar came into Gaul, the Aeduians experienced better fortune. 2. When they saw the enemy clearly, they made an attack. 3. As Caesar had foreseen, they tried to take the town by storm. 4. After he had learned [of] the decree of the senate, he decided that he must fight. 5. As was afterward found out from the captives, they had not neglected military affairs. 6. When Caesar understood this, he attacked Ariovistus.

### EXERCISE XXXII

#### **Miscellaneous Sentences.**

1. Will any one think that this has happened by chance? 2. No one knows where to go. 3. I know that you came to see him. 4. He was afraid that the attack could not be sustained. 5. We asked the man where the others were, and where they were going. 6. He asked us not to follow them. 7. They ordered us to go. 8. They commanded us to go. 9. They were so brave that no one turned his back. 10. They attacked quickly so that no one might escape (§ 139). 11. It happened that no one was sent. 12. He begged that no one might be sent. 13. The scouts, being sent ahead, saw the enemy. 14. The scouts being sent ahead, the army advanced. 15. He went to Rome to see his daughters. (Write in as many ways as possible). 16. They were going-to-fortify the hill. 17. They were-going to-fortify the hill. 18. The Helvetians used boats to

cross the river. 19. They decided to return home, and that the others should remain. 20. I cannot be persuaded not to go. 21. I do not doubt [but] that this will be done (§ 214). 22. Didn't they do what they were ordered? 23. This happened in the consulship of Caesar. 24. They asked their allies not to surrender. 25. They thought that the Germans, with whom they fought, were much braver than the Gauls.

## EXERCISE XXXIII

## Retranslation.

The following chapters of Book II may now be translated back from English into Latin, if the accompanying words are given.

Chapter 2, *citerior, cōstanter, quīdecim*.

9, *equester, neuter, prōtinus, castellum, interscindō*.

12, *terror, vinea*.

13, *tendō, significō*.

15, *honōs, vinum, lūxuria, relanguēscō, increpitō, incūsō, patrius*.

16, *aetās, inūtilis*.

26, *iūxtā, urgeō, cōspicor, cālō*.

32, *ariēs, dēditicus, acervus, adaequō, cēlō, patefaciō*.

34, *redigō*.

35, *quīdecim, supplicātiō, dēcernō*.

## EXERCISE XXXIV

The following sentences contain the words from Books III and IV which should be learned while these books or their equivalents are being read.

1. The second winter after Caesar came into Gaul, he sent a lieutenant into winter quarters in a valley among the Alps. 2. The natives tried in vain to overwhelm the legion which he had with him, but compelled him to return into

Gaul. 3. The following summer a war arose among the Veneti, who live near the sea and know all the harbors and islands and even sail to Britain. 4. Neither the high (great) tides, which come (happen) twice a day (twice in the space of twenty-four hours), nor the storms nor the winds nor the waves harm their ships, which are built of oak and are driven by sails and oars, and are held at anchor by chains (*catēna*, *ae*) instead-of (*prō*) ropes. 5. By building dikes the Romans approached (partic.) their towns and captured them. 6. The fleet of the Veneti was defeated in a battle from which few of their ships escaped.

7. To reach two tribes of Belgians, Caesar, calling out the allies, started to cut down all the forests where they lived. 8. But storms of such severity (of this manner) followed that he was compelled to lead away the army into winter quarters.

9. The next year, Caesar landed (went out from ships) on the coast of Britain where there was a smooth shore. 10. The soldiers had to fight in deep water before they could (subjunctive) safely stand on dry [land]. 11. Caesar did not obtain much (great) booty there.

# SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR

EDITED FOR

*SIGHT TRANSLATION IN  
SECONDARY SCHOOLS*

BY

HARRY F. TOWLE

CURTIS HIGH SCHOOL

AND

PAUL R. JENKS

FLUSHING HIGH SCHOOL

NEW YORK CITY

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

**COPYRIGHT, 1912,  
BY D. C. HEATH & Co.**

**1 C 5**

## SUGGESTIONS FOR READING LATIN

Read through one sentence at a time, no faster than to be able to note what forms the words are or *may be*. Some forms may be located definitely at once; others, being one of two or more possible forms, will depend upon their connection with other words to determine their form; it may be disastrous to assume too quickly that a word is in one case, when it *may be* in another.

After the first reading it is usually a good thing to look through the sentence and see what words can be grouped together, e.g., phrases, clauses, nouns with dependent genitive, ablatives absolute, etc. In almost every sentence however long, if the words that go together in groups are eliminated; there will remain what may be called the frame work or skeleton of the sentence, which is not long, or difficult to understand. Sometimes one group will be found inside of another, so that words which did not at first appear to belong together will be clearly seen to form a group when two or three intervening words are eliminated.

After these groups have been observed, it is usually possible to determine the case of doubtful words *by seeing with what they are used*. Thus if a word which may be dative or ablative appears to be used with *persuādeō*, we judge that it is dative; if with *ūtor* or with a participle, ablative. If two or more words, each of which may be one of two or more forms, appear to belong to the same group, we may find from this fact what case they all are; e.g., *mūnitiōnēs integrae, ūsūs militāris, linguae et institūta*, etc.; and even more easily in groups where one word



cán be certainly known at once, e.g., *mente et animō, difficilī trānsitū rīpisque praeurptis*, etc.

After the framework or skeleton of the sentence has been found by eliminating these groups, and doubtful cases determined as far as possible, it may be well to translate first the framework and then the groups, and finally the whole sentence; but it is better to begin reading the whole sentence again in the Latin, thinking now of the *meaning* as well as of the constructions. Two or more readings, perhaps omitting some of the different groups, may be required before the sentence is fully understood; but if the structure of the sentence is once clear, it is usually only a question of repetition until the meaning also is grasped.

To illustrate these directions, let us take the following passages:

**Quod cum Pompēius et rei pūblicaē et amīcitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōfectō per suōs dīlētū tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōstitūtis et adductis legiōnibus duplicātōque eārum cohortium numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō amiserat, et celeritāte et cōpiis docuit quid populī Rōmānī dīsciplīna atque opēs possent. — B. G., VI. 1, 4.**

As we read this sentence we should proceed somewhat as follows: **Quod** (either neut. sing., nom. or acc., of the relative, or subord. conjunction) **cum** (either prep. with abl., or conjunctive adv.) **Pompēius** (nom. sing.) **et** (either *both* or *and*) **rei** (either gen. sing. or dat. sing.) **pūblicaē** (gen. sing., dat. sing., or nom. plu.) **et** (*and*) **amīcitiae** (gen. sing., dat. sing., or nom. plu.) **tribuisset** (third sing. act. pluperf. subj.), **celeriter** (adv.) **cōfectō** (masc. or neut. sing., dat. or abl. of the perf. part. of **cōficiō**) **per** (prep. with acc.) **suōs** (masc. plu. acc.) **dīlētū** (abl. sing.) **tribus** (dat. or abl. plu., any gender) **ante** (either adv., or prep. with acc.) **exāctam** (fem. sing. acc.)

**hiemem** (acc. sing.) **et** (either *both* or *and*) **cōstitūtis** (dat. or abl. plu., any gender, of the perf. part. of **cōstituō**) **et** (*and*) **adductis** (dat. or abl. plu., any gender, of the perf. part. of **adducō**) **duplicātō** (dat. or abl. sing., masc. or neut.) —**que** (connecting **duplicātō** with what went before) **eārum** (fem. plu. gen.) **cohortium** (gen. plu.) **numerō** (dat. or abl. sing.) **quās** (fem. plu. acc. of the relative) **cum** (either prep. with abl. or conjunctive adv.) **Q. Titūriō** (dat. or abl.) **āmiserat** (third sing. act. pluperf. indic.), **et** (either *both* or *and*) **celeritāte** (abl. sing.) **et** (*and*) **cōpiis** (dat. or abl. plu.) **docuit** (third sing. act. perf. indic.) **quid** (nom. or acc. neut. sing. of the interrogative) **populi** (gen. sing. or nom. plu.) **Rōmānī** (gen. sing. masc. or neut., or nom. plu. masc.) **disciplīna** (nom. sing.) **atque** (*and*) **opēs** (nom. or acc. plu.) **possent** (third plu. imperf. subjunct.).

Even while we are reading and saying these things more or less definitely to ourselves, we notice things that tell us that certain of the above possibilities are not actually the case in this particular sentence. **Cum** is not followed by an ablative and is therefore the conjunctive adverb. **Et** standing between a nominative and another case cannot connect them and must mean *both*. Since **pūblicae** evidently goes with **reī**, **reī pūblicae** and **amicitiae** must all be dative. The following groups are noticed at once: **per suōs**; **ante exāctam hiemem**; **cōstitūtis et adductis legiōnibus**; **eārum cohortium**; **cum Q. Titūriō**; **populi Rōmānī**; **disciplīna atque opēs**; and perhaps one or two others.

Going back now to the beginning, we note some other things. Eliminating the group **et reī pūblicae et amicitiae**, we see that **cum Pompēius tribuisset** is a clause. Eliminating the group **per suōs**, we see that **cōfectō dīlētū** is another group, evidently ablative absolute. Eliminating **ante exāctam hiemem**, we see that **tribus et cōstitūtis et**

**adductis legiōnibus** is another group, evidently ablative absolute, and that the first **et** means *both*. Eliminating **eārum cohortium**, we have the group **duplicatō numerō**; and **-que**, connecting this with the preceding, shows that this is an ablative absolute, even if we did not suspect that **duplicatō** was a participle. **Quās . . . amiserat** is a clause modifying **cohortium**. **Celeritatē et cōpiis** is another group. **Quid . . . possent** is an indirect question, **quid** being interrogative and introducing a subjunctive in a subordinate clause.

Again, eliminating these groups, we have left the following as the framework or skeleton of the sentence: **Quod cum Pompēius . . . tribuisset, . . . et (celeritatē et cōpiis) docuit quid . . . possent**. We see now, if we have not seen before, that **et** before **celeritatē** means *both*. **Quod** must be the pronoun, for there is no verb for it to introduce; it is accusative, for **tribuisset** has a subject.

Now read the whole sentence through again, thinking of the meaning as well as of the construction of the words. Some may be unfamiliar, e.g., **tribuō**, *grant* (a dative with **tribuō** is translated *for the sake of*); **dilēctus**, *levy*; **exāctam** is the participle of **ex-igō** (**ex**, **agō**), *drive out*, here meaning *finish*; **duplicō**, *double*, might be imagined from its English loan word *duplicate*; **disciplīna**, *training*; **opēs**, *resources*. Remember that some words, e.g., **cum** and **rei publicae**, may have any one of two or more meanings, and that each must be considered in translating. If the meaning of the sentence is not grasped on the second reading, try it again omitting some of the minor groups mentioned above; perhaps translate just the framework of the sentence. If the meaning of each word is known (as with the help given above it ought to be), it is only a question of reading repeatedly, before the sentence will be completely understood.

The same method applied to other sentences may be briefly indicated as follows:

Ipse, (cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent), ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam sil-  
vam, {(quae est tōtius Galliae māxima) atque  
(ab ripīs Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nervios  
pertinet) (mīlibusque amplius quīngentis in longi-  
tūdinem patet)}, L. Minucium Basilum cum omni  
equitātū praemittit, (sī quid celeritāte itineris  
atque opportunitāte temporis prōficere possit.)  
 B. G., VI. 29, 4. This leaves for the frame work  
 of the sentence ipse, . . . profectus, . . . Basil-  
um . . . praemittit.

(Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent), ex  
captivīs Caesar cōgnōvit [(Vercingetorigem cōn-  
sūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum)  
atque {ipsum cum equitātū expeditisque (quī inter  
equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent), insidiandī causā eō  
profectum} {quō (nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum  
venturōs) arbitrārētur.}] B. G., VII. 18, 1.



## VOCABULARY

The following vocabulary contains all the words in the first two books of Caesar's Gallic War which are given in Professor Lodge's list for High School Latin. ("The Vocabulary of High School Latin," Gonzalez Lodge. Published by Teachers College, Columbia University, New York.) The pupil is supposed to have learned this list, and if so, he will have no difficulty so far as vocabulary is concerned in reading at sight the following selections from Caesar.

This list should be used to test the pupil's knowledge, and if any of these words have passed from his memory, it affords opportunity for drill upon them until the entire vocabulary is thoroughly fixed in mind.

A numeral after a word indicates the number of distinct meanings that a pupil should know. He should also know the form and meaning of the adverb corresponding to each adjective, and such other forms and idioms as are especially noted.

1 <b>ā, ab, abs</b> (3)	16 <b>adigō</b>	31 <b>agger</b>
2 <b>abdō</b>	17 <b>aditus</b>	32 <b>aggredior</b>
3 <b>absum</b> and part.	18 <b>adiuvō</b>	33 <b>āgmen</b>
4 <b>accēdō</b>	19 <b>administrō</b>	<b>novissimum āgmen</b>
5 <b>accidō</b> (2)	20 <b>admīror</b>	<b>extrēmum āgmen</b>
6 <b>accipiō</b>	21 <b>adorior</b>	<b>primum āgmen</b>
7 <b>accommodō</b>	22 <b>adulēscēns</b>	<b>cōnfertum āgmen</b>
8 <b>accūsō</b>	23 <b>adventus</b>	
9 <b>ācer</b> and adv.	24 <b>advertō</b>	34 <b>agō</b> (3)
10 <b>aciēs</b>	25 <b>aedificium</b>	35 <b>aliēnus</b> (2)
11 <b>ad</b> (2)	26 <b>aeger</b> and adv.	36 <b>aliquī, aliquis</b> (2)
12 <b>adaequō</b>	27 <b>aequus</b>	37 <b>alius</b> (3)
13 <b>addūcō</b>	28 <b>aestās</b>	<b>alius āc</b>
14 <b>adeō</b>	29 <b>afferō</b>	<b>aliās</b> (2)
15 <b>adhibeō</b>	30 <b>ager</b>	<b>aliter</b>
		<b>aliter āc</b>

38 alter (3)	78 biduum	117 cohortor
39 altitūdō (2)	79 bonus, compar., super., and adverbs	118 collis
40 altus (2)	80 brachium	119 collocō
41 amicitia	81 brevis and adv.	120 colloquium
42 amicus (2)	82 cadō	121 colloquor
43 amittō	83 caedō (2)	122 commeātus
44 amplus and adv. and compar.	84 calamitās	123 committō (4)
45 an	85 capiō	124 commodus and adv.
46 anceps	86 captivus	125 commoveō
47 angustiae (2)	87 caput	126 commūnis
48 angustus and adv.	88 carrus	127 commūtatiō
49 animadvertō (2)	89 castellum	128 comparō
50 animus (3)	90 castra	129 compellō
51 annus	91 cāsus	130 comperiō
52 ante	92 catēna	131 complector
53 aperiō	93 causa and abl.	132 compleō
54 appellō, āre	94 caveō	133 complūrēs
55 appropinquō	95 cēdō	134 comportō
56 apud	96 celer and adv.	135 concēdō
57 arbor	97 celeritās	136 concidō
58 arcessō	98 cēlō	137 conciliō
59 arma	99 centum	138 concilium
60 armō	100 centuriō	139 conclāmō .
61 āscendō	101 certus	140 concurrō
62 at (2)	certiōrem faciō	141 concursus
63 atque, āc (2)	102 cingō	142 condiciō
64 attingō	103 circiter	143 condūcō
65 auctōritās	104 circuitus	144 cōnferō
66 audāx and adv.	105 circum	145 cōnfertus
67 audeō	106 circumdō	146 cōnficiō (2)
68 audiō	107 circumsistō	147 cōnfidō (2)
69 augeō	108 circumveniō	148 cōnfirmō (2)
70 aut (2)	109 citerior and super.	149 congregior
71 autem	110 civitās (2)	150 cōniciō
72 auxilium	111 clāmor	151 coniungō
73 avertō	112 cliēns	152 coniūrō
74 barbarus	113 coepi	153 cōnor
75 bellō	114 cōgnōscō	154 cōnsanguineus
76 bellum	115 cōgō (2)	155 cōnsentiō
77 beneficium	116 cohors	156 cōnsequor (2)
		157 cōnsidō (2)

158 cōnsilium	197 dē (2)	236 discēdō
159 cōnsistō	198 dēbeō	237 discēssus
160 cōnspectus	199 dēcēdō	238 dispergō
161 cōnspiciō	200 decem	239 dispōnō
162 cōnspicor	201 dēcērtō	240 diū
163 cōstanter	202 decimus	quam diū
164 cōstituō (2)	203 dēcipiō	241 dividō
165 cōnsuēscō	204 dēcurrō	242 dō (2 in comp.)
166 cōnsuētūdō	205 dēditō	243 doceō
167 cōnsul	206 dēdō	244 doleō
168 cōnsulō	207 dēdūco	245 domus
cōnsultum	208 dēfendō (2)	246 dubitō (2)
169 cōnsūmō	209 dēferō	247 ducentī
170 contendō (2)	210 dēfessus	248 dūcō (2)
171 contineō (2)	211 dēficiō (2)	249 dum (2)
172 continuus	212 dēiciō (2)	nōndum
173 contrā	213 deinde	250 duo
174 contrahō	214 dēligō	251 duodecim
175 contrārius	215 dēmōnstrō	252 duplex
176 contumēlia	216 dēmum	253 dūrus
177 conveniō (2)	217 dēnsus	254 dux
178 conventus (2)	218 dēpōnō	255 ēdō and perf. part.
179 convertō	219 dēserō	256 ēdūcō
180 convocō	220 dēsistō	257 efficiō (3)
181 cōpia (2)	221 dēspiciō	258 ego
182 cōram	222 dēsum	259 ēgredior
183 cornū (2)	223 dēterior	260 ēgregius and adv.
184 corpus	224 dēterreō	261 emō
185 cotidiānus	225 dētrahō	262 enim
186 cotidiē	226 dētrimentum	263 ēnūtiō
187 crēber	227 dēveniō	264 eō
188 creō	228 dexter	265 eques (2)
189 cruciātus	229 dicō (2)	266 equester
190 cum, prep.	dictum	267 equitātus
191 cum, conj. (3)	230 diēs	268 equus
cum . . . tum	multus diēs	269 ēruptiō
192 cupidus and adv.	231 differō	270 et (2)
193 cupiō	232 difficultās	271 etiam (2)
194 cūr	233 diligēns and adv.	272 etsi
195 cūrō (2)	234 dimicō	273 ēventus
196 cursus (2)	235 dimittō (2)	274 ex



275 exanimō	313 fortuna (2)	348 impediō and perf.
276 excēdō	314 fossa	part.
277 excipiō	315 frāter	349 impellō
278 exeō	316 frāternus	350 imperium
279 exercitātiō	317 fremitus	351 imperō (2)
280 exercitus	318 frōns	352 impetrō (2)
281 existimō	319 frūmentārius	353 impetus
282 expeditus (2)	rēs frūmentāria	354 implōrō
283 expellō	320 frūmentum	355 impōnō
284 experior	321 fuga	356 imprōvisus
285 explōrātor	322 fugiō	(dē) imprōvisō
286 explōrō	323 genus	357 in (2)
287 expūgnō	324 gerō (2)	358 incendō
288 expectō	325 gladius	359 incidō
289 exstruō	326 grātia	360 incipiō
290 exterus, compar. and	grātiās agō	361 incitō
super.	327 gravis and adv.	362 incolō
291 facilis and adv.	328 gravō	363 incolumis
292 faciō (2)	329 habeō (2)	364 incredibilis
factum	330 hibernus	365 inde (2)
293 facultās (2)	hiberna	366 inducō
294 familiāris (2)	331 hic and adverbs	367 indulgeō
rēs familiāris	hic, hinc, hūc	368 ineō
295 faveō	332 hiemō	initā aestāte
296 ferē	333 homō	369 inermis
297 ferō (2)	334 hōra	370 inferō (2)
298 ferus	335 hortor	371 inferus, compar. and
299 fidēs (4)	336 hospes	super.
300 filia	337 hospitium	372 iniciō
301 filius	338 hostis	373 inimicus
302 fingō	339 iaciō	374 iniquus
303 finis (2)	340 iam (3)	375 initium
304 finitimus (2)	341 ibi	376 iniūria (3)
305 fiō (3)	342 idem	377 inopia
306 firmus and irreg. adv.	eōdem	378 insequor
307 flāgitō	343 idōneus	379 insidiae
308 fleō	344 ignis	380 insignis
309 florēns	345 ignōscō	381 insistō
310 flūmen	346 ille and adverbs	382 instituō
311 fluō	illic, illō	383 instō
312 fortis and adv.	347 impedimentum (2)	384 instruō

385 intellegō	424 latus	462 mittō (2 in comp.)
386 inter (2)	425 lēgatiō	463 modus
387 intercēdō	426 lēgātus (2)	quem ad modum (2)
388 interclūdō	427 legiō	modo
389 interdum	428 legiōnārius	464 moneō
390 intereā	429 levis	465 mōns
391 interficiō	430 liber, adv. and plu.	466 mora
392 interim	431 liberālis and adv.	467 moror
393 intermittō (2)	432 libertās	468 mors
394 interpōnō	433 licet	469 mōs
395 intervāllum	434 lingua	470 moveō
396 intrā	435 littera (2)	471 mulier
397 invitō	436 locus	472 multitūdō
398 invitus	437 longinquus	473 multus, compar. and
399 ipse	438 longus and adv.	super.
400 is (2) and adv. eō	439 loquor	474 mūniō
401 ita	440 lūx	475 mūnitiō
402 itaque	441 magistrātus (2)	476 mūnus
403 item	442 māgnitūdō	477 mūrus
404 iter (2)	443 māgnus, compar.,	478 nam
405 iterum	super., and adverbs	479 namque
406 iubeō	māior (2)	480 nanciscor
407 iūdicō	māgnopere	481 nāscor
408 iugum	444 maleficium	482 nātiō
409 iungō	445 mandō (2)	483 nātūra
410 iūrō	446 maneō	484 nāvis
411 iūs	447 manus	485 nē (3)
iūs iūrandum	448 maritimus	nē . . . quidem
412 iūstitia	449 māter	486 necessarius (2)
413 iuvō	450 mātūrō	487 necō
414 labor	451 mātūrus and adv.	488 neglegō
415 labōrō	452 medius	489 negotium (2)
416 laccessō	453 memoria	490 nēmō
417 lacrima	454 mēnsis	491 neque
418 lacus	455 mercātor	492 neuter
419 lapis	456 mereō	493 nihil
420 largus and irreg.	457 miles	nihilō minus
adv.	458 militāris	494 nisi
421 lateō	459 mille	495 nitor
422 lātitudō	460 minuō	496 nōbils (2)
423 lātus and adv.	461 mīrus	497 nōbilitās

498	nōlō	535	oppidum	574	peritus
499	nōmen	536	opportūnus	575	permittō (2)
500	nōminātim	537	opprimō	576	permovēō
501	nōn	538	oppugnātiō	577	perpetuus
502	nōnāgintā	539	oppugnō	578	perspicio
503	nōngenti	540	opus (2)	579	persuadeō
504	nōnus	541	ōrātiō	580	perterreō
505	noster	542	ōrdō (2)	581	pertineō (2)
506	novem	543	orior	582	perturbō
507	novus	544	ōrō	583	pervenio
	novae rēs	545	ostendō	584	pēs
	novum imperium	546	pācō	585	petō
508	nox and adv.	547	paene	586	phalanx
	multa nox	548	pāgus	587	pilum
509	nūdō	549	palūs	588	plērusque and adv.
510	nūllus	550	pandō	589	polliceor
511	nūmerus	551	pār	590	pondus
512	nūntiō		pār atque	591	pōnō
513	nūntius (2)	552	parō and perf. part.	592	pōns
514	nūtus	553	pars (3) and adv.	593	populor
515	ob	554	parvus, compar., and	594	populus
516	obiciō		super., and adverbs	595	porta
517	obses	555	passus	596	portō
518	obtimeō	556	pateō (2)	597	pōscō
519	occāsus	557	pater	598	possum and part.
520	occidō	558	patior (2)	599	post (3)
521	occulō	559	pauci	600	postea
	in occultō	560	paulātim		postea quam
522	occupō	561	paulisper	601	posterus, compar. and
523	occurrō	562	paulus		super.
524	oceanus	563	pāx	602	postquam
525	octāvus	564	pedes	603	postridiē
526	octō	565	pedester	604	pōstulō
527	octōgintā	566	pellis	605	potestās
528	officium	567	pellō (2)	606	potior
529	omninō	568	pendō	607	praebeō
530	omnis	569	per	608	praeceps
531	onus	570	perducō	609	praedor
532	opera	571	perferō (2)	610	praeferō
533	opiniō (2)	572	perficiō	611	praefficiō and pf. part.
534	oportet	573	periculum	612	praemittō

613 praemium	651 prōvincia	689 ratis
614 praescribō	652 pūblicus and adv. rēs pūblica (2)	690 recēns
615 praesertim	653 puer	691 recipiō sē recipere (2)
616 praesidium	654 pūgna	692 recūsō
617 praestō (2)	655 pūgnō	693 reddō (2)
618 praesum and part.	656 putō	694 redeō
619 praeter	657 quadrāgintā	695 redigō (2)
620 praetereā	658 quadringentī	696 redimō
621 premō	659 quaerō	697 redūcō
622 pretium	660 quaestor	698 referō
623 prex	661 quam (2)	699 regiō
624 pridīe	662 quantus (2)	700 rēgnum
625 princeps	663 quārtus	701 reiciō
626 prior, super. and adverbs	664 quattuor	702 relinquō
627 pristinus	665 quattuordecim	703 reliquus
628 priusquam	666 -que	704 remaneō
629 privātus and adv.	667 queror (2)	705 remittō
630 prō (4)	668 quī (3) and adverbs quō, quā	706 removeō
631 probō (2)	669 quicumque	707 renūntiō
632 prōcēdō	670 quidam	708 repellō
633 prōcumbō	671 quidem	709 repentinus and adv.
634 prōdeō	672 quīn	710 reperiō
635 prōdūcō	673 quīndecim	711 reprehendō
636 proelium	674 quīngenti	712 rēs
637 profectiō	675 quīni	713 reservō
638 proficiscor	676 quīnquāgintā	714 resistō
639 profugiō	677 quīnque	715 respiciō
640 prōgredior	678 quīntus	716 respondeō
641 prohibeō (2)	679 quis (2)	717 restituō
642 prōiciō	680 quisquam	718 retineō
643 prope, compar., and super., and advbs.	681 quisque	719 revertor
644 properō	682 quivīs	720 rēx
645 propinquus	683 quod (3) quod sī	721 ripa
646 prōpōnō	684 quōminus	722 rogō
647 propter	685 quoniam	723 rūmor
648 proptereā	686 quoque	724 rupēs
proptereā quod	687 rādix	725 rūrsus
649 prōsequor	688 rātiō (5)	726 saepe
650 prōvideō		727 salūs
		728 satis (3)

729 saxum	768 statim	805 temptō (tentō)
730 sciō	769 statio	806 tempus
731 scūtum	770 statuō	807 teneō
732 secundus (2)	771 stipendium	808 ter
secundum (2)	772 strepitus	809 tergum
733 sed	773 studeō	810 terni, trini
734 sēdecim	774 studium	811 terra
735 semel	775 sub (3)	812 tertius
736 senātus	776 subducō	813 tēstūdō
737 sententia	777 subeō (2)	814 timeō
738 sentiō	subitus and adv.	815 timidus and adv.
739 septendecim	778 subiciō	816 timor
740 septentriō	779 submitto	817 tollō (2)
741 septimus	780 subsequor	818 totidem
742 sequor	781 subsidium	819 tōtus
743 servitūs	782 succēdō	820 trabs
744 sex	783 sui (4)	821 trādō
745 sexāgintā	784 sum	822 trādūcō
746 sexcenti	785 sūmō	823 trahō
747 sextus	786 superbus and adv.	824 trāns
748 si, sive, seu	787 superō	825 trānseō
749 sic	788 supersum	826 trānsportō
750 signum (2)	789 superus, compar. (3),	827 trecenti
751 silva	super. (3), and	828 tredecim
752 simul	summa	829 trēs
753 simulatiō	790 supplex and adv.	830 tribūnus
754 sine	791 suprā	831 triduum
755 singuli (2)	792 suscipiō	832 trīgintā
756 sinister	793 sūspiciō	833 triplex
757 socius	794 sūspicor	834 tuba
758 sol	795 sustineō (2)	835 tum
759 sōlus	796 suus (4)	836 tumulus
nōn solum	797 tam	837 turris
760 soror	798 tamen	838 ubi (2)
761 sors	799 tandem	839 ulciscor (2)
762 spatium	800 tantus	840 ūllus
763 speciēs	tantum, subs.	841 ūlterior and super.
764 spectō	801 tardus and adv.	842 ūltrā
765 spērō	802 tēlum	843 ūltrō
766 spēs	803 temerē	844 unde
767 sponte	804 temperō	845 undecim

846 undique	862 vel (2)	880 vicus
847 ūnus	863 vēlōx	881 videō (2)
ūnā	864 velut, velutī	882 vigilia
848 urgeō	865 vēndō	883 viginti
849 ūsus (2)	866 veniō	884 vinciō
850 ut, utī	867 verbum	885 vincō
851 uter	868 vereor	886 vinea
utrum	869 vergō	887 vir
852 uterque and adv.	870 versō (2)	888 virtūs
853 ūtor	871 vertō	889 vis (2)
854 vacō	872 vērus and abl.	890 vix
855 vacuus	873 vesper	891 volō (2)
856 vadum	874 vetus	892 voluntās
857 vagor	875 vēxō	893 vox (2)
858 valeō	876 via	894 vulgus and abl.
859 vāllum	877 victor	895 vulnerō
860 varius	878 victōria	896 vulnus
861 vāsto	879 victus	

In studying the above list, special attention should be paid to the generic meaning of the following simple verbs (all of which occur either specifically or in composition in the list), so that other compounds than those actually occurring in the list may be understood if used literally.

agō (-igō)	habeō (-hibeō) (2)	prehendō, prēndō
(cōgō)	(dēbeō, praebeō)	premo (-primō)
cadō (-cidō)	hortor	pūgnō
caedō (-cidō)	iaciō (-iciō)	scribō
cēdō (2)	iungō	servō
-cendō	iūrō	sentīō
certō	iuvō	sequor
claudō (-clūdō)	legō (-ligō, ere)	sistō
currō	(Contrast ligō, āre, bind)	-spiciō (2)
dō, dare (-dō, dere) (2)	loquor	statuō (-stituō)
dūcō	maneo	stō
emō (-imō) (2)	mittō (2)	suēscō
eō	moveō	sūmō (sub + emō)
faciō (-ficiō) (2)	nūntiō	tangō (-tingō)
ferō	orior	tendō
fugiō	pellō	teneō (-tineō)
(g)nōscō	pleō	terreō
gradior (-gredior)	pōnō	trahō
	portō	veniō

The following vocabularies contain the words in the selections from the Gallic War which belong to Professor Lodge's list and are not found in Books I and II. These words are marked with an asterisk as they occur for the first time in the text, and their meanings are given in the footnotes. Special effort should be made to fix the meaning of these words permanently in mind at the time of their first occurrence in the text. This list should be used for review.

## BOOK V

accēdēbat, 6, 2	hiems, 1, 1
adimō, 6, 4	humilis, 1, 2
aedificō, 1, 1	immittō, 44, 6
aestus, 1, 2	insula, 8, 3
alacer, 33, 5	litus, 8, 6
ancora, 9, 1	mare, 1, 2
aptus, 16, 1	materia, 40, 2
aqua, 18, 3	mollis, 9, 1
aquila, 37, 5	mōtus, 5, 4
cautus and adv., 49, 2	nauta, 10, 2
cēdō (3), 16, 1	nāvigātiō, 7, 3
certāmen, 44, 14	nāvigō, 5, 2
commeātus (2), 23, 2	noceō, 7, 2
cōnfestim, 18, 4	obsidiō, 45, 2
cōnscendō, 7, 4	occāsiō, 38, 2
cōnsultō, 16, 2	octingenti, 8, 6
coōrior, 10, 2	opiniō, 48, 1
cursus (3), 8, 4	pecus, 19, 1
dēdūcō (3), 23, 2	peragō, 24, 1
dēfigō, 18, 3	portus, 5, 1
dēsiliō, 16, 2	praeda, 34, 1
dimitto (3), 18, 5	prōnuntiō, 33, 3
distribūō, 24, 1	quoad, 17, 3
exanimō (2), 44, 6	rārus, 9, 6
flūctus, 1, 2	reficiō, 1, 1
frūstrā, 23, 5	rēmus, 8, 3
fūnis, 10, 2	saucius, 36, 3
gubernātor, 10, 2	septem, 49, 7
	stātiō (2), 15, 3
	subdūcō (2), 11, 5

tempestās (1), 5, 1; (2), 7, 4
tēstūdō (2), 42, 5
ūltrō (2), 40, 7
ex ūsū, 6, 6
vallēs, 49, 5
ventus, 7, 3

## BOOK VII

agger (2), 79, 4
bīni, 75, 4
bis, 66, 7
bona, 3, 1
cēdō (4), 89, 2
cibus, 78, 4
cōsulō (2), 8, 4
manus (3), 84, 3
meritum, subs., 71, 3
-ne, 5, 6
neu, neve, 8, 4
(g)nōscō, 80, 1
operam dare, 9, 2
patiēns and adv., 77, 5
postrēmō, 1, 8
rēctus and adv., 6, 4
recēns (2), 9, 4
sagitta, 81, 2
septuāgintā, 88, 4
ūsus (3), 80, 1
ūtilis, 76, 1
virtūs (2), 6, 1

## Description of the Gauls, Germans, and Britons.

appellō, ere, V. 13, 1	lāc, IV. 1, 8
carō, V. 14, 2	regō, VI. 17, 2

septingenti, V. 13, 5
vestigium, VI. 27, 4

## WORD FORMATION

(Note. — Before beginning to translate at sight the pupil should have learned the principal meanings of **ab**, **ad**, **ante**, **circum**, **con**, **dē**, **dis**, **ex**, **in**, **in-**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **prae**, **prō**, **re(d)-**, **sub** and **trāns**, when used in composition with verbs, and the force of the suffixes given below.)

### A. NOUNS DERIVED FROM VERBS

#### **tor**

The suffix **tor** is added to verb stems to designate the agent or doer of an action.

The English equivalents of this suffix are **-er**, **-or**, and **-tor**.

**MODELS.** **mercātor** = **mercā** (stem of **mercōr**, *trade*) + **tor** (denoting the agent) = one who trades, *i.e.*, a *trader*.

**victor** = **vic** (stem of **vincō**, *conquer*) + **tor** (denoting the agent) = one who conquers, *i.e.*, a *conqueror*, *victor*.

In adding the suffix **tor** the same euphonic changes are usually found as appear in the fourth principal part, since the supine was formed by adding **tum** to the general stem of the verb.

**MODEL.** **dēfēnsor** (changed for euphony from **dēfendtor**) = **dēfend** (stem of **dēfendō**, *defend*) + **tor** (denoting the agent) = one who defends, *i.e.*, a *defender*.

**EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.** **dēprecātor**, **explōrātor**, **praetor** (for **prae-itor**), **imperātor**, **speculātor**, **ōrātor**, **pābulātor**, **adiūtōr**, (**ante-**) **cursor**, **auctor**, **dēsertor**, **gubernātor**, **lignātor**, **prōditor**, (**prō-**) **pūgnātor**, **vēnātor**.

#### **iō, tiō, tus**

The suffixes **iō**, **tiō**, **tus** (gen. **tūs**), are added to verb stems to form verbal nouns which denote an *act* or the *result* of an act.



The commonest English equivalents of these suffixes are *-ion*, *-tion*, and *-ing*, which also may express either the *act* or the *result*. For example, "the collection of coins is an interesting pursuit," *i.e.*, the *act* of collecting is interesting; "this collection of coins is interesting to see," *i.e.*, the *result* of the collecting is interesting. Notice the same two uses of the words *invention*, *direction*, *binding*, *crossing*, *shaving*, etc.

Both the endings **tiō** and **tus** may be added to the same stem, forming nouns with little or no difference in meaning. *E.g.*, **occāsus**, **occāsiō**; **reditus**, **reditiō**; **stātus**, **stātiō**.

The euphonic changes occurring in formation are the same as those found in the supine (cf. page xxv).

**MODELS.** **coniūrātiō** = **coniūrā** (stem of **coniūrō**, *conspire*) + **tiō** (denoting result) = the result of conspiring, *i.e.*, a *conspiracy*.

**profectiō** = **profec** (from the stem of **proficiscor**, *start out, depart*) + **tiō** (denoting act) = the act of starting out or departing, *i.e.*, *departure*.

**cursus** (changed for euphony from **currtus**) = **curr** (stem of **currō**, *run*) + **tus** (denoting act) = *running*, then, *course*, *passage*, etc.

**EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.** **lēgātiō**, **ōrātiō**, **sūspiciō**, **legiō**, **mūnitiō**, **commūtātiō**, **dēditiō**, **exercitātiō**, **nātiō**, **opiniō**, **oppūgnātiō**, **statiō**, **ēruptiō**; **occāsus**, **passus**, **exercitus**, **adventus**, **concursum**, **cōnātus**, **cōspectus**, **cāsus**, **equitātus**, **conventus**, **circuitus**, **āscēsus**, **ūsus**, **aditus**.

## B. NOUNS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES

### **ia**, **tia**, **tās**, **tūs**, **tūdō**

The suffixes **ia**, **tia**, **tās**, and **tūdō** are added to the stems of adjectives (often weakened) to form abstract nouns denoting *quality* or *condition*.

The English equivalents, *i.e.*, the endings of abstract nouns in English, include the following: *-ship*, *-(t)y*, *-ness*, *-tude*.

**MODELS.** *amicitia* = *amici* (weakened stem of *amicus*, *friendly*) + *tia* (ending of an abstract noun) = *friendship*, *friendliness*.

*potentia* = *potent* (stem of *potēns*, *able*, present participle of *possum*, *to be able*) + *ia* (ending of an abstract noun) = *ability*, *power*.

*nōbilitās* = *nōbili* (stem of *nōbilis*, *noble*) + *tās* (ending of an abstract noun) = *nobleness*, *nobility*.

*lātitudō* = *lāti* (weakened stem of *lātus*, *wide*) + *tūdō* (ending of an abstract noun) = *wideness*, *width*, *breadth*.

**EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.** *multitūdō*, *fortitūdō*, *altitūdō*, *longitūdō*, *cōsuētūdō* (from the perfect participle of *cōsuēscō*, used as an adjective), *māgnitūdō*, *necessitūdō*, *mānsuētūdō* (like *cōsuētūdō*), *lassitūdō*, *turpitūdō*; *memoria*, *angustiae*, *grātia*, *audācia*, *iūstitia*, *temperantia*, *inopia*, *tristitiā*, *āmentia*, *diligentia*, *avāritia*, *sententia*, *scientia*; *hūmānitās*, *cupiditās*, *voluntās*, *fācultās*, *lēnitās*, *potestās*, *libertās*, *liberalitās*, *bonitās*, *crudēlitās*, *aequitās*, *celeritās*, *mōbilitās*, *levitās*, *fertilitās*, *brevitās*, *iniquitās*.

The suffixes *ia*, *tia*, *tās*, and *tūs* are added to noun stems to denote *condition* or *characteristic*.

**MODELS.** *cīvitās* = *cīvi* (stem of *cīvis*, *citizen*) + *tās* (denoting characteristic) = the characteristic of a citizen, *i.e.*, *citizenship*.

*virtūs* = *vir* (weakened stem of *vir*, *man*) + *tūs* (denoting characteristic) = the characteristic of a man, *i.e.*, *manliness*, *bravery*, etc.

**EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.** *auctōritās*, *tempestās*; *servitūs*, *se-nectūs*; *victoria*, *pueritia*, *adolēscēntia*, *militia*.

Some of these nouns also become collective in force, *e.g.*, *cīvitās*, which also means a collection of citizens, *i.e.*, a *state*. So *familia*.



## BELLUM GALLICUM III, IV

(It is assumed that Books I and II of Caesar's Gallic War have been read, but if not, a synopsis of these books should be given by the teacher.)

In the fall of the second year of his operations in Gaul 57 B.C., Caesar sent a legion to open up the road leading through the Alps into Italy by way of the pass now known as the Great St. Bernard, the shortest route between Gaul and the valley of the Po. The Swiss were beaten in several skirmishes and the road opened. But when the legion was settling in winter quarters, it was suddenly attacked with such severity that, though they beat off the natives with heavy loss, they were forced to retire into Gaul for the rest of the winter.

Crassus had wintered among the states of the west coast, which had nominally accepted Roman domination in the fall and had given hostages. But when he sent officers to levy provisions, chafing at this act and ignorant of Rome's reputation for defending her citizens, they seized and held these men, and proposed to exchange them for the hostages they had given.

Informed of this in Italy, Caesar ordered a fleet built during the winter. Arriving with the rest of the army on the coast, he divided his forces, and sent Labienus northeast to overawe the Treveri and keep the Germans from crossing the Rhine, Sabinus north to divide the coast states, and Crassus south into Aquitania. Taking personal command against the Veneti, the strongest of the seacoast tribes, Caesar besieged town after town to no purpose. For the towns of the Veneti were near the water, and whenever Caesar was

ready to storm one of them, the Veneti would bring up their fleet and deport the inhabitants and all their possessions; meanwhile the Roman fleet was held by storms near the mouth of the Loire.

The Romans had never fought on the high seas, and were at a loss to know just what they ought to do in such a battle, but they studied carefully the weaknesses of their opponents. When the fleets finally met, the Romans with sharp hooks on the end of long poles cut the ropes that held the sails on the ships of the Veneti, and captured their entire fleet, ship by ship. The Veneti were forced to surrender, and Caesar, remembering the cause of this campaign, put their senate to death and sold the rest of the tribe into slavery.

Sabinus and Crassus were also successful in their respective campaigns, and the Treveri gave Labienus no trouble.

During the following winter two German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, four hundred thousand strong, crossed into Gaul near the mouth of the Rhine. They had been driven from home by the Suebi, the fiercest German nation, and lived only by plundering the Gauls into whose territory they had crossed; but once across the Rhine they were secretly urged by several Gallic tribes to join them against the Romans.

Just as Caesar had recognized that Ariovistus must be eliminated, so he knew that this new wave of German migration must be rolled back to save not only his province but Rome. He marched upon the two tribes, and, by a pretext for which he was bitterly assailed even at Rome, got all their leaders in his power; then, without losing a man, he wiped out the entire tribes, men, women, and children, in a few hours.

He was not content with this as a lesson to the Germans. Even if the Rhine was to bound Roman dominion, he must

show the world that he could and would go beyond it if necessary. So he bridged the Rhine, crossed with his army, and Gauls and Germans saw the mighty Suebi retreat before him to their forest fastnesses.

With the same motive, on his return from Germany he crossed the English Channel with two legions and made a reconnoitering expedition into Britain, preparatory to the greater one described in Book V.

So great did these two achievements seem at Rome, that a thanksgiving of twenty days was decreed in his honor, five days more than that after conquering the Belgians.



C. IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS

THE SECOND EXPEDITION INTO BRITAIN

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hiberniis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis<sup>1</sup> facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, uti quam plūrimās possent \*hieme<sup>2</sup> nāvēs \*aedificandās<sup>3</sup> veterēsque \*reficiendās<sup>4</sup> cūrent. Eārum modum<sup>5</sup> fōr- 5  
mamque<sup>6</sup> dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandi<sup>7</sup> subductiōnēsque<sup>8</sup> paulō facit \*humiliōrēs,<sup>9</sup> quam quibus<sup>10</sup> in nostrō \*marī<sup>11</sup> ūtī cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs \*aestuum<sup>12</sup> minus māgnōs ibi \*fluctūs<sup>13</sup> fierī cōgnōverat, ad onera āc multi- 10  
tūdinem iūmentōrum<sup>14</sup> trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam quibus<sup>10</sup> in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās<sup>15</sup> imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humili-  
tās<sup>4</sup> adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās<sup>16</sup> nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet. 15

<sup>1</sup> yearly. <sup>2</sup> hiems, hiemis, f., winter. <sup>3</sup> build. <sup>4</sup> Cf. derivation. <sup>5</sup> size. <sup>6</sup> shape. <sup>7</sup> load. <sup>8</sup> drawing up on shore, as the Romans did in winter. <sup>9</sup> humilis, ior, limus, low. <sup>10</sup> Sc. eae (nāvēs) as antecedent; translate, what. <sup>11</sup> mare, is, n., sea. <sup>12</sup> tide. <sup>13</sup> wave. <sup>14</sup> beast of burden. <sup>15</sup> fitted with oars (as well as sails). <sup>16</sup> equip.

\*The meaning of the words marked with an asterisk should be permanently learned.



[Caesar quiets some minor troubles in Illyricum and among the Treveri.]

5. His rēbus cōstitūtis, Caesar ad \*portum<sup>1</sup> Itium<sup>2</sup> cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvēs,<sup>3</sup> quae in Meldis factae erant, \*tempestāte<sup>4</sup> reiectās, cursum<sup>5</sup> tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant  
20 profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad \*nāvigandum<sup>6</sup> atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās<sup>7</sup> invenit.<sup>7</sup> Eōdem equi-<sup>8</sup> tātus tōtius Galliae convenit numerō milia quattuor prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitatibus; ex quibus per-<sup>9</sup> paucōs,<sup>8</sup> quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in  
25 Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat,<sup>9</sup> quod cum ipse abesset \*mōtum<sup>10</sup> Galliae verēbatur.

*The end of Dumnorix.*

6. Erat unā cum cēteris<sup>11</sup> Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupi-  
30 dum imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. \*Accēdēbat<sup>12</sup> hūc, quod in conciliō<sup>13</sup> Aeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitatīs dēferri; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī<sup>14</sup> causā lēgātōs ad Cae-  
35 sarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus<sup>15</sup> Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod insuētus<sup>16</sup> nāvigandī<sup>17</sup> mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus<sup>18</sup> impediri sēsē diceret. Postea quam id obstinātē<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> portus, ūs, harbor. <sup>2</sup> Itius, modern Wissant. <sup>3</sup> storm. <sup>4</sup> course. <sup>5</sup> sail. <sup>6</sup> equip. <sup>7</sup> find. <sup>8</sup> per- intensive. <sup>9</sup> decide. <sup>10</sup> mōtus, ūs, uprising. <sup>11</sup> the others. <sup>12</sup> accēdēbat hūc (it went thither, it was added to this) an additional reason was. <sup>13</sup> beg off. <sup>14</sup> unaccustomed; with gen. <sup>15</sup> sail. <sup>16</sup> vow. <sup>17</sup> firmly.

sibi negārī<sup>1</sup> vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī \*adēptā,<sup>2</sup> 40  
 principēs Galliae sollicitāre,<sup>3</sup> sēvocāre<sup>4</sup> singulōs hor-  
 5 tārīque coepit, utī in continentī<sup>5</sup> remanērent; metū<sup>6</sup>  
 territāre:<sup>6</sup> nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbi-  
 litāte spoliārētur;<sup>7</sup> id esse cōsiliū Caesaris, ut, quōs  
 in cōspectū Galliae interficere vererētur, hōs omnēs in 45  
 6 Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem<sup>8</sup> reliquīs inter-  
 pōnere,<sup>8</sup> iūs iūrāndum pōscere, ut, quod esse \*ex<sup>9</sup> \*ūsū<sup>9</sup>  
 Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōsiliō administrārent.  
 Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Ae- 50  
 duae dignitātis<sup>10</sup> tribuēbat,<sup>11</sup> coercendum<sup>12</sup> atque dēter-  
 rendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem  
 2 statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam<sup>13</sup> prōgredi vidē-  
 bat, prōspiciendum,<sup>14</sup> nē quid<sup>15</sup> sibi āc rei publicae  
 3 \*nocēre<sup>16</sup> posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō 55  
 commorātus,<sup>17</sup> quod chōrus<sup>18</sup> \*ventus<sup>19</sup> \*nāvigātiōnem<sup>20</sup>  
 impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs  
 locīs flāre<sup>21</sup> cōnsuēvit, dabat<sup>22</sup> operam<sup>22</sup> ut in officiō  
 Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō<sup>23</sup> tamen<sup>23</sup> sētius<sup>23</sup> omnia  
 4 ēius cōsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus 60  
 \*tempestātem<sup>24</sup> militēs equitēsque \*cōnscendere<sup>25</sup> nāvēs  
 5 iubet. At omnium impeditīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum  
 equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs insciente<sup>17</sup> Caesare

<sup>1</sup> deny. <sup>2</sup> ad-imō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum, take away. <sup>3</sup> stir up. <sup>4</sup> sē-, aside. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>6</sup> (to terrify them with fear) to fill them with apprehension (that, etc., the following indirect discourse explaining metū). <sup>7</sup> strip. <sup>8</sup> (saying that) he pledged his honor. <sup>9</sup> of advantage. <sup>10</sup> rank. <sup>11</sup> assigned. <sup>12</sup> restrain. <sup>13</sup> folly. <sup>14</sup> look out. <sup>15</sup> adverbial acc., at all. <sup>16</sup> nocēō, ēre, nocuī, nocitum, harm; with dative <sup>17</sup> Cf. derivation. <sup>18</sup> the northwest. <sup>19</sup> ventus, ī, wind. <sup>20</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>21</sup> blow. <sup>22</sup> he took pains. <sup>23</sup> nevertheless. <sup>24</sup> weather. <sup>25</sup> Cf. ascendō.

domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, in-  
 65 termissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis,<sup>1</sup>  
 māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mit-  
 tit retrahīque<sup>1</sup> imperat; sī vim<sup>2</sup> faciat neque pareat,<sup>2</sup> <sup>7</sup>  
 interfici iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō<sup>3</sup> sãnō<sup>3</sup> factū-  
 rum arbitrātus, quī<sup>4</sup> praesentis imperium neglēxisset.  
 70 Ille autem revocātus<sup>1</sup> resistere ac sē manū<sup>5</sup> dēfend-  
 ere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmi-  
 tāns<sup>6</sup> liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat  
 imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt;  
 at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

*Caesar crosses to Britain and routs the natives.*

75 8. Hīs rēbus gestīs Labiēnō in cōtinentī<sup>7</sup> cum tribus  
 legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs<sup>8</sup>  
 tuerētur<sup>9</sup> et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Gal-  
 liā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et  
 prō rē<sup>10</sup> caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī<sup>2</sup>  
 80 numerō equitum, quem in cōtinentī relinquebat, ad  
 sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit,<sup>11</sup> et lenī<sup>12</sup> Āfricō<sup>13</sup> prōvectus,<sup>14</sup>  
 mediā circiter nocte, ventō intermissō, \*cursum<sup>15</sup> nōn  
 tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū,<sup>16</sup> ortā lūce sub sinistrā  
 Britanniam relictam cōspexit. Tum rūsus aestūs<sup>3</sup>  
 85 commūtātiōnem secūtus<sup>17</sup> \*rēmīs<sup>18</sup> contendit, ut eam  
 partem \*īnsulae<sup>19</sup> caperet,<sup>20</sup> quā optimum esse ēgressum<sup>21</sup>  
 superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum<sup>22</sup> fuit<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. derivation. <sup>2</sup> use force and not obey. <sup>3</sup> like a sane man. <sup>4</sup> since he. <sup>5</sup> vigorously. <sup>6</sup> shout. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>8</sup> harbor. <sup>9</sup> protect. <sup>10</sup> circumstances. <sup>11</sup> (loose); with nāvēs, set sail. <sup>12</sup> gentle. <sup>13</sup> southwest wind. <sup>14</sup> (borne forth), carry. <sup>15</sup> course. <sup>16</sup> tide. <sup>17</sup> taking advantage of. <sup>18</sup> oar. <sup>19</sup> island. <sup>20</sup> make; gain. <sup>21</sup> noun; cf. derivation and force of suffix. <sup>22</sup> greatly; highly.

militum virtūs laudanda,<sup>1</sup> quī vectōriis<sup>2</sup> gravibusque<sup>2</sup>  
 nāvigiis,<sup>2</sup> nōn intermissō rēmigandī<sup>3</sup> labōre, longārum  
 5 nāvium cursum<sup>4</sup> adaequāunt. Accēssum est ad Bri- 90  
 tanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō<sup>5</sup> ferē tempore<sup>5</sup>  
 6 neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut postea  
 Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō  
 convēnissent, multitudīne nāvium perterritae, quae  
 cum annōtinīs<sup>6</sup> privātisque, quās suī quisque commodī 95  
 causā fēcerat, amplius \*octingentae<sup>7</sup> ūnō erant vīsae  
 tempore, ā \*litore<sup>8</sup> discēsserant ac sē in superiōra loca  
 abdidierant.

9. Caesar expositō<sup>9</sup> exercitū et locō castris idōneō  
 captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium 100  
 cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et  
 equitibus ccc, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā  
 vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus,  
 quod in litore \*mollī<sup>10</sup> atque apertō dēligātās<sup>11</sup> ad \*an-  
 corās<sup>12</sup> relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium 105  
 2 praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter  
 3 xii hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque  
 essedīs<sup>13</sup> ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs  
 4 prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Re-  
 pulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nanctī 110  
 ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī<sup>14</sup>  
 bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant;  
 5 nam crēbris arboribus succīsīs<sup>15</sup> omnēs introitūs<sup>16</sup> erant

<sup>1</sup> praise. <sup>2</sup> (in ships adapted to carry, and heavy) in their heavy transports. <sup>3</sup> row. <sup>4</sup> Different meaning from that in line 82. <sup>5</sup> mid-day, noon. <sup>6</sup> (the ships) built the year before. <sup>7</sup> eight hundred. <sup>8</sup> litus, oris, n., shore. <sup>9</sup> Cf. derivation of the Latin word (not the Eng. derivative). <sup>10</sup> mollis, e, (soft) smooth. <sup>11</sup> (bound) riding. <sup>12</sup> anchor. <sup>13</sup> war chariot. <sup>14</sup> civil. <sup>15</sup> Consider carefully the simple verb and the prefix. <sup>16</sup> entrance.

praeclūsī.<sup>1</sup> Ipsī ex silvīs \*rārī<sup>2</sup> prōpūgnābant<sup>3</sup> nos-  
 115 trōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At  
 militēs legiōnis septimae tēstūdine factā et aggere ad  
 mūnitiōnēs adiectō<sup>4</sup> locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs  
 expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs<sup>5</sup>  
 fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit,<sup>5</sup> et quod  
 120 locī nātūrā Ignōrābat,<sup>6</sup> et quod māgnā parte diēi  
 cōsūmptā mūnitiōnī castrōrum tempus relinqui  
 volēbat.

*The fleet is wrecked by a storm, but repaired.*

10. Postrīdiē ēius diēi māne<sup>7</sup> tripertitō<sup>8</sup> militēs equi-  
 tēsque in expeditiōnem<sup>9</sup> mīsīt, ut eōs, quī fūgerant,  
 125 persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum<sup>10</sup> itineris prōgressīs,<sup>2</sup>  
 cum iam extrēmī<sup>11</sup> essent in<sup>12</sup> prōspectū,<sup>12</sup> equitēs ā  
 Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent superi-  
 ore nocte māximā \*coortā<sup>13</sup> tempestāte prope omnēs  
 nāvēs afflītās<sup>14</sup> atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod ne-  
 130 que ancorae \*fūnēsque<sup>15</sup> sustinērent neque \*nautae<sup>16</sup>  
 \*gubernātōrēsque<sup>17</sup> vim tempestātis pati possent; itaque  
 ex eō concursū<sup>18</sup> nāvium māgnū esse incommodum<sup>19</sup>  
 acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque  
 135 revocārī atque in itinere resistere<sup>20</sup> iubet, ipse ad nāvēs  
 revertitur: eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs cōgnōverat,<sup>2</sup>  
 cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus

<sup>1</sup> Cf. interclūdō. <sup>2</sup> in small groups. <sup>3</sup> prō-, outside. <sup>4</sup> consider carefully the simple verb and the prefix. <sup>5</sup> forbid. <sup>6</sup> be ignorant of; not know. <sup>7</sup> early in the morning. <sup>8</sup> Adverb, from trēs and pars. <sup>9</sup> rapid march. <sup>10</sup> somewhat; with itineris, some distance. <sup>11</sup> only the rear of the Roman detachments. <sup>12</sup> in sight ahead. <sup>13</sup> co- intensive. <sup>14</sup> wreck. <sup>15</sup> fūnis, is, m., rope, cable. <sup>16</sup> sailor. <sup>17</sup> pilot. <sup>18</sup> Note the literal meaning. <sup>19</sup> disaster. <sup>20</sup> remain behind.

reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur.  
 3 Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs<sup>1</sup> dēligit et ex continentī  
 4 aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam plūri-<sup>140</sup>  
 mās possit, iīs legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs  
 5 instituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae<sup>2</sup> ac labōris,  
 tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs \*sub-  
 6 dūcī<sup>3</sup> et cum castrīs ūnā mūnitiōne coniungī. In hīs  
 rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs<sup>4</sup> quidem<sup>145</sup>  
 7 temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Sub-  
 ductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitīs eāsdem cō-  
 piās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem,  
 8 unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, mā-  
 iōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum<sup>150</sup>  
 convēnerant, summā imperiī bellique administrandī  
 commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cūius finēs ā  
 maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur  
 9 Tamesis,<sup>5</sup> ā mārī circiter mīlia passuum lxxx. Huīc  
 superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia<sup>6</sup> <sup>155</sup>  
 bella intercēsserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Bri-  
 tannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

[Description of Britain and its inhabitants.]

*Caesar crosses the Thames, routs the Britons, and  
 subdues Cassivellaunus.\**

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique<sup>7</sup> ācrit̄er proeliō cum  
 equitātū nostrō in itinere cōflīxērunt,<sup>8</sup> ita tamen ut  
 nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in <sup>160</sup>  
 2 silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus inter-  
 fectīs cupidius īsecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt.

<sup>1</sup> workman; mechanic.    <sup>2</sup> exertion.    <sup>3</sup> draw up; beach.    <sup>4</sup> Adj. from  
 nox.    <sup>5</sup> Thames.    <sup>6</sup> incessant.    <sup>7</sup> charioteer.    <sup>8</sup> fight.

At illi intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus<sup>1</sup> nostris atque  
 occupatis in munitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis  
 165 ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in<sup>2</sup> \*sta-  
 tiōne<sup>3</sup> prō castris collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt;  
 duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare atque  
 his primis legiōnum duarum, cum eae perexiguō<sup>4</sup> inter-  
 missō loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere  
 170 pūgnae perterritis nostris, per mediōs audācissimē per-  
 rūpērunt<sup>4</sup> sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē  
 Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi  
 pluribus submissis<sup>5</sup> cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae cum sub oculis<sup>6</sup> om-  
 175 nium āc prō castris dīmīcārētur, intellēctum est nos-  
 trōs propter gravitatem<sup>7</sup> armōrum, quod neque īnsequi  
 \*cēdentēs<sup>8</sup> possent neque ab signis discēdere audērent,  
 minus \*aptōs<sup>9</sup> esse ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs  
 autem māgnō cum periculō proeliō dīmīcāre, proptereā  
 180 quod illi etiam \*cōsultō<sup>10</sup> plērumque cēderent et, cum  
 paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedis<sup>11</sup>  
 \*dēsiliērent<sup>12</sup> et pedibus dispari<sup>13</sup> proeliō contenderent.  
 [Equestris<sup>14</sup> autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnse-  
 185 quentibus pār atque idem periculum īferēbat.] Accē-  
 debat hūc, ut numquam<sup>15</sup> cōfertī, sed rārī māgnisque  
 intervallis proeliārentur<sup>16</sup> statīōnēsque dispositās habē-  
 rent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps<sup>17</sup> exciperent,<sup>18</sup> integrīque<sup>19</sup>  
 et recentēs<sup>20</sup> dēfatigātis<sup>21</sup> succēderent.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>1</sup> (unforeseeing) off their guard. <sup>2</sup> on guard. <sup>3</sup> very small. <sup>4</sup> break through. <sup>5</sup> sub-, to their assistance. <sup>6</sup> eye. <sup>7</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>8</sup> retreat. <sup>9</sup> fitted, adapted. <sup>10</sup> purposely. <sup>11</sup> chariot. <sup>12</sup> dē-siliō, ire, silui, sultum, jump down. <sup>13</sup> dis-, here negative in its effect. <sup>14</sup> Omit words in brackets. <sup>15</sup> never. <sup>16</sup> fight. <sup>17</sup> in succession. <sup>18</sup> relieve. <sup>19</sup> fresh. <sup>20</sup> rested. <sup>21</sup> tired. <sup>22</sup> Cf. submissis, line 173.

17. Posterō diē procul<sup>1</sup> ā castris hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius<sup>2</sup> quam<sup>190</sup> 2 prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē<sup>3</sup> cum Caesar pābulandī<sup>4</sup> causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs<sup>5</sup> advolāvērunt,<sup>6</sup> sic utī ab<sup>7</sup> signis legiōnibusque nōn<sup>7</sup> 195 3 absisterent.<sup>7</sup> Nostrī ācritē in eōs impetū factō repulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcērunt, \*quoad<sup>8</sup> subsidīō cōfisi equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, 4 praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī<sup>9</sup> neque cōsistendī aut<sup>200</sup> 5 ex essedis dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus,<sup>10</sup> quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discēssērunt, neque post id tempus umquam<sup>11</sup> summīs nobiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tame- 205 sim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī 2 potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. 3 Rīpa autem erat acūtīs<sup>12</sup> sudibus<sup>13</sup> praefixisque<sup>14</sup> mū- 210 nīta, eiusdemque generis sub \*aquā<sup>15</sup> \*dēfixae<sup>16</sup> sudēs<sup>13</sup> 4 flūmine tegēbantur.<sup>17</sup> His rēbus cōgnitīs ā captivīs perfugisque<sup>18</sup> Caesar praemissō equitātū \*cōnfestim<sup>19</sup> 5 legiōnēs subsequī iūssit. Sed eā<sup>20</sup> celeritāte atque eō<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> at a distance. <sup>2</sup> (more gently) more cautiously. <sup>3</sup> at midday.  
<sup>4</sup> forage. <sup>5</sup> Cf. pābulandī, 192, and force of suffix. <sup>6</sup> (fly to) rush.  
<sup>7</sup> (did not stand away from) were close to. <sup>8</sup> until. <sup>9</sup> collect. <sup>10</sup> (forthwith) immediately. <sup>11</sup> ever. <sup>12</sup> sharpened. <sup>13</sup> stakes. <sup>14</sup> drive down in front. <sup>15</sup> water. <sup>16</sup> dē-figō, ere, fixī, fixum, fasten down, drive down.  
<sup>17</sup> cover. <sup>18</sup> deserter. <sup>19</sup> immediately. <sup>20</sup> such.



215 impetū militēs iērunť, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent,<sup>1</sup> ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent<sup>2</sup> āc sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, omni  
220 dēpositā spē contentiōnis,<sup>3</sup> dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum<sup>16</sup> relictīs, itinera nostra servābat<sup>4</sup> paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impeditīs āc silvestribus<sup>5</sup> sēsē occultābat<sup>16</sup> atque iīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, \*pecora<sup>6</sup>  
225 atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs effunderet,<sup>7</sup> omnibus viīs sēmitīsque<sup>8</sup> essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum hīs cōnfligēbat<sup>9</sup> atque hōc metū<sup>17</sup>  
230 lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur<sup>10</sup> ut neque longius ab āgmine legiōnum discēdī<sup>11</sup> Caesar paterētur, et tantum<sup>13</sup> [in] agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque<sup>12</sup> faciendis hostibus<sup>13</sup> nocērētur,<sup>13</sup> quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnārīū militēs efficere poterant.

*Surrender of the Trinovantes and several other states.*

235 20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvītās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem<sup>14</sup> secūtus<sup>14</sup> ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat (cūius pater in eā cīvītāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem

<sup>1</sup> stand out. <sup>2</sup> abandon. <sup>3</sup> Cf. formation; from contendō, fight.  
<sup>4</sup> watch. <sup>5</sup> wooded. <sup>6</sup> pecus, pecoris, n., cattle; plu., herds of cattle.  
<sup>7</sup> (pour out) scatter. <sup>8</sup> path. <sup>9</sup> fight. <sup>10</sup> (it was left) the result was.  
<sup>11</sup> (it to be departed) any one to go. <sup>12</sup> fires, of forests and villages.  
<sup>13</sup> (it was harmed the enemy only so much) only as much harm was done the enemy. <sup>14</sup> accept the protection. <sup>15</sup> chariot fighters. <sup>16</sup> hide. <sup>17</sup> fear.

2 vitāverat<sup>1</sup>), lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicentur- 240  
 3 que sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt  
 ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat  
 atque in civitātem mittat, quī praesit imperiumque  
 4 obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā  
 frūmentumque exercitū Mandubraciumque ad eōs 245  
 mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad  
 numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī militum  
 iniūriā prohibitīs Cēnimagnī, Segontiāci, Ancalitēs,  
 Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. 250  
 2 Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivel-  
 launī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis  
 māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit.  
 3 Oppidum autem<sup>2</sup> Britannī vocant,<sup>3</sup> cum silvās impe-  
 dītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis<sup>4</sup>  
 4 hostium vitandae<sup>5</sup> causā convenīre cōsuērunt. Eō pro-  
 ficiscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā  
 atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus  
 5 oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mili-  
 tum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex 260  
 6 parte oppidi ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris  
 repertus multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsi<sup>6</sup> atque  
 interfectī.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus  
 ad Cantium,<sup>7</sup> quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrā- 265  
 vimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant,  
 Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs  
 mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs

<sup>1</sup> avoid.    <sup>2</sup> now.    <sup>3</sup> here equivalent to appellō.    <sup>4</sup> raid.    <sup>5</sup> avoid.

<sup>6</sup> seize.    <sup>7</sup> modern Kent.

castra<sup>1</sup> nāvālia<sup>1</sup> dē imprōvīsō adorian<sup>2</sup>ur atque oppū-  
 270 gnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne<sup>3</sup>  
 factā multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce  
 Lugotorīge suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus<sup>3</sup>  
 hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot<sup>2</sup> dētrimentis acceptis, vā-  
 stātis finibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne<sup>3</sup>  
 275 cīvitatū, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēdi-  
 tiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset<sup>4</sup>  
 hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae  
 mōtūs,<sup>4</sup> neque multum aestātis superesset atque  
 id<sup>5</sup> facile extrahī<sup>6</sup> posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat  
 280 et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis<sup>7</sup> populō Rōmānō  
 Britannia penderet cōstituit; interdicit<sup>8</sup> atque imperat<sup>5</sup>  
 Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus  
 noceat.

*Caesar's return to Gaul.*

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare,  
 285 nāvēs invenit<sup>9</sup> refectās. Hīs \*dēductis,<sup>10</sup> quod et cap-<sup>2</sup>  
 tivōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, et nōn nūllae  
 tempestāte dēperierant<sup>11</sup> nāvēs, duōbus \*commeāti-  
 bus<sup>12</sup> exercitum reportāre instituit. Āc sic accidit uti<sup>3</sup>  
 ex tantō nāvium numerō tot<sup>2</sup> nāvigātiōnibus<sup>13</sup> neque  
 290 hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae  
 milites portāret,<sup>14</sup> dēsiderārētur;<sup>15</sup> at ex iis, quae inānēs<sup>16</sup><sup>4</sup>  
 ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, priōris commeātūs  
 expositis militibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās

<sup>1</sup> fortifications which protected the ships. <sup>2</sup> indeclin. adj.; so many.  
<sup>3</sup> revolt. <sup>4</sup> (movements) uprisings. <sup>5</sup> refers to multum aestātis.  
<sup>6</sup> (draw out) waste. <sup>7</sup> tribute; genitive. <sup>8</sup> warn. <sup>9</sup> find. <sup>10</sup> launch.  
<sup>11</sup> (perish) be lost. <sup>12</sup> voyage. <sup>13</sup> sailing. <sup>14</sup> Cf. comportō, importō,  
 trānsportō. <sup>15</sup> (miss) lose. <sup>16</sup> empty.

cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent;<sup>1</sup>  
 5 reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum ali- 295  
 quamdiū<sup>2</sup> Caesar \*frūstrā<sup>3</sup> exspectāset, nē annī tem-  
 pore ā nāvīgatiōne<sup>4</sup> exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium<sup>5</sup>  
 6 suberat,<sup>6</sup> necessariō angustius<sup>7</sup> militēs collocāvit āc,  
 summā tranquillitātē<sup>8</sup> cōsecūtā, secundā initā cum  
 solvisset<sup>9</sup> vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque 300  
 incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

## THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX

*The Roman legions distributed among more states than usual.*

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Sama-  
 robrivae<sup>10</sup> \*peractō,<sup>11</sup> quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā  
 propter siccitatēs<sup>12</sup> angustius<sup>13</sup> prōvēnerat,<sup>14</sup> coactus est  
 aliter āc superiōribus annis exercitum in hibernis col- 305  
 2 locāre legiōnesque in plūrēs civitatēs \*distribuere.<sup>15</sup> Ex  
 quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō  
 dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in  
 Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō  
 3 in cōfiniō<sup>16</sup> Trēverōrum hiemāre iūssit; trēs in Bel- 310  
 lovaciis collocāvit; his M. Crassum et L. Munātium  
 4 Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefecit. Ūnam  
 legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum<sup>17</sup> cōscripserat,  
 et cohortēs quinque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars māxima  
 est inter Mosam<sup>18</sup> āc Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō 315  
 5 Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus

<sup>1</sup> make, reach. <sup>2</sup> for some time. <sup>3</sup> in vain. <sup>4</sup> sailing. <sup>5</sup> the equinox  
 (with its "equinoctial storm"). <sup>6</sup> be close at hand. <sup>7</sup> (narrowly)  
 closely. <sup>8</sup> calm. <sup>9</sup> (loose) sc. nāvēs, set sail. <sup>10</sup> locative. <sup>11</sup> (drive  
 through) hold. <sup>12</sup> (dryness) drought. <sup>13</sup> (narrowly) scantily. <sup>14</sup> prō-,  
 up; forward. <sup>15</sup> dis-tribuō, ere, tribui, tribūtum; cf. Eng. derivative.  
<sup>16</sup> ("confines") territory. <sup>17</sup> the Po. <sup>18</sup> the Meuse or Maas.

Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iūssit. Ad<sup>1</sup> hunc modum distribūtis legiō-  
nibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē medērī<sup>2</sup> posse  
320 exīstimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum<sup>7</sup>  
hīberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam  
et quiētissimam<sup>3</sup> partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus  
passuum centum continēbantur.<sup>4</sup> Ipse intereā, quoad<sup>5</sup> 8  
legiōnēs collocātās mūnitaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, in  
325 Galliā morārī cōstituit.

[Tasgetius, a friend of Caesar, restored to his former place as king of the Carnutes, is assassinated.]

*The Eburones, under Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, attack the camp of Sabinus and Cotta.*

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentinī tumultūs<sup>6</sup> ac dēfectiōnis<sup>7</sup> ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī, cum ad finēs rēgnī<sup>2</sup> suī Sabīnō Cottaque praestō<sup>3</sup> fuissent<sup>8</sup> frūmentum-  
330 que in hīberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī<sup>9</sup> Trēverī nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt<sup>10</sup> subitoque oppres-  
sīs lignātōribus<sup>11</sup> māgnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāl-  
lumque āscendissent atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs<sup>12</sup>  
335 equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā<sup>13</sup> rē<sup>13</sup> hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī<sup>14</sup> ex nostrīs 4

<sup>1</sup> in. <sup>2</sup> remedy; deponent; with dative, inopiae. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>4</sup> were contained; no one of these camps was more than a hundred miles from at least two others. <sup>5</sup> until. <sup>6</sup> uprising. <sup>7</sup> revolt. <sup>8</sup> be waiting. <sup>9</sup> a chief whose rival had gained Caesar's support. <sup>10</sup> arouse. <sup>11</sup> wood-chopper. <sup>12</sup> Spanish. <sup>13</sup> (the thing having been despaired of) despairing of success. <sup>14</sup> singular; oftener aliquis.

ad colloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē com-  
mūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās<sup>1</sup> minūi  
posse spērārent.

340

[In a crafty speech Ambiorix persuades Sabinus and Cotta that all the Gauls have risen against Caesar at once; that the Germans have come to their aid, the other *legati* are being attacked, and their only hope is to get to Labienus; Ambiorix will allow them to pass safely out of his territory in return for Caesar's kindness to him.

Cotta ridicules the speech and proposes to stay and fight it out, but yields to Sabinus. The Romans spend the whole night in breaking camp, and start out at daybreak, tired, heavily loaded, and trusting Ambiorix implicitly. In a deep ravine they are ambushed and surrounded.]

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius,<sup>2</sup> quī<sup>3</sup> nihil ante prōvīdis-  
set, trepidāre<sup>4</sup> et concursāre<sup>5</sup> cohortēsque dispōnere,  
haec<sup>6</sup> tamen ipsa<sup>6</sup> timidē atque ut<sup>7</sup> eum omnia<sup>8</sup> dēficere  
vidērentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōsuēvit,  
2 quī in ipsō negōtiō<sup>9</sup> cōsiliū capere cōguntur. At 345  
Cotta, quī<sup>3</sup> cōgitāset<sup>10</sup> haec posse in itinere accidere,  
atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor<sup>11</sup> nōn fuisset,  
nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs  
cohortandisque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīli-  
3 tis officia<sup>12</sup> praestābat.<sup>12</sup> Cum propter longitūdinem<sup>13</sup> 350  
āgminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre<sup>14</sup> et, quid quōque  
locō faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iūssērunt  
\*prōnūntiārī,<sup>15</sup> ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in  
4 orbem<sup>16</sup> cōsisterent. Quod cōsiliū, etsī in ēiūs

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>2</sup> i.e., *Sabinus*. See line 317. <sup>3</sup> causal.  
<sup>4</sup> historical infinitive; *hurried about*. <sup>5</sup> *ran around*. <sup>6</sup> (*but did*) *even these things*. <sup>7</sup> *in such a manner that*. <sup>8</sup> *all his wits*. <sup>9</sup> *action*.  
<sup>10</sup> *think*. <sup>11</sup> (promoter) *responsible (for)*. <sup>12</sup> *did the duty*. <sup>13</sup> Cf. forma-  
tion. <sup>14</sup> *attend to*. <sup>15</sup> Cf. *ēnūntiō*, *renūntiō*. <sup>16</sup> *circle*.

355 modi cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incom-  
modē<sup>1</sup> cecidit; nam et nostrīs militibus<sup>2</sup> spem minuit et  
hostēs ad pūgnam \*alacriōrēs<sup>3</sup> effēcit, quod nōn sine  
summō timōre et dēspērātiōne<sup>4</sup> id factum vidēbātur. <sup>6</sup>  
Praetereā accidit, quod fieri necesse<sup>5</sup> erat, ut vulgō  
360 militēs ab signīs discēderent, quaeque<sup>6</sup> quisque eōrum  
cārissima<sup>7</sup> habēret, ab impedimentīs petere atque  
arripere<sup>8</sup> properāret; clāmōre et flētū<sup>9</sup> omnia complē-  
rentur.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium<sup>10</sup> nōn dēfuit. Nam dūcēs  
365 eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt, nē quis ab locō  
discēderet; illōrum esse \*praedam<sup>11</sup> atque illīs reservārī,  
quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde<sup>12</sup> omnia in  
victōriā posita exīstimārent. Nostrī tametsī<sup>13</sup> ab duce  
et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salutis  
370 in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns<sup>14</sup> quaeque cohors prō-  
currerat, ab<sup>15</sup> eā parte māgnus numerus hostium cadē-  
bat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet,  
ut procul<sup>16</sup> tēla cōnīciant neu<sup>17</sup> propius accēdant et,  
quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant,  
375 [levitāte<sup>18</sup> armōrum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil  
hīs nocērī<sup>19</sup> posse,] rūsus sē ad signa recipientēs  
insequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō<sup>20</sup> ab iīs dīligentissimē observātō,<sup>21</sup>  
cum quaequam<sup>22</sup> cohors ex orbe<sup>23</sup> excēsserat atque impe-  
380 tum fēcerat, hostēs vėlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *unfortunately*. <sup>2</sup> Dative of reference; translate by possessive.  
<sup>3</sup> *alacer, cris, cre, eager*. <sup>4</sup> *despair*. <sup>5</sup> indeclinable adjective; *necessary*.  
<sup>6</sup> *i.e., et quae*. <sup>7</sup> *dear*. <sup>8</sup> *snatch*. <sup>9</sup> *Cf. formation*. <sup>10</sup> *cunning*.  
<sup>11</sup> *booty*. <sup>12</sup> (thenceforward) *so*. <sup>13</sup> *although*. <sup>14</sup> *as often as*. <sup>15</sup> *abl.*  
*of the point of view*. <sup>16</sup> *from a distance*. <sup>17</sup> *i.e., ne-ve, and not*.  
<sup>18</sup> *Cf. formation*. <sup>19</sup> *Cf. line 233*. <sup>20</sup> *command*. <sup>21</sup> *obey*. <sup>22</sup> *any*.  
<sup>23</sup> *circle*.

eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō  
 3 tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant  
 prōgressī, revertī coeperant, et ab iīs, quī cēsserant, et  
 4 ab iīs, quī proximī steterant,<sup>1</sup> circumveniēbantur; sīn<sup>2</sup>  
 autem<sup>3</sup> locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relin- 385  
 quēbātur, neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla  
 5 cōfertī vitāre<sup>4</sup> poterant. Tamen tot<sup>5</sup> incommodis<sup>6</sup>  
 cōflctātī,<sup>7</sup> multis vulneribus acceptis resistēbant et  
 magnā parte diēi cōsūptā, cum ā primā lūce ad  
 hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod ipsis esset 390  
 6 indignum<sup>8</sup> committēbant.<sup>9</sup> Tum T. Balventiō,<sup>10</sup> quī  
 superiōre annō primum pilum<sup>11</sup> dūxerat, virō fortī et  
 magnae auctoritātis, utrumque<sup>12</sup> femur trāgulā trāici-  
 7 tur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissimē pūgnāns,  
 8 dum circumventō filiō subvenit,<sup>13</sup> interficitur; L. Cotta 395  
 lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ordinēsque adhortāns<sup>14</sup> in  
 adversum ōs<sup>15</sup> fundā<sup>16</sup> vulnerātur.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul<sup>17</sup>  
 Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpre-  
 tem<sup>18</sup> suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum ut 400  
 2 sibi militibusque parcat.<sup>19</sup> Ille appellātus respondit:  
 Sī velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine  
 impetrārī<sup>20</sup> posse,<sup>20</sup> quod<sup>21</sup> ad militum salutem per-  
 tineat; ipsī vērō<sup>22</sup> nihil nocitum irī,<sup>23</sup> inque eam rem  
 3 sē suam fidem interpōnere.<sup>24</sup> Ille cum Cottā \*sauciō<sup>25</sup> 405

<sup>1</sup> stō, stand. <sup>2</sup> but if. <sup>3</sup> however. <sup>4</sup> avoid. <sup>5</sup> so many. <sup>6</sup> dis-  
 advantage. <sup>7</sup> harass. <sup>8</sup> unworthy; with abl. <sup>9</sup> do. <sup>10</sup> Dat. of refer-  
 ence; see line 356. <sup>11</sup> nom. pilus, maniple. <sup>12</sup> Balventiō utrumque  
 femur trāgulā trāicitur: freely, both thighs of Balventius are pierced by  
 a javelin. <sup>13</sup> For sub-, cf. submissis, line 173. <sup>14</sup> Cf. hortor, cohortor.  
<sup>15</sup> in adversum ōs: squarely in the face. <sup>16</sup> (stone from a) sling. <sup>17</sup> at a  
 distance. <sup>18</sup> interpreter. <sup>19</sup> spare. <sup>20</sup> that his request could be obtained.  
<sup>21</sup> so far as. <sup>22</sup> at any rate. <sup>23</sup> Cf. line 233. <sup>24</sup> Cf. line 46. <sup>25</sup> wounded.



communīcat,<sup>1</sup> sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā āc militum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armā-  
tum hostem itūrum negat<sup>2</sup> atque in eō persevērat.<sup>3</sup>

410 37. Sabīnus quōs in<sup>4</sup> praesentia<sup>4</sup> tribūnōs militum  
circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs  
sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accēssisset,  
iūssus arma abicere imperātum facit suisque, ut idem  
faciant, imperat. Interim, dum dē condiціōnibus inter  
415 sē agunt longiorque cōsultō<sup>5</sup> ab Ambiorīge instituitur  
sermō,<sup>6</sup> paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum  
vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum<sup>7</sup>  
tollunt<sup>8</sup> impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant.  
Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte  
420 militum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant  
ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer,<sup>9</sup> cum  
māgnā multitudine hostium premerētur, \*aquilam<sup>9</sup> in-  
trā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns  
occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem susti-  
425 nent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā<sup>10</sup> salūte sē ipsī  
interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlapsī<sup>11</sup> incertīs<sup>12</sup> itineri-  
bus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna per-  
veniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

*The winter quarters of Cicero are attacked by the Eburones,  
Aduatuci, and Nervii.*

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus<sup>13</sup> Ambiorīx statim cum  
430 equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī,

<sup>1</sup> propose (to). <sup>2</sup> (deny) say . . . not. <sup>3</sup> persist. <sup>4</sup> at the time.  
<sup>5</sup> purposely. <sup>6</sup> speech. <sup>7</sup> yell. <sup>8</sup> the first meaning. <sup>9</sup> aquila, eagle,  
and ferō, standard-bearer. <sup>10</sup> Cf. line 336. <sup>11</sup> deponent; escape.  
<sup>12</sup> Cf. either formation (in-, negative) or Eng. derivative. <sup>13</sup> (raised) elated.

proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit  
 2 peditātumque<sup>1</sup> sē subsequi iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā  
 Aduatucisque concitātis,<sup>2</sup> posterō diē in Nervios perve-  
 nit hortaturque, nē suī in perpetuum liberandī<sup>3</sup> atque  
 ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō iis, quās accēperint, iniuriis 435  
 3 \*occāsiōnem<sup>4</sup> dīmittant: interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs  
 4 māgnamque partem exercitūs interisse<sup>5</sup> dēmōnstrat;  
 nihil esse negōtiī, subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae  
 cum Cicerōne hiemet, interfici; sē ad eam rem profi-  
 tētūr<sup>6</sup> adiutōrem.<sup>7</sup> Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nervii per- 440  
 suādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim<sup>8</sup> dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutro-  
 nēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī  
 omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās manūs  
 possunt, cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna 445  
 advolant,<sup>9</sup> nōndum ad eum fāmā<sup>10</sup> dē Titūrii morte per-  
 2 lātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn  
 nulli milites, quī lignātiōnis<sup>11</sup> mūnitiōnisque causā in  
 silvās discēssissent, repentinō equitum adventū inter-  
 3 ciperentur.<sup>12</sup> His circumventis māgnā manū Eburō- 450  
 nēs, Nervii, Aduatuci atque hōrum omnium socii et  
 clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostri celeri-  
 4 ter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōscendunt.<sup>13</sup> Aegrē  
 is diēs sustentātur,<sup>14</sup> quod omnem spem hostēs in  
 celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adepti<sup>15</sup> victōriam in 455  
 perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne  
 litterae māgnis prōpositis praemiis, si pertulissent;

<sup>1</sup> Cf. with peditēs and equitātus. <sup>2</sup> arouse. <sup>3</sup> verb from liber.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>5</sup> perish. <sup>6</sup> offer. <sup>7</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>8</sup> immedi-  
 ately. <sup>9</sup> (fly to) rush. <sup>10</sup> report. <sup>11</sup> cutting wood; cf. lignātor, line 332.

<sup>12</sup> intercept; cut off. <sup>13</sup> Cf. ā(ad)-scendō. <sup>14</sup> intensive verb of sustineō.

<sup>15</sup> from adipiscor, gain.

obsessis<sup>1</sup> omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur.<sup>2</sup> Noctū  
 460 ex \*materia,<sup>3</sup> quam munitiōnis causā comportāverant,  
 turrēs admodum<sup>4</sup> cxx excitantur<sup>5</sup> incredibili celeritāte;  
 quae deesse operi vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs  
 posterō diē multō maiōribus coactis cōpiis castra op-  
 pūgnant, fossam complent. Ā nostris eādem ratiōne  
 465 quā pridīe, resistitur. Hōc idem reliquis deinceps<sup>6</sup> fit  
 diēbus. Nulla pars nocturni<sup>7</sup> temporis ad labōrem in-  
 mittitur; nōn aegris, nōn vulnerātis facultās quietis<sup>8</sup>  
 datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppūgnātiōnem<sup>6</sup>  
 opus<sup>9</sup> sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae<sup>10</sup>  
 470 sudēs,<sup>11</sup> magnus mūrālium<sup>12</sup> pilōrum numerus insti-  
 tuitur; turrēs contabulantur,<sup>13</sup> pinnae<sup>14</sup> lōricaeque<sup>15</sup> ex  
 crātibus<sup>16</sup> attexuntur.<sup>17</sup> Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā<sup>18</sup>  
 valētūdine<sup>19</sup> esset, nē nocturnum<sup>8</sup> quidem sibi tempus  
 ad quietem<sup>8</sup> relinquerēbat, ut \*ultrō<sup>20</sup> militum concursū  
 475 ac vōcibus sibi parcere<sup>21</sup> cōgerētur.

41. Tum ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, quī aliquem  
 sermōnis<sup>22</sup> aditum<sup>22</sup> causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne  
 habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dicunt. Factā potestāte,<sup>2</sup>  
 eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Tituriō ēgerat, comme-  
 480 morant<sup>23</sup> omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germānōs  
 Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna op-  
 pūgnārī. Addunt<sup>24</sup> etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem  
 ostentant<sup>25</sup> fidēi faciundae causā. Errāre<sup>26</sup> eōs dicunt,<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> From *obsidē*, blockade. <sup>2</sup> Cf. line 450. <sup>3</sup> *timber*. <sup>4</sup> *as many as*.  
<sup>5</sup> *raise*. <sup>6</sup> *in succession*. <sup>7</sup> Cf. derivation and Eng. derivative. <sup>8</sup> Cf.  
 Eng. derivative. <sup>9</sup> (need) *needed*. <sup>10</sup> *burned to a point*. <sup>11</sup> *stake*.  
<sup>12</sup> (adj., suitable for throwing from a wall) *heavy*. <sup>13</sup> *erect*. <sup>14</sup> *parapet*.  
<sup>15</sup> *breastwork*. <sup>16</sup> *wickerwork*. <sup>17</sup> *weave*. <sup>18</sup> *delicate*. <sup>19</sup> *health*. <sup>20</sup> *actu-*  
*ally*. <sup>21</sup> *spare*. <sup>22</sup> (approach for conversation) *speaking acquaintance*.  
<sup>23</sup> *relate*. <sup>24</sup> Cf. derivation and Eng. derivative. <sup>25</sup> intensive form  
 of *ostendō*. <sup>26</sup> *mistake, be mistaken*.

sī quicquam ab iīs praesidiī spērent, quī suis rēbus diffīdant;<sup>1</sup> sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populum-<sup>485</sup> que Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant  
 6 atque hanc inveterāscere<sup>2</sup> cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illis per<sup>3</sup> se<sup>3</sup> incolumibus ex hibernīs discēdere et, quās-  
 7 cumque in partēs velint, sine metū<sup>4</sup> proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: nōn esse cōnsuē-<sup>490</sup> tūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō  
 8 condiōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre<sup>5</sup> ūtantur<sup>6</sup> lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eiūs iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervīi vāllō pedum x et<sup>495</sup>  
 2 fossā pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et, quōsdam  
 3 dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab his docēbantur, sed nullā ferrāmentōrum<sup>7</sup> cōpiā, quae essent ad hunc ūsum idō-  
 nea, gladiīs caespitēs<sup>8</sup> circumcidere,<sup>9</sup> manibus sagulīs-<sup>500</sup>  
 4 que<sup>10</sup> terram exhaurīre<sup>11</sup> cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex  
 5 rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūnitiō-  
 nem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdi-  
 nem vāllī, falcēs<sup>12</sup> \*tētūdīnēsque,<sup>13</sup> quās idem captīvi<sup>505</sup>  
 docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō<sup>14</sup>  
 ferventēs<sup>15</sup> fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et ferve-  
 facta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs<sup>16</sup>  
 2 erant tēctae,<sup>17</sup> iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem<sup>510</sup>

<sup>1</sup> distrust; despair. <sup>2</sup> become established. <sup>3</sup> as far as they were concerned. <sup>4</sup> fear. <sup>5</sup> Cf. line 440. <sup>6</sup> imperative in ind. dis.: they might use. <sup>7</sup> iron tools. <sup>8</sup> sods. <sup>9</sup> cut out. <sup>10</sup> military cloak. <sup>11</sup> take up. <sup>12</sup> hooks. <sup>13</sup> movable shed. <sup>14</sup> wind. <sup>15</sup> ferventēs . . . casās: red-hot, fused balls of clay with slings, and hot javelins upon the huts. <sup>16</sup> straw. <sup>17</sup> (covered) thatched.

comprehendērunt<sup>1</sup> et ventī<sup>2</sup> māgnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs māximō clā-  
mōre, sic utī partā<sup>3</sup> iam atque explōrātā<sup>4</sup> victōriā,  
turrēs tēstūdinēsque<sup>5</sup> agere et scālīs<sup>6</sup> vāllum āscendere  
515 coepērunt. At tanta militum virtūs atque ea<sup>7</sup> prae-  
sentia<sup>8</sup> animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā<sup>9</sup> torrēren-  
tur<sup>9</sup> māximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur  
suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōn-  
flagrāre<sup>8</sup> intellegerent, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcēderet  
520 nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam; āc-  
tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. Hīc  
diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc  
habuit ēventum ut eō diē māximus numerus hostium  
vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō  
525 cōnstīpāverant<sup>10</sup> recēssumque<sup>11</sup> prīmīs ūltimī nōn da-  
bant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam<sup>6</sup>  
locō turri adāctā et contingente<sup>12</sup> vāllum, tertiae co-  
hortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recēssērunt  
suōsque omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī  
530 introīre<sup>13</sup> vellent, vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredi  
ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus con-  
iectīs dēturbātī,<sup>14</sup> turrisque succēnsa<sup>15</sup> est.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs,  
quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent,<sup>16</sup> T. Pullō  
535 et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās  
habēbant, uter alterī anteferrētur,<sup>17</sup> omnibusque annīs

<sup>1</sup> catch. <sup>2</sup> wind. <sup>3</sup> gain. <sup>4</sup> secure. <sup>5</sup> shed. <sup>6</sup> ladder. <sup>7</sup> such. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>9</sup> (parch) singe. <sup>10</sup> pack. <sup>11</sup> (an opportunity for) retreat. <sup>12</sup> Cf. attingō. <sup>13</sup> (go inside) enter the Roman works. <sup>14</sup> Ac. sunt, and hostēs as subject, and cf. per-turbō. <sup>15</sup> Cf. in-cendō. <sup>16</sup> i.e., were approaching the point where they would soon become centuriōnēs prīmī ōrdinis. <sup>17</sup> Cf. derivation.

3 dē locō<sup>1</sup> summīs similtātibus<sup>2</sup> contendēbant. Ex hīs  
 Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētūr, 'Quid<sup>3</sup>  
 dubitās,' inquit,<sup>31</sup> 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae pro-  
 bandae virtūtis exspectās? hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrō- 540  
 4 versūs iūdicābit.' Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā<sup>4</sup>  
 mūnitiōnēs quaeque<sup>5</sup> pars<sup>5</sup> hostium cōnfertissima est  
 5 vīsa, irrumpit.<sup>6</sup> Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō  
 continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem<sup>7</sup> sub-  
 6 sequitur. Mediocrī<sup>8</sup> spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in 545  
 hostēs \*immittit<sup>9</sup> atque ūnum ex multitudīne prōcur-  
 rentem<sup>9</sup> trāicit;<sup>10</sup> quō percussō<sup>11</sup> et \*exanimātō<sup>12</sup> hunc  
 scūtīs prōtegunt<sup>13</sup> hostēs, in illum ūniversī<sup>14</sup> tēla cōn-  
 7 iciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trāns-  
 figitur<sup>15</sup> scūtum Pullōnī<sup>16</sup> et verūtum<sup>17</sup> in balteō<sup>18</sup> 550  
 8 dēfigitur.<sup>19</sup> Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam<sup>20</sup> et gladium  
 ēdūcere cōnantī<sup>16</sup> dextram morātur manum, impedī-  
 9 tumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit<sup>21</sup> inimīcus<sup>22</sup>  
 10 illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.<sup>23</sup> Ad hunc sē cōn-  
 festim<sup>24</sup> ā Pullōne omnis multitudō convertit [; illum 555-  
 11 verūtō<sup>17</sup> trānsfixum<sup>15</sup> arbitrantur]. Gladiō comminus<sup>25</sup>  
 rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs  
 12 paulum prōpellit;<sup>26</sup> dum cupidius īstat, in<sup>27</sup> locum  
 13 dēiectus inferiōrem concidit.<sup>28</sup> Huīc rūsus circum-  
 ventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō<sup>29</sup> incolumēs 560  
 complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude<sup>30</sup> sēsē intrā

<sup>1</sup> position; promotion. <sup>2</sup> rivalry. <sup>3</sup> why. <sup>4</sup> outside. <sup>5</sup> and that part which. <sup>6</sup> (break in) rush on. <sup>7</sup> (opinion) judgment. <sup>8</sup> moderate. <sup>9</sup> Cf. derivation. <sup>10</sup> pierce. <sup>11</sup> run through. <sup>12</sup> kill. <sup>13</sup> cover. <sup>14</sup> all together. <sup>15</sup> pierce. <sup>16</sup> Dat. of reference; cf. line 356. <sup>17</sup> dart. <sup>18</sup> belt. <sup>19</sup> fasten. <sup>20</sup> sheath. <sup>21</sup> suc-, up. <sup>22</sup> rival. <sup>23</sup> sub-, cf. line 395. <sup>24</sup> immediately. <sup>25</sup> hand to hand. <sup>26</sup> prō-, off. <sup>27</sup> in . . . inferiōrem: being pushed into a hollow. <sup>28</sup> Cf. accidō, incidō. <sup>29</sup> both; declined like duo. <sup>30</sup> praise. <sup>31</sup> said he.

mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et <sup>14</sup>  
<sup>\*</sup>certāmine<sup>1</sup> utrumque versāvit<sup>2</sup> ut alter alterī inimi-  
 cus<sup>3</sup> auxiliō salūtique esset, neque diiudicārī<sup>4</sup> posset  
 565 uter utrī virtūte antefendus<sup>4</sup> vidērētur.

*The siege is raised by Caesar's arrival, and  
 the enemy are put to flight.*

45. Quantō<sup>5</sup> erat in<sup>6</sup> diēs<sup>6</sup> gravior atque asperior<sup>7</sup>  
 oppugnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte militum  
 cōfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitatem<sup>8</sup> dēfēnsōrum<sup>8</sup>  
 pervēnerat, tantō<sup>9</sup> crēbriōrēs lītterae nūntiūque ad  
 570 Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa<sup>10</sup> in  
 cōspectū nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū necābā-  
 tur. Erat ūnus intus<sup>11</sup> Nervius nōmine Verticō,<sup>12</sup> locō<sup>13</sup>,  
 nātus honestō,<sup>14</sup> quī ā<sup>15</sup> primā <sup>\*</sup>obsidiōne<sup>16</sup> ad Cicerō-  
 nem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat.<sup>17</sup> Hic  
 575 servō spē libertātis māgnisque persuādet praemiis, ut  
 lītterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigā-  
 tās<sup>18</sup> effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā sūspiciōne  
 versātus<sup>19</sup> ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculis  
 Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

580 46. Caesar acceptis lītteris hōrā circiter ūndecimā<sup>20</sup>  
 diēi statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mit-  
 tit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv;  
 iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad  
 sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad  
 585 C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs  
 legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scri-

<sup>1</sup> contest. <sup>2</sup> treat. <sup>3</sup> rival. <sup>4</sup> Cf. derivation. <sup>5</sup> (by how much) the.  
<sup>6</sup> from day to day. <sup>7</sup> fierce. <sup>8</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>9</sup> (by so much) the.  
<sup>10</sup> seize. <sup>11</sup> inside the Roman works. <sup>12</sup> nom. <sup>13</sup> position, rank.  
<sup>14</sup> honorable. <sup>15</sup> at. <sup>16</sup> siege. <sup>17</sup> show. <sup>18</sup> tie. <sup>19</sup> passing. <sup>20</sup> eleventh.

bit Labiēnō, sī rei pūblicae commodō facere posset,  
 5 cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorū veniat. Reliquam  
 partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn pu-  
 tat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex 590  
 proximīs hibernīs cōgit.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus<sup>1</sup> dē Crassi  
 adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx  
 2 prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiō-  
 nemque ei attribuit,<sup>2</sup> quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, 595  
 obsidēs cīvitatū, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque  
 omne, quod eō tolerandae<sup>3</sup> hiemis<sup>4</sup> causā dēvexerat,<sup>5</sup>  
 3 relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita mul-  
 4 tum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus  
 interitū<sup>6</sup> Sabīnī et caede<sup>7</sup> cohortium cōgnitā, cum om- 600  
 nēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē,  
 sī ex hibernīs fugae similem<sup>8</sup> profectiōnem fēcisset,  
 hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs  
 5 recentī victoriā efferrī<sup>9</sup> scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit  
 quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus 605  
 esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit;<sup>10</sup> docet  
 omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria  
 mīlia passuum longē ab suis castris cōsēdisse.

48. Caesar cōsiliō eius probātō, etsi \*opīniōne<sup>11</sup>  
 trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat,<sup>12</sup> tamen 610  
 ūnum commūnī salutī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat.  
 2 Venit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviorū finēs. Ibi ex  
 captivīs cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur  
 3 quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuīdam ex equiti-  
 bus Gallis māgnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem 615

<sup>1</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>2</sup> assign. <sup>3</sup> get through. <sup>4</sup> winter. <sup>5</sup> convey. <sup>6</sup> death.

<sup>7</sup> massacre. <sup>8</sup> (which would seem) like. <sup>9</sup> elate. <sup>10</sup> write at length.

<sup>11</sup> expectation. <sup>12</sup> (fall back) be reduced.



epistulam<sup>1</sup> dēferat. Hanc Graecis<sup>2</sup> cōscrip̄tam<sup>3</sup> līt-  
 teris mittit, nē interceptā<sup>4</sup> epistulā nostra ab hostibus  
 cōsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut  
 trāgulam<sup>5</sup> cum epistulā ad āmentum<sup>6</sup> dēligātā<sup>7</sup> intrā  
 620 mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litteris scribit<sup>8</sup> sē  
 cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore<sup>8</sup>; hortātur  
 ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum  
 veritus, ut erat praeceptum,<sup>21</sup> trāgulam<sup>5</sup> mittit. Haec  
 cāsū ad turrim adhaesit<sup>9</sup> neque ā nostris bīduō ani-  
 625 madversa tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur;  
 dēmp̄ta<sup>10</sup> ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam<sup>11</sup> in  
 conventū militum recitat<sup>12</sup> māximāque omnēs laetitiā<sup>13</sup>  
 afficit. Tum fūmī<sup>14</sup> incendiōrum<sup>15</sup> procul<sup>16</sup> vidēbantur,<sup>10</sup>  
 quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem<sup>17</sup> adventūs legiōnum  
 630 expulit.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem  
 relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt.  
 Haec erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā  
 facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem sup̄rā  
 635 dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit,<sup>17</sup> quī litterās ad Caesarem  
 dēferat; hunc admonet<sup>17</sup> iter \*cautē<sup>18</sup> diligenterque  
 faciat; perscribit in litteris hostēs ab sē discēssisse  
 omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus  
 litteris circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātis<sup>19</sup> suōs facit  
 640 certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmīcandum animō cōnfirmit.  
 Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter milia  
 passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns \*vallem<sup>19</sup> et rīvum<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> letter. <sup>2</sup> Greek. <sup>3</sup> Cf. line 606. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>5</sup> javelin.  
<sup>6</sup> thong, strap. <sup>7</sup> tie. <sup>8</sup> from adsum. <sup>9</sup> (cling to) stick in. <sup>10</sup> dēmō,  
 for de-imō, take down. <sup>11</sup> read through; sc. epistulam. <sup>12</sup> quote. <sup>13</sup> joy.  
<sup>14</sup> smoke. <sup>15</sup> fire. <sup>16</sup> at a distance. <sup>17</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>18</sup> adverb from  
 participle of caveō; cautiously. <sup>19</sup> vallis (or vallēs), is, f., valley.  
<sup>20</sup> brook. <sup>21</sup> command.

6 multitudinem hostium cōspiciātur. Erat māgnī perī-  
culī rēs tantulis<sup>1</sup> cōpiīs iniquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quo-  
niam obsidiōne liberātum<sup>2</sup> Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō<sup>645</sup>  
animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat: cōnsidit  
7 et, quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit  
atque haec, etsī erant exigua<sup>3</sup> per sē, vix hominum  
mīlium \*septem,<sup>4</sup> praesertim nūllīs cum impedimen-  
tīs, tamen angustiīs<sup>5</sup> viārum,<sup>5</sup> quam māximē potest<sup>650</sup>  
contrahit<sup>6</sup> eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem<sup>7</sup>  
8 hostibus<sup>8</sup> veniat. Interim speculātōribus<sup>9</sup> in omnēs  
partēs dīmissīs explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere  
vallem<sup>10</sup> trānsire possit.

50. Eō diē parvulis<sup>11</sup> equestribus proeliīs<sup>11</sup> ad aquam<sup>655</sup>  
2 factīs utriūque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod am-  
pliōrēs cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābant;  
3 Caesar, sī<sup>12</sup> forte<sup>13</sup> timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum  
locum ēlicere<sup>14</sup> posset, ut citrā<sup>15</sup> vallem<sup>10</sup> prō castrīs proe-  
4 liō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrā-<sup>660</sup>  
tīs itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque<sup>16</sup>  
trānsīret. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra  
accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit.  
5 Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere<sup>17</sup> sēque in castra  
recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra al-<sup>665</sup>  
tiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstrui<sup>18</sup> atque in hīs  
administrandīs rēbus quam māximē concursārī<sup>19</sup> et cum  
simulātiōne agī<sup>19</sup> timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitātī cōpiās

<sup>1</sup> diminutive of *tantus*; *such small*. <sup>2</sup> verb from *liber*. <sup>3</sup> *small*.  
<sup>4</sup> *seven*. <sup>5</sup> *by narrowing the streets (of the camp)*. <sup>6</sup> *contract*. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng.  
derivative. <sup>8</sup> *dat. of reference*. <sup>9</sup> *spy*. <sup>10</sup> *vallis* (or *vallēs*), *is, f., valley*.  
<sup>11</sup> (very little battles) *skirmishes*. <sup>12</sup> *to see if*. <sup>13</sup> *by chance*. <sup>14</sup> *entice*.  
<sup>15</sup> *on this side, i.e., on his side*. <sup>16</sup> *brook*. <sup>17</sup> *yield*. <sup>18</sup> *block up*.  
<sup>19</sup> (*impers., it to be run about*) *that they should run around and act*.

670 trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōstituunt; nostrīs  
 vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla  
 intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōiciunt prae-  
 cōnibusque<sup>1</sup> circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu<sup>2</sup> quis  
 Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē  
 675 trānsīre, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore  
 potestātem. Āc sic nostrōs contempsērunt,<sup>3</sup> ut ob-  
 strūctīs<sup>4</sup> in speciem<sup>5</sup> portīs singulis ōrdinibus caespitum,<sup>6</sup>  
 quod eā<sup>7</sup> nōn posse intrōrumpere<sup>8</sup> vidēbantur, aliī vāl-  
 lum manū scindere,<sup>9</sup> aliī fossās complēre inciperent.  
 680 Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitā-  
 tūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic utī  
 omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō, māgnūque  
 ex iīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.<sup>10</sup>

52. Longius persequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēs-  
 685 que intercēdēbant, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem  
 diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institūtās turrēs, tēstū-  
 dinēs<sup>11</sup> mūnitiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā  
 legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimū quemque esse reliquum  
 militem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus  
 690 quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint admi-  
 nistrātae; Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque col-  
 laudat;<sup>12</sup> centuriōnēs singillātīm<sup>13</sup> tribūnōsque militum  
 appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem tēstimōniō<sup>14</sup>  
 Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae  
 695 certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne<sup>15</sup>  
 habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, milītēs cōnsōlātur<sup>16</sup> et  
 cōnfirmit; quod dētrīmentum culpā<sup>17</sup> et temeritāte<sup>18</sup> lē- 6

<sup>1</sup> herald. <sup>2</sup> seu, etc., (that) if any one, whether Gaul or, etc. <sup>3</sup> despise.  
<sup>4</sup> block. <sup>5</sup> appearance. <sup>6</sup> sod. <sup>7</sup> sc. viā. <sup>8</sup> break inside. <sup>9</sup> tear  
 down. <sup>10</sup> strip. <sup>11</sup> shed. <sup>12</sup> praise highly. <sup>13</sup> individually. <sup>14</sup> Cf.  
 Eng. derivative. <sup>15</sup> assembly; contracted from *conventiō*. <sup>16</sup> Cf. Eng.  
 derivative. <sup>17</sup> fault. <sup>18</sup> rashness.

gātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet,  
quod, beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum  
expiātō<sup>1</sup> incommodō,<sup>2</sup> neque hostibus diūtina<sup>3</sup> laetitia<sup>4</sup> 700  
neque ipsīs longior dolor<sup>5</sup> relinquiātur.

<sup>1</sup> atone for; wipe out. <sup>2</sup> defeat. <sup>3</sup> long; lasting. <sup>4</sup> joy. <sup>5</sup> grief.

The season of 53 B.C., which is the subject of Book VI, saw no great enterprise carried out by Caesar. The Gauls were restless, and Caesar contented himself with keeping them in order and taking vengeance upon certain sections for their temerity in attacking his troops. He also crossed the Rhine for the second time, but accomplished little on the German side of the river. On the whole, this was a season of comparative quiet in Gaul, though there were signs of the great storm which was to break in the following year.

## COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS

### THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX

*The Gauls form new plans for war, which is begun by the Carnutes and the Arverni at the instigation of Vercingetorix.*

1. Quiētā<sup>1</sup> Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Ītaliā ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P. Clodiī caede,<sup>2</sup> dē senātūque cōsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs<sup>3</sup> Ītaliā<sup>4</sup> coniūrārent,<sup>4</sup> dilēctum<sup>5</sup> tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliā Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt<sup>1</sup> ipsī et affingunt<sup>6</sup> rumōribus Gallī, quod<sup>7</sup> rēs pōscere vidēbātur, retinēri urbānō<sup>8</sup> mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissensiōnibus<sup>1</sup> ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī<sup>3</sup> 10 occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent liberius atque audācius dē bellō cōsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs<sup>9</sup> inter sē princīpēs<sup>4</sup> Galliae conciliis silvestribus<sup>10</sup> āc remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis<sup>11</sup> morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs 15 recidere<sup>12</sup> dēmōstrant; miserantur<sup>13</sup> commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus<sup>14</sup> āc praemiis<sup>5</sup> dēpōscunt<sup>15</sup> quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>2</sup> murder. <sup>3</sup> (younger) of military age. <sup>4</sup> take the military oath. <sup>5</sup> levy. <sup>6</sup> invent in addition to. <sup>7</sup> Sc. id as antecedent, and object of affingunt, explained by Caesarem retinēri neque posse. <sup>8</sup> adj. from urbs (Rome). <sup>9</sup> call. <sup>10</sup> wooded. <sup>11</sup> Acco, a Gallic chief who had been put to death by Caesar for "conspiracy" the year before. <sup>12</sup> Cf. accidō. <sup>13</sup> lament. <sup>14</sup> promises. <sup>15</sup> de-, intensive.

6 periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent.<sup>1</sup> In primīs  
 ratiōnem esse habendam dicunt, prius quam eōrum  
 clandestīna<sup>2</sup> cōnsilia efferantur,<sup>3</sup> ut Caesar ab exercitū 20  
 7 interclūdatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs  
 audeant absente imperātore ex hibernīs ēgredi, neque  
 imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit;  
 8 \*postrēmō<sup>4</sup> in aciē praestāre<sup>5</sup> interfici, quam nōn vete-  
 rem bellī glōriam<sup>6</sup> libertātemque, quam ā māiōribus 25  
 accēperint, recuperāre.<sup>7</sup>

2. Hīs rēbus agitātis<sup>8</sup> profitentur<sup>9</sup> Carnutēs sē nūl-  
 lum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre prīn-  
 cipēsque<sup>10</sup> ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur et,  
 3 quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn 30  
 possint, nē rēs efferātur, at iūre iūrādō āc fidē san-  
 ciātur<sup>11</sup> petunt, collātis militāribus signīs, quō mōre  
 eōrum gravissima caerimōnia<sup>12</sup> continētur,<sup>13</sup> nē factō  
 3 initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum collaudātis<sup>14</sup>  
 Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrādō ab omnibus quī aderant, 35  
 tempore eius rei cōstitutō, ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Concon-  
 netodumnō ducibus, dēspērātis<sup>12</sup> hominibus, Cēnabum<sup>15</sup>  
 signō datō concurrunt civēsque<sup>16</sup> Rōmānōs quī negō-  
 tiandī<sup>17</sup> causā ibi cōstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, 40  
 honestum<sup>18</sup> equitem Rōmānum, quī rei frūmentāriae  
 iūssū<sup>19</sup> Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt \*bonaque<sup>20</sup> eōrum  
 4 diripiunt.<sup>21</sup> Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae civitātēs fāma<sup>22</sup>  
 perfertur. Nam ubi quae<sup>23</sup> māior atque illūstrior<sup>24</sup>

<sup>1</sup> restore. <sup>2</sup> secret. <sup>3</sup> spread abroad. <sup>4</sup> finally. <sup>5</sup> impersonal.

<sup>6</sup> reputation (for). <sup>7</sup> recover. <sup>8</sup> earnestly discuss. <sup>9</sup> declare. <sup>10</sup> adj. use.

<sup>11</sup> ordain. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>13</sup> perform. <sup>14</sup> praise highly.

<sup>15</sup> Cenabum, their chief town. <sup>16</sup> citizen. <sup>17</sup> do business. <sup>18</sup> honorable.

<sup>19</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>20</sup> (goods) property. <sup>21</sup> plunder. <sup>22</sup> story. <sup>23</sup> indefinite.

<sup>24</sup> remarkable.

45 incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsq̄ significant;<sup>1</sup>  
 hunc aliī deinceps<sup>2</sup> excipiunt<sup>3</sup> et proximīs trādunt, ut  
 tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta  
 essent ante prīmam cōflectam vigiliam in finibus  
 Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium  
 50 passuum circiter centum et sexāgintā.

4. Simili ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī filius,  
 Arvernus, summae potentiae<sup>4</sup> adulēscēns, cūius pater  
 principātum<sup>5</sup> tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam  
 quod rēgnum appetēbat ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, con-  
 55 vocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit.<sup>6</sup> Cōgnitō ēius  
 cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Goban-  
 nitiōne, patruō<sup>7</sup> suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc  
 temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur  
 ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēsistit tamen atque in  
 60 agrīs habet dilēctum<sup>8</sup> egentium<sup>9</sup> ac perditōrum.<sup>10</sup> Hāc  
 coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam  
 sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis libertātis  
 causā arma capiant, māgnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adver-  
 sārīōs<sup>11</sup> suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit  
 65 ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quoque<sup>12</sup>  
 versus<sup>12</sup> lēgatiōnēs; obtēstātur<sup>13</sup> ut in fidē maneant.  
 Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs,  
 Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs  
 quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū<sup>14</sup>  
 70 ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā<sup>14</sup> potestāte  
 omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>2</sup> in succession. <sup>3</sup> ex-, up. <sup>4</sup> Cf. for-  
 mation. <sup>5</sup> leadership. <sup>6</sup> used figuratively. <sup>7</sup> uncle. <sup>8</sup> levy. <sup>9</sup> des-  
 titute. <sup>10</sup> outcast. <sup>11</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>12</sup> (turned each way)  
 in every direction. <sup>13</sup> adjure. <sup>14</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative from present  
 stem.

numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet; armō-  
rum<sup>1</sup> quantum<sup>1</sup> quaeque civitās domī, quodque<sup>2</sup> ante<sup>2</sup>  
8 tempus<sup>2</sup> efficiat, cōstituit; in primīs equitātū studet.  
9 Summae diligentiae<sup>3</sup> summam imperiī sevērītatem<sup>4</sup> 75  
10 addit;<sup>4</sup> māgnitūdine supplicii<sup>5</sup> dubitantēs cōgit. Nam  
māiōre commissō<sup>6</sup> dēlictō<sup>7</sup> ignī atque omnibus tor-  
mentis<sup>8</sup> necat; leviōre dē causā auribus<sup>9</sup> dēsectis<sup>10</sup> aut  
singulis<sup>11</sup> effossis<sup>12</sup> oculis<sup>11</sup> domum remittit, ut sint reli-  
quīs documentō<sup>13</sup> et māgnitūdine poenae<sup>14</sup> perterreant 80  
aliōs.

5. Hīs suppliciis celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium  
Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae,<sup>3</sup> cum parte cōpi-  
ārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficiscitur.  
2 Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant in 85  
fidē, lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius  
3 hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Aeduī dē<sup>15</sup> cōnsiliō<sup>16</sup>  
lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās  
equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt.  
4 Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim<sup>16</sup> vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs 90  
ab Aeduīs dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque  
flūmen trānsire aūsī domum revertuntur lēgātisque  
nostris renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam<sup>17</sup> veritōs  
5 revertisse, quibus id cōnsiliī fuisse cōgnōverint ut,  
sī flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arver- 95  
6 nī sē circumsisterent. Id eā-ne<sup>18</sup> dē causā quam  
lēgātis prōnūntiārint, an perfidiā<sup>17</sup> adductī fēcerint,  
quod<sup>19</sup> nihil<sup>19</sup> nobīs cōstat,<sup>19</sup> nōn vidētur prō certō esse

<sup>1</sup> (how much of arms) *how many armed men.* <sup>2</sup> i.e., *et ante quod tempus.* <sup>3</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>5</sup> *punishment.* <sup>6</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative from present stem. <sup>7</sup> *crime.* <sup>8</sup> *torture.* <sup>9</sup> *ear.* <sup>10</sup> *cut off.* <sup>11</sup> *one eye* (of each person: hence the distributive). <sup>12</sup> *put out.* <sup>13</sup> *example.* <sup>14</sup> *penalty.* <sup>15</sup> *by the advice.* <sup>16</sup> *Loire.* <sup>17</sup> *treachery.* <sup>18</sup> *-ne: whether.* <sup>19</sup> *because it is not at all clear.*



pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discēssū statim sē cum  
 100 Arvernīs coniungunt. 7

*Caesar, returning from Italy, surprises the Arverni and  
 hastens to the relief of Gergobina, a city of the  
 Boii attacked by Vercingetorix.*

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliā Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam  
 ille urbānās<sup>1</sup> rēs \*virtūte<sup>2</sup> Cn.<sup>3</sup> Pompēi commodiōrem  
 in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam  
 Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā diffi-  
 105 cultāte afficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire  
 posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē  
 absente in itinere proeliō dīmīcātūrās intellegēbat; sī  
 ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē iīs quidem eō  
 tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem \*rēctē<sup>4</sup>  
 110 committī vidēbat.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus  
 eam cīvitatē Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitio-  
 brogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit et māgnā  
 coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versu<sup>5</sup> irrup-  
 115 tiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar  
 omnibus cōsiliīs antevērtendum<sup>6</sup> existimāvit, ut Nar-  
 bōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs  
 cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus,<sup>7</sup> Volcīs  
 Arecomīcīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae  
 120 loca hostibus erant finitima, cōstituit; partem cōpi-  
 ārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque<sup>8</sup> quod ex Ītaliā ad-  
 dūxerat in Helviōs, quī finēs Arvernōrum contingunt,  
 convenire iubet.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. line 8. <sup>2</sup> *ability*. <sup>3</sup> *Gnaeus*. <sup>4</sup> (rightly) *safely*. <sup>5</sup> *prep., toward*; obj. is *Narbōnem*, *Narbonne*. <sup>6</sup> *take precedence over*; subj. is *ut . . . proficīscerētur*. <sup>7</sup> *adj., of the province*. <sup>8</sup> *reënforcement*.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō<sup>1</sup> iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre<sup>2</sup> intrā praesidia periculōsum<sup>3</sup> pu-  
 2 tābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna,<sup>4</sup> quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit,<sup>5</sup> dūriissimō tempore annī altissimā nive<sup>6</sup> iter impediēbat, tamen, discussā<sup>7</sup> nive<sup>6</sup> in altitūdinem pedum sex atque ita viīs patefactīs,<sup>8</sup> summō militum labōre ad finēs Arvernōrum  
 3 pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopināntibus,<sup>9</sup> quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant, āc nē singulārī<sup>10</sup> quidem umquam<sup>11</sup> hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae<sup>12</sup> patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus terrōrem infe-  
 4 rant. Celeriter haec fāma<sup>13</sup> āc nūntiī ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant<sup>14</sup> ut suīs fortūnīs \*cōsulat,<sup>15</sup> \*neu<sup>16</sup> sē ab hostibus dīripī<sup>17</sup> patiātur; praesertim  
 5 cum videat omne ad sē bellum trāslātum.<sup>18</sup> Quōrum<sup>140</sup> ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in<sup>19</sup> Arvernōs versus.<sup>19</sup>

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod<sup>20</sup> haec dē Vercingetorige ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab  
 6 exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscētem hīs cōpiīs prae-  
 7 ficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; \*datūrum<sup>21</sup> sē \*operam<sup>21</sup> nē longius

<sup>1</sup> Cf. simple verb.    <sup>2</sup> enter.    <sup>3</sup> dangerous.    <sup>4</sup> Cévennes.    <sup>5</sup> Cf. inter-clūdō.    <sup>6</sup> snow.    <sup>7</sup> remove.    <sup>8</sup> open.    <sup>9</sup> (unexpected) unexpectedly.    <sup>10</sup> single.    <sup>11</sup> ever.    <sup>12</sup> path.    <sup>13</sup> report.    <sup>14</sup> entreat.    <sup>15</sup> look out; with dative.    <sup>16</sup> i.e., ne-ve, and not.    <sup>17</sup> plunder.    <sup>18</sup> Cf. formation.    <sup>19</sup> like Eng. to-ward, i.e. toward; cf. line 114.    <sup>20</sup> quod . . . supplēmentī: because he had conjectured that these movements would be made by Vercingetorix, on the pretext of reënforcements . . .    <sup>21</sup> take pains.

trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus, suīs<sup>1</sup> ;  
 150 inopīnantibus,<sup>1</sup> quam māximīs potest itineribus Vien-  
 nam<sup>2</sup> pervenit. Ibi nactus \*recentem<sup>3</sup> equitātum, quem  
 multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō<sup>4</sup> neque  
 nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Aeduōrum in  
 Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant ut,  
 155 sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Aeduīs inīrētur cōsiliī,  
 celeritāte praecurreret.<sup>5</sup> Eō cum pervēnisset, ad  
 reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in unum locum  
 cōgit quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset.<sup>6</sup>  
 Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx rūsus in Biturīgēs  
 160 exercitum redūcit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam,  
 Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs  
 Caesar collocāverat Aeduīsque attribuerat,<sup>6</sup> oppūgnāre  
 Instituit.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōn-  
 165 silium capiendum afferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis  
 ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs<sup>7</sup> Aeduōrum  
 expūgnātīs cūcta<sup>8</sup> Gallia dēficeret, quod<sup>9</sup> nūllum amī-  
 cīs in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex  
 hibernīs edūceret, nē ab<sup>10</sup> rē frūmentāriā dūris<sup>11</sup> subvec-  
 170 tiōnibus<sup>11</sup> labōrāret.<sup>12</sup> Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs  
 difficultātēs perpetī,<sup>13</sup> quam, tantā contumeliā acceptā,  
 omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre.<sup>14</sup> Itaque cohor-  
 tātus Aeduōs dē supportandō<sup>15</sup> commeātū, praemittit  
 ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut

<sup>1</sup> to the surprise of his own men; cf. line 131. <sup>2</sup> the principal city of the Allobroges. <sup>3</sup> rested. <sup>4</sup> during the day; day (adj.). <sup>5</sup> get ahead of; outwit. <sup>6</sup> assign. <sup>7</sup> dependent (states). <sup>8</sup> all. <sup>9</sup> because it (Gaul) would see that Caesar's friends had found no help in him. <sup>10</sup> in the matter of. <sup>11</sup> (hard transportation) difficulties in transportation; abl. of cause. <sup>12</sup> have trouble. <sup>13</sup> simple verb patiōr. <sup>14</sup> alienate; estrange. <sup>15</sup> Cf. sub-mittō, V. 171, sub-veniō, V. 391.

in<sup>1</sup> fidē<sup>1</sup> maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō  
 4 sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī<sup>2</sup> legiōnibus atque impedi- 175  
 mentīs tōtius exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs proficiſcitur.

*Caesar takes three towns on his march.*

II. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellauno-  
 dūnum vēnisſet, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et  
 quō expeditiōe rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppūgnāre  
 3 instituit eōque bīduō circumvāllāvit;<sup>3</sup> tertiō diē missīs 180  
 ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēditiōne arma cōferri, iūmenta<sup>4</sup>  
 3 prōdūci, sexcentōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōfi-  
 ceret C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit, ipse ut quam  
 primum iter cōficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum profici-  
 4 scitur; quī tum primum allātō nūntiō dē oppūgnā- 185  
 tiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum<sup>5</sup> irī  
 exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī<sup>6</sup> causā, quod  
 5 eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō pervenit.  
 Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, diēi tempore exclūsus<sup>7</sup>  
 in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt<sup>8</sup> quaeque ad eam 190  
 6 rem ūsuī sint militibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cē-  
 nabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē  
 noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in<sup>9</sup> armīs<sup>9</sup>  
 7 excubāre<sup>9</sup> iubet. Cēnabēnsēs<sup>10</sup> paulō ante mediam noc-  
 tem silentiō<sup>11</sup> ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsire coepē- 195  
 8 runt. Quā rē per explorātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs,  
 quās expeditās esse iūsserat, portīs incēnsīs, intrōmit-  
 tit atque oppidō potitur, perpaucīs ex hostium numerō

<sup>1</sup> loyal. <sup>2</sup> loc. of Agēdincum. <sup>3</sup> invest. <sup>4</sup> beasts of burden. <sup>5</sup> put  
 off. <sup>6</sup> protect. <sup>7</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative and interclūdō. <sup>8</sup> defer. <sup>9</sup> lie  
 under arms. <sup>10</sup> the inhabitants of Cenabum. <sup>11</sup> (in silence) silently.  
 One of the ablatives of manner used without adj. or prep. Cf. iniūriā,  
 commodō.

dēsiderātīs<sup>1</sup> quīn cūnctī<sup>2</sup> caperentur, quod pontis  
 200 atque itinerum angustiae multitudinī fugam interclū-  
 serant. Oppidum diripit<sup>3</sup> atque incendit, praedam<sup>4</sup>  
 militibus dōnat,<sup>4</sup> exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque  
 in Biturīgum finēs pervenit.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōg-  
 205 nōvit, oppūgnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam<sup>5</sup> Caesarī  
 proficīscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā<sup>2</sup>  
 Noviodūnum oppūgnāre instituerat. Quō ex oppidō<sup>3</sup>  
 cum lēgātī ad eum vēnissent ōrātum ut sibi ignōsceret  
 suaeque<sup>6</sup> vitae<sup>6</sup> cōsuleret,<sup>6</sup> ut celeritāte reliquās rēs  
 210 cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōnsecūtus, arma cōn-  
 ferri, equōs prōdūci, obsidēs darī iubet. Parte iam<sup>4</sup>  
 obsidum trādītā, cum reliqua administrārentur, cen-  
 turiōnibus et paucīs militibus intrōmissis<sup>7</sup> quī arma  
 iūmenta<sup>8</sup>que<sup>8</sup> conquīrerent,<sup>9</sup> equitātus hostium procul<sup>10</sup>  
 215 vīsus est, quī āgmen Vercingetorigis antecēsserat.<sup>11</sup>  
 Quem simul atque oppidānī<sup>12</sup> cōnsplexerunt atque in  
 spem auxilii vērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere,  
 portās claudere,<sup>13</sup> mūrū complēre coepērunt. Cen-  
 6 turiōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significātiōne<sup>14</sup> Gallōrum  
 220 novī aliquid ab iīs inīrī cōnsiliū intellēxissent, gladiīs  
 dēstrictis<sup>15</sup> portās occupāverunt suōsque omnēs inco-  
 lumēs recēpērunt.

13. Caesar ex castris equitātum ēdūci iubet, proe-  
 liumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suis  
 225 Germānōs equitēs circiter quadringentōs submittit,  
 quōs ab initiō sēcum habēre instituerat. Eōrum impe-

<sup>1</sup> miss. <sup>2</sup> all. <sup>3</sup> plunder. <sup>4</sup> present. <sup>5</sup> sc. viam, cognate acc., (an opposite way) to meet. <sup>6</sup> and save their lives. <sup>7</sup> send inside; introduce. <sup>8</sup> beast of burden. <sup>9</sup> simple verb, quaerō. <sup>10</sup> in the distance. <sup>11</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>12</sup> townspeople. <sup>13</sup> close. <sup>14</sup> behavior. <sup>15</sup> draw.

tum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam  
 3 coniectī multīs āmissīs sē ad āgmen recēpērunt. Quibus  
 prōfligātīs<sup>1</sup> rūsus oppidānī<sup>2</sup> perterritī comprehēnsōs<sup>3</sup>  
 eōs quōrum operā plēbem<sup>4</sup> concitātā<sup>5</sup> existimābant 230  
 ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt.  
 Quibus rēbus cōfectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum,  
 quod erat māximum mūnitissimumque in finibus Bi-  
 turīgum atque agrī<sup>6</sup> fertilissimā regiōne,<sup>7</sup> profectus est,  
 quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in 235  
 potestātem redāctūrum cōfidēbat.

*All the towns of the Bituriges except Avaricum  
 are burned by the Gauls.*

14. Vercingetorīx tot<sup>8</sup> continuīs incommodīs<sup>9</sup> Vel-  
 launodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad con-  
 2 ciliū convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum  
 gerendum atque antea gestum sit. Omnibus modīs 240  
 huīc<sup>10</sup> reī<sup>10</sup> studendum<sup>10</sup> ut pābulātiōne<sup>11</sup> et commeātū Rō-  
 3 mānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī  
 abundant<sup>12</sup> et quod annī tempore subleventur.<sup>13</sup> Pābu-  
 lum<sup>14</sup> secārī<sup>15</sup> nōn posse; necessariō dispersōs hostēs ex  
 4 aedificiīs petere; hōs omnēs cotīdiē ab equitibus dēlēri<sup>16</sup> 245  
 5 posse. Praetereā salūtis causā reī<sup>17</sup> familiāris<sup>17</sup> com-  
 moda<sup>17</sup> negligenda; vīcōs atque aedificia ineendī opor-  
 tēre hōc spatiō quōque<sup>18</sup> versus,<sup>18</sup> quō pābulandī<sup>19</sup> causā  
 6 adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam  
 suppetere,<sup>20</sup> quod quōrum in finibus bellum gerātur 250

<sup>1</sup> rout. <sup>2</sup> townspeople. <sup>3</sup> seize. <sup>4</sup> common people. <sup>5</sup> stir up.  
<sup>6</sup> country. <sup>7</sup> tract. <sup>8</sup> so many. <sup>9</sup> defeat. <sup>10</sup> it was desirable. <sup>11</sup> for-  
 aging. <sup>12</sup> be strong; be well supplied. <sup>13</sup> help. <sup>14</sup> fodder. <sup>15</sup> cut. <sup>16</sup> de-  
 stroy. <sup>17</sup> personal interests. <sup>18</sup> in every direction. <sup>19</sup> Cf. pābulum, 243,  
 and pābulatiō, 241. <sup>20</sup> be available.

eōrum opibus<sup>1</sup> sublevantur:<sup>2</sup> Rōmānōs aut inopiam<sup>7</sup> nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō longius ab castris prōcēssūrōs; neque<sup>3</sup> interesse<sup>3</sup> ipsōsne<sup>4</sup> interficiant an<sup>8</sup> impedimentis exuant,<sup>5</sup> quibus āmissis bellum gerī nōn  
 255 possit. Praeterea, oppida incendi oportere quae nōn mūnitiōne et loci nātūrā ab omni sint periculō tūta, nē suis sint ad dētrēctandam<sup>6</sup> militiam<sup>7</sup> receptacula<sup>8</sup> neu Rōmānis prōposita<sup>9</sup> ad cōpiam commeātūs prae-  
 damque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba<sup>10</sup> vide-  
 260 antur, multō illa gravius aestimārī debere, liberōs, cōniugēs<sup>11</sup> in servitūtem abstrahī,<sup>12</sup> ipsōs interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

15. Omnium cōsēnsū<sup>12</sup> hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē amplius vīginti urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc  
 265 idem fit in reliquis cīvitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia<sup>13</sup> cōspiciuntur; quae etsi māgnō cum dolore<sup>14</sup> omnēs ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlāciū<sup>15</sup> prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explorātā victoriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs<sup>16</sup> cōnfidēbant. Dēliberātur<sup>17</sup> dē Avaricō in  
 270 commūni conciliō, incendi placeat<sup>18</sup> an dēfendi. Prēcumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherri-  
 mam<sup>19</sup> prope tōtius Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō<sup>17</sup> sit cīvitātī, suis manibus succendere<sup>20</sup> cō-  
 gantur; facile sē loci nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dicunt, quod,  
 275 prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdatā, ūnum habeat et perangustum<sup>21</sup> aditum. Datur<sup>6</sup> petentibus venia,<sup>22</sup> dissuādente<sup>17</sup> primō Vercingetorige,

<sup>1</sup> resources. <sup>2</sup> help. <sup>3</sup> and it made no difference. <sup>4</sup> -ne, whether.  
<sup>5</sup> strip. <sup>6</sup> escape. <sup>7</sup> military service. <sup>8</sup> refuge. <sup>9</sup> present. <sup>10</sup> bitter.  
<sup>11</sup> wife. <sup>12</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>13</sup> fire. <sup>14</sup> grief. <sup>15</sup> comfort. <sup>16</sup> recover. <sup>17</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>18</sup> whether it would best. <sup>19</sup> beautiful. <sup>20</sup> Cf. incendō.  
<sup>21</sup> per-, intensive. <sup>22</sup> permission.

post concēdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā vulgi. Dēfēnsōrēs<sup>1</sup> oppidō idōnei dēliguntur.

[Caesar immediately lays siege to Avaricum and, in spite of great difficulty in provisioning his army and an ingenious and vigorous defence by the garrison, finally takes it; his soldiers kill all but eight hundred of its forty thousand inhabitants, "sparing neither men, women, nor children of any age." Vercingetorix is charged with treason in connection with the loss of Avaricum, but defends himself so successfully that his hold upon the Gauls becomes even stronger.

Dissensions arise among the Aedui, two men claiming the office of "vergobret." In settling the case Caesar necessarily offends one party. He lays siege to Gergovia, but further trouble among the Aedui compels him to march toward the Aedui with part of his forces, and the rest narrowly escape disaster in his absence. In trying to seize an outlying ridge his soldiers become over-eager to do more, and seven hundred men, including nearly seventy centurions, are lost. The siege has to be abandoned owing to still greater evidences of disloyalty among the Aedui, for nothing seems able to stop the spirit of revolt which is spreading through Gaul.

Labienus conducts a successful campaign in the vicinity of Paris, but he and Caesar are relieved of anxiety for each other only when they have united their forces in the territory of the Senones.]

*Almost all the Gauls revolt; they make Vercingetorix commander-in-chief. Caesar defeats them in a cavalry battle.*

63. Dēfectiōne<sup>1</sup> Aeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur. 280

- 2 Lēgatiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum<sup>2</sup> grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā<sup>3</sup> valent,<sup>2</sup> ad sollicitandās<sup>4</sup>
- 3 cīvitātēs ūtuntur; nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum supplicio<sup>5</sup> dubitantēs territant.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. formation.    <sup>2</sup> as far as they can.    <sup>3</sup> money.    <sup>4</sup> stir up.    <sup>5</sup> punishment.    <sup>6</sup> terrify.



285 Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Aeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiō- 4  
 nēsque bellī gerendī communicet.<sup>1</sup> Rē impetrātā con- 5  
 tendunt ut ipsīs summa imperiī trādatur; et rē in  
 contrōversiam dēductā tōtīus Galliae concilium Bi-  
 bracte indicitur.<sup>2</sup> Conveniunt undique frequentēs.<sup>3</sup> 6  
 290 Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs<sup>4</sup> rēs permittitur; ad ūnum  
 omnēs Vercingetorigem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc 7  
 conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod  
 amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod  
 aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit  
 295 causa quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mit-  
 terent. Māgnō dolōre Aeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīnci- 8  
 pātū;<sup>5</sup> queruntur fortunāe commūtātiōnem et Caesaris  
 in sē indulgentiam<sup>1</sup> requirunt;<sup>6</sup> neque tamen susceptō  
 bellō suum cōsiliū ab reliquīs sēparāre<sup>1</sup> and <sup>7</sup> audent. 9  
 300 Invītī summae speī<sup>8</sup> adulēscentēs, Eporēdorix et Viri-  
 domārus, Vercingetorigī parent.<sup>9</sup>

64. Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitatibus obsidēs; dēnique  
 eī rei cōstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, quīndecim  
 mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet: peditātū, quem 1  
 305 ante habuerit sē fore contentum<sup>1</sup> dīcit, neque fortunam  
 temptātūrum aut aciē dīmicātūrum; sed quoniam abun-  
 det<sup>10</sup> equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus<sup>11</sup>  
 pābulātiōnibusque<sup>12</sup> Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo 3  
 animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant<sup>13</sup> aedificiaque in-  
 310 cendant; quā rei familiāris iactūrā<sup>14</sup> perpetuum imperi-  
 um libertātemque sē cōsequī videant. Hīs cōstitutīs 4  
 rēbus Aeduīs Segusiāvīsqe, quī sunt finitimī prōvinciae,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>2</sup> call. <sup>3</sup> in great numbers. <sup>4</sup> vote. <sup>5</sup> leader-  
 ship. <sup>6</sup> recall. <sup>7</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>8</sup> ambition. <sup>9</sup> obey. <sup>10</sup> be strong;  
 first conjugation. <sup>11</sup> getting grain. <sup>12</sup> foraging. <sup>13</sup> destroy; imperative  
 in ind. dis. <sup>14</sup> loss.

decem milia peditum imperat; hūc<sup>1</sup> addit equitēs  
 5 octingentōs. Hīs praeficit frātre[m] Eporēdorīgis<sup>2</sup> bel-  
 6 lumque inferre Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte 315  
 Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs,  
 item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finēs Volcārum Areco-  
 7 micōrum dēpopulandōs<sup>3</sup> mittit. Nihilō minus clan-  
 destīnīs<sup>4</sup> nūntiīs lēgātīōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat,<sup>5</sup>  
 quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse<sup>6</sup> 320  
 8 spērābat. Hōrum principibus pecūniās,<sup>7</sup> cīvitātī autem  
 imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia  
 cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prō-  
 vinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēban- 325  
 9 tur.<sup>8</sup> Helviī suā sponte cum finitimīs proeliō congressī  
 pelluntur et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī filiō, prīn-  
 cipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā  
 3 oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad  
 Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs māgnā cum cūrā et 330  
 4 diligentīā suōs finēs tuentur.<sup>9</sup> Caesar, quod hostēs  
 equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et interclūsīs om-  
 nibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvincia atque Italiā sub-  
 levārī<sup>10</sup> poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad  
 eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat; equi- 335  
 tēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae<sup>11</sup> peditēs, quī  
 5 inter eōs proeliārī<sup>12</sup> cōsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod  
 minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur,<sup>13</sup> ā tribūnīs militum  
 reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānīs atque \*ēvocātīs<sup>14</sup> equōs  
 sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.<sup>15</sup>

340

<sup>1</sup> (hither) to these. <sup>2</sup> one of the Aedui who had led the revolt.  
<sup>3</sup> lay waste. <sup>4</sup> secret. <sup>5</sup> stir up. <sup>6</sup> (settle down) become quiet. <sup>7</sup> money.  
<sup>8</sup> op-, in opposition. <sup>9</sup> protect. <sup>10</sup> help. <sup>11</sup> armor. <sup>12</sup> fight in  
 battle. <sup>13</sup> (were using) had. <sup>14</sup> (those called out) veterans. <sup>15</sup> Cf. Eng.  
 derivative.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, 345 quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs<sup>1</sup> castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit, convocātisque ad cōsiliū prae- 350 fectis equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id 355 sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquū temporis pācem atque ōtium<sup>2</sup> parum prōfici<sup>3</sup>; māiōribus enim coāctis cōpiis reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs; proinde in āgmine impeditōs adorianur; sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō 360 morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis 5 futūrum cōnfīdat, relictis impedimentis suae salutī cōnsulant,<sup>4</sup> et ūsū rērū<sup>5</sup> necessāriarū<sup>5</sup> et dīgnitāte spoliātum irī.<sup>6</sup> Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō 6 eōrum prōgredi modo extrā āgmen audeat, nē ipsōs 360 quidem dēbere dubitāre. Id quō<sup>7</sup> māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī<sup>8</sup> hostibus futūrum. Conclāmant equitēs, sāctis- 7 simō<sup>9</sup> iūre iūrandō cōfirmārī oportēre, nē tēctō<sup>10</sup> recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs,<sup>8</sup> nē ad 365 uxōrem<sup>11</sup> aditum habeat, quī nōn \*bis<sup>12</sup> per āgmen hostium perequitārit.<sup>13</sup>

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctis, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū

<sup>1</sup> Distributive adj. regularly used to indicate a plural sense with *castra*; *three*. <sup>2</sup> *quiet*. <sup>3</sup> *accomplish*. <sup>4</sup> *look out (for)*. <sup>5</sup> *necessities*. <sup>6</sup> *deprive*. <sup>7</sup> like *quō* in line 345. <sup>8</sup> Cf. English derivative. <sup>9</sup> *sacred*. <sup>10</sup> (a thing covered, cover) *roof*. <sup>11</sup> *wife*. <sup>12</sup> *twice*. <sup>13</sup> *ride (through)*.

duae sē aciēs ab<sup>1</sup> duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā<sup>1</sup>  
 2 primō āgmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā 370  
 Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertitō<sup>2</sup> dīvisum  
 contrā hostem ire iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in  
 3 partibus. Cōsistit āgmen; impedimenta inter legi-  
 4 ōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut  
 gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna inferri Caesar aci- 375  
 emque converti iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad inse-  
 quendum tardābat<sup>3</sup> et nostrōs spē auxiliī cōfīrmābat.  
 5 Tandem Germānī ab<sup>1</sup> dextrō latere summum iugum  
 nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt: fugientēs ūsque<sup>4</sup> ad flū-  
 men, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōn- 380  
 6 sēderat, persequuntur complūrēque interficiunt. Quā  
 rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē  
 7 fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedēs.<sup>5</sup> Trēs nō-  
 bilissimī Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus,  
 praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam<sup>6</sup> cum Convic- 385  
 tolitave proximīs<sup>7</sup> comitiīs<sup>8</sup> habuerat, et Cavarillus,  
 quī post dēfectiōnem<sup>9</sup> Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs  
 praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum  
 Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

*Vercingetorix retires to Alesia, which Caesar proceeds to invest.*

68. Fugātō<sup>10</sup> omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās 390  
 suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque<sup>11</sup>  
 Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere  
 coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē  
 2 subsequī iūssit. Caesar impedimentīs in proximum col-

<sup>1</sup> Abl. of the point of view; *on* or *at*.    <sup>2</sup> from *trēs* and *pars*.    <sup>3</sup> *check*.  
<sup>4</sup> *even*; *clear*.    <sup>5</sup> *slaughter*.    <sup>6</sup> Cf. English derivative.    <sup>7</sup> *last*.    <sup>8</sup> *elec-*  
*tion*; no singular.    <sup>9</sup> Cf. formation.    <sup>10</sup> *put to flight*.    <sup>11</sup> (forthwith)  
*immediately*.

395 lem ductis, duabus legionibus praesidio relictis, secutus  
hostes quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus  
milibus ex novissimō āgmine interfectis, alterō diē ad  
Alesiam castra fecit. Perspectō urbis sitū<sup>1</sup> perterritis-  
que hostibus, quod equitātū, quā māximē parte exer-  
400 citūs cōfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem  
militēs Alesiam circumvallāre<sup>2</sup> instituit.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum<sup>3</sup>  
ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vi-  
dērētur; cūius collis rādīcēs duo duabus ex partibus  
405 flūmina subluēbant.<sup>4</sup> Ante oppidum plānitēs<sup>5</sup> circiter  
mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem<sup>6</sup> patēbat; reliquīs ex  
omnibus partibus collēs, mediocri<sup>7</sup> interiectō<sup>7</sup> spatiō,<sup>7</sup>  
pari<sup>8</sup> altitūdinis<sup>8</sup> fāstigiō<sup>8</sup> oppidum cingēbant. Sub  
mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat,  
410 hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant  
fossamque et māceriam<sup>9</sup> in altitūdinem sex pedum  
praedūxerant.<sup>10</sup> Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs  
instituēbātur circuitus undecim mīlia passuum tenēbat.  
Castra opportunīs locīs erant posita octōna<sup>11</sup> castella-  
415 que tria et vīgintī facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū<sup>12</sup>  
stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō<sup>13</sup> fieret;  
haec eadem noctū excubitōribus<sup>14</sup> ac firmīs praesidiīs  
tenēbantur.

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plā-  
420 nitiē quam intermissam<sup>15</sup> collibus tria mīlia passuum  
in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Sum-  
mā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs

<sup>1</sup> site; situation. <sup>2</sup> invest. <sup>3</sup> very. <sup>4</sup> wash. <sup>5</sup> plain. <sup>6</sup> Cf. formation.  
<sup>7</sup> with a moderate space between them. <sup>8</sup> (characterized by  
a summit equal in height) equally high. <sup>9</sup> wall. <sup>10</sup> construct.  
<sup>11</sup> eight; see line 346. <sup>12</sup> during the day. <sup>13</sup> sortie. <sup>14</sup> sentinel. <sup>15</sup> un-  
broken.

Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsq̄e prō castrīs cōn-  
stituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat.  
3 Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs<sup>1</sup> animus augētur; ho- 425  
stēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitudīne impediunt at-  
4 que angustioribus portīs relictīs<sup>2</sup> coartantur.<sup>3</sup> Germānī  
5 ācrius ūsq̄ue<sup>4</sup> ad mūnitiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna  
caedēs;<sup>5</sup> nōn nullī relictīs equīs fossam trānsire et mā-  
ceriam<sup>6</sup> trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Cae- 430  
6 sar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn  
minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur;  
venīrī ad sē cōfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant;  
7 nōn nullī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt.<sup>7</sup> Vercin-  
getorīx iubet portās claudī,<sup>8</sup> nē castra nūdentur. Mul- 435  
tīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē  
recipiunt.

*Vercingetorix sends out his cavalry to summon all Gaul to his relief.*

71. Vercingetorīx, prius quam mūnitiōnēs ab Rō-  
mānīs perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equi-  
2 tātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam 440  
quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetā-  
3 tem<sup>9</sup> arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Suā in illōs  
4 \*merita<sup>10</sup> prōpōnit obtēstāturque ut suae<sup>11</sup> salūtis ratiō-  
nem habeant, neu sē<sup>11</sup> optimē dē commūnī libertāte  
meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indili- 445  
gentiōrēs<sup>12</sup> fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta octōgintā ūnā  
4 sēcūm interitūra<sup>13</sup> dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmen-  
tum sē exigūē<sup>14</sup> diērum trīgintā habēre, sed paulō etiam

<sup>1</sup> Dat. of reference. <sup>2</sup> i.e., when the walls were built. <sup>3</sup> crowd to-  
gether. <sup>4</sup> even; clear. <sup>5</sup> slaughter. <sup>6</sup> wall. <sup>7</sup> burst (into). <sup>8</sup> close.  
<sup>9</sup> age. <sup>10</sup> services. <sup>11</sup> referring to Vercingetorix. <sup>12</sup> too negligent.  
<sup>13</sup> perish. <sup>14</sup> barely.

longius tolerārī<sup>1</sup> posse<sup>2</sup> parcendō.<sup>2</sup> Hīs datīs mandātīs, <sup>5</sup>  
<sup>450</sup> quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā  
 silentiō<sup>3</sup> equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē <sup>6</sup>  
 referri iubet; capitis poenam iīs quī nōn paruerint<sup>4</sup>  
 cōstituit; pecus, cūius māgna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs <sup>7</sup>  
 compulsa, virītim<sup>5</sup> distribuit; frūmentum parcē<sup>6</sup> et  
<sup>455</sup> paulātīm mētīrī<sup>7</sup> instituit. Cōpiās omnēs quās prō <sup>8</sup>  
 oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōni-  
 bus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre  
 parat.

[Caesar constructs fortifications as follows: First, nearest the town, a ditch twenty feet deep, with perpendicular sides. Four hundred feet back of these, two ditches fifteen feet wide and deep, one of them filled wherever possible with water turned from one of the rivers. Then the usual wall of earth surmounted by a rampart twelve feet high, with breastworks and parapets, and chevaux-de-frise at the base. The space between the first ditch and the others was dotted with holes, some containing tree trunks and strong branches sharpened to a point ("wolf pits"), others with small round sharpened stakes projecting about four inches from the bottom ("lilies"). Also iron bars with hooks on the end ("spurs") were driven down promiscuously between these holes.

Similar fortifications were made outside the Roman lines also, against the relieving army. And with thirty days' provisions on hand, having practically walled in himself as well as the garrison of Alesia, Caesar awaited the course of events.]

*The relief army is raised and marches toward Alesia.*

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō  
 prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut  
<sup>460</sup> cēnsuit<sup>8</sup> Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt,<sup>9</sup> sed cer-

<sup>1</sup> they could hold out.    <sup>2</sup> spare.    <sup>3</sup> Cf. line 195.    <sup>4</sup> obey.    <sup>5</sup> (man  
 by man) individually.    <sup>6</sup> sparingly.    <sup>7</sup> measure out.    <sup>8</sup> direct.    <sup>9</sup> decide.

tum numerum cuique civitatis imperandum; ne tantā multitudīne cōfūsā<sup>1</sup> nec moderārī<sup>2</sup> nec discernere<sup>3</sup> suos nec frumentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovicibus, milia trīgintā quīnque; 465 parem numerum Arvernīs adiūctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna<sup>4</sup> milia; Bellovacīs decem; totidem Lemovicibus; octōna<sup>5</sup> Pictonibus et Turonīs et 470 Parisiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna<sup>6</sup> Andibus, Ambianīs, Mediomatriciīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; quīna milia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebatibus; quattuor Velicassīs; [Lexoviīs et] Aulercīs Eburovici- 475 bus tria; Rauracīs et Bōiīs \*bīna<sup>7</sup>; decem ūniversīs<sup>8</sup> civitatibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, 480 Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nō- mine atque arbitriō<sup>9</sup> cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs<sup>10</sup>; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō eius hospitiō duo milia mīsērunt.

76. Hūius operā<sup>11</sup> Commiī, ut antea dēmōnstrāvimus, 485 fideli<sup>12</sup> atque \*utili<sup>13</sup> superiōribus annīs erat ūsus<sup>14</sup> in Britannia Caesar; prō quibus meritīs civitatem eius immūnem<sup>15</sup> esse iūsserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae<sup>16</sup> Galliae

<sup>1</sup> assemble.    <sup>2</sup> control.    <sup>3</sup> distinguish.    <sup>4</sup> twelve each.    <sup>5</sup> eight each.

<sup>6</sup> six each.    <sup>7</sup> two each.    <sup>8</sup> all together.    <sup>9</sup> discretion.    <sup>10</sup> obey.    <sup>11</sup> help.

<sup>12</sup> faithful.    <sup>13</sup> useful.    <sup>14</sup> find.    <sup>15</sup> exempt (from tribute).    <sup>16</sup> all.



490 cōnsēnsiō<sup>1</sup> fuit libertātis vindicandae<sup>1</sup> et pristinæ belli  
 laudis<sup>2</sup> recuperandae<sup>3</sup> ut neque beneficiis neque amīci-  
 tiae memoriā movērētur, omnēque et animō et opibus<sup>4</sup>  
 in id bellum incumberent.<sup>5</sup> Coactis equitum milibus  
 octo et peditum circiter ducentis et quinquaginta, haec  
 495 in Aeduorum finibus recēsebantur,<sup>6</sup> numerusque in-  
 ibatur,<sup>7</sup> praefecti cōstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebati,  
 Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō  
 Arvernō, cōsōbrinō<sup>8</sup> Vercingetorigis, summa imperiī  
 trāditur. His dēlecti ex civitatibus attribuuntur<sup>9</sup> quō-  
 500 rum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et  
 fidūciae<sup>10</sup> plēni<sup>11</sup> ad Alesiam proficiscuntur; neque erat  
 omnium quisquam quī āspectum<sup>12</sup> modo<sup>12</sup> tantae multi-  
 tudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti  
 proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne<sup>13</sup> pūgnārētur, foris<sup>14</sup>  
 505 tantae cōpiae equitatūs peditatūsque cernerentur.<sup>15</sup>

*The speech of Critognatus in Alesia.*

77. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur,<sup>16</sup> praeteritā<sup>17</sup> diē  
 quā auxilia suōrum expectāverant, cōsūmptō omni  
 frūmentō, insciī<sup>18</sup> quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō co-  
 āctō dē exitū<sup>19</sup> suārum fortunārum cōsultābant.<sup>20</sup> Ac  
 510 variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars dēditionem, pars,  
 dum virēs suppeterent,<sup>21</sup> ēruptiōnem<sup>13</sup> cēsebāt,<sup>22</sup> nōn  
 praetereunda<sup>17</sup> orātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius  
 singulārem<sup>23</sup> et nefāriam<sup>24</sup> crudelitatem.<sup>25</sup> Hic summō

<sup>1</sup> unanimity for winning back. <sup>2</sup> glory. <sup>3</sup> recover. <sup>4</sup> resources.  
<sup>5</sup> bend one's energies. <sup>6</sup> muster. <sup>7</sup> record. <sup>8</sup> cousin. <sup>9</sup> assign.  
<sup>10</sup> confidence. <sup>11</sup> full. <sup>12</sup> the mere sight. <sup>13</sup> sortie. <sup>14</sup> outside (of  
 the Roman works). <sup>15</sup> see. <sup>16</sup> besiege. <sup>17</sup> pass. <sup>18</sup> not knowing.  
<sup>19</sup> outcome. <sup>20</sup> confer. <sup>21</sup> remain. <sup>22</sup> vote for. <sup>23</sup> unique. <sup>24</sup> abominable.  
<sup>25</sup> cruelty.

in Arvernīs ortus<sup>1</sup> locō et māgnae habitus auctōri-  
tātis: 'Nihil,' inquit,<sup>2</sup> 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus<sup>3</sup> 515  
sum quī turpissimam<sup>4</sup> servitūtem dēditionis nōmine  
appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad  
4 concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi<sup>4</sup> rēs<sup>4</sup> est<sup>4</sup>  
quī ēruptiōnem<sup>5</sup> probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium  
vestrum cōnsēnsū<sup>6</sup> pristinae residēre<sup>7</sup> virtūtis memoria 520  
5 vidētur. Animī est<sup>8</sup> ista<sup>8</sup> mollitia,<sup>8</sup> nōn virtūs, paulisper  
inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ūltrō mortī offerant<sup>9</sup>  
facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem<sup>10</sup> \*pa'tienter<sup>9</sup> fe-  
6 rant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem<sup>11</sup> (tantum<sup>12</sup>  
apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam<sup>13</sup> vītāe 525  
7 nostrae iactūram<sup>14</sup> fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capi-  
endō omnem Galliam respiciāmus,<sup>15</sup> quam ad nostrum  
8 auxilium concitāvimus.<sup>16</sup> Quid,<sup>17</sup> hominum mīlibus octō-  
gintā ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquis cōsanguineisque  
nostrīs animī<sup>17</sup> fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadā- 530  
9 veribus<sup>18</sup> proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte<sup>19</sup> hōs vestrō  
auxiliō exspoliāre<sup>19</sup> quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perī-  
culum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā<sup>20</sup> ac temeritāte<sup>21</sup> vestrā  
aut animī imbecillitāte<sup>22</sup> omnem Galliam prōsternere<sup>23</sup> et  
10 perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn 535  
vērērun't, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid  
ergō?<sup>24</sup> Rōmānōs in illīs ūteriōribus mūnitiōnibus ani-  
11 mīne<sup>25</sup> causā<sup>25</sup> cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum<sup>26</sup> nūn-  
tiīs cōfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaep'tō,<sup>27</sup> hīs

<sup>1</sup> born. <sup>2</sup> say. <sup>3</sup> disgraceful. <sup>4</sup> I am concerned. <sup>5</sup> sortie. <sup>6</sup> agreement.  
<sup>7</sup> remain. <sup>8</sup> it (that) is weakness. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>10</sup> suffering.  
<sup>11</sup> would approve. <sup>12</sup> so much weight does their standing have with me.  
<sup>13</sup> except. <sup>14</sup> loss. <sup>15</sup> let us consider. <sup>16</sup> arouse. <sup>17</sup> what feelings.  
<sup>18</sup> dead body. <sup>19</sup> (be unwilling to deprive) do not deprive. <sup>20</sup> foolishness.  
<sup>21</sup> rashness. <sup>22</sup> feebleness. <sup>23</sup> overthrow. <sup>24</sup> (therefore) then. <sup>25</sup> for their  
health. <sup>26</sup> i.e., the other Gauls. <sup>27</sup> cut off.

540 ūtiminī tēstibus<sup>1</sup> appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius  
 rei timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versan-  
 tur. Quid ergō<sup>2</sup> mei cōsiliī est? Facere quod nostrī<sup>13</sup>  
 māiōrēs nequāquam<sup>3</sup> parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutohum-  
 que fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsi ac similī inopiā  
 545 subāctī,<sup>4</sup> eōrum corporibus quī aetāte<sup>5</sup> ad bellum in-  
 ūtilēs<sup>6</sup> vidēbantur vītamt olerāvērunt<sup>7</sup> neque sē hostibus  
 trādiderunt. Cūius rei sī<sup>8</sup> exemplum nōn habērēmus,<sup>8</sup> <sup>13</sup>  
 tamen libertātis causā institui<sup>9</sup> et posteris prōdi<sup>9</sup> pul-  
 cherrimum<sup>9</sup> iudicārem.<sup>9</sup> Nam quid<sup>10</sup> illī simile bellō fuit?  
 550 Dēpopulatā<sup>11</sup> Galliā Cimbrī māgnāque illātā calamitāte <sup>14</sup>  
 finibus quidem nostris aliquandō<sup>12</sup> excēssērunt atque  
 aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nō-  
 bīs reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut <sup>15</sup>  
 quid volunt, nisi invidiā<sup>13</sup> adductī, quōs fāmā<sup>14</sup> nōbiles  
 555 potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvi-  
 tātibusque cōnsidēre atque hīs aeternam<sup>15</sup> iniungere<sup>16</sup>  
 servitūtem? Neque enim umquam<sup>17</sup> aliā condiciōne  
 bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nāti- <sup>16</sup>  
 ōnibus geruntur ignōrātis,<sup>18</sup> respicite finitimam Galliam,  
 560 quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commū-  
 tātis,<sup>19</sup> secūribus<sup>20</sup> subiecta perpetuā premitur servi-  
 tūte.

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut ii quī valētūdine<sup>21</sup>  
 aut aetāte<sup>5</sup> inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque  
 omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam

<sup>1</sup> witness. <sup>2</sup> (therefore) then. <sup>3</sup> by no means; with parī. <sup>4</sup> constrain.  
<sup>5</sup> age. <sup>6</sup> useless. <sup>7</sup> sustain. <sup>8</sup> if we did not have an example. <sup>9</sup> I should  
 judge (that) one was being set and handed down as a glorious act. <sup>10</sup> What  
 similarity had that war (to this)? <sup>11</sup> ravage. <sup>12</sup> after a while. <sup>13</sup> envy.  
<sup>14</sup> reputation. <sup>15</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>16</sup> impose. <sup>17</sup> ever. <sup>18</sup> do not  
 know. <sup>19</sup> change. <sup>20</sup> the axes (of the lictors), symbols of Roman power,  
<sup>21</sup> illness.

2 dēscendant:<sup>1</sup> illō tamen potius<sup>2</sup> ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs 565  
 cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditōnis aut  
 3 pācis subeundam condiōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs  
 oppidō recēperant, cum liberīs atque uxōribus<sup>3</sup> exīre  
 4 cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accēs-  
 sissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in ser- 570  
 5 vitūtem receptōs \*cibō<sup>4</sup> iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs  
 in vāllō cūstōdiīs<sup>5</sup> recipī prohibēbat.

*Caesar repulses attacks from both sides.*

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus sum-  
 ma imperiī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad  
 Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn 575  
 longius mille passibus ā nostrīs mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt.  
 2 Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plā-  
 nitiam, quam in longitudinem milia passuum tria patēre  
 dēmōstrāvimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum  
 ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōstituunt. 580  
 3 Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus<sup>6</sup> in campum.<sup>7</sup> Con-  
 currunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit<sup>8</sup> grātulātiō inter eōs<sup>8</sup> atque  
 4 omnium animī ad laetitiam<sup>9</sup> excitantur.<sup>10</sup> Itaque prō-  
 ductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōsistunt et proximam fos-  
 sam crātibus<sup>11</sup> integunt<sup>12</sup> atque \*aggere<sup>13</sup> explent<sup>14</sup> sēque 585  
 ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūni-  
 tiōnum dispositō, ut, sī \*ūsus<sup>15</sup> veniat, suum quisque  
 locum teneat et \*nōverit,<sup>16</sup> equitātum ex castrīs ēdūci et  
 2 proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae 590

<sup>1</sup> resort. <sup>2</sup> rather. <sup>3</sup> wife. <sup>4</sup> food. <sup>5</sup> guard. <sup>6</sup> view. <sup>7</sup> plain. <sup>8</sup> they  
 congratulate each other. <sup>9</sup> joy. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>11</sup> brush.  
<sup>12</sup> cover. <sup>13</sup> bridge. <sup>14</sup> Cf. compleō. <sup>15</sup> need. <sup>16</sup> perf. tense of (g)nōscō,  
 ere, nōvī, nōtum, (become acquainted with) know.

summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus,<sup>1</sup> atque  
 omnēs mīlitēs intentī<sup>2</sup> pūgnae prōventum<sup>3</sup> exspectābant.  
 Gallī inter equitēs rārōs<sup>4</sup> sagittāriōs<sup>5</sup> expeditōsque levis  
 armātūrae<sup>6</sup> interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō  
 595 succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinē-  
 rent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō  
 excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Gallī  
 cōnfiderent et nostrōs multitudīne premī vidērent, ex  
 omnibus partibus et iī quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur  
 600 et iī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū<sup>7</sup>  
 suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōnspectū<sup>8</sup>  
 omnium rēs gerēbātur neque<sup>8</sup> rēctē aut turpiter factum  
 cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis<sup>9</sup> cupiditās<sup>10</sup> et timor  
 ignōminiae<sup>11</sup> ad virtutem excitābat.<sup>2</sup> Cum ā merīdiē<sup>12</sup>  
 605 prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā<sup>13</sup> victōriā pūgnārētur,  
 Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs<sup>14</sup> in hostēs  
 impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam  
 coniectīs sagittāriī<sup>5</sup> circumventī interfectīque sunt.  
 Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs ūsque<sup>15</sup> ad ca-  
 610 stra īnsecūtī suī colligendī<sup>16</sup> facultātem nōn dedērunt.<sup>9</sup>  
 At iī quī Alesiā prōcēsserant, maesti<sup>17</sup> prope victōriā  
 dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī, atque hōc spatiō māgnō  
 crātium,<sup>18</sup> scālārum,<sup>19</sup> harpagōnum<sup>20</sup> numerō effectō,  
 615 mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs<sup>21</sup>  
 mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā  
 significātiōne<sup>22</sup> quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō ad-

<sup>1</sup> view. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>3</sup> outcome. <sup>4</sup> scattered. <sup>5</sup> archer.  
<sup>6</sup> armor. <sup>7</sup> yell. <sup>8</sup> (and nothing done rightly or disgracefully) and  
 no brave or cowardly act. <sup>9</sup> praise. <sup>10</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>11</sup> disgrace.  
<sup>12</sup> noon. <sup>13</sup> doubtful. <sup>14</sup> squadron; troop. <sup>15</sup> even; clear. <sup>16</sup> collect.  
<sup>17</sup> sad. <sup>18</sup> fascine. <sup>19</sup> ladder. <sup>20</sup> hooks for tearing down walls. <sup>21</sup> in the  
 plain. <sup>22</sup> signal.

ventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs<sup>1</sup> prōicere, fundīs,<sup>2</sup> \*sagit-  
tīs,<sup>3</sup> lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre<sup>4</sup> reliquaue  
quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. 620  
Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum  
suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut  
superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus,<sup>5</sup>  
ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs<sup>6</sup> librīlibus<sup>6</sup> sudibusque<sup>7</sup>  
quās in opere disposuerant ac glandibus<sup>8</sup> Gallōs prō- 625  
terrent.<sup>9</sup> Prōspectū<sup>10</sup> tenebrīs<sup>11</sup> adēptō multa utrim-  
que vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentīs<sup>12</sup> tēla  
cōniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī,  
quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant,<sup>13</sup> quā  
ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex 630  
ūlteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs  
multitūdine telōrum prōficiēbant,<sup>14</sup> postea quam propius  
succēsserunt, aut sē stimulis<sup>15</sup> inopināntēs<sup>16</sup> induēbant<sup>17</sup>  
aut in scrobēs<sup>18</sup> dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur<sup>19</sup> aut ex vāllō ac 635  
turribus trāiectī<sup>20</sup> pilīs mūrālibus<sup>21</sup> interībant.<sup>22</sup> Multīs  
undique vulneribus acceptīs, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā,  
cum lūx appeteret,<sup>23</sup> veritī nē ab latere apertō ex  
superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad  
suos recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Ver- 640  
cingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt,  
priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus admini-  
strandīs morātī prius suos discēssisse cōgnōvērunt quam  
mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā<sup>24</sup> in  
oppidum revertērunt.

645

<sup>1</sup> fascine. <sup>2</sup> sling. <sup>3</sup> sagitta, ae, arrow. <sup>4</sup> drive off. <sup>5</sup> assign. <sup>6</sup> stones weighing a pound each (thrown from slings). <sup>7</sup> stake. <sup>8</sup> leaden slug. <sup>9</sup> scare off. <sup>10</sup> sight. <sup>11</sup> darkness. <sup>12</sup> engines. <sup>13</sup> be assigned. <sup>14</sup> be successful. <sup>15</sup> "spur." <sup>16</sup> unexpectedly. <sup>17</sup> impale. <sup>18</sup> "wolf-pit." <sup>19</sup> pierce. <sup>20</sup> transfix. <sup>21</sup> thrown from the walls. <sup>22</sup> perish. <sup>23</sup> approach. <sup>24</sup> unaccomplished.

*The final effort of the Gauls.*

83. Bis<sup>1</sup> māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs sup̄iorum castrōrum sitūs<sup>2</sup> mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitū-  
 650 dinem circuitūs opere circumplectī<sup>3</sup> nōn potuerant nostri; necessāriōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter<sup>4</sup> dēclivī<sup>5</sup> castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Catinīus Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per explorātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium  
 655 sexāgintā mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum civitātum quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pāctō<sup>6</sup> agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōstituant; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt<sup>7</sup> cum merīdiēs<sup>7</sup> esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum,  
 660 ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus,<sup>7</sup> prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit<sup>8</sup> mīlītēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere<sup>9</sup> iūssit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur,  
 665 ad ea castra quae sup̄ā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs<sup>10</sup> mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

84. Vercingetorix ex arce<sup>11</sup> Alesiae suōs cōspicātus  
 670 ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs,<sup>12</sup> longuriōs,<sup>13</sup> mūsculōs,<sup>14</sup> falcēs<sup>15</sup> reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locis atque omnia<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> twice. <sup>2</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>3</sup> include; surround. <sup>4</sup> gently. <sup>5</sup> sloping downward. <sup>6</sup> manner. <sup>7</sup> Cf. line 604. <sup>8</sup> hide. <sup>9</sup> refresh. <sup>10</sup> in the plain. <sup>11</sup> citadel. <sup>12</sup> fascine. <sup>13</sup> long pole. <sup>14</sup> movable shed. <sup>15</sup> hook.

temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc con-  
 3 curritur. Rōmānōrum \*manus<sup>1</sup> tantīs mūnitiōnibus dis-  
 4 tinētur<sup>2</sup> nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad 675  
 terrendōs<sup>3</sup> nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pū-  
 gnantibus<sup>4</sup> existit,<sup>5</sup> quod suum perīculum<sup>6</sup> in aliēnā<sup>7</sup>  
 5 vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae  
 absunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in 680  
 parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium sub-  
 3 mittit. Utrisque<sup>4</sup> ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud  
 3 tempus, quō māximē contendī conveniat:<sup>8</sup> Gallī, nisi  
 perfrēgerint<sup>9</sup> mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērānt;  
 Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium ex- 685  
 4 spectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur,  
 quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inī-  
 quum<sup>10</sup> locī ad dēclivitātem fāstīgium māgnūm habet  
 5 mōmentum. Aliī tēla cōiciunt, aliī tēstūdine factā sub-  
 6 eunt; dēfatigātīs<sup>11</sup> in vicem integrī succēdunt.<sup>11</sup> Agger<sup>12</sup> 690  
 ab ūniversīs<sup>13</sup> in mūnitiōnem cōniectus et āscēsum dat  
 Gallīs et ea quae in terrā occultāverant<sup>14</sup> Rōmānī con-  
 tegit;<sup>15</sup> nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.<sup>16</sup>

86. Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum  
 2 cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, 695  
 sī sustinēre nōn possit dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne  
 3 pūgnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs,  
 cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant;<sup>17</sup> omnium superiōrum  
 dīmīcatiōnum<sup>18</sup> frūctum<sup>19</sup> in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōn-

<sup>1</sup> force. <sup>2</sup> Cf. composition. <sup>3</sup> Cf. perterreō. <sup>4</sup> dative of reference.  
<sup>5</sup> (exist) be heard. <sup>6</sup> Eng. idiom, safety. <sup>7</sup> another's. <sup>8</sup> impers.; it  
 is fitting. <sup>9</sup> break through. <sup>10</sup> The unfavorable downward slope gives  
 great advantage (to the enemy). <sup>11</sup> fresh (forces) in turn succeed the weary.  
<sup>12</sup> earth. <sup>13</sup> all (the Gauls). <sup>14</sup> hide. <sup>15</sup> cover. <sup>16</sup> remain. <sup>17</sup> give way  
 under. <sup>18</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>19</sup> (fruit) reward.



700 sistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātīs campestribus locīs prop- 4  
ter māgnitūdinem mūnitiōnum loca praerupta<sup>1</sup> āscēnsū  
temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multi- 5  
tūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs<sup>2</sup> dēturbant,<sup>3</sup>  
aggere<sup>4</sup> et crātibus<sup>5</sup> fossās explent, falcibus<sup>6</sup> vāllum āc  
705 lōricam<sup>7</sup> rescindunt.<sup>8</sup>

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscētem cum co-  
hortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum;  
postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs<sup>9</sup> a  
subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsīs hosti- 3  
710 bus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs quat- 4  
tuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē  
sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō  
hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque ag- 5  
gerēs<sup>10</sup> neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant,  
715 coāctīs undecim cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs  
dēductās fōrs<sup>11</sup> obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit cer-  
tiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat<sup>12</sup> Caesar  
ut proeliō intersit.<sup>13</sup>

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs<sup>14</sup> cōgnitō, [quō  
720 īnsīgnī<sup>15</sup> in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat,] turmīsque<sup>16</sup> equitum et  
cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iūsserat, ut dē locīs superi-  
ōribus haec dēclīvia<sup>17</sup> et dēvexa<sup>18</sup> cernēbantur,<sup>19</sup> hostēs  
proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō ex- 2  
cipit<sup>20</sup> rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus  
725 clāmōr. Nostrī ēmissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Re- 3  
pentē post tergum equitātus cernitur;<sup>19</sup> cohortēs aliae  
appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus

<sup>1</sup> steep. <sup>2</sup> defender. <sup>3</sup> drive off. <sup>4</sup> earth. <sup>5</sup> fascine. <sup>6</sup> hook. <sup>7</sup> parapet.  
<sup>8</sup> tear down. <sup>9</sup> fresh. <sup>10</sup> rampart. <sup>11</sup> chance. <sup>12</sup> hasten. <sup>13</sup> take part  
in. <sup>14</sup> dress, i.e., his purple or scarlet military cloak. <sup>15</sup> decoration.  
<sup>16</sup> squadron. <sup>17</sup> slope. <sup>18</sup> hillside. <sup>19</sup> see; pass. be in sight. <sup>20</sup> reëcho.

4 equitēs occurrunt. Fit māgna caedēs.<sup>1</sup> Sedulius, dūx  
et prīnceps Lemovīcum occīditur; Vercassivellaunus  
Arvernus vīvus<sup>2</sup> in fugā comprehenditur;<sup>3</sup> sīgna mili- 730  
tāria \*septuāgintā<sup>4</sup> quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur;  
paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt.  
5 Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspē-  
rātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prō-  
6 tinus<sup>5</sup> hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod<sup>6</sup> 735  
nisi crēbrīs subsidiis āc tōtīus diēi labōre militēs essent  
7 dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlēri<sup>7</sup> potuissent.<sup>7</sup> Dē  
mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum āgmen cōn-  
sequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur;  
reliquī ex fugā in civitātēs discēdunt. 740

*The surrender of Vercingetorix.*

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id  
bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum<sup>8</sup> sed com-  
2 mūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit for-  
tūnae \*cēdendum,<sup>9</sup> ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu  
morte suā Rōmānis satis facere seu vīvum trādere velint. 745  
3 Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma  
4 trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castrīs  
cōnsīdit;<sup>10</sup> eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorīx dēditur;  
5 arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī<sup>11</sup>  
per eōs civitātēs recuperāre<sup>12</sup> posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs 750  
tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

90. Hīs rēbus cōfectīs in Aeduōs proficiscitur;  
2 civitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae  
imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum

<sup>1</sup> slaughter. <sup>2</sup> alive. <sup>3</sup> take. <sup>4</sup> seventy. <sup>5</sup> (forthwith) immediately.  
<sup>6</sup> so that. <sup>7</sup> could have been destroyed. <sup>8</sup> interests. <sup>9</sup> yield. <sup>10</sup> take  
position. <sup>11</sup> to see if. <sup>12</sup> recover.

755 numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Capti- 3  
 vōrum circiter vīgintī milia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.  
 T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sē- 4  
 quanōs proficisci iubet; huic M. Sempronium Rutilum  
 attribuit.<sup>1</sup> C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basi- 5  
 760 lum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam  
 ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antis- 6  
 tium Rēginum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Bituri-  
 gēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis  
 legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sul- 7  
 765 picium Cavillōnī<sup>2</sup> et Matiscōne<sup>2</sup> in Aeduīs ad Ararim rei  
 frūmentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte<sup>2</sup> hiemāre  
 cōstituit. Hīs [rēbus ex Caesaris litteris] cōgnitis 8  
 Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicatiō<sup>3</sup> redditur.

[The surrender of Vercingetorix was the climax of the war. No subsequent revolt of the Gauls equalled in importance any of the events of the fifth or seventh years. The history of the two years following are related by Hirtius, an officer in Caesar's army. The Bellovaci made good their declaration (VII, 75, 5) and took the field, but were conquered without the use of Caesar's entire force. Most of the operations were intrusted to the *legati*, with two or three legions each. The last stand was made in Aquitania, where a large force of Gauls was shut up in Uxellodunum. Realizing that his work of subjugation and pacification must be completed immediately and permanently, Caesar went to take personal charge of the siege.]

<sup>1</sup> assign.    <sup>2</sup> locative.    <sup>3</sup> thanksgiving (to the gods).

## A. HIRTII

### COMMENTARIUS OCTAVUS

40. (Caesar) cum contrā exspectātiōnem omnium Uxellodūnum vēnisset oppidumque operibus clausum<sup>1</sup> animadverteret neque ab oppugnātiōe recēdī vidēret ūllā condiōne posse, māgnā autem cōpiā frūmentī abundāre<sup>2</sup> oppidānōs<sup>3</sup> ex perfugīs<sup>4</sup> cōgnōsset, aquā pro- 5  
hibēre hostem temptāre coepit. Flūmen infimam vallem dīvidēbat, quae tōtum paene montem cingēbat, in quō positum erat praeruptum<sup>5</sup> undique oppidum 3  
Uxellodūnum. Flūmen āvertere locī nātūra prohibēbat; in infimīs enim sic rādīcibus montis ferēbātur, ut 10  
nūllam in partem dēpressīs fossīs dērīvārī<sup>6</sup> posset. Erat autem oppidānīs difficilis et praeruptus<sup>7</sup> eō dēscēnsus, ut prohibentibus nostrīs sine vulneribus āc periculō vitae<sup>8</sup> neque adire flūmen neque arduō<sup>9</sup> sē recipere pos- 5  
sent āscēnsū. Quā difficultāte eōrum cōgnitā Caesar 15  
sagittāriīs<sup>10</sup> funditōribusque<sup>11</sup> dispositīs, tormentīs<sup>12</sup> etiam quibusdam locīs contrā facillimōs dēscēnsūs collocātis aquā flūminis prohibēbat oppidānōs.

41. Quōrum omnis posteā multitūdō aquātum<sup>13</sup> in ūnum locum conveniēbat sub ipsius oppidī mūrū, 20  
ubi māgnus fōns<sup>14</sup> aquae prōrumpēbat<sup>15</sup> ab eā parte, quae

<sup>1</sup> enclosed. <sup>2</sup> be well supplied. <sup>3</sup> townspeople. <sup>4</sup> deserter. <sup>5</sup> (broken off) inaccessible. <sup>6</sup> draw off. <sup>7</sup> abrupt. <sup>8</sup> life. <sup>9</sup> steep. <sup>10</sup> archer. <sup>11</sup> slinger. <sup>12</sup> engine. <sup>13</sup> from aquor, āri, get water. <sup>14</sup> spring. <sup>15</sup> break forth.

ferē pedum ccc intervallō flūminis circuitū vacābat. Hōc fonte prohibērī posse oppidānōs cum optārent<sup>1</sup>, reliquī, Caesar ūnus vidēret, ē<sup>2</sup> regiōne<sup>2</sup> ēius<sup>2</sup> vīneās  
 25 agere adversus<sup>3</sup> montem et aggerem exstruere<sup>4</sup> coepit māgnō cum labōre et continuā dīmīcātiōne. Oppidānī enim locō superiōre dēcurrunt et ēminus<sup>5</sup> sine periculō proeliantur<sup>6</sup> multōsque pertināciter<sup>7</sup> succēdentēs vulnerant; nōn dēterrentur tamen milītēs nostrī vīneās  
 30 prōferre et labōre atque operibus locōrum vincere difficultātēs. Eōdem tempore cunīculōs<sup>8</sup> tēctōs<sup>8</sup> ad vēnās<sup>9</sup> agunt et caput fontis, quod genus operis sine ūllō periculō, sine sūspiciōne hostium facere licēbat. Exstruitur agger in altitudinem pedum LX, collocātur in eō turris  
 35 x tabulātōrum,<sup>10</sup> nōn quidem quae moenibus<sup>11</sup> adaequāret, — id enim nullīs operibus effici poterat, — sed quae superāret fontis fāstīgium.<sup>12</sup> Ex eā cum tēla<sup>6</sup> tormentis iacerentur ad fontis aditum nec sine periculō possent aquārī oppidānī, nōn tantum pecora atque  
 40 iūmenta,<sup>13</sup> sed etiam māgna hominum multītūdō sitī<sup>14</sup> cōnsūmēbātur.

42. Quō malō perterritī oppidānī cūpās<sup>15</sup> sēbō,<sup>16</sup> pice,<sup>17</sup> scandulīs<sup>18</sup> complent; eās ārdentēs<sup>19</sup> in opera prōvolvunt<sup>20</sup> eōdemque tempore acerrimē proeliantur, ut  
 45 ab incendiō restinguendō<sup>21</sup> dīmīcātiōnis periculō dēterreant Rōmānōs. Māgna repente in ipsīs operibus flamma exsistit. Quaecumque enim per locum praecipitem missa erant, ea vīneīs et aggere suppressa<sup>22</sup> comprehendēbant<sup>23</sup> id ipsum, quod morābātur. Milītēs contrā<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> wish. <sup>2</sup> opposite it. <sup>3</sup> prep., toward. <sup>4</sup> build. <sup>5</sup> from a distance. <sup>6</sup> fight. <sup>7</sup> boldly. <sup>8</sup> tunnel, underground passage. <sup>9</sup> vein. <sup>10</sup> platform, story. <sup>11</sup> walls. <sup>12</sup> elevation. <sup>13</sup> beast of burden. <sup>14</sup> thirst; abl. <sup>15</sup> cask, tub. <sup>16</sup> suet. <sup>17</sup> pitch. <sup>18</sup> shingle. <sup>19</sup> blaze. <sup>20</sup> roll down. <sup>21</sup> put out. <sup>22</sup> stop. <sup>23</sup> seize, i.e., set on fire.

nostrī, quamquam<sup>1</sup> periculōsō<sup>2</sup> genere proeliī locōque 50  
iniquō premēbantur, tamen omnia fortissimō sustinē-  
bant animō. Rēs enim gerēbātur excelsō<sup>3</sup> locō et in  
cōspectū exercitūs nostrī, māgnusque utrimque clā-  
mor oriēbātur. Itaque quisque, prout<sup>4</sup> erat māximē  
īnsīgnis, quō nōtior tēstātiorque<sup>5</sup> virtūs esset ēius, 55  
tēlis hostium flammaeque sē offerēbat.

43. Caesar cum complūrēs suōs vulnerārī vidēret,  
ex omnibus oppidī partibus cohortēs montem āscen-  
dere et simulātiōne moenium occupandōrum clāmōrem  
undique iubet tollere. Quō factō perterritī oppidānī, 60  
cum quid agerētur in locīs reliquīs essent suspēnsī,<sup>6</sup>  
revocant ab impūgnandīs operibus armātōs in mūrīs-  
que dispōnunt. Ita nostrī fine proeliī factō celeriter  
opera flammā comprehēnsa partim restinguunt, partim  
intercindunt.<sup>7</sup> Cum pertināciter resisterent oppidānī, 65  
māgnā etiam parte āmissā sitī suōrum in sententiā per-  
manērent, ad postrēmum cuniculīs vēnae fontis inter-  
cisae sunt atque āversae. Quō factō repente perennis<sup>8</sup>  
exāruit<sup>9</sup> fōns tantamque attulit oppidānīs salūtis dē-  
spērātiōnem, ut id nōn hominum cōnsiliō, sed deōrum<sup>10</sup> 70  
voluntāte factum putārent. Itaque sē necessitāte  
coāctī trādidērunt.

44. Caesar, cum suam lēnitātem cōgnitam omnibus  
scīret neque verērētur nē quid crūdēlitāte nātūrae  
vidērētur asperius fēcisse, neque exitum cōnsiliōrum 75  
suōrum animadverteret, sī tālī<sup>11</sup> ratiōne dīversīs<sup>12</sup> in  
locīs plūrēs cōnsilia inīssent, exemplō<sup>13</sup> suppliciī dēter-  
rendōs reliquōs exīstimāvit. Itaque omnibus,<sup>14</sup> quī arma

<sup>1</sup> although. <sup>2</sup> dangerous. <sup>3</sup> high. <sup>4</sup> in proportion as. <sup>5</sup> witnessed.  
<sup>6</sup> doubtful. <sup>7</sup> tear down. <sup>8</sup> never failing. <sup>9</sup> dry up. <sup>10</sup> god. <sup>11</sup> such.  
<sup>12</sup> different. <sup>13</sup> example. <sup>14</sup> dat. of reference.

tulerant, manūs praecidit<sup>1</sup> vitamque concēssit, quō  
80 tēstātior<sup>2</sup> esset poena improbōrum.<sup>3</sup>

49. Caesar in Belgio cum hiemāret, ūnum illud  
prōpositum habēbat, continēre in amicitia cīvitātēs,  
nūllī spem aut causam dare armōrum. Nihil enim  
minus volēbat quam sub<sup>4</sup> dēcēssum suum necessitātem  
85 sibi aliquam impōnī bellī gerendī, nē, cum exercitum  
dēductūrus esset, bellum aliquod relinquerētur, quod  
omnis Gallia libenter sine praesentī periculō susciperet.  
Itaque honōrificē<sup>5</sup> cīvitātēs appellandō, principēs māxi-  
mis praemiis afficiendō, nūlla onera nova iniungendō<sup>6</sup>  
90 dēfessam tot<sup>7</sup> adversis proeliis Galliam condiciōne  
pārendī<sup>8</sup> meliōre facile in pāce continuit.

<sup>1</sup>cut off.    <sup>2</sup>more evident.    <sup>3</sup>wicked.    <sup>4</sup>just before.    <sup>5</sup>with respect.  
<sup>6</sup>impose.    <sup>7</sup>as many.    <sup>8</sup>(obeying) obedience.

## GALLORUM, GERMANORUM, BRITANNORUM DESCRIPTIO

### *The Suebi.*

3 B. G. IV. 1. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bel-  
4 licōsissima<sup>1</sup> Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs  
habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs<sup>2</sup> singula mīlia  
armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī,  
5 quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt;<sup>3</sup> hī rūsus in<sup>4</sup> 5  
vicem<sup>4</sup> annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent.  
6 Sic neque agrī cultūra<sup>5</sup> nec ratiō<sup>6</sup> atque ūsus<sup>7</sup> bellī  
7 intermittitur. Sed prīvātī āc sēparātī<sup>8</sup> agrī apud eōs  
nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō  
8 colendī<sup>9</sup> causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed 10  
māximam partem<sup>10</sup> \*lacte<sup>11</sup> atque pecore<sup>12</sup> vīvunt<sup>13</sup> mul-  
9 tumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus;<sup>14</sup> quae rēs et cibī<sup>15</sup> genere  
et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vītae, quod ā  
puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplīnā<sup>16</sup> assuēfactī<sup>17</sup> nihil  
omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit<sup>18</sup> 15  
10 et immānī<sup>19</sup> corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit.  
Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt,<sup>20</sup> ut locīs  
frīgīdissimīs<sup>21</sup> neque vestītūs<sup>22</sup> praeter pellēs habērēt

<sup>1</sup> warlike. <sup>2</sup> yearly; every year. <sup>3</sup> (nourish) support. <sup>4</sup> in turn.

<sup>5</sup> cultivation. <sup>6</sup> theory. <sup>7</sup> practise. <sup>8</sup> Cf. derivation or Eng. derivative.

<sup>9</sup> live. <sup>10</sup> adv. acc. <sup>11</sup> lāc, lactis, n., milk. <sup>12</sup> meat. <sup>13</sup> live. <sup>14</sup> hunting.

<sup>15</sup> food. <sup>16</sup> training. <sup>17</sup> accustom. <sup>18</sup> (nourish); increase. <sup>19</sup> immense.

<sup>20</sup> i.e., they have accustomed themselves. <sup>21</sup> cold. <sup>22</sup> clothing; gen. with

quicquam, page 66.



quicquam, quārum propter exiguitatem<sup>1</sup> māgna est  
 20 corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur<sup>2</sup> in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae<sup>3</sup> bellō  
 cēperint, quibus<sup>4</sup> vēndant, habeant, quam quō<sup>5</sup> ūllam  
 rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent.<sup>6</sup> Quīn<sup>7</sup> etiam<sup>7</sup> iūmen-  
 tīs,<sup>8</sup> quibus māximē Gallī dēlectantur,<sup>9</sup> quaeque  
 25 impēnsō<sup>10</sup> parant<sup>11</sup> pretiō, [Germānī] importātīs nōn  
 ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque  
 dēfōrmia,<sup>12</sup> haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut<sup>13</sup>  
 sint<sup>13</sup> labōris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex  
 equīs dēsiliunt<sup>14</sup> āc pedibus<sup>15</sup> proeliantur,<sup>16</sup> equōsque  
 30 eōdem remanēre vēstigiō<sup>17</sup> assuēfēcērunt,<sup>18</sup> ad quōs  
 sē celeriter, cum ūsus<sup>19</sup> est, recipiunt; neque eōrum  
 mōribus turpius<sup>20</sup> quicquam aut inertius<sup>21</sup> habētur  
 quam ephippiīs<sup>22</sup> ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum  
 ephippiātōrum<sup>23</sup> equitum quamvīs<sup>24</sup> paucī adire<sup>25</sup> au-  
 35 dent. Vīnum<sup>26</sup> omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn sinunt,<sup>27</sup>  
 quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere<sup>28</sup>  
 hominēs atque effēminārī<sup>29</sup> arbitrantur.<sup>30</sup>

3. Pūblicē<sup>31</sup> māximam putant esse laudem,<sup>32</sup> quam  
 lātissimē ā suīs finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī<sup>33</sup>  
 40 māgnum numerum cīvitatū suam vim sustinēre nōn  
 posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia pas-  
 suum centum agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem  
 succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvītās ampla atque

<sup>1</sup> shortness. <sup>2</sup> bathe (themselves). <sup>3</sup> supply ea as antecedent, obj. of vēndant. <sup>4</sup> supply eōs as antecedent, obj. of habeant. <sup>5</sup> that. <sup>6</sup> desire. <sup>7</sup> in fact. <sup>8</sup> beast of burden. <sup>9</sup> delight. <sup>10</sup> high. <sup>11</sup> purchase. <sup>12</sup> scrawny. <sup>13</sup> (that they may be); capable. <sup>14</sup> jump down. <sup>15</sup> on foot. <sup>16</sup> fight. <sup>17</sup> (footprint) spot. <sup>18</sup> accustom; train. <sup>19</sup> need. <sup>20</sup> disgraceful. <sup>21</sup> shiftless; unmanly. <sup>22</sup> saddle-blankets. <sup>23</sup> who use saddle-blankets. <sup>24</sup> however. <sup>25</sup> attack. <sup>26</sup> wine. <sup>27</sup> permit. <sup>28</sup> (become soft again) lose strength. <sup>29</sup> weaken. <sup>30</sup> think. <sup>31</sup> as a state. <sup>32</sup> praise. <sup>33</sup> it is shown.

flōrēns, ut est captus<sup>1</sup> Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam<sup>2</sup> sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāniōrēs,<sup>3</sup> prop-  
 tereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mer-  
 cātōrēs ventitant,<sup>4</sup> et ipsī propter propinquitātem<sup>5</sup>  
 4 Gallicīs sunt mōribus assuēfactī.<sup>6</sup> Hōs cum Suēbī  
 multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem<sup>5</sup> gravi-  
 tātemque<sup>5</sup> cīvitatīs finibus expellere nōn potuissent, 50  
 tamen vectīgālēs<sup>7</sup> sibi fēcērunt āc multō humiliōrēs<sup>8</sup>  
 infirmiorēsque<sup>9</sup> redēgērunt.

*The Gauls' love of news.*

5. Est . . . hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis,<sup>10</sup> utī et vi-  
 ātōrēs<sup>11</sup> etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant et, quid quisque  
 eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerant 55  
 et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibus-  
 que ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint,  
 3 prōnūntiāre<sup>12</sup> cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque auditiōnibus<sup>5</sup>  
 permōtī, dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum  
 eōs<sup>13</sup> in<sup>14</sup> vēstigiō<sup>14</sup> paenitēre<sup>13</sup> necesse<sup>13</sup> est,<sup>13</sup> cum incer- 60  
 tīs<sup>15</sup> rūmōribus serviant<sup>16</sup> et plērīque ad voluntātem  
 eōrum ficta<sup>17</sup> respondeant.<sup>17</sup>

*Description of Britain and its inhabitants.*

V. 12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quōs  
 nātōs in Insulā<sup>18</sup> ipsā memoriā<sup>19</sup> prōditum<sup>19</sup> dīcunt, mari-  
 3 tima pars ab iīs, quī praedae āc belli inferendī causā ex 65  
 Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē īdem nōminibus

<sup>1</sup> standard. <sup>2</sup> although. <sup>3</sup> civilized. <sup>4</sup> keep coming. <sup>5</sup> Cf. formation.

<sup>6</sup> accustom. <sup>7</sup> tributary. <sup>8</sup> humble. <sup>9</sup> weak. <sup>10</sup> predicate gen.; a point of, etc. <sup>11</sup> traveler. <sup>12</sup> tell. <sup>13</sup> (it is necessary that it repents them)

they necessarily repent. <sup>14</sup> on the spot. <sup>15</sup> untrustworthy. <sup>16</sup> (serve) are slaves to. <sup>17</sup> (answer made up things) make up answers. <sup>18</sup> island.

<sup>19</sup> it has been handed down by tradition.

civitātum appellantur, quibus<sup>1</sup> orti ex civitatibus eō pervenērunt) et bellō illātō ibi remansērunt atque agrōs colere<sup>2</sup> coepērunt. Hominum est infīnita<sup>3</sup> multitudō 3  
70 crēberrimaque aedificia ferē<sup>4</sup> Gallicis cōnsimilia,<sup>4</sup> pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur [aut aere<sup>5</sup>] aut nummō<sup>6</sup> 4  
aureō<sup>7</sup> aut tāleis<sup>8</sup> ferreis<sup>9</sup> ad certum pondus exāminātis<sup>10</sup> prō nummō.<sup>6</sup> Nāscitur<sup>11</sup> ibi plumbum<sup>12</sup> album<sup>12</sup> 5  
in mediterrāneis<sup>13</sup> regiōnibus, in maritimis ferrum,<sup>14</sup> sed 75  
ēius exigua<sup>15</sup> est cōpia; aere<sup>5</sup> ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum<sup>16</sup> atque abietem.<sup>17</sup> Leporem<sup>18</sup> et gallinam<sup>19</sup> et ānserem<sup>20</sup> gustāre<sup>21</sup> fās<sup>22</sup> nōn putant; haec tamen alunt<sup>23</sup> animi<sup>24</sup> 6  
voluptātisque<sup>24</sup> causā.<sup>24</sup> Loca sunt temperātiōra<sup>25</sup> quam 80  
in Galliā remissiōribus<sup>26</sup> frīgoribus.<sup>26</sup>

13. Insula nātūrā triquetra,<sup>27</sup> cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus,<sup>28</sup> quī est ad Cantium,<sup>29</sup> quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs \*appelluntur,<sup>30</sup> ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem<sup>31</sup> spectat. Hōc latus tenet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. 3  
Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem<sup>32</sup> sōlem: quā ex<sup>33</sup> parte est Hibernia<sup>34</sup> insula dimidiō<sup>35</sup> minor, ut existimātur, quam Britannia, sed<sup>36</sup> parī spatiō trāsmisus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō 3  
90 cursū<sup>37</sup> est insula, quae appellātur Mona;<sup>38</sup> complūrēs

<sup>1</sup> (having sprung) from which (states). <sup>2</sup> cultivate. <sup>3</sup> (unbounded) very large. <sup>4</sup> pretty much like. <sup>5</sup> copper. <sup>6</sup> coin. <sup>7</sup> gold (adj.). <sup>8</sup> bar. <sup>9</sup> iron (adj.). <sup>10</sup> (weighed) calculated. <sup>11</sup> is found. <sup>12</sup> (white lead) tin. <sup>13</sup> inland. <sup>14</sup> iron. <sup>15</sup> small. <sup>16</sup> beech. <sup>17</sup> fir. <sup>18</sup> hare. <sup>19</sup> hen. <sup>20</sup> goose. <sup>21</sup> taste. <sup>22</sup> right (religiously). <sup>23</sup> (nourish) keep. <sup>24</sup> for pleasure. <sup>25</sup> mild. <sup>26</sup> (the cold spells being more relaxed) the cold not being so continuous. <sup>27</sup> triangular. <sup>28</sup> corner. <sup>29</sup> Kent. <sup>30</sup> (are driven) land. <sup>31</sup> south. <sup>32</sup> Cf. occāsus. <sup>33</sup> abl. of point of view; on. <sup>34</sup> Ireland. <sup>35</sup> half; abl. of degree of difference. <sup>36</sup> but the passage is of the same distance as. <sup>37</sup> channel. <sup>38</sup> Anglesey.

praetereā minōrēs obiectae<sup>1</sup> insulae existimantur; dē quibus insulis nōn nullī scrīpsērunt<sup>2</sup> diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam<sup>3</sup> esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus<sup>4</sup> reperiēbāmus nisi<sup>5</sup> certīs ex aquā mēnsūris breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. 95  
 5 Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert<sup>6</sup> illōrum opīniō, \*septingentum<sup>7</sup> milium. Tertium est contrā septentrionēs; cui partī nulla est obiecta<sup>1</sup> terra, sed ēius angulus<sup>8</sup> alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc milium passuum  
 7 octingentum in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita 100  
 omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs<sup>9</sup> centum milium passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī,<sup>10</sup> qui Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque  
 2 multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuetūdine. Interiōrēs 105  
 plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt,<sup>11</sup> sed lacte<sup>12</sup> et \*carne<sup>13</sup> vīvunt<sup>14</sup> pellibusque sunt vestītī.<sup>15</sup> Omnēs vērō sē Britanni vitrō<sup>16</sup> inficiunt<sup>17</sup> quod caeruleum<sup>18</sup> efficit colōrem,<sup>19</sup>  
 3 atque hōc horribiliōrēs<sup>19</sup> sunt in pūgnā āspectū;<sup>19</sup> capillōque<sup>20</sup> sunt prōmissō<sup>21</sup> atque omnī parte corporis rāsā<sup>22</sup> 110  
 4 praeter caput et labrum<sup>23</sup> superius. Uxōrēs<sup>24</sup> habent dēnī<sup>25</sup> duodēnīque<sup>25</sup> inter sē commūnēs et māximē frā-  
 5 trēs cum frātribus parentēsque<sup>26</sup> cum liberīs; sed qui sunt ex iīs nātī, eōrum habentur liberī, quō<sup>27</sup> primum virgō quaeque dēducta est. 115

<sup>1</sup> opposite. <sup>2</sup> write. <sup>3</sup> winter solstice. <sup>4</sup> inquiry. <sup>5</sup> except that from accurate measurements with water clocks. <sup>6</sup> runs. <sup>7</sup> seven hundred. <sup>8</sup> corner. <sup>9</sup> twenty times. <sup>10</sup> civilized. <sup>11</sup> plant. <sup>12</sup> milk. <sup>13</sup> carō, carnis, f., (flesh) meat. <sup>14</sup> live. <sup>15</sup> clothe. <sup>16</sup> wood. <sup>17</sup> tattoo. <sup>18</sup> dark blue. <sup>19</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>20</sup> hair. <sup>21</sup> (allowed to come forth) long. <sup>22</sup> (scraped) shaven. <sup>23</sup> lip. <sup>24</sup> wife. <sup>25</sup> ten or twelve together. <sup>26</sup> father. <sup>27</sup> (whither each maiden was first led away) i.e., to whose house each maiden was first taken.

[Caesar had crossed the Rhine again, but the Suebi had retreated before him and no engagement took place. He therefore takes the opportunity to describe the Gauls and Germans at some length.]

VI. 11. Quoniam ad hunc locum<sup>1</sup> perventum est,<sup>2</sup> nōn aliēnum<sup>3</sup> esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō<sup>4</sup> differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitatibus<sup>5</sup> 120 atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs<sup>6</sup> sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt (quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiō habēre exīstimantur) quōrum<sup>7</sup> ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōsiliōrumque 125 redeat. Idque ēius rei causā antiquitus<sup>8</sup> 4 institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe<sup>9</sup> contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret;<sup>9</sup> suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est 130 in<sup>10</sup> summā tōtīus Galliae;<sup>10</sup> namque omnēs cīvitatēs dīvisae sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī<sup>11</sup> cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus 135 erat in Aeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae,<sup>12</sup> Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs iactūrīs<sup>13</sup> pollicitātiōnibusque<sup>14</sup> perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī 3

<sup>1</sup> point (in our narrative). <sup>2</sup> we have come. <sup>3</sup> out of place. <sup>4</sup> how. <sup>5</sup> party; faction. <sup>6</sup> (men of such a character that) to their discretion and judgment the control of all acts and plans is submitted. <sup>7</sup> in ancient times. <sup>8</sup> the common people. <sup>9</sup> lack; with gen. <sup>10</sup> in general (characteristic) of Gaul as a whole. <sup>11</sup> the latter. <sup>12</sup> dependency. <sup>13</sup> concession. <sup>14</sup> promise.

nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā<sup>1</sup> antecēsserant<sup>1</sup> ut māgnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad <sup>140</sup> sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs principum filiōs acciperent et públicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōsiliī initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent<sup>2</sup> Galliaeque tōtīus principātum <sup>145</sup> obtinērent. Quā necessitatē<sup>1</sup> adductus Dīviciācus auxilii petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā<sup>3</sup> <sup>150</sup> rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rerum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs<sup>4</sup> restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod iī quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggregāverant<sup>5</sup> meliōre condi- <sup>155</sup> ctiōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī<sup>6</sup> vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitatēque<sup>7</sup> amplificātā,<sup>8</sup> Sēquanī <sup>160</sup> principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī succēsserant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā īntelligēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimicitias<sup>9</sup> nullō <sup>165</sup> modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant.<sup>10</sup> Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur;<sup>11</sup> ita et novam et repentē collēctam<sup>12</sup> auctōritātem tenē- <sup>170</sup> bant. Eō [tamen] statū<sup>1</sup> rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur Aeduī, secundum locum dignitātis<sup>13</sup> Rēmī obtinērent.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō<sup>14</sup> atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs<sup>15</sup> paene servōrum<sup>16</sup> habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, <sup>175</sup> nullī adhibētur cōsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere<sup>17</sup> aliēnō<sup>17</sup> aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum<sup>18</sup> aut iniūriā potentiōrum

<sup>1</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>2</sup> hold possession of. <sup>3</sup> unaccomplished. <sup>4</sup> dependency. <sup>5</sup> attach. <sup>6</sup> enjoy. <sup>7</sup> standing. <sup>8</sup> increase. <sup>9</sup> jealousy. <sup>10</sup> devote. <sup>11</sup> protect. <sup>12</sup> acquire. <sup>13</sup> standing. <sup>14</sup> account. <sup>15</sup> the common people. <sup>16</sup> slave. <sup>17</sup> (another's money) debt. <sup>18</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative.

premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant<sup>1</sup> nōbilibus, quibus  
 in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis<sup>2</sup> in servc̄s.  
 Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum,<sup>3</sup>  
 170 alterum equitum. Illi rēbus dīvinis<sup>4</sup> intersunt, sacri-  
 ficia<sup>5</sup> pūblica āc privāta prōcūrant,<sup>6</sup> religiōnēs<sup>6</sup> inter-  
 pretantur;<sup>3</sup> ad eōs māgnus adulēscentium numerus  
 disciplīnae causā concurrit, māgnōque hī<sup>7</sup> sunt apud  
 eōs<sup>8</sup> honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis<sup>8</sup> pū-  
 175 blicis privātisque cōstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum<sup>9</sup>  
 facinus,<sup>10</sup> sī caedēs<sup>11</sup> facta, sī dē hērēditātē,<sup>12</sup> dē finibus  
 contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt;<sup>13</sup> praemia poenāsque<sup>14</sup>  
 cōstituunt; sī quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum dē-  
 6 crētō nōn<sup>15</sup> stetit,<sup>15</sup> sacrificiis interdīcunt.<sup>16</sup> Haec poena  
 180 apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī<sup>7</sup>  
 numerō impiōrum<sup>3</sup> āc scelerātōrum<sup>17</sup> habentur, hīs<sup>18</sup> om-  
 nēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque<sup>19</sup> dēfugiunt,  
 nē quid ex contāgiōne<sup>20</sup> incommodi<sup>21</sup> accipiant, neque  
 iis petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs<sup>22</sup> ūllus commū-  
 185 nicātur.<sup>23</sup> Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus,<sup>8</sup>  
 quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātē. Hōc mor-  
 9 tuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit<sup>3</sup> dignitātē,<sup>24</sup> succēdit,<sup>3</sup>  
 aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō<sup>25</sup> druidum, nōn<sup>26</sup>  
 numquam<sup>26</sup> etiam armīs dē prīncipātū<sup>27</sup> contendunt.  
 190 Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō<sup>10</sup>  
 tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōn-  
 secrātō.<sup>3</sup> Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent

<sup>1</sup> devote. <sup>2</sup> master. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>4</sup> religious. <sup>5</sup> attend to.  
<sup>6</sup> omen. <sup>7</sup> i.e., Druides. <sup>8</sup> i.e., Gallōs. <sup>9</sup> commit. <sup>10</sup> crime. <sup>11</sup> mur-  
 der. <sup>12</sup> inheritance. <sup>13</sup> decide. <sup>14</sup> punishment. <sup>15</sup> (stō, stand) does  
 not abide (by). <sup>16</sup> exclude; i.e., excommunicate. <sup>17</sup> criminal. <sup>18</sup> dat.  
 of separation. <sup>19</sup> conversation. <sup>20</sup> association. <sup>21</sup> disadvantage; harm.  
<sup>22</sup> office. <sup>23</sup> be open. <sup>24</sup> standing; reputation. <sup>25</sup> vote. <sup>26</sup> (not never)  
 sometimes. <sup>27</sup> leadership.

conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis iūdicīis<sup>1</sup>que<sup>2</sup> parent.<sup>3</sup>  
 11 Disciplina<sup>3</sup> in Britanniā reperta<sup>4</sup> atque inde in Galliam  
 12 trāslāta existimātur, et nunc quī diligentius eam rem 195  
 cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō<sup>5</sup> dīscendī<sup>6</sup> causā pro-  
 ficiscuntur.

14. Druides ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta  
 ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt<sup>7</sup> [, militiā<sup>8</sup> vacātiōnem<sup>9</sup> om-  
 2 niumque rērum habent immunitātem<sup>10</sup>]. Tantīs exci- 200  
 tāti<sup>11</sup> praemiis et suā sponte multī in<sup>12</sup> dīsciplinam<sup>12</sup>  
 conveniunt et ā parentibus<sup>11</sup> propinquis<sup>11</sup>que mittuntur.  
 3 Māgnum ibi numerum versuum<sup>11</sup> ēdiscere<sup>13</sup> dīcuntur.  
 Itaque annōs nōn nullī vīcēnōs<sup>14</sup> in dīsciplinā permanent.  
 Neque fās<sup>15</sup> esse existimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in 205  
 reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicis prīvātisque ratiōnibus,  
 4 Graecis litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis In-  
 stituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgus dīsciplinam<sup>16</sup>  
 efferrī velint neque eōs quī discunt<sup>17</sup> litterīs cōnfīsōs  
 minus memoriae studēre, quod ferē plērisque accidit ut 210  
 praesidiō<sup>18</sup> litterārum dīligentiam<sup>11</sup> in perdīscendō<sup>19</sup> āc  
 5 memoriā remittant. In primīs hōc volunt persuā-  
 dēre, nōn interīre<sup>20</sup> animās,<sup>21</sup> sed ab aliis post mortem  
 trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem exci-  
 6 tāri putant metū<sup>22</sup> mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā 215  
 dē sīderibus<sup>23</sup> atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi<sup>24</sup> āc ter-  
 rārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum  
 immortalium vī āc potestāte disputant<sup>25</sup> et iuventūti<sup>26</sup>  
 trādunt.

<sup>1</sup> judgment. <sup>2</sup> obey. <sup>3</sup> system. <sup>4</sup> as pass., originate. <sup>5</sup> there.  
<sup>6</sup> learn. <sup>7</sup> pay. <sup>8</sup> military service; obj. gen. <sup>9</sup> freedom. <sup>10</sup> exemption.  
<sup>11</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>12</sup> for study. <sup>13</sup> learn by heart. <sup>14</sup> twenty (each);  
 distributive. <sup>15</sup> right. <sup>16</sup> doctrine. <sup>17</sup> learn. <sup>18</sup> assistance. <sup>19</sup> learn by  
 heart. <sup>20</sup> perish. <sup>21</sup> soul. <sup>22</sup> fear. <sup>23</sup> star. <sup>24</sup> universe. <sup>25</sup> discuss.  
<sup>26</sup> (youth) young men.



15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus<sup>1</sup>  
 220 atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē, ante Caesaris  
 adventum, quotannis<sup>2</sup> accidere sōlēbat,<sup>3</sup> utī aut ipsī  
 iniūriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent<sup>4</sup>), omnēs in  
 bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere<sup>5</sup> a  
 cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs<sup>6</sup>  
 225 clientēsque<sup>7</sup> habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiāque  
 nōvērunt.<sup>8</sup>

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum<sup>9</sup> dēdita  
 religiōnibus,<sup>10</sup> atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī a  
 graviōribus morbīs,<sup>11</sup> quīque in proeliis periculisque  
 230 versantur, aut prō victimīs<sup>12</sup> hominēs immolant<sup>13</sup> aut sē  
 immolātūrōs<sup>13</sup> vovent<sup>14</sup> administrisque<sup>15</sup> ad ea sacrificia  
 druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā<sup>16</sup> hominis nisi hominis a  
 vīta<sup>16</sup> reddātur, nōn posse deōrum<sup>17</sup> immortalīum nū-  
 men<sup>18</sup> plācārī<sup>19</sup> arbitrantur, publicēque eiusdem generis  
 235 habent institūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī<sup>20</sup> māgnitūdine a  
 simulācra<sup>21</sup> habent, quōrum contexta<sup>22</sup> vīminibus<sup>23</sup>  
 membra<sup>24</sup> vīvīs<sup>25</sup> hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs<sup>26</sup>  
 circumventī flammā exanimantur<sup>27</sup> hominēs. Supplicia<sup>28</sup> a  
 eōrum quī in fūrtō<sup>29</sup> aut latrōciniō<sup>30</sup> aut aliquā noxiā<sup>31</sup>  
 240 sint comprehēnsī<sup>32</sup> grātiōra dīs immortalībus esse arbi-  
 trantur; sed, cum ēius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad 6  
 innocentium<sup>12</sup> supplicia<sup>28</sup> dēscendunt.<sup>33</sup>

17. Deōrum<sup>34</sup> māximē Mercurium colunt:<sup>35</sup> hūius sunt  
 plūrima simulācra,<sup>36</sup> hunc omnium inventōrem<sup>37</sup> artium

<sup>1</sup> need. <sup>2</sup> annually. <sup>3</sup> be accustomed. <sup>4</sup> ward off. <sup>5</sup> family; specifica-  
 tion. <sup>6</sup> retainer. <sup>7</sup> dependent. <sup>8</sup> know. <sup>9</sup> exceedingly. <sup>10</sup> superstition.  
<sup>11</sup> disease. <sup>12</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>13</sup> sacrifice. <sup>14</sup> vow. <sup>15</sup> agent.  
<sup>16</sup> life. <sup>17</sup> god. <sup>18</sup> (divine) power. <sup>19</sup> appease. <sup>20</sup> immense. <sup>21</sup> image.  
<sup>22</sup> weave. <sup>23</sup> twig. <sup>24</sup> limb. <sup>25</sup> living. <sup>26</sup> set on fire. <sup>27</sup> kill. <sup>28</sup> punishment.  
<sup>29</sup> theft. <sup>30</sup> robbery. <sup>31</sup> crime. <sup>32</sup> catch. <sup>33</sup> resort. <sup>34</sup> god.  
<sup>35</sup> worship. <sup>36</sup> image. <sup>37</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative.

ferunt,<sup>1</sup> hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem,<sup>2</sup> hunc ad<sup>245</sup>  
 quaestūs<sup>3</sup> pecūniae<sup>4</sup> mercātūrāsque<sup>5</sup> habere vim māxi-  
 mam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollīnem et Mārtem et  
 2 Iovem<sup>6</sup> et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reli-  
 quae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs<sup>7</sup>  
 dēpellere, Minervam operum<sup>8</sup> atque artificiōrum<sup>9</sup> 250  
 initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium<sup>10</sup> tenere,  
 3 Mārtem bella regere.<sup>11</sup> Huīc, cum proeliō dīmicare  
 cōstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvo-  
 vent;<sup>12</sup> cum superāvērunt, animālia<sup>13</sup> capta immo-  
 lant,<sup>14</sup> reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multīs 255  
 in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs<sup>15</sup> lo-  
 4 cīs cōsecrātīs cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit  
 ut neglēctā quispiam<sup>16</sup> religiōne<sup>17</sup> aut capta<sup>18</sup> apud<sup>19</sup>  
 5 sē<sup>19</sup> occultāre<sup>20</sup> aut posita<sup>18</sup> tollere audēret, gravissi-  
 mumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum 260  
 est.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte<sup>21</sup> patre prōgnātōs<sup>22</sup>  
 praedicant<sup>23</sup> idque ab druidibus prōditum<sup>24</sup> dīcunt.  
 2 Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō  
 diērum sed noctium finiunt;<sup>25</sup> diēs<sup>26</sup> nātālēs<sup>26</sup> et mēn- 265  
 sium et annōrum initia sic observant<sup>27</sup> ut noctem diēs  
 3 subsequātur. In reliquīs vitāe Institūtīs hōc ferē ab  
 reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolē-  
 vērunt<sup>28</sup> ut mūnus<sup>29</sup> militiae<sup>30</sup> sustinēre possint, palam<sup>31</sup>  
 ad sē adire nōn patiuntur filiumque puerilī<sup>32</sup> aetate<sup>32</sup> 270

<sup>1</sup> call. <sup>2</sup> guide. <sup>3</sup> acquisition. <sup>4</sup> money. <sup>5</sup> trade. <sup>6</sup> Jupiter. <sup>7</sup> disease.  
<sup>8</sup> trade. <sup>9</sup> art. <sup>10</sup> (of the celestials) of the gods. <sup>11</sup> regō, ere, rēxi,  
 rēctum, rule. <sup>12</sup> vow. <sup>13</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>14</sup> sacrifice. <sup>15</sup> pile. <sup>16</sup> anyone.  
<sup>17</sup> vow. <sup>18</sup> i.e., ea quae bellō cēperint. <sup>19</sup> in his house. <sup>20</sup> hide.  
<sup>21</sup> Dis or Pluto, god of the lower world. <sup>22</sup> prō + (g)nāscor. <sup>23</sup> declare.  
<sup>24</sup> hand down. <sup>25</sup> limit. <sup>26</sup> birthdays. <sup>27</sup> keep. <sup>28</sup> grow up. <sup>29</sup> service.  
<sup>30</sup> war. <sup>31</sup> openly. <sup>32</sup> (of youthful age) in boyhood.

in publico<sup>1</sup> in conspectu patris assistere<sup>2</sup> turpe<sup>3</sup> ducunt.

19. Viri,<sup>4</sup> quantas pecunias<sup>4</sup> ab uxoribus<sup>5</sup> dotis<sup>6</sup> nomine accēperunt, tantas<sup>4</sup> ex suis bonis<sup>4</sup> aestimatione<sup>7</sup> facta cum<sup>4</sup> dotibus communicant. Huius omnis pecuniae coniunctim<sup>8</sup> ratio<sup>9</sup> habetur fructusque<sup>10</sup> servantur;<sup>11</sup> uter eorum vita<sup>12</sup> superavit,<sup>12</sup> ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus<sup>10</sup> superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri<sup>3</sup> in uxores sic uti in liberos vitae<sup>13</sup> necisque<sup>14</sup> habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae illustriore<sup>15</sup> loco natus decēssit,<sup>16</sup> eius propinqui conveniunt et de morte, si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem<sup>17</sup> modum quaestionem<sup>18</sup> habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis<sup>19</sup> excruciatas<sup>20</sup> interficiunt. Fūnera<sup>21</sup> sunt pro cultu<sup>22</sup> Gallorum magnifica<sup>21</sup> et sumptuosa;<sup>21</sup> omniaque quae vivis<sup>23</sup> cordi<sup>24</sup> fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo supra<sup>25</sup> hanc memoriam<sup>25</sup> servi<sup>26</sup> et clientes,<sup>27</sup> quos ab iis dilectos<sup>28</sup> esse constabat, iustis<sup>29</sup> funebribus<sup>30</sup> confectis una cremabantur.<sup>21</sup>

20. Quae civitates commodius suam rem publicam administrare existimantur habent legibus sanctum,<sup>31</sup> si quis quid de re publica a finitimis rumore ac fama<sup>32</sup> accēperit,<sup>33</sup> uti ad magistratum deferat neve cum quo<sup>34</sup> alio commūnicet; quod saepe homines temerarios<sup>35</sup> atque

<sup>1</sup> supply locō. <sup>2</sup> (stand) appear. <sup>3</sup> disgraceful. <sup>4</sup> Husbands add to the dowry as much money from their own property as. <sup>5</sup> wife. <sup>6</sup> dowry. <sup>7</sup> appraisal. <sup>8</sup> jointly. <sup>9</sup> account. <sup>10</sup> income. <sup>11</sup> save. <sup>12</sup> i.e., survives. <sup>13</sup> life. <sup>14</sup> death. <sup>15</sup> distinguished. <sup>16</sup> supply vitā; and cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>17</sup> (the same as) of slaves. <sup>18</sup> investigation. <sup>19</sup> torture. <sup>20</sup> torment. <sup>21</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>22</sup> civilization. <sup>23</sup> living. <sup>24</sup> (to the heart) dear. <sup>25</sup> before the present generation. <sup>26</sup> slave. <sup>27</sup> dependent. <sup>28</sup> love. <sup>29</sup> regular. <sup>30</sup> funeral rites. <sup>31</sup> ordain. <sup>32</sup> report. <sup>33</sup> hear of. <sup>34</sup> indefinite. <sup>35</sup> rash.

imperitōs<sup>1</sup> falsis rumōribus terrēri et ad facinus<sup>2</sup> impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōsilium capere cōgnitum est. 3 Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant,<sup>3</sup> quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per concilium loqui nōn concēditur. 300

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druides habent quī rēbus divīnīs praesint neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus<sup>4</sup> iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam;<sup>5</sup> reliquōs nē fāmā<sup>6</sup> qui- 305 dem accēpērunt.<sup>7</sup> Vīta<sup>8</sup> omnis in vēnātiōnibus<sup>9</sup> atque in studiīs rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvīs labōrī āc dūritiae<sup>10</sup> student. Qui diūtissimē impuberēs<sup>11</sup> permānsērunt māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī<sup>12</sup> statūrā, alī vīrēs nervōsque<sup>13</sup> cōfirmārī putant. Intrā 310 annū vērō vīcēsimum<sup>14</sup> fēminae<sup>15</sup> nōtitiam<sup>16</sup> habuisse in turpissimīs<sup>17</sup> habent rēbus; cūius rei nūlla est occultatiō,<sup>18</sup> quod et prōmiscuē<sup>19</sup> in flūminibus perluuntur<sup>20</sup> et pellibus aut parvīs rēnōnum<sup>21</sup> tegimentis<sup>22</sup> ūtuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā. 315

22. Agrī<sup>23</sup> cultūrae<sup>23</sup> nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte,<sup>24</sup> cāseō,<sup>25</sup> carne<sup>26</sup> cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum<sup>27</sup> certum aut finēs habet propriōs;<sup>28</sup> sed magistrātūs āc prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus<sup>29</sup> cōgnātiōnibusque<sup>30</sup> hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, 320 quantum<sup>31</sup> et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuent,<sup>32</sup> atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt

<sup>1</sup> ignorant. <sup>2</sup> crime. <sup>3</sup> hide. <sup>4</sup> power. <sup>5</sup> Moon. <sup>6</sup> report. <sup>7</sup> hear of. <sup>8</sup> life. <sup>9</sup> hunting. <sup>10</sup> hardship. <sup>11</sup> chaste. <sup>12</sup> (nourish) increase. <sup>13</sup> muscle. <sup>14</sup> twentieth. <sup>15</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>16</sup> knowledge. <sup>17</sup> disgraceful. <sup>18</sup> concealment. <sup>19</sup> all together. <sup>20</sup> bathe. <sup>21</sup> reindeer skins. <sup>22</sup> covering. <sup>23</sup> farming. <sup>24</sup> milk. <sup>25</sup> cheese. <sup>26</sup> meat. <sup>27</sup> measure. <sup>28</sup> private. <sup>29</sup> tribe. <sup>30</sup> clan. <sup>31</sup> as much. <sup>32</sup> assign.

causās: nē assiduā<sup>1</sup> cōnsuētūdine captī<sup>2</sup> studium belli gerendī agrī culturā commūtent;<sup>3</sup> nē lātōs finēs parāre<sup>4</sup> 325 studeant potentiōrēs, atque humiliōrēs possēssiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius<sup>5</sup> ad frīgora<sup>6</sup> atque aestūs<sup>7</sup> vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae<sup>8</sup> cupiditās,<sup>9</sup> quā ex rē factiōnēs<sup>10</sup> dissēnsiōnēsque<sup>10</sup> nāscuntur; ut 4 animī aequitāte<sup>9, 10</sup> plēbem<sup>11</sup> contineant, cum suās quis- 330 que opēs<sup>12</sup> cum potentissimīs aequārī<sup>13</sup> videat.

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus<sup>14</sup> est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs finibus sōlitūdīnēs<sup>10</sup> habēre. Hōc propriū<sup>15</sup> virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere; 335 simul hōc sē fore tūtiorēs<sup>16</sup> arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis<sup>17</sup> timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed 4 340 prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt<sup>18</sup> contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia<sup>19</sup> nūllam habent infāmiā<sup>20</sup> quae extrā finēs cūiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis<sup>21</sup> exercendae<sup>22</sup> ac dēsidiāe<sup>23</sup> minuen- 7 345 cipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,<sup>26</sup> cōnsurgunt<sup>27</sup> īī quī et causam et hominem probant<sup>10</sup> suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitudine collaudantur;<sup>28</sup> quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in 8

<sup>1</sup> continued. <sup>2</sup> taken, in the sense of charmed. <sup>3</sup> exchange (for).  
<sup>4</sup> acquire. <sup>5</sup> too carefully. <sup>6</sup> cold (spells). <sup>7</sup> heat. <sup>8</sup> money. <sup>9</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>11</sup> common people. <sup>12</sup> wealth.  
<sup>13</sup> make equal. <sup>14</sup> praise. <sup>15</sup> evidence (pred.). <sup>16</sup> safe. <sup>17</sup> raid. <sup>18</sup> administrator. <sup>19</sup> highway robbery. <sup>20</sup> disgrace. <sup>21</sup> youth; young men. <sup>22</sup> exercise.  
<sup>23</sup> idleness. <sup>24</sup> declare. <sup>25</sup> indefinite. <sup>26</sup> imperative in ind. dis.; translate, for those . . . to signify it. <sup>27</sup> rise. <sup>28</sup> praise.

dēsertōrum<sup>1</sup> āc prōditōrum<sup>2</sup> numerō dūcuntur omnium-  
 9 que hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur.<sup>3</sup> Hospitem<sup>4</sup> vio- 350  
 lāre<sup>5</sup> fās<sup>6</sup> nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs  
 vērunt ab iniuriā prohibent, sāctōsque<sup>7</sup> habent, hīs-  
 que omnium domūs patent victusque communicātur.<sup>8</sup>

24. Āc fuit antea<sup>9</sup> tempus cum Germānōs Gallī vir-  
 tūte superārent, ūtrō bella inferrent, propter homi- 355  
 num multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum  
 2 colōniās<sup>1</sup> mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima<sup>1</sup> Ger-  
 māniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam  
 Eratosthenī<sup>10</sup> et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā<sup>11</sup> nōtam<sup>12</sup> esse  
 videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosa- 360  
 3 gēs occupāverunt atque ibi cōsēdērunt; quae gēs<sup>13</sup>  
 ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus<sup>14</sup> sēsē continet summamque  
 4 habet iūstitiae et bellicae<sup>15</sup> laudis<sup>16</sup> opīniōnem. Nunc  
 quod in eādē inopiā, egestāte,<sup>16</sup> patientiā,<sup>17</sup> quā ante,  
 Germānī permanent, eōdē victū et cultū<sup>18</sup> corporis 365  
 5 ūtuntur; Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās<sup>19</sup> et  
 trāsmarinārum,<sup>1,19</sup> rērum nōtitia<sup>20</sup> multa<sup>21</sup> ad cōpiam  
 6 atque ūsus largitur;<sup>22</sup> paulātim assuēfactī<sup>23</sup> superārī  
 multisque victī proeliis nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs  
 virtūte comparant.

370

*Description of the Hercynian forest and of some  
 of the wild animals found there.*

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta  
 est, lātitudō novem diērum iter expeditō<sup>24</sup> patet; nōn

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>2</sup> traitor. <sup>3</sup> withdraw. <sup>4</sup> guest. <sup>5</sup> harm.  
<sup>6</sup> right. <sup>7</sup> sacred. <sup>8</sup> share. <sup>9</sup> adv.; before. <sup>10</sup> nom. Eratosthenēs. <sup>11</sup> re-  
 port. <sup>12</sup> known. <sup>13</sup> tribe. <sup>14</sup> settlements. <sup>15</sup> renown in war. <sup>16</sup> need.  
<sup>17</sup> suffering. <sup>18</sup> care. <sup>19</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>20</sup> knowledge. <sup>21</sup> acc. <sup>22</sup> afford.  
<sup>23</sup> become accustomed. <sup>24</sup> (to one unencumbered) i.e., to a man going light.

enim aliter finīrī<sup>1</sup> potest, neque mēnsūrās<sup>2</sup> itinerum<sup>2</sup> nōvērunt.<sup>3</sup> Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et  
 375 Rauracōrum finibus rēctāque<sup>4</sup> flūminis Dānuvii<sup>5</sup> regi-  
 ōne<sup>4</sup> pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē<sup>6</sup> a  
 flectit<sup>6</sup> sinistrōrsus<sup>7</sup> dīversis<sup>8</sup> ā flūmine regiōnibus mul-  
 tārūque gentium finēs propter māgnitūdinem attingit;  
 neque quisquam est hūius<sup>9</sup> Germāniae quī sē [aut au-  
 380 dīsse] aut adīsse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diē-  
 rum iter sexāgintā prōcēsserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur  
 accēperit;<sup>10</sup> multaque in eā genera ferārū<sup>11</sup> nāscī cōn-  
 stat quae reliquīs in locis vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus  
 quae māmīmē differant ā cēteris<sup>12</sup> et memoriae prō-  
 385 denda<sup>13</sup> videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bōs<sup>14</sup> cervī<sup>15</sup> figūrā<sup>16</sup> cūius ā mediā fronte<sup>17</sup>  
 inter aurēs<sup>18</sup> ūnum cornū exsistit<sup>19</sup> excelsius<sup>20</sup> magisque  
 dērēctum<sup>21</sup> hīs quae nōbīs nōta<sup>22</sup> sunt cornibus; ab  
 eius summō sic ut palmae<sup>23</sup> rāmīque<sup>23</sup> lātē diffundun-  
 390 tur.<sup>24</sup> Eadem est fēminae<sup>25</sup> marisque<sup>26</sup> nātūra, eadem  
 fōrma<sup>27</sup> māgnitūdōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs.<sup>28</sup> Hārum est  
 cōnsimilis<sup>29</sup> caprīs<sup>30</sup> figūra et varietās<sup>31</sup> pellium; sed mā-  
 gnitūdine paulō antecēdunt<sup>32</sup> mutilaeque<sup>33</sup> sunt<sup>33</sup> corni-  
 395 bus<sup>33</sup> et crūra<sup>34</sup> sine nōdīs<sup>35</sup> articulisque<sup>36</sup> habent; neque  
 quiētis<sup>37</sup> causā<sup>37</sup> prōcumbunt<sup>38</sup> neque, sī quō afflīctae<sup>39</sup> a

<sup>1</sup> measure. <sup>2</sup> the measurements of distances, i.e., they reckon distances by time, not space. <sup>3</sup> know. <sup>4</sup> parallel. <sup>5</sup> Danube. <sup>6</sup> turn (itself). <sup>7</sup> to the left. <sup>8</sup> remote. <sup>9</sup> this part of. <sup>10</sup> hear. <sup>11</sup> wild beast. <sup>12</sup> the others. <sup>13</sup> hand down. <sup>14</sup> ox. <sup>15</sup> stag. <sup>16</sup> appearance. <sup>17</sup> forehead. <sup>18</sup> ear. <sup>19</sup> project. <sup>20</sup> elevated. <sup>21</sup> straight. <sup>22</sup> known. <sup>23</sup> hendiadys; palm branches. <sup>24</sup> spread out. <sup>25</sup> female. <sup>26</sup> male. <sup>27</sup> shape. <sup>28</sup> elk. <sup>29</sup> very similar. <sup>30</sup> (that of) goats. <sup>31</sup> varied color. <sup>32</sup> Cf. composition. <sup>33</sup> have apparently broken horns. <sup>34</sup> leg. <sup>35</sup> enlargements. <sup>36</sup> joints. <sup>37</sup> to rest. <sup>38</sup> lie down. <sup>39</sup> thrown down.

3 cāsū concidērunt,<sup>1</sup> ērigere<sup>2</sup> sēsē<sup>3</sup> āc sublevāre<sup>3</sup> possunt.  
 Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubilibus;<sup>4</sup> ad eās sēsē<sup>5</sup> applicant<sup>5</sup> atque  
 4 ita paulum modo reclinātae<sup>6</sup> quīetē capiunt. Quā-  
 rum ex \*vēstigiis<sup>7</sup> cum est animadversum ā vēnātōri- 400  
 bus<sup>8</sup> quō sēsē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs<sup>9</sup> eō locō aut ab<sup>10</sup>  
 rādīcibus subruunt<sup>11</sup> aut accīdunt<sup>12</sup> arborēs, tantum<sup>13</sup>  
 5 ut summa<sup>14</sup> speciēs eārum stantium<sup>15</sup> relinquātur. Hūc  
 cum sēsē cōsuētūdine reclināverunt,<sup>6</sup> infirmās<sup>16</sup> arborēs  
 pondere affligunt<sup>17</sup> atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.<sup>1</sup> 405

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī urī<sup>18</sup> appellantur.  
 Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō infrā<sup>19</sup> elephantōs,<sup>6</sup> speciē  
 2 et colōre<sup>6</sup> et figurā taurī.<sup>20</sup> Māgua vīs eōrum est et  
 māgna velōcitās,<sup>6</sup> neque hominī neque ferae<sup>21</sup> quam cōn-  
 3 spexērunt parcunt.<sup>22</sup> Hōs studiōsē<sup>23</sup> foveīs<sup>24</sup> captōs inter- 410  
 ficiunt; hōc sēsē labōre dūrant<sup>25</sup> adulēscētēs atque hōc  
 genere vēnātiōnis<sup>26</sup> exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs  
 interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint  
 4 tēstimōniō,<sup>27</sup> māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere<sup>28</sup>  
 ad hominēs et mānsuēfieri<sup>29</sup> nē parvulī<sup>30</sup> quidem exceptī 415  
 5 possunt. Amplitūdō<sup>31</sup> cornuum et figurā et speciēs  
 6 multum ā nostrōrum boum<sup>32</sup> cornibus differt. Haec  
 studiōsē<sup>23</sup> conquīsita<sup>1</sup> ab labrīs<sup>33</sup> argentō<sup>34</sup> circumclū-  
 dunt<sup>35</sup> atque in amplissimīs epulīs<sup>36</sup> prō pōculīs<sup>37</sup> ūtuntur.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. composition. <sup>2</sup> rise. <sup>3</sup> help themselves up. <sup>4</sup> resting places.  
<sup>5</sup> lean. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Eng. derivative. <sup>7</sup> vēstigium, track. <sup>8</sup> hunter.  
<sup>9</sup> with arborēs. <sup>10</sup> at. <sup>11</sup> dig under. <sup>12</sup> cut into. <sup>13</sup> but not so much  
 but that. <sup>14</sup> exact. <sup>15</sup> stand. <sup>16</sup> weakened. <sup>17</sup> push over. <sup>18</sup> urochs.  
<sup>19</sup> (below) smaller than. <sup>20</sup> bull. <sup>21</sup> beast. <sup>22</sup> spare. <sup>23</sup> cautiously. <sup>24</sup> pit.  
<sup>25</sup> harden. <sup>26</sup> hunting. <sup>27</sup> proof. <sup>28</sup> Cf. cōsuēscō. <sup>29</sup> tame. <sup>30</sup> very young.  
<sup>31</sup> spread. <sup>32</sup> oxen. <sup>33</sup> edge. <sup>34</sup> silver. <sup>35</sup> line. <sup>36</sup> banquet. <sup>37</sup> drinking-  
 cup.





## THE CIVIL WAR

WE have been reading of Caesar's military exploits of 58-50 B.C. From them the author strictly excluded all reference to the politics of the time except two references to the tumultuous conditions at Rome. To understand the beginning of Caesar's Commentaries on the Civil War we must turn to the political struggle in which he was at the same time engaged.

The first triumvirate, Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus, had been ended by the death of the last in 53 B.C. Julia, the daughter of Caesar, whom Pompey had married, had died the year before, and the two men had now no bond of sympathy, but had drifted rapidly apart. Caesar was regarded as democratic in his politics, while Pompey, who alone had been able to suppress the political riots at Rome, became more definitely the leader of the senatorial power. The dictatorial power was conferred upon him, and in 52 he was elected sole consul.

"Two obsolete decrees, which would tell especially against Caesar, he caused to be renewed, viz., that no one should be a candidate for public office while absent from the city, and that no one should receive a province for five years after holding a public office. Pompey had, however, first secured his province of Spain for five years more. Caesar, who designed to stand for consul again at the expiration of the legal interval, ten years, complained of the provision that no one could stand for office without being in the city, especially as this had been allowed Pompey. Thereupon it was publicly voted that this law should not apply to Caesar. Pompey was obliged to accede to this, but began to take measures to separate Caesar from his now formidable army. Gaius Marcellus, consul in 50, a bitter enemy of Caesar, moved that on November 13 Caesar be recalled from his province and army. In the

debate on this motion, Curio, the brilliant tribune of the people whom Caesar had bribed over to himself, favored the thing, but proposed that a like measure be passed concerning Pompey. Between these two propositions no vote was reached. Pompey, it is true, expressed to the Senate his willingness to give up his province and dismiss his army, but took no steps in the matter, and even secured a vote in the Senate, by which, under pretext of the Parthian war, two legions were taken from Caesar." One was nominally taken from each commander, but Pompey had loaned Caesar one at the beginning of the sixth year of the war in Gaul, and this he now contributed as his legion, so that both actually came from Caesar's forces. These Pompey retained near Rome.

"Shortly after this a rumor spread that Caesar had crossed the Alps and was advancing on Rome. Upon this, Marcellus, with the consuls who had been elected for the following year, Lentulus and Gaius Marcellus the younger, went to Pompey and authorized him in their names to defend the republic, and to raise troops in Italy at his pleasure. Curio now hurried to Caesar, who was at Ravenna, and urged him to march at once on Rome. Caesar, however, wrote a letter to the Senate and the new consuls, in which he set forth his services to the state, defended himself from the charges made against him by his enemies, and begged that he be not deprived of the privilege already granted him by the people, of standing for the consular election while absent. At the same time he promised to dismiss his army whenever Pompey did so. If, however, Pompey refused, then he too must keep his army and defend himself. This letter Curio gave to the consuls, in the Senate, and in the presence of the tribunes of the people, January 1, 49. What followed is told by Caesar." — *Caesar's Civil War*. PERRIN.

C. IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO CIVILI  
COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

THE BEGINNING OF THE WAR

*Caesar's letter and its reception.*

1. Litteris<sup>1</sup> ā Fabiō C. Caesaris cōsulibus redditīs aegrē ab hīs impetrātum est summā tribūnōrum †plēbis<sup>2</sup> †contentiōne<sup>3</sup> ut in senātū recitārentur;<sup>4</sup> ut vērō ex litterīs ad senātum †referrētur,<sup>5</sup> impetrārī nōn potuit.  
2 Referunt cōsulēs dē rē publicā infinitē.<sup>7</sup> L. Lentulus 5 cōsul senātui rē publicae sē nōn dēfutūrum pollicētur,  
3 sī audācter āc fortiter sententiās dīcere velint; sīn Caesarem respiciant atque ēius grātiā sequantur, ut superiōribus fēcerint temporibus, sē sibi cōsiliū cap-  
tūrum neque senātūs auctōritātī obtemperātūrum;<sup>8</sup> 10 habēre sē quoque ad Caesaris grātiā atque amīcitiam  
4 receptum. In eandem sententiam loquitur Scīpiō<sup>9</sup>: Pompēiō esse in animō rē publicae nōn deesse, sī senā-

<sup>1</sup> See page 84.   <sup>2</sup> the "plebs," the people.   <sup>3</sup> effort.   <sup>4</sup> read.

<sup>5</sup> according to, in accordance with.   <sup>6</sup> the matter be referred.   <sup>7</sup> indefinitely.

<sup>8</sup> obey.   <sup>9</sup> Pompey's father-in-law.

The words marked with an asterisk (\*) are generally assigned to the second year's work; those marked with a dagger (†) are generally assigned to the third year or have a meaning which has not occurred before. The meanings of such words will not be repeated in the selections from B.C., I.

tus sequatur; si \*cunctetur<sup>1</sup> atque agat plēnius,<sup>2</sup> nē  
 15 quīquam<sup>3</sup> eius auxilium, si postea velit, senātum  
 implorātūrum.

2. Haec Scīpiōnis orātiō, quod senātus in urbe habē-  
 bātur Pompēiusque aderat, ex ipsius tōre<sup>4</sup> Pompēi  
 mitti vidēbātur. Dixerat aliquis<sup>5</sup> leniorem sententiam,<sup>6</sup>  
 20 ut<sup>6</sup> primō M. Marcellus, ingressus in eam orātiōnem,  
 nōn oportere ante<sup>7</sup> de eā rē ad senātum referri quam  
 pdilēctūs<sup>8</sup> totā Italiā habitī et exercitūs pcōscripti<sup>9</sup>  
 essent, quō praesidiō ptūtō<sup>10</sup> et liberē senātus quae vellet  
 dēcernere auderet; ut M. Calidius, quī pcēnsēbat<sup>11</sup> ut<sup>3</sup>  
 25 Pompēius in suās prōvinciās proficisceretur, nē qua  
 esset armōrum causa: timere Caesarem pēreptis<sup>12</sup> ab eō  
 duābus legiōnibus, nē ad eius periculum reservare et  
 retinere eas ad urbem Pompēius vidēretur; ut M.  
 Rūfus, quī sententiam Calidiī paucis ferē pmūtātis<sup>13</sup> rē-  
 30 bus sequēbātur. Hi omnēs conviciō<sup>14</sup> L. Lentulī cōsulis  
 correpti<sup>15</sup> exagitābantur.<sup>16</sup> Lentulus sententiam Calidiī  
 pprōnūntiātūrum<sup>17</sup> sē omninō pnegavit,<sup>18</sup> Marcellus  
 perterritus conviciis<sup>14</sup> ā suā sententiā discēssit. Sic<sup>6</sup>  
 35 amicōrum Pompēiī plērīque compulsī inviti et coacti  
 Scīpiōnis sententiam psequuntur:<sup>20</sup> uti ante certam diem  
 Caesar exercitum dimittat; si nōn faciat, eum adver-  
 sus<sup>21</sup> rem pūblicam factūrum vidēri. pIntercēdit<sup>22</sup> M.  
 Antōnius, Q. Cassius, tribūni plēbis. Refertur cōn-  
 40 fēstim de intercēssiōne<sup>23</sup> tribūnōrum. Dīcuntur senten-<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> delay. <sup>2</sup> lenient(ly). <sup>3</sup> in vain. <sup>4</sup> os, oris, n., mouth. <sup>5</sup> here and there  
 a senator. <sup>6</sup> as, for example. <sup>7</sup> like prius. <sup>8</sup> levy. <sup>9</sup> enroll, enlist.  
<sup>10</sup> safely. <sup>11</sup> cēnsēō, ēre, ui, cēnsūm, propose. <sup>12</sup> ē-ripiō, ere, ripui,  
 reptum, (snatch); take away; see page 84. <sup>13</sup> change. <sup>14</sup> taunts.  
<sup>15</sup> assailed. <sup>16</sup> overwhelm. <sup>17</sup> put to vote. <sup>18</sup> deny, refuse. <sup>19</sup> threat.  
<sup>20</sup> adopt. <sup>21</sup> against. <sup>22</sup> interpose a veto. <sup>23</sup> the veto.

tiae gravēs; ut quisque †acerbissimē<sup>1</sup> †crūdēlissimē-  
que<sup>2</sup> dīxit, ita quam māximē ab inimicīs Caesaris  
collaudātur.<sup>3</sup>

*Caesar's enemies coerce the senate.*

3. Missō ad vesperum senātū omnēs quī sunt ēius  
ōrdinis ā Pompēiō ēvocantur. †Laudat<sup>3</sup> prōmptōs 45  
atque in posterum cōnfīrmat, sēgniōrēs<sup>4</sup> castīgat<sup>5</sup> atque  
†incitat. Multī undique ex veteribus Pompēiī exerciti-  
bus spē praemiōrum atque ōrdinum ēvocantur, multī ex  
duābus legiōnibus quae sunt trāditae ā Caesare arces-  
3 suntur. Complētur urbs, clīvus,<sup>6</sup> comitium<sup>7</sup> tribūnīs, 50  
4 centuriōnibus, \*ēvocātīs.<sup>8</sup> Omnēs amīcī cōnsulum, ne-  
cessariī Pompēiī atque eōrum quī veterēs inimīcitiās cum  
5 Caesare gerēbant in senātum cōguntur; quōrum voci-  
bus et concursū terrentur infirmiorēs,<sup>9</sup> †dubii<sup>10</sup> cōnfir-  
mantur, plērisque vērō liberē †dēcernendī<sup>11</sup> potestās 55  
6 ēripitur. Pollicētur L. Pīsō cēnsor sēsē itūrum ad  
Caesarem, item L. Rōscius praetor, quī dē hīs rēbus  
eum doceant; sex diēs ad eam rem cōficiendam spatīi  
7 pōstulant. Dīcuntur etiam ab nōn nullīs sententiae,  
ut lēgātī ad Caesarem mittantur quī voluntātem senā- 60  
tūs eī prōpōnant.

4. Omnibus hīs resistitur omnibusque ōrātiō cōnsulis,  
Scīpiōnis, Catōnis oppōnitur. Catōnem veterēs inimī-  
2 citiae Caesaris incitant et †dolor<sup>12</sup> repulsae.<sup>13</sup> Lentulus  
†aeris<sup>14</sup> †aliēnī<sup>14</sup> māgnitūdine et spē exercitūs āc prōvin- 65

<sup>1</sup> bitter (ly). <sup>2</sup> cruel (ly). <sup>3</sup> praise. <sup>4</sup> slow. <sup>5</sup> reprove. <sup>6</sup> (slope) the road to the Capitol. <sup>7</sup> the comitium, a place of assembly adjoining the forum. <sup>8</sup> veterans; B. G., VII. line 339. <sup>9</sup> weak. <sup>10</sup> doubtful. <sup>11</sup> dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, (separate) decide. <sup>12</sup> (grief, distress) anger. <sup>13</sup> arising from his defeat (for the consulship); subjective gen. <sup>14</sup> (money belonging to another) debt; aes, aeris, n.; literally, copper, bronze.

ciārum<sup>1</sup> et rēgum<sup>1</sup> appellandōrum<sup>1</sup> largitōnibus<sup>1</sup> movē-  
 tur sēque alterum fore Sullam inter suōs glōriātur,<sup>2</sup> ad  
 quem summa imperiū redeat. Scīpiōnem eadem spēs<sup>3</sup>  
 prōvinciae atque exercituum impellit, quōs sē prō  
 70 necessitudīne<sup>3</sup> †partitūrum<sup>4</sup> cum Pompēiō arbitrātur,  
 simul †iūdiciorum<sup>5</sup> †metus,<sup>6</sup> adulatiō<sup>7</sup> atque osten-  
 tatiō<sup>8</sup> suī et potentium, quī in rē publicā iūdicis-  
 tum plurimum pollēbant.<sup>9</sup> Ipse Pompēius, ab inimicis<sup>4</sup>  
 Caesaris incitātus et quod nēmīnem †dignitāte<sup>10</sup> sēcum  
 75 exaequārī volēbat, tōtum sē ab ēius amicitia āverterat  
 et cum commūnibus inimicis in grātiam redierat, quō-  
 rum ipse māximam partem illō adfinitātis<sup>11</sup> tempore  
 iniūnxerat<sup>12</sup> Caesarī; simul infāmiā<sup>13</sup> duārum legiōnum<sup>14</sup>  
 permōtus, quās ab itinere Asiae Syriaeque<sup>15</sup> ad suam  
 80 potentiam dominātumque<sup>16</sup> converterat, rem ad arma  
 dēdūcī studēbat.

*The tribunes flee to Caesar. Preparations for war.*

5. Hīs dē causīs aguntur omnia raptim<sup>17</sup> atque tur-  
 bātē. Nec docendī Caesaris propinquīs ēius spatium  
 datur nec tribūnis plēbis suī periculī dēprecandī<sup>18</sup> neque  
 85 etiam extrēmī iūris intercēssiōne retinendī, quod L. Sul-  
 la reliquerat, facultās †tribuitur,<sup>19</sup> sed dē suā salūte<sup>2</sup>  
 septimō diē<sup>20</sup> †cōgitāre<sup>21</sup> cōguntur, quod<sup>22</sup> illī turbulentis-

<sup>1</sup> (prospective) *bribes for getting men called kings*. Recall how it was said of Ariovistus, B. G., I. 43, "quod rēx appellātus esset a senātū, quod amicus," etc. <sup>2</sup> *boast*. <sup>3</sup> *relationship*. <sup>4</sup> *partiō, ire, ivi, itum, (part) divide, share*. <sup>5</sup> *trial*. <sup>6</sup> *metus, ūs, fear*. <sup>7</sup> *flattery*. <sup>8</sup> *display*. <sup>9</sup> from *potis* and *valeō*; hence equivalent to *poterant* or *valēbant*. <sup>10</sup> (worthiness, worth) *standing*. <sup>11</sup> *relationship*; see page 83. <sup>12</sup> *load upon*. <sup>13</sup> *disgrace*. <sup>14</sup> See page 84. <sup>15</sup> explanatory genitives; translate, *to*, etc. <sup>16</sup> *control*. <sup>17</sup> *hastily*. <sup>18</sup> *avert*. <sup>19</sup> *grant*. <sup>20</sup> i.e., of this debate. <sup>21</sup> *think*. <sup>22</sup> (a thing) *which*.

simi superioriſ temporibus tribūnī<sup>1</sup> plēbis post octō  
 dēnique mēnsēs variārum āctiōnum respicere āc timēre  
 3 cōnsuērant. Dēcurritur<sup>2</sup> ad illud extrēmum atque ūlti- 90  
 mum senātūs cōnsultum, quō<sup>3</sup> nisi paene in ipsō<sup>4</sup> urbis  
 †incendiō<sup>4</sup> atque in dēspērātiōne omnium salūtis lātō-  
 rum<sup>5</sup> audāciā †numquam<sup>6</sup> ante discēssum<sup>7</sup> est: dent<sup>8</sup>  
 operam<sup>6</sup> cōnsulēs, †praetōrēs,<sup>7</sup> tribūnī plēbis, quīque<sup>8</sup>  
 prō<sup>8</sup> cōnsulibus<sup>8</sup> sunt ad urbem, nē quid rēs pūblica 95  
 4 dētrimentī capiat. Haec<sup>9</sup> senātūs cōnsultō perscribun-  
 tur a. d. vii. Id. Iān. Itaque v primīs diēbus quibus  
 habēri senātus potuit, quā ex diē cōnsulātum iniit Len-  
 tulus, biduō<sup>10</sup> exceptō<sup>10</sup> comitiālī,<sup>10</sup> et dē imperiō Caesaris  
 et dē amplissimis virīs, tribūnīs plēbis, gravissimē acer- 100  
 5 bissimēque dēcernitur. Profugiunt statim ex urbe tri-  
 būnī plēbis sēsēque ad Caesarem cōferunt. Is eō  
 tempore erat Ravennae exspectābatque suis lēnissimis  
 pōstulatīs respōnsa, sī quā hominum aequitāte rēs ad  
 †ōtium<sup>11</sup> dēducī posset. 105

6. Proximīs diēbus habētur †extrā<sup>12</sup> urbem senātus.  
 Pompēius eadem illa quae per Scīpiōnem ostenderat  
 agit; senātūs virtūtem cōstantiamque<sup>13</sup> collaudat;

<sup>1</sup> i.e., the Gracchi and others who resorted to unconstitutional acts in support of their policies, but who were not seriously threatened for eight months; in contrast to these tribunes whose demands were moderate and legal, but whose lives were placed in jeopardy so soon.

<sup>2</sup> resort is had, they resort. <sup>3</sup> in which refuge has never been taken.

<sup>4</sup> the actual conflagration. <sup>5</sup> lātor, proposer (of a law). <sup>6</sup> Cf. B. G., VII.

9, 2. <sup>7</sup> praetor, a judge. <sup>8</sup> and whatever proconsuls; consuls who acted as governors of provinces. Prō cōnsulibus is used as an indeclinable noun. <sup>9</sup> these things are written out by decree of the senate on the seventh day before the Ides of January, i.e., these decrees of the senate become laws on the seventh of January. <sup>10</sup> two election days being omitted (from the seven days of January, the consuls taking office on January 1).

<sup>11</sup> ōtium, peace. <sup>12</sup> outside. <sup>13</sup> firmness.



cōpiās suās expōnit: legiōnēs habēre sēsē parātās x;<sup>2</sup>  
 110 praetereā cōgnitum compertumque sibi aliēnō esse ani-  
 mō in Caesarem militēs neque eīs posse persuādērī utī  
 eum dēfendant aut sequantur. Statim dē reliquīs rēbus  
 ad senātum refertur; tōtā Ītaliā dilēctus habeātur;  
 Faustus Sulla properē<sup>1</sup> in Maurētāniam<sup>2</sup> mittātur;  
 115 ꝑpecūnia<sup>3</sup> utī ex ꝑaerariō<sup>4</sup> Pompēiō dētur; refertur  
 etiam dē rēge Iubā, ut socius sit atque amīcus. Mar-  
 cellus cōsul passūrum in praesentia negat; dē Faustō  
 impedit Philippus, tribūnus plēbis. Dē reliquīs rēbus  
 senātūs cōsulta perscribuntur.<sup>5</sup> Prōvinciae prīvātis  
 120 dēcernuntur, duae ꝑcōnsulārēs,<sup>6</sup> reliquae praetōriae.<sup>6</sup>  
 Scīpiōnī obvenit Syria, L. Domitiō Gallia. Philippus  
 et Cotta prīvātō cōsiliō praetereuntur,<sup>7</sup> neque eōrum  
 sortēs dēiciuntur.<sup>8</sup> In reliquās prōvinciās praetōrēs  
 mittuntur. Neque exspectant, quod superiōribus annīs  
 125 acciderat, ut dē eōrum imperiō ad populum ferātur,<sup>9</sup>  
 palūdātique<sup>10</sup> vōtīs<sup>11</sup> nūcupātīs<sup>12</sup> exeunt. Cōsulēs,  
 quod ante id tempus accidit numquam, ex urbe profici-  
 scuntur, lictōrēsque<sup>13</sup> habent in urbe et Capitoliō prīvātī  
 contrā omnia vetustātis ꝑexempla.<sup>14</sup> Tōtā Ītaliā dilēc-  
 130 tūs habentur, arma imperantur, pecūniae ā ꝑmūni-  
 cipiīs<sup>15</sup> exiguntur,<sup>16</sup> ē fānīs<sup>17</sup> tolluntur, omnia ꝑdīvīna<sup>18</sup>  
 ꝑhūmānaque<sup>19</sup> iūra permīscuntur.<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> hastily. <sup>2</sup> the northwestern coast of Africa. <sup>3</sup> money. <sup>4</sup> treasury.  
<sup>5</sup> Cf. line 96. <sup>6</sup> (consular, praetorian) i.e., for the ex-consuls, for the  
 praetors. <sup>7</sup> pass over; being friends of Caesar. <sup>8</sup> draw; their names  
 were not put into the urn at all. <sup>9</sup> it be referred for ratification. <sup>10</sup> in  
 their generals' cloaks. <sup>11</sup> vow. <sup>12</sup> perform. <sup>13</sup> lictor; an official  
 attendant. <sup>14</sup> example; precedent. <sup>15</sup> mūnicipium, free town. <sup>16</sup> collect;  
 exact. <sup>17</sup> temple. <sup>18</sup> of gods; divine. <sup>19</sup> of men; human. <sup>20</sup> confuse.

## THE CAMPAIGN IN ITALY

*Caesar's speech to the thirteenth legion.*

7. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar apud mīlitēs cōn-  
tīōnātur.<sup>1</sup> Omnium temporum in iūriās inimicōrum in  
sē ꝑcommemorat;<sup>2</sup> ā quibus dēductum āc dēprāvātum<sup>3</sup> 135  
Pompēium queritur ꝑinvidiā<sup>4</sup> atque obtrēctātiōne<sup>5</sup> ꝑlau-  
dis<sup>6</sup> suae, cūius<sup>7</sup> ipse honōrī et dīgnitatī semper fāverit  
adiūtorque fuerit. Novum in rem pūblicam intrōduc-  
tum exemplum queritur, ut tribūnicia<sup>8</sup> intercēssiō<sup>9</sup>  
armīs notārētur<sup>10</sup> atque opprimerētur, quae superiōribus 140  
annīs armīs esset restitūta. Sullam nūdātā omnibus rē-  
bus tribūnicia<sup>8</sup> potestāte tamen intercēssiōnem<sup>9</sup> liberam  
reliquisse; Pompēium, quī āmissa restituisse videātur  
bona, etiam quae ante habuerint adēmisse. Quotiēns-  
cumque<sup>11</sup> sit dēcrētum, darent operam magistrātūs nē 145  
quid rēs pūblica dētrimentī caperet, quā voce et quō  
senātūs cōsultō populus Rōmānus ad arma sit vocātus,  
factum in<sup>12</sup> perniciōsīs lēgibus, in<sup>13</sup> vī tribūnicia, in sēcēs-  
siōne<sup>14</sup> populī, templīs locisque ēditōribus occupātīs;  
atque haec superiōris ꝑaetātis<sup>15</sup> exempla expiāta<sup>16</sup> Sā- 150  
turnīnī atque Gracchōrum cāsibus docet; quārum rērum  
illō tempore nihil factum, nē cōgitātum quidem [nūlla  
lēx prōmulgāta,<sup>17</sup> nōn cum populō agī coeptum, nūlla  
sēcēssiō facta]. Hortātur, cūius imperātōris ductū VIII  
annīs rem pūblicam fēlicissimē gesserint plūrimaque 155  
proelia secunda fēcerint, omnem Galliam Germāniam-

<sup>1</sup> make a speech. <sup>2</sup> (call to mind) relate. <sup>3</sup> prejudiced. <sup>4</sup> envy.  
<sup>5</sup> disparagement. <sup>6</sup> (praise) glory. <sup>7</sup> cūius = cum ēius, concessive.  
<sup>8</sup> belonging to the tribune; of the tribunes. <sup>9</sup> veto power. <sup>10</sup> (brand)  
disgrace. <sup>11</sup> as often as; whenever. <sup>12</sup> in the case of. <sup>13</sup> in the abuse  
of. <sup>14</sup> withdrawal. <sup>15</sup> age. <sup>16</sup> atone for. <sup>17</sup> propose.

que pācāverint, ut ēius exīstimātiōnem<sup>1</sup> dīgnitātemque ab inimicīs dēfendant. Conclāmant legiōnis XIII., quae aderat, militēs — hanc enim initiō †tumultūs<sup>2</sup> ēvocā-  
 160 verat, reliquae nōndum convēnerant — sēsē parātōs esse imperātōris suī tribūnōrumque plēbis iniūriās dēfendere.

*Caesar's advance. Negotiations with Pompey.*

8. Cōgnitā militum voluntāte Ariminum cum eā legiōne proficīscitur ibique tribūnōs plēbis quī ad eum cōn-  
 165 fūgerant †convenit;<sup>3</sup> reliquās<sup>4</sup> legiōnēs ex hibernīs ēvocat et subsequi iubet. Eō L. Caesar adulēscens venit, cūius<sup>5</sup> pater Caesaris erat lēgātus. Is reliquō †sermōne<sup>6</sup> cōnfectō cūius rei causā vēnerat, habēre sē ā Pompēiō ad eum prīvātī officiū<sup>6</sup> mandāta dēmōnstrat: velle Pom-  
 170 pēium sē Caesarī<sup>7</sup> pūrgātum,<sup>7</sup> nē ea quae rei pūblicae causā ēgerit in<sup>8</sup> suam contumēliam vertat.<sup>8</sup> Semper sē rei pūblicae commoda prīvātīs necessitudinibus<sup>9</sup> habuisse †potiōra.<sup>10</sup> Caesarem quoque prō suā dīgnitāte dēbēre et studium et irācundiam<sup>11</sup> suam rei<sup>12</sup> pūblicae<sup>12</sup>  
 175 dīmittere neque †adeō<sup>13</sup> graviter †irāscī<sup>14</sup> inimicīs, ut, cum illis nocēre sē spēret, rei pūblicae noceat. Pauca<sup>4</sup> ēiusdem generis addit cum excūsātiōne<sup>15</sup> Pompēiī coniūcta. Eadem ferē atque eīsdem verbīs praetor Rōscius agit cum Caesare sibi que Pompēium commemorāsse  
 180 dēmōnstrat.

9. Quae rēs etsi nihil ad †levandās<sup>16</sup> iniūriās pertinēre

<sup>1</sup> reputation; honor. <sup>2</sup> disturbance. <sup>3</sup> meet, B. G., I. 27, 2. <sup>4</sup> eight in number. <sup>5</sup> sermō, ōnis, m., conversation. <sup>6</sup> nature. <sup>7</sup> clear, justified in Caesar's sight. B. G., I. 28, 1. <sup>8</sup> take as a personal insult. <sup>9</sup> relationship. <sup>10</sup> comparative of potis (indeclinable), strong. <sup>11</sup> anger. <sup>12</sup> in the interest of, etc. <sup>13</sup> to such a degree; so. <sup>14</sup> irāscor, āri, irātus sum, grow angry. <sup>15</sup> justification. <sup>16</sup> lighten.

vidēbantur, tamen idōneōs nactus hominēs per quōs ea quae vellet ad eum perferrentur, petit ab utrōque, quoniam Pompēi mandāta ad sē dētulerint, nē graventur sua quoque ad eum pōstulāta dēferre, sī parvō labōre <sup>185</sup> māgnās contrōversiās tollere atque omnem Italiam <sup>2</sup> metū liberāre possint. Sibi semper primam fuisse dignitatem<sup>1</sup> vitāque potiōrem. Doluisse sē quod populī Rōmānī beneficium sibi per<sup>2</sup> contumēliam<sup>2</sup> ab inimicis extorqueretur<sup>3</sup> ēreptōque sēmēstri<sup>4</sup> imperiō in urbem <sup>190</sup> retraheretur, cūius absentis ratiōnem habērī proximīs <sup>3</sup> comitiīs<sup>5</sup> populus iūssisset. Tamen hanc iacturam<sup>6</sup> honōris suī rei pūblicae causā aequō animō tulisse; cum litterās ad senātum mīserit, ut omnēs ab exercitibus dis- <sup>4</sup> cēderent, nē id quidem impetrāvisse. Tōtā Italiā dilēc- <sup>195</sup> tūs habērī, retinērī legiōnēs 11, quae ab sē simulatiōne Parthici bellī sint abductae, civitatem esse in armīs. Quōnam haec omnia nisi ad suam ꝑerniciem<sup>7</sup> pertinēre? <sup>5</sup> Sed tamen ad omnia sē dēscendere<sup>8</sup> parātum atque omnia patī rei pūblicae causā. Proficiscātur<sup>9</sup> Pompēius <sup>200</sup> in suās prōvinciās, ipsī exercitūs dīmittant, discēdant in Italiā omnēs ab armīs, metus ē civitate tollātur, libera comitia atque omnis rēs pūblica senātui populōque Rō- <sup>6</sup> mānō permittātur. Haec quō facilius certisque condiciōnibus fiant et iūre iūrandō ꝑsanciantur,<sup>10</sup> aut ipse <sup>205</sup> propius accēdat aut sē patiātur accēdere; fore utī per colloquia omnēs contrōversiae compōnantur.<sup>11</sup>

10. Acceptis mandātis Rōscius cum Caesare Capuam

<sup>1</sup> supply rei pūblicae. <sup>2</sup> *insultingly*. <sup>3</sup> *wrest*. <sup>4</sup> *six months*. <sup>5</sup> *plu., election*. <sup>6</sup> *loss*. <sup>7</sup> *perniciēs, ēi, destruction*. <sup>8</sup> (descend) *resort*. <sup>9</sup> *That Pompey should, etc.* Dir. dis. *proficiscere* . . . nōs dīmittāmus . . . discēdant omnēs, etc. <sup>10</sup> *sancio, ire, sanxi, sanctum, (ordain) ratify*.

<sup>11</sup> *settle*.

pervenit ibique cōsulēs Pompēiumque īnvenit;<sup>1</sup> pō-  
 210 stulāta Caesaris renūntiat. Illi dēlībērātā rē respondent  
 †scriptaque<sup>2</sup> ad eum mandāta per eōsdem remittunt,  
 quōrum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam rever-  
 3 terētur, Arīminō excēderet, exercitūs dīmitteret; quae  
 sī fēcisset, Pompēium in Hispāniās itūrum. Intereā,  
 215 quoad fidēs esset data Caesarem factūrum quae pollicerē-  
 tur, nōn intermissūrōs cōsulēs Pompēiumque dīlēcītūs.

*The unfairness of Pompey's terms leads Caesar to advance further.*

II. Erat inīqua condiciō pōstulāre, ut Caesar Arī-  
 minō excēderet atque in prōvinciam reverterētur, ipsum  
 et prōvinciās et legiōnēs aliēnās tenēre; exercitum  
 220 Caesaris velle dīmittī, dīlēcītūs habēre; pollicērī sē in  
 prōvinciam itūrum neque ante quem diem itūrus sit  
 dēfīnīre, ut, sī perāctō cōsulātū Caesaris nōn profec-  
 tus esset, nūllā tamen mendāciū<sup>3</sup> †religiōne<sup>4</sup> obstrictus<sup>5</sup>  
 viderētur; tempus vērō colloquiō nōn dare neque accēs-  
 225 sūrum pollicērī māgnam pācis dēspērātiōnem<sup>6</sup> adferē-  
 bat. Itaque ab Arīminō M. Antōnium cum cohortibus  
 4 v Arrētium mittit; ipse Arīminī cum duābus subsistit  
 ibique dīlēcītum habēre instituit; Pisaurum, Fanum,  
 Ancōnam singulīs cohortibus occupat.

12. Intereā certior factus Īguvium Thermum prae-  
 230 tōrem cohortibus v tenēre, oppidum mūnīre, omnium-  
 que esse Īguvinōrum optimam ergā sē voluntātem,  
 Cūriōnem cum tribus cohortibus quās Pisaurī et Arī-  
 minī habēbat mittit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō diffīsus<sup>7</sup>  
 235 mūnicipiī voluntātī Thermēs cohortēs ex urbe redūcit

<sup>1</sup> find. <sup>2</sup> scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum, write. <sup>3</sup> about lying; gen.  
<sup>4</sup> scruple. <sup>5</sup> bound. <sup>6</sup> despair. <sup>7</sup> distrust.

et profugit. Milites in itinere ab eo discēdunt ac domum revertuntur. Cūriō summā omnium voluntate Iguvium recipit. Quibus rebus cōgnitis cōfīsus mūnicipiōrum voluntatibus Caesar cohortēs legiōnis XIII. ex praesidiis dēdūcit Auximumque proficiscitur; 240 quod oppidum Attius cohortibus intrōductis tenēbat dīlētumque tōtō Picēnō circummissis senātōribus habēbat.

13. Adventū Caesaris cōgnitō decuriōnēs<sup>1</sup> Auximī ad Attium Vārum †frequentēs<sup>2</sup> conveniunt; docent suū 245 iūdicī rem nōn esse; neque sē neque reliquōs mūnicipēs<sup>3</sup> patī posse C. Caesarem imperātōrem, bene dē rē publicā meritum, tantis rebus gestis oppidō moenibusque prohibērī: proinde habeat ratiōnem posteritātis et perīculi suī. Quōrum ōratiōne permōtus Vārus praesidium 250 quod intrōdūxerat ex oppidō ēdūcit ac profugit. Hunc ex primō ōrdine pauci Caesaris cōnsecūtī milites cōnsistere coēgērunt. Commissō proeliō dēseritur ā suis Vārus, nōn nūlla pars militum domum discēdit; reliquī ad Caesarem perveniunt, atque unā cum eis dēprēnsus 255 L. Pūpius, primī pilī centuriō, addūcitur, quī hunc eundem ōrdinem in exercitū Cn. Pompēiī antea dūxerat. 5 Caesar milites Attiānōs collaudat, Pūpiū dīmīttit, Auximātibus agit grātiās sēque eōrum facti memorem<sup>4</sup> fore pollicētur. 260

*Panic at Rome.*

14. Quibus rebus Rōmam nūntiātis tantus repente terror invāsīt<sup>5</sup> ut, cum Lentulus cōnsul ad aperiendum

<sup>1</sup>The name applied to members of the senate in the free towns (mūnicipia) and colonies. <sup>2</sup>adjective, translated *in great numbers*. <sup>3</sup>inhabitants (of a mūnicipium). <sup>4</sup>mindful; with gen. <sup>5</sup>invade, seize.

aerarium<sup>1</sup> vēnisset ad pecūniamque Pompēiō tēx<sup>2</sup> senātus cōsultō †prōferendam,<sup>3</sup> prōtinus apertō sanctiōre<sup>4</sup>  
 265 aerariō ex urbe profugeret. Caesar enim adventāre<sup>5</sup> iam iamque et adesse ēius equitēs falsō nūntiābantur. Hunc Marcellus collēga<sup>6</sup> et plērīque magistrātūs cōnsecūtī sunt. Cn. Pompēius prīdiē ēius diēi ex urbe  
 270 profectus iter ad legiōnēs habēbat, quās ā Caesare acceptās in Āpuliā hibernōrum causā disposuerat. Dīlēc-  
 tūs circā urbem intermittuntur; nihil citrā Capuam tūtum esse omnibus vidētur. Capuae prīmum sēsē cōnfīrmant et †colligunt<sup>7</sup> dīlētumque colōnōrum quī lēge Iuliā Capuam dēductī erant habēre instituunt;  
 275 gladiātōrēsque, quōs ibi Caesar in †lūdō<sup>8</sup> habēbat, ad forum prōductōs Lentulus libertātis spē cōnfīrmat atque hīs equōs attribuit et sē sequī iūssit; quōs postea, mo-  
 nitus ab suis, quod ea rēs omnium iūdiciō reprehendēbatur, circum familiārēs<sup>9</sup> conventūs<sup>10</sup> Campāniae  
 280 cūstōdiae<sup>11</sup> causā distribuit.

*Caesar's progress southward.*

15. Auximō Caesar prōgressus omnem agrum Picēnum percurrit. †Cūnctae<sup>12</sup> eārum regiōnum praefectūrae<sup>13</sup> †libentissimīs<sup>14</sup> animīs eum recipiunt exercitumque ēius omnibus rēbus iuvant. Etiam Cingulō, quod  
 285 oppidum Labiēnus cōstituerat suāque pecūniā exaedicāverat, ad eum lēgātī veniunt quaeque imperāverit

<sup>1</sup> treasury. <sup>2</sup> see note on *ex*, line 3. <sup>3</sup> bring out. <sup>4</sup> participle of *sanciō* (see 9, 6); *sacred*. <sup>5</sup> strong form of *adveniō*. <sup>6</sup> colleague. <sup>7</sup> *colligō*, *ere*, *lēgī*, *lētum*, *collect*. <sup>8</sup> *lūdus*, *school*, i.e., *training*. <sup>9</sup> (*his*) *friends*. <sup>10</sup> *association*; a name applied to the societies somewhat like corporations, formed to encourage trade and commerce. <sup>11</sup> *confinement*. <sup>12</sup> *all*. <sup>13</sup> *prefectures*; towns governed by a prefect. <sup>14</sup> from pres. part. of *libet*, *it pleases*; participle, *willing*.

sē cupidissimē factūrōs pollicentur. Militēs imperat:  
 3 mittunt. Intereā legiō XII. Caesarem cōsequitur.  
 Cum hīs duābus Asculum Picēnum proficiscitur. Id  
 oppidum Lentulus Spinther x cohortibus tenēbat; quī 290  
 Caesaris adventū cōgnitō profugit ex oppidō cohortēs-  
 que sēcum abducere cōnātus māgnā parte militum dē-  
 4 seritur. Relictus in itinere cum paucīs incidit in  
 Vibullium Rūfum missum ā Pompēiō in agrum Picēnum  
 cōnfirmandōrum hominum causā. Ā quō factus Vi- 295  
 bullius certior quae rēs in Picēnō gererentur, militēs ab  
 5 eō accipit, ipsum dimittit. Item ex finitimīs regiōnibus  
 quās potest contrāhit cohortēs ex dilēctibus Pompēiānis;  
 in hīs Camerīnō fugientem Lūciliū Hirrum cum sex  
 cohortibus, quās ibi in praesidiō habuerat, excipit; quibus 300  
 6 coāctīs XIII efficit. Cum hīs ad Domitium Ahēno-  
 barbum Corfinium māgnīs itineribus pervenit Caesarem-  
 7 que adesse cum legiōnibus duābus nūntiat. Domitius  
 per sē circiter xx cohortēs Albā ex Marsīs et Paelignīs  
 finitimīs ab regiōnibus coēgerat. 305

16. Receptō Fīrmō expulsōque Lentulō Caesar con-  
 quīrī militēs quī ab eō discēsserant, dilēctumque in-  
 stituī iubet; ipse ūnum diem ibi rei frūmentāriae causā  
 2 morātus Corfinium contendit. Eō cum vēnisset, co-  
 hortēs v praemissae ā Domitiō ex oppidō pontem flūmi- 310  
 nis interrumpēbant, quī erat ab oppidō milia passuum  
 3 circiter III. Ibi cum antecursōribus Caesaris proeliō  
 commissō celeriter Domitiānī ā ponte repulsī sē in oppi-  
 4 dum recēpērunt. Caesar legiōnibus trāductīs ad oppi-  
 dum cōstitit iūxtāque<sup>1</sup> mūrū castra posuit. 315

<sup>1</sup> close to, near.



*The siege of Corfinium.*

17. Rē cōgnitā Domitius ad Pompēium in Āpūliam peritōs regiōnum māgnō prōpositō praemiō cum litterīs mittit quī petant atque ōrent ut sibi subveniat:<sup>1</sup> Caesarem duōbus exercitibus et locōrum angustīis facile inter-  
 320 clūdī posse frūmentōque prohibērī. Quod nisi fēcerit, sē cohortēsque amplius xxx māgnūque numerum senātōrum atque equitum Rōmānōrum in periculum esse ventūrum. Interim suōs cohortātus tormenta<sup>2</sup> in mūrīs  
 325 attribuit; militibus in cōtiōne agrōs ex suīs possessionibus pollicētur, xl in singulōs iugera<sup>3</sup> et prō<sup>4</sup> ratā<sup>4</sup> parte<sup>4</sup> centuriōnibus ēvocātisque.

18. Interim Caesarī nūntiātur Sulmōnēsēs, quod oppidum ā Corfiniō vii milium intervallō abest, cupere  
 330 ea facere quae vellet, sed ā Q. Lūcrētiō senātōre et Attiō Paelignō prohibērī, quī id oppidum vii cohortium praesidiō tenēbant. Mittit eō M. Antōnium cum legiōnis xiii. cohortibus v. Sulmōnēsēs simul atque signa  
 335 oppidānī et militēs, obviam<sup>5</sup> gratulantēs<sup>6</sup> Antōniō exiērunt. Lūcrētius et Attius dē mūrō sē dēiēcērunt.<sup>3</sup> Attius ad Antōnium dēductus petit ut ad Caesarem mitterētur. Antōnius cum cohortibus et Attiō eōdem diē quō profectus erat revertitur. Caesar eas cohortes  
 340 tēs cum exercitū suō coniūxit Attiumque incolumem dīmisit.

<sup>1</sup> *come to aid.* <sup>2</sup> *engine* of war, corresponding roughly to modern artillery. <sup>3</sup> A measure of land about two-thirds of an acre. <sup>4</sup> (in accordance with a determined part) *proportionally*. We use the phrase "pro rata" in English in this sense. <sup>5</sup> *opposite*; an adverb, with dative. Antōniō; translate, *to meet*. <sup>6</sup> *congratulate*.

Caesar primis diebus castra magnis operibus munire et ex finitimis municipiis frumentum comportare reli-  
 5 quasque copias expectare instituit. Eo triduo legio  
 VIII. ad eum venit cohortesque ex novis Galliae dilecti- 345  
 bus XXII equitesque ab rege Norico circiter ccc. Quo-  
 rum adventu altera castra ad alteram oppidi partem  
 6 ponit; his castris Curiōnem praefecit. Reliquis die-  
 bus oppidum vallō castellisque circumvenire instituit.  
 Cuius operis maximā parte effectā eodem ferē tempore 350  
 missi ad Pompeium revertuntur.

*Pompey refuses to send relief. The soldiers of Domitius mutiny.*

19. Litteris perlēctis<sup>1</sup> Domitius dissimulāns<sup>2</sup> in cōn-  
 siliō prōnūtiat Pompeium celeriter subsidiō ventūrum  
 hortaturque eos nē animō dēficient quaeque ūsuī ad  
 2 dēfendendum oppidum sint parent. Ipse arcānō<sup>3</sup> cum 355  
 paucis familiāribus suis colloquitur cōnsiliumque fugae  
 3 capere cōstituit. Cum vultus<sup>4</sup> Domitiī cum orātiōne  
 nōn cōsentiret atque omnia trepidantius<sup>5</sup> timidiusque  
 ageret quam superiōribus diebus cōsuēssset, multumque  
 cum suis cōsiliandī<sup>6</sup> causā sēcrētō<sup>7</sup> praeter cōsuētū- 360  
 dinem colloqueretur, concilia conventūsque hominum  
 fugeret, rēs diūtius tegī<sup>8</sup> dissimulārīque nōn potuit.  
 4 Pompeius enim rescripserat sēsē rem in summum perī-  
 culum dēductūrum nōn esse, neque suō cōnsiliō aut  
 voluntāte Domitium sē in oppidum Corfinium con- 365  
 tulisse: proinde, si qua fuisset facultās, ad sē cum  
 5 omnibus copiis venīret. Id nē<sup>9</sup> fieri posset, obsidiōne  
 atque oppidi circummūnitiōne fīebat.

<sup>1</sup> read through; examine with care. <sup>2</sup> disguising the truth. <sup>3</sup> in secret.

<sup>4</sup> vultus, ūs, expression (on the face). <sup>5</sup> hurriedly. <sup>6</sup> from cōnsilium. <sup>7</sup> in secret, secretly. <sup>8</sup> tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctum, cover. <sup>9</sup> The main clause expresses the idea of preventing, so that nē is used as the introductory word.

20. Divulgātō<sup>1</sup> Domitiī cōsiliō militēs quī erant  
 370 Corfīniū primō vesperī sēcēssiōnem<sup>2</sup> faciunt<sup>3</sup> atque ita  
 inter sē per tribūnum militum centuriōnēsque atque  
 ꝥhonestissimōs<sup>3</sup> suī generis colloquuntur: ꝥobsidēri<sup>4</sup> sē  
 ā Caesare; opera mūnitiōnēsque prope esse perfectās;  
 ducem suum Domitium, cūius spē atque fidūciā per-  
 375 mānserint, prōiectis omnibus fugae cōsiliū capere;  
 dēbere sē suae salūtis ratiōnem habēre. Ab hīs primō  
 Marsī dissentīre incipiunt eamque oppidī partem quae  
 mūnitissima vidērētur occupant, tantaque inter eōs dis-  
 sēnsiō exsistit ut manum<sup>5</sup> cōnserere<sup>5</sup> atque armīs dīmi-  
 380 cāre cōnentur; post paulō tamen internūntiīs ūltrō<sup>6</sup>  
 citrōque<sup>7</sup> missis, quae ignōrābant dē L. Domitiī fugā  
 cōgnōscunt. Itaque omnēs ūnō cōsiliō Domitium prō-  
 ductum in pūblicum circumsistunt et cūstōdiunt<sup>8</sup> lēgā-  
 tōsque ex suō numerō ad Caesarem mittunt: sēsē  
 385 parātōs esse portās aperīre quaeque imperāverit facere  
 et L. Domitium vīvum in eiūs potestātem trādere.

21. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar, etsī māgnī<sup>9</sup> ꝥin-  
 teresse<sup>9</sup> arbitrābātur quam primum oppidō potīri  
 cohortēsque ad sē in castra trādūcere, nē qua aut lar-  
 390 gitiōnibus<sup>10</sup> aut animī cōnfīrmatiōne<sup>11</sup> aut falsis nūntiīs  
 commūtātiō fieret voluntātis, quod saepe in bellō par-  
 vīs mōmentis<sup>12</sup> māgnī cāsūs intercēderent, tamen veritus  
 nē militum introitū<sup>13</sup> et nocturnī temporis licentiā oppi-  
 dum ꝥdiriperētur,<sup>14</sup> eōs quī vēnerant collaudat atque in  
 395 oppidum dīmittit, portās, mūrōsque asservārī iubet.

<sup>1</sup> *divulge, spread abroad.* <sup>2</sup> (make a going apart) *hold a conference by themselves.* <sup>3</sup> *honorable.* <sup>4</sup> *ob-sideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, besiege.* <sup>5</sup> *engage in battle.* <sup>6</sup> *back.* <sup>7</sup> *forth.* <sup>8</sup> *guard.* <sup>9</sup> *to be of great importance; pred. gen. of price.* <sup>10</sup> *acts of bribery.* <sup>11</sup> *Cf. formation.* <sup>12</sup> (for *movimentis*, movements) *impulses.* <sup>13</sup> *entrance.* <sup>14</sup> *dī-ripiō, ere, ripuī, repton, plunder.*

3 Ipse in eīs operibus quae facere instituerat milites disponit, non certis spatiis intermissis, ut erat superiorum dierum consuetudo, sed perpetuis vigiliis stationibusque, ut contingant<sup>1</sup> inter se atque omnem munitionem  
 4 expleant; tribunos militum et praefectos circummittit<sup>400</sup> atque hortatur non solum ab eruptionibus caveant sed etiam singulorum hominum occultos exitus asservent.<sup>2</sup>  
 5 Neque vero tam remisso ac languido animo quisquam  
 6 omnium fuit qui ea nocte conquieverit.<sup>3</sup> Tanta erat summae rerum expectatio ut alius<sup>4</sup> in aliam partem<sup>405</sup> mente atque animo traheretur, quid ipsis Corfiniensibus, quid Domitio, quid Lentulo, quid reliquis accideret, qui quosque eventus exciperent.

*Caesar's treatment of the prisoners.*

22. Quartam vigiliam circiter Lentulus Spinther de muro cum vigiliis custodibusque nostris colloquitur: velle, si<sup>410</sup>  
 2 sibi fiat potestas, Caesarem convenire. Facta potestate ex oppido mittitur, neque ab eo prius Domitiani milites discunt quam in conspectum Caesaris deducantur.  
 3 Cum eo de salute sua orat atque obsecrat<sup>5</sup> ut sibi parcat<sup>6</sup> veteremque amicitiam commemorat Caesarisque in se<sup>415</sup>  
 4 beneficia exponit, quae erant maxima: quod per eum in collegium<sup>7</sup> pontificum<sup>8</sup> venerat, quod provinciam Hispaniam ex<sup>9</sup> praetura<sup>10</sup> habuerat, quod in petitione<sup>11</sup> consulatus erat sublevatus.<sup>12</sup> Cuius orationem Caesar interpellat:<sup>13</sup> se non malefici causam ex provincia egressum<sup>420</sup>  
 sed uti se a contumeliis inimicorum defenderet, ut tri-

<sup>1</sup> touch. <sup>2</sup> watch. <sup>3</sup> con-quiēscō, ere, ēvi, ētum, rest, sleep. <sup>4</sup> one in one direction, another in another; cf. B. G., II. 24, 3, where alii was used instead of alius. <sup>5</sup> beseech. <sup>6</sup> spare. <sup>7</sup> board. <sup>8</sup> of pontifices, the priests of the Roman religion. <sup>9</sup> after. <sup>10</sup> praetorship. <sup>11</sup> canvass. <sup>12</sup> help. <sup>13</sup> interrupt.

būnōs plēbis in eā rē ex cīvitātē expulsōs in suam dīgnitātē restitueret, ut sē et populum Rōmānum factiōne<sup>1</sup> paucōrum oppressum in libertātē vindicāret.<sup>2</sup> Cūius  
 425 ōrātiōne cōfirmātus Lentulus ut in oppidum revertī liceat petit: quod dē suā salūte impetrāverit fore etiam reliquīs ad suam spem sōlāciō;<sup>3</sup> adeō esse perterritōs nōn nullōs ut suae vītāe dūrius cōsulere cōgantur. Factā potestāte discēdit.

430 23. Caesar, ubi lūxit,<sup>4</sup> omnēs senātōrēs senātōrumque liberōs, tribūnōs mīlitum equitēsque Rōmānōs ad sē prōdūcī iubet. Erant quīnque senātōrii ōrdinis, L. Domitius, P. Lentulus Spinther, L. Caecilius Rūfus, Sex. Quīntilius Vārus quaestor, L. Rubrius; praetereā  
 435 fīlius Domitiī aliīque complūrēs adulēscentēs et māgnus numerus equitum Rōmānōrum et decuriōnum,<sup>5</sup> quōs ex mūnicipiīs Domitius ēvocāverat. Hōs omnēs prōduc-  
 tōs ā contumēliīs mīlitum convīciūsque<sup>6</sup> prohibet; pauca apud eōs loquitur, quod sibi ā<sup>7</sup> parte eōrum<sup>7</sup> grātia relā-  
 440 ta nōn sit prō suis in eōs māximīs beneficiīs; dīmittit omnēs incolumēs. HS<sup>8</sup> LX,<sup>8</sup> quod advexerat Domitius  
 atque in pūblicō<sup>9</sup> dēposuerat, allātum ad sē ab IIII virīs<sup>10</sup> Corfīniēnsibus,<sup>10</sup> Domitiō reddit, nē continentior<sup>11</sup> in vītā hominum quam in pecūniā fuisse videātur, etsī eam  
 445 pecūniā pūblicā esse cōnstābat datamque ā Pompēiō in stīpendium.<sup>12</sup> Mīlitēs Domitiānōs sacrāmen-  
 tum<sup>13</sup> apud sē dīcere<sup>13</sup> iubet atque eō diē castra movet tīustumque<sup>14</sup> iter cōnficit, VII omnīnō diēs ad Corfīnium

<sup>1</sup> Cf. formation. <sup>2</sup> (claim) restore. <sup>3</sup> comfort; dative. <sup>4</sup> be light.

<sup>5</sup> See line 244. <sup>6</sup> taunt. <sup>7</sup> on their part. <sup>8</sup> abbreviation for *sestertium sexāgiēs centēna mīlia*, sixty times a hundred thousand *sestertii*, about \$300,000. <sup>9</sup> supply *aerāriō*, treasury. <sup>10</sup> the four representative men of *Corfinium*. <sup>11</sup> self-restrained. <sup>12</sup> the soldiers' pay. <sup>13</sup> take the military oath (of enlistment). <sup>14</sup> (just) regular.

commorātus, et per finēs Marrūcīnōrum, Frentānōrum, Lārīnātium in Āpūliam pervenit.

450

*Pompey hastens to Brundisium.*

24. Pompēius hīs rēbus cōgnītīs, quae erant ad Corfinium gestae, Lūceriā proficiscitur Canusium atque inde  
 2 Brundisium. Cōpiās undique omnēs ex novīs dīlēc-  
 tibus ad sē cōgī iubet; †servōs,<sup>1</sup> pāstōrēs<sup>2</sup> armat atque  
 eīs equōs attribuit; ex hīs circiter ccc equitēs cōnficit. 455  
 3 L. Manlius praetor Albā cum cohortibus sex profugit,  
 Rutilius Lupus praetor Tarracīnā cum tribus; quae  
 procul equitātum Caesaris cōspicātae, cui praeerat  
 Vibius Curius, relictō praetōre sīgna ad Curium trāns-  
 4 ferunt atque ad eum trānseunt. Item reliquīs itineri- 460  
 bus nōn nūllae cohortēs in āgmen Caesaris, aliae in  
 equitēs incidunt. Redūcitur ad eum dēprēnsus ex  
 itinere N. Magius Cremōna, praefectus fabrum<sup>3</sup> Cn.  
 5 Pompēiī. Quem Caesar ad eum remittit cum mandātīs:  
 quoniam ad id tempus facultās colloquendī nōn fuerit 465  
 atque ipse Brundisium sit ventūrus, interesse rei pū-  
 blicae et commūnis salūtis sē cum Pompēiō colloquī;  
 neque vērō idem prōfici longō itineris spatiō, cum per  
 aliōs condiciōnēs ferantur, āc<sup>4</sup> sī cōram dē omnibus con-  
 diciōnibus disceptētur.<sup>5</sup>

470

*Efforts of Caesar to blockade Pompey.*

25. Hīs datīs mandātīs Brundisium cum legiōnibus  
 vi pervenit, veterānīs iii et reliquīs, quās ex novō dī-  
 lēctū cōnfēcerať atque in itinere complēverat; Domi-  
 tiānās enim cohortēs prōtinus ā Corfiniō in Siciliam  
 2 mīserat. Repperit cōsulēs Dyrrachium profectōs cum 475

<sup>1</sup> slave. <sup>2</sup> shepherd. <sup>3</sup> workman, mechanic; gen. <sup>4</sup> as. <sup>5</sup> settle.

māgnā parte exercitūs, Pompēium remanēre Brundisiū cum cohortibus xx; neque certum invenīri poterat, 3  
 obtinendīne Brundisiū causā ibi remānsisset, quō facilius omne Hadriaticum mare ex<sup>1</sup> ūltimis Ītaliae parti-  
 480 bus regiōnibusque Graeciae in potestāte habēret atque ex utrāque parte bellum administrāre posset, an inopiā nāvium ibi restitisset; veritusque nē ille Ītaliā dimit- 4  
 tendam nōn exīstimāret exitūs administrātiōnēsque<sup>2</sup> Brundisiīnī portūs impedire instituit. Quōrum operum 5  
 485 haec erat ratiō: quā †faucēs<sup>3</sup> erant angustissimae portūs, \*mōlēs<sup>4</sup> atque aggerem<sup>5</sup> ab utrāque parte litoris iaciēbat, quod hīs locis erat vadōsum<sup>6</sup> mare. Longius 6  
 prōgressus, cum agger altiōre aquā continēri nōn posset, ratēs duplicēs quōquō<sup>7</sup> versus<sup>7</sup> pedum xxx ē<sup>8</sup> regiōne<sup>8</sup>  
 490 mōlis collocābat. Hās quaternīs<sup>9</sup> ancorīs ex IIII angu- 7  
 lis<sup>10</sup> dēstinābat,<sup>11</sup> nē flūctibus movērentur. Hīs perfec- 8  
 tīs collocātisque aliās deinceps<sup>12</sup> parī māgnitūdine ratēs iungēbat. Hās terrā atque aggere integēbat, nē aditus 9  
 atque incursus ad dēfendendum impedīrētur; ā fronte  
 495 atque ab utrōque latere crātibus<sup>13</sup> āc pluteīs<sup>14</sup> prōtegē-  
 bat; in quārtā quāque eārum turrēs bīnōrum tabulā- 10  
 tōrum<sup>15</sup> excitābat, quō commodius ab impetū nāvium incendiis-  
 que dēfenderet.

26. Contrā haec Pompēius nāvēs<sup>16</sup> māgnās \*onerā-  
 500 riās,<sup>16</sup> quās in portū Brundisiīnō dēprēnderat, adornā-  
 bat.<sup>17</sup> Ibi turrēs cum ternēs tabulātīs ērigēbat<sup>18</sup> eāsque  
 multīs tormentīs<sup>19</sup> et omnī genere tēlōrum complētās ad

<sup>1</sup> (by conducting operations) from. <sup>2</sup> free use. <sup>3</sup> faucēs, ium, f., (throat, jaws) entrance. <sup>4</sup> mōlēs, is, f., dyke, of stone. <sup>5</sup> earth, small stones, etc. <sup>6</sup> shallow. <sup>7</sup> (turned any way, i.e., in each dimension) square. <sup>8</sup> in a line with. <sup>9</sup> four each; distributive adj. <sup>10</sup> corner. <sup>11</sup> hold in place. <sup>12</sup> in succession. <sup>13</sup> wickerwork. <sup>14</sup> breastworks. <sup>15</sup> story. <sup>16</sup> (ships of burden, onus) transports. <sup>17</sup> equip. <sup>18</sup> erect. <sup>19</sup> engine.

opera Caesaris appellēbat, ut ratēs perrumperet atque opera disturbāret. Sic cotīdiē utrimque ēminus<sup>1</sup> fundīs, sagittīs reliquīsque tēlis pūgnābātur. Atque haec Caesar ita administrābat, ut condiōnēs pācis dīmīttendās nōn exīstimāret; ac t̄tametsī<sup>2</sup> māgnopere admīrābātur Magium, quem ad Pompēium cum mandātīs mīserat, ad sē nōn remittī, atque ea rēs saepe temptāta etsī impetūs ēius cōsiliaque tardābat, tamen omnibus rē-  
bus in eō persevērandum putābat. Itaque Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum, familiārem necessāriumque Scribōnī Libōnis, mittit ad eum colloquī causā; mandat ut Libōnem dē conciliandā pāce hortētur; in primīs ut ipse cum Pompēiō colloquerētur pōstulat; māgnopere sēsē  
cōnfīdere dēmōnstrat, sī ēius rei sit potestās facta, fore ut aequīs condiōnibus ab armīs discēdātur; cūius rei māgnam partem laudis atque exīstimātiōnis<sup>3</sup> ad Libōnem perventūram, sī illō t̄tauctōre<sup>4</sup> atque agente ab armīs sit discēssum. Libō ā colloquīō Canīnī dīgres-  
sus ad Pompēium proficiscitur. Paulō post renūntiat, quod cōnsulēs absint, sine illīs nōn posse agī dē compositiōne.<sup>5</sup> Ita saepius rem frūstrā temptātam Caesar aliquandō dīmīttendam sibi iūdicat et dē bellō agendum.

*Pompey's counter efforts. Caesar still strives for peace.*

27. Prope dīmīdiā<sup>6</sup> parte operis ā Caesare effectā diēbusque in eā rē cōnsūptīs VIII, nāvēs ā cōnsulibus Dyrrachiō remissae, quae priōrem partem exercitūs eō dēportāverant, Brundisium revertuntur. Pompēius, sīve operibus Caesaris permōtus sīve etiam quod ab initiō Italiā excēdere cōstituerat, adventū nāvium

<sup>1</sup> at a distance.    <sup>2</sup> although.    <sup>3</sup> esteem.    <sup>4</sup> promoter.    <sup>5</sup> settlement.

<sup>6</sup> half; adj.



profectiōnem parāre incipit et, quō facilius impetum  
 Caesaris tardāret, nē sub<sup>1</sup> ipsā<sup>1</sup> profectiōne militēs oppi-  
 dum irrumperent, portās obstruit,<sup>2</sup> vicōs<sup>3</sup> plateāsque<sup>3</sup>  
 inaedificat,<sup>3</sup> fossās transversās<sup>4</sup> viīs praedūcit<sup>5</sup> atque  
 535 ibi sudēs<sup>6</sup> stīpitēsque praeacūtōs dēfigit. Haec levibus  
 crātibus<sup>7</sup> terrāque inaequat;<sup>8</sup> aditūs autem atque iti-  
 nera duo, quae extrā mūrū ad portū ferēbant, māxi-  
 mīs dēfixīs trabibus atque eīs praeacūtīs praesaepit.<sup>9</sup>  
 Hīs parātīs rēbus militēs silentiō nāvēs cōnscendere  
 540 iubet, expeditōs autem ex ēvocātīs, sagittāriīs<sup>10</sup> fundi-  
 tōribusque<sup>11</sup> rārōs in mūrō turribusque dispōnit. Hōs  
 certō signō revocāre cōstituit, cum omnēs militēs nāvēs  
 cōnscendissent, atque eīs expeditō locō āctuāria<sup>12</sup> nā-  
 vigia relinquit.

545 28. Brundisīnī Pompēiānōrum militum iniuriīs atque  
 ipsiūs Pompēiī contumēliīs permōtī Caesaris rēbus favē-  
 bant. Itaque cōgnitā Pompēiī profectiōne concursanti-  
 bus illīs atque in eā rē occupātīs vulgō ex tēctīs<sup>13</sup>  
 significābant. Per quōs rē cōgnitā Caesar scālās<sup>14</sup> pa-  
 550 rārī militēsque armārī iubet, nē quam rei gerendae fa-  
 cultātem dīmittat. Pompēius sub noctem nāvēs<sup>15</sup> solvit.<sup>15</sup>  
 Quī erant in mūrō tēcūdīae<sup>16</sup> causā collocātī eō signō  
 quod convēnerat revocantur nōtīsque itineribus ad  
 nāvēs dēcurrunt. Militēs positīs scālīs mūrōs āscen-  
 555 dunt, sed monitī ā Brundisīnīs ut vāllum<sup>17</sup> caecum<sup>18</sup> fos-  
 sāsque caveant subsistunt<sup>19</sup> et longō itinere ab hīs  
 circumductī ad portū perveniunt duāsque nāvēs cum

<sup>1</sup> right at the time of. <sup>2</sup> blockade. <sup>3</sup> barricades sections of the city  
 and streets. <sup>4</sup> across, at right angles to. <sup>5</sup> construct. <sup>6</sup> stakes and  
 sharpen tree trunks. <sup>7</sup> wickerwork. <sup>8</sup> level. <sup>9</sup> blockade. <sup>10</sup> archer.  
<sup>11</sup> slinger. <sup>12</sup> swift. <sup>13</sup> (part. of tegō); house. <sup>14</sup> ladder. <sup>15</sup> (loose  
 the ships) set sail. <sup>16</sup> watching. <sup>17</sup> palisade. <sup>18</sup> (blind) hidden.  
<sup>19</sup> halt.

militibus, quae ad mōlēs Caesaris adhaeserant,<sup>1</sup> scaphīs lintribusque reprehendunt,<sup>2</sup> reprehēnsās excipiunt.<sup>3</sup>

*Caesar's reasons for not pursuing Pompey.*

29. Caesar etsī ad<sup>4</sup> spem<sup>4</sup> cōficiendī negōtiī māximē 560 probābat coāctīs nāvibus mare trānsīre et Pompēium sequī prius quam ille sēsē trānsmarinīs auxiliīs cōfirmāret, tamen ēius rei moram temporisque longinquitātem timēbat, quod omnibus coāctīs nāvibus Pompēius prae-  
 2 sentem facultātem īnsequendī suī adēmerat. Relin- 565 quēbātur ut ex longinquiōribus regiōnibus Galliae Picēnique et ā fretō<sup>5</sup> nāvēs essent exspectandae. Id propter annī tempus longum atque impeditum vidē-  
 3 bātur. Intereā veterem exercitum,<sup>6</sup> duās Hispāniās cōfirmārī,<sup>7</sup> quārum erat altera māximīs beneficiīs 570 Pompēi dēvincta, auxilia, equitātum parārī,<sup>7</sup> Galliam Italiamque temptārī sē absente nōlēbat.

[Caesar sends troops to Sicily and Sardinia and secures them.]

*Caesar presents his case to the senate at Rome.*

32. Hīs rēbus cōfectīs Caesar, ut reliquum tempus ā labōre intermitterētur, militēs in proxima mūnicipia  
 2 dēdūcit; ipse ad urbem proficīscitur. Coāctō senātū 575 iniūriās inimicōrum commemorat. Docet sē nūllum extraordinārium honōrem appetisse, sed exspectātō lēgitimō tempore consulātūs eō fuisse contentum quod  
 3 omnibus ꝑcīvibus<sup>8</sup> patēret. Lātum<sup>9</sup> ab x tribūnīs plē-  
 bis contrādīcentibus inimicīs, Catōne vērō ācerrimē 580

<sup>1</sup> stick against. <sup>2</sup> overtake. <sup>3</sup> capture. <sup>4</sup> with a view. <sup>5</sup> strait; here *Sicily* and the adjacent part of Italy. <sup>6</sup> The seven veteran legions of Pompey left in Spain. <sup>7</sup> i.e., by Pompey's adherents. <sup>8</sup> cīvis, is, citizen. <sup>9</sup> sc. esse; that a motion had been made.

repugnante et pristinā cōsuētūdine dicendī morā diēs  
extrahente, ut suī ratiō absentis habērētur, ipsō cōn-  
sule Pompēiō; quī sī improbāset,<sup>1</sup> cūr ferrī passus esset,  
sī probāset, cūr sē ūtī populī beneficiō prohibuisset?  
585 Patientiam prōpōnit suam, cum dē exercitibus dimit- 4  
tendīs ūltrō pōstulāvisset, in quō iactūram<sup>2</sup> dignitātis  
atque honoris ipse factūrus esset. Acerbitatem inimī- 5  
cōrum docet, quī quod ab alterō pōstulārent in sē  
recūsārent atque omnia permiscērī<sup>3</sup> ¶māllent<sup>4</sup> quam  
590 imperium exercitūque dimittere. Iniūriam in ēripi- 6  
endīs legiōnibus ¶praedicat,<sup>5</sup> crudelitatem et insolentiam  
in circumscribendīs<sup>6</sup> tribūnīs plēbis; condiōnēs ā sē  
lātās, expetīta colloquia et dēnegāta<sup>7</sup> commemorat.  
Prō quibus rēbus hortātur āc pōstulat ut rem pūblicam 7  
595 suscipiant atque ūnā sēcum administrent. Sīn timōre  
dēfugiant, illis sē onerī nōn futūrum et per sē rem pū-  
blicam administrātūrum. Lēgātōs ad Pompēium dē 8  
compositiōne<sup>8</sup> mittī oportēre, neque sē reformidāre<sup>9</sup>  
quod in senātū Pompēius paulō ante dixisset, ad quōs  
600 lēgātī mitterentur, hīs auctōritatem<sup>10</sup> attribui<sup>10</sup> timō-  
remque eōrum quī mitterent sīgnificārī. ¶Tenuis<sup>11</sup> at- 9  
que infirmī haec animī vidērī. Sē vērō, ut operibus  
anteire studuerit, sic iūstitiā et aequitāte velle superāre.

33. Probat rem senātus dē mittendīs lēgātīs; sed quī  
605 mitterentur nōn reperiebantur, māximēque timōris  
causā prō sē quisque id ¶mūnus<sup>12</sup> lēgātiōnis recūsābat.  
Pompēius enim discēdēns ab urbe in senātū dixerat 12  
eōdem sē habitūrum locō quī Rōmae remānsissent et  
quī in castrīs Caesaris fuissent. Sic trīduum disputā- 3

<sup>1</sup> disapprove.    <sup>2</sup> loss.    <sup>3</sup> mix.    <sup>4</sup> prefer.    <sup>5</sup> declare, emphasize.  
<sup>6</sup> restrict.    <sup>7</sup> refuse.    <sup>8</sup> settlement.    <sup>9</sup> fear (re-, on his part).    <sup>10</sup> their  
authority was recognized as legal.    <sup>11</sup> (thin); narrow.    <sup>12</sup> office, service.

tiōnibus excūsātiōnibusque extrahitur. Subicitur<sup>1</sup> eti- 610  
 am L. Metellus tribūnus plēbis ab inimicis Caesaris,  
 quī hanc rem distrahat reliquāsque rēs quāscumque  
 4 agere instituerit impediāt. Cūius cōgnitō cōnsiliō Cae-  
 sar frūstrā diēbus \*aliquot<sup>2</sup> cōnsūptis, nē reliquum  
 tempus dīmittat, infectis<sup>3</sup> eis quae agere dēstināverat<sup>4</sup> 615  
 ab urbe proficiscitur atque in ūteriōrem Galliam per-  
 venit.

[Then follows an account of the campaign in Spain, in which Caesar is successful. His lieutenant Curio, however, wages a disastrous campaign in Africa, being killed with all his troops. Towards the close of the year Caesar returns to Brundisium to renew his war with Pompey.]

<sup>1</sup> *put forward.*

<sup>2</sup> *several; indeclinable.*

<sup>3</sup> *unfinished.*

<sup>4</sup> *intend.*



## VOCABULARY

## ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative	infin.	infinitive
abs.	absolute	insep.	inseparable
acc.	accusative	interrog.	interrogative
adj.	adjective	intrans.	intransitive
adv.	adverb	lit.	literally
Bel. Gal.	Bellum Gallicum	loc.	locative
card.	cardinal	m., masc.	masculine
cf.	compare	n., neut.	neuter
comp.	composition	nom.	nominative
compar.	comparative	num.	numeral
conj.	conjunction	obj.	object, objective
coörd.	coördinate	opp.	opposite
dat.	dative	ord.	ordinal
decl.	declension	orig.	originally
dem.	demonstrative	p.	page
dep.	deponent	partic.	participle
dim.	diminutive	pass.	passive
dir.	direct	perf.	perfect
dis.	discourse	pl.	plural
e.g.	for example	plup.	pluperfect
Eng.	English	prep.	preposition
espec.	especially	pres.	present
etc.	and so forth	pron.	pronoun
f., fem.	feminine	reflex.	reflexive
ff.	and following	rel.	relative
fig.	figurative	sc.	supply
1st conj.	first conjugation	sing.	singular
fut.	future	spec.	specification
gen.	genitive	subord.	subordinate
i.e.	that is	subj.	subject, subjective
imperf.	imperfect	subjunct.	subjunctive
imper.	imperative	subst.	substantive
impers.	impersonal	super.	superlative
indic.	indicative	trans.	transitive
indecl.	indeclinable	voc.	vocative
indef.	indefinite	w.	with

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

**NOTE.** — The literal meaning of each word is given first, but if not used in Books I and II of Cæsar's Gallic War, it is placed in Roman type in parentheses; other meanings are given approximately in the order of their development. The references are to chapter and sentence, and cover all instances where a special meaning is used. The numerals indicate the meanings which the pupil should know in order to read well at sight after the completion of Books I and II.

### A

**A.**, abbreviation for Aulus, a Roman *praenomen*.

**a.d.**, abbreviation for ante diem.

**ā, ab, abs, prep. with abl.**, (1) *away from, from*; in expressions of distance, e.g. *ā milibus passuum, ab spatiō, away, off, distant*; with verbs of seeking and requesting, *of*; (2) expressing agency with passives, *by*; with verbs of happening and suffering, *at the hands of*; (3) giving the point of view (§ 98), with *cornū, latere, āgmīne, parte, etc.*, *at, on, in*; with names of tribes, *on the side occupied by*, I. 1, 5.

**ab-dō, dere, didī, ditum [dō, dare]**, (put away); *conceal*; with reflexive pronoun or in passive, *hide*. [in, with acc., *in, among*.]

**ab-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum**, *lead away, carry off*.

**absēns, absentis, partic. of ab-sum**.

**abs-tinēdō, tinēre, tinui, tentum [teneō]**, (hold away from); *refrain*.

**ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fui, ā-futūrus**, *be away (from)*; *be lacking*, I. 4, 4; with *longē*, *be far from helping, be of no use*, I. 36, 5. Pres. partic., **absēns, absentis, absent**; **sē (eō) absente**, (he being absent), *in his absence*.

**āc**, form of *atque* before some consonants.

**ac-**, form of *ad-* before c.

**ac-cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum**, *go to or toward, approach; be added*, I. 19, 1.

**acceptus, a, um** [perf. partic. of **accipiō**], (accepted), *acceptable, popular (with)*.

**ac-cidō, cidere, cidi**, — [cadō], (1) (fall to); (2) (be fall), *happen*.

**ac-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum [capiō]**, (take to one's self); *accept, receive*; of anything unpleasant, *suffer*.

**ac-clivis, e [clivus, slope]**, *sloping upward, rising*.

**acclivitās, tātis, f. [acclivis]**, *upward slope, ascent, rise*.

**ac-commodō, 1st conj. [commodus, convenient]**, (fit, adapt), *put on*.



**ac-currō**, currere, cucurri or curri, cursum, (run to); *ride up*, I. 22, 1.

**ac-cūsō**, 1st conj. [causa], (call to account); *blame, reproach, accuse*.

**ācer**, ācris, ācre, sharp; compar. ācrior, super. ācerrimus. Adverb, ācriter, *sharply, fiercely, vigorously*; compar. ācrius, super. ācerrimē.

**acervus**, i, m. [ācer], *pile, heap*. **aciēs**, aciēi, f. [ācer], plural limited to nom. and acc., (point, edge); *keenness, piercing glance*, I. 39, 1; elsewhere, *line of battle, battle line*.

**ācriter**: see ācer.

**ad**, prep. with acc., (1) *to, toward, against*; of situation, *in the vicinity of, near, at*; with numerals, *to the number of, nearly, about*; of time, *up to, until, till*; (2) *for, for the purpose of*.

**ad-aequō**, 1st conj., equal; i.e. *keep up with*, I. 48, 7.

**ad-amō**, 1st conj. [amō, love], (fall in love with), *become attached to*.

**ad-dūcō**, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *lead or bring (to, on, up, along)*; figuratively, *induce*, e.g. I. 2, 1, 9, 3, etc.

**ad-eō**, ire, (ivi) ii, itum, (go to); *get at*.

**ad-equitō**, 1st conj. [equus, horse], *ride up to*.

**ad-hibēō**, hibēre, hibuī, hibitum [habeō], (have near), *have present; admit*, I. 40, 1.

**ad-igō**, igere, ēgi, āctum [agō], (drive at), *throw*.

**aditus**, ūs, m. [adeō], (a going to); *approach, access; the right of approaching the Roman senate*, I. 43, 5.

**ad-iuvō**, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, *help, aid*.

**ad-ministrō**, 1st conj. [minister, servant], *execute, carry out*.

**ad-miror**, 1st conj., *wonder, be surprised*.

**ad-mittō**, mittere, mīsi, missum, (let go toward); **equō ad-missō**, (his horse having been allowed to go), *at full speed*.

**ad-olēscō**, olēscere, olēvi, ultum, *grow up, attain manhood*. Pres. partic. as noun, written **adolēscēns**, **adolēscētis**, c., (one growing up), *young man (or woman)*; with Crassus, *the younger, junior*.

**ad-orior**, orīri, ortus sum, (rise against), *attack*.

**ad-sum**, **ad-esse**, **ad-fui**, **ad-futūrus**, *be near*, I. 16, 4; *be present*.

**Aduatuci**, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe south of the Eburones, about the upper part of the Meuse.

**adolēscēns**: see **adolēscō**.

**adolēscēntia**, ae, f. [adolēscēns], *youth*.

**adventus**, ūs, m. [adveniō, come to], *coming, arrival*.

**adversus**, a, um, partic. of **ad-vertō**.

**ad-vertō**, vertere, verti, versum, *turn to*; **animum advertere**, (turn the attention to), *notice*. **adversus**, a, um, (turned to); *opposite, facing*, II. 8, 2, 18, 2; *adverse, unfavorable*, I. 18, 10, 40, 8; *face to face*, II. 24, 1; **adversō colle**, *up the hill*.

**aedificium**, i, n., *building, house*. **Aeduus**, a, um, **Aeduan**. Masc. as subst., *an Aeduan, the Aeduan*, pl. *the Aeduans, one*

of the most powerful Gallic tribes, friendly to Caesar until the seventh year of the war.

**aeger, aegra, aegrum, ill, sick;**  
compar. **aegrior, super. aeger-**  
**rimus. Adverb: aegrē, (illy);**  
**hardly, barely;** compar. **ae-**  
**grius, super. aegerrimē, with**  
**the greatest difficulty.**

**Aemilius, i, m., a decurion of the**  
**Gallic cavalry.**

**aequaliter, adv. [aequalis, equal],**  
**(equally), evenly.**

**aequitās, tātis, f. [aequus],**  
**(evenness); equity, fairness.**

**aequō, 1st conj. [aequus], make**  
**equal, equalize.**

**aequus, a, um, (even); equal.**

**aestās, aestātis, f., summer.**

**aestuārium, i, n., (salt) marsh.**

**aetās, aetātis, f., age.**

**af-, form of ad-, before f.**

**af-ferō, af-ferre, at-tuli, al-lātum,**  
**bring (to); contribute, cause.**

**af-ficiō, ficere, fēci, fectum**  
**[faciō], (do to, affect); fill,**  
**I. 2, 4; treat, I. 35, 2; suppli-**  
**ciō affici, (be affected with**  
**punishment), be punished, I.**  
**27, 4.**

**affinitās, tātis, f., relationship by**  
**marriage; intermarriage, II.**  
**4, 4.**

**ag-, form of ad- before g.**

**ager, agri, m., (cultivated land);**  
**field, soil (opposed to woods);**  
**country (opposed to city);**  
**territory.**

**ag-ger, aggeris, m. [gerō, bring],**  
**(what is brought to a place,**  
**material for earthworks); em-**  
**bankment, mound, causeway,**  
**or any structure of earth used**  
**in the operations of a Roman**  
**army; see pages xxxix, xl.**

**ag-gredior, gredi, gressus sum**  
**[gradior, step], (go toward,**  
**"go for"); attack.**

**āgmen, āgminis, n. [agō], army**  
**on the march, marching col-**  
**umn, line of march; novissi-**  
**mum or extrēmum āgmen,**  
**rear, rear-guard; primum āg-**  
**men, front, van, van-guard;**  
**cōnfertō āgmine, in close order.**

**agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, (1) (put**  
**in motion, drive); with**  
**vineās, bring up; with impedi-**  
**menta, take along; (2) treat,**  
**discuss, confer; (3) carry on,**  
**do; with grātiās, (give**  
**thanks), thank; with conven-**  
**tūs, hold; arrange, I. 41, 3.**  
**alacritās, tātis, f. [alacer, alacris,**  
**alacre, lively], (liveliness),**  
**eagerness.**

**ālārii, ōrum, m. [āla, wing],**  
**originally troops stationed on**  
**the wings of Roman armies;**  
**allies.**

**aliās: see alius.**

**aliēnus, a, um [alius], (belong-**  
**ing to another, another's);**  
**(1) foreign; (2) unfavorable,**  
**I. 15, 2.**

**aliquam-diū, adv., (somewhat**  
**long), for some time, some time.**

**aliqui, qua, quod, indef. adj.,**  
**(1) some; (2) any.**

**aliquis, aliquid, indef. pro., (1)**  
**some one, something; (2) any-**  
**one, anything; aliquid (§ 13),**  
**somewhat, I. 40, 5.**

**aliter: see alius.**

**alius, a, ud, gen. alius, dat.**  
**aliū, (1) other, another; (2)**  
**alius . . . alius, one . . . an-**  
**other, pl. some . . . others;**  
**(3) alius āc (atque), other**  
**than. alia rēs, anything else,**  
**I. 26, 6; alia ratiō, any other**

*terms*, I. 42, 4. In condensed expressions, *alius aliā causā illātā*, one assigning one reason and another another, I. 39, 3, and similarly II. 22, 1, 24, 3; each other, one another, II. 26, 2. Adverbs: *aliter*, otherwise; *aliter sē habēbat āc*, II. 19, 1, (had itself otherwise than), was different from what; *aliās*, (1) at another time, (2) *aliās . . . aliās*, II. 29, 5, at one time . . . at another (time).

**Allobrogēs**, um, m., Greek acc. as, I. 14, 3, a Gallic tribe in the northeastern part of the Province between the Rhone and the Alps.

**alō**, alere, alui, (alitur) altum, (nourish); *support*.

**Alpēs**, Alpium, f., the Alps, applied to all the mountains between Italy, Gaul and Germany.

**alter**, altera, alterum, gen. *alterius* or *alterius*, dat. *alteri*, (1) the other (of two); (2) the second; a second person, another, I. 36, 1; (3) *alter . . . alter*, (the) one . . . the other, pl., (the) one force . . . the other, I. 26, 1.

**altitūdō**, tūdinis, f. [altus], (1) height; (2) depth.

**altus**, a, um, (1) high; (2) deep.

**Ambarri**, ōrum, m. [ambi, around, Arar, the Saône], a tribe connected with the Aeduans, living southeast of them, on both sides of the Saône.

**Ambiāni**, ōrum, m., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, south of the Morini, on the coast.

**āmentia**, ae, f. [adj. ā-mēns,

*out of one's mind*], foolishness, folly.

**amicitia**, ae, f. [amicus], friendship, personal or political; alliance.

**amicus**, a, um [amō, love], (1) friendly; (2) masculine as subst., friend.

**ā-mittō**, mittere, misi, missum, (let go away), lose.

**amor**, amōris, m. [amō, love], love.

**amplē**: see *amplus*.

**amplificō**, 1st conj. [amplus, faciō], (make large), increase, extend.

**amplus**, a, um, large, great; *amplius*, neut. of compar. used as a subst., more. Adverb: *amplē*, largely, generously; compar. *amplius*, more; any more, I. 35, 3, 43, 9; super. *amplissimē*, most generously. Note that *amplius* is not always followed by the abl. when *quam* is omitted.

**an**, conj. introducing an alternative question, or; with first question omitted, I. 47, 6, (for some other purpose), or; i.e. probably.

**anceps**, ancipitis, adj. [ambi, around, on both sides, caput, head], (two-headed), double.

**Andebrogius**, i, m., a man of high rank among the Remi.

**Andēs**, Andium, m., a tribe in western Gaul on the north bank of the Loire.

**angustiae**, ārum, f. [angustus], (1) narrowness; (2) narrow pass, I. 11, 1.

**angustus**, a, um, narrow; limited, I. 2, 5; in *angustō*, in a tight place, in a critical condition,

**anim-ad-vertō**, *vertere*, *verti*, *versum* [*animus*], (turn the mind to); (1) *notice*; (2) *in eum animadvertere*, *attend to him*, *punish him*.

**animus**, *i*, *m.*, (1) *mind*, *energy*; *soul*, *spirit*; (2) *courage*; (3) *character*; *sympathy*, *I. 20, 4.*

**annus**, *i*, *m.*, *year*.

**annuus**, *a*, *um* [*annus*], (*yearly*); translated by adverb, *annually*, *yearly*, *every year*.

**ante**, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, *before*; **ante diem**, *a.d.*, in dates, *on such a day before*.

**anteā**, *adv.* [*ante*], *before*.

**antiquitus**, *adv.* [*antiquus*], *in former times*, *long ago*.

**antiquus**, *a*, *um* [*ante*], *old*, *former*.

**ap-**, form of *ad-* before *p*.

**aperiō**, *aperire*, *aperui*, *apertum*, *open*. Perf. partic. as *adj.*, (*opened*), *open*, *exposed*, *unprotected*.

**ap-pellō**, 1st conj., *call*.

**ap-petō**, *petere*, *petivi*, or *petiī*, *petitum*, *seek* (*for*).

**ap-propinquō**, 1st conj., (*draw near to*), *approach*.

**Apr.**, abbreviation for *Aprilis*.

**Aprilis**, *e* [*aperiō*], *of April*.

**apud**, *prep.* with *acc.*, (1) *among*; (2) *in the presence of*, *with*; **apud sē**, *in his own presence*.

**Aquilēia**, *ae*, *f.*, a Roman city at the head of the Adriatic sea.

**Aquitānia**, *ae*, *f.* [*Aquitānus*], one of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul; see *I. 1, 7*.

**Aquitānus**, *a*, *um*, *Aquitanian*. Masc. as *subst.*, *an Aquitanian*, *the Aquitanian*; plural *the Aquitanians*, the inhabitants of southwestern Gaul.

**ar-**, form of *ad-* before *r*.

**Arar**, *Araris*, *m.*, *acc.* *Ararim*, the river *Arar*, now the *Saône*, tributary of the Rhone.

**arbitrium**, *i*, *n.* [*arbitrator*, *judge*], *discretion*, *judgment*.

**arbitror**, 1st conj. [*arbitrator*, *judge*], *think*, *consider*.

**arbor**, *arboris*, *f.*, *tree*.

**arcem**: see *arx*.

**arcessō**, *arcessere*, *arcessivī*, *arcessitum*, *summon*; **mercēde arcessere**, (*summon by pay*), *hire*.

**arduus**, *a*, *um*, *steep*.

**ariēs**, *arietis*, *m.*, (*ram*); figuratively, *battering ram*.

**Ariovistus**, *i*, *m.*, a German king, a Suebian, who had subjected a great part of Gaul when Caesar began his operations there; *I. 31, 10*, etc.

**arma**, *armōrum*, *n.*, *arms*; in *armis*, often *under arms*.

**armātūra**, *ae*, *f.* [*armō*], *armor*; *levis armātūrae*, (*of light armor*), *light-armed*.

**armō**, 1st conj. [*arma*], *arm*. Masc. pl. of perf. partic., *armed*; as a substantive, *armed men*, *II. 27, 1*.

**arroganter**, *adv.* [*arrogāns*, partic. of *ar-rōgō*, *assume*], *haughtily*, *presumptuously*, *arrogantly*.

**arrogantia**, *ae*, *f.* [*arrogāns*, partic. of *ar-rōgō*, *assume*], *haughtiness*, *presumption*, *arrogance*.

**Arvernī**, *ōrum*, *m.*, a tribe of south-central Gaul about the head waters of the Allier (*Elaver*) river.

**arx**, *arcis*, *f.*, *stronghold*, *fortress*, *citadel*.

**ā-scendō**, *scendere*, *scendi*, *scēsum* [*ad*; *scandō*, *climb*], *climb* (*to*), *ascend*, *go up*.

**āscēnsus**, ūs, m. [āscendō], *ascent*.

**ā-sciscō**, sciscere, scivī, scitum [ad; sciō, *know*], (ordain to); *accept, admit*.

**at**, adversative conjunction, (1) *but*; (2) after a conditional clause, *at least*.

**at-**, form of **ad-** before **t**.

**atque**, āc, conjunction, usually emphasizing what follows, (1) *and, and even, and especially*; (2) after words implying comparison, *than, as*; e.g. par **atque**, *the same as*, aliter āc, *otherwise than*.

**Atrebātēs**, um, m., a tribe toward the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul.

**at-tingō**, tingere, tigī, tactum [tangō, *touch*], *touch (upon), border on; reach, strike*, II. 32, 1.

**at-tulī**, perf. of **af-ferō**.

**auctōritās**, tātis, f. [auctor, *promoter*], *influence, standing, prestige*.

**auctus**, a, um, partic. of **augeō**.

**audācia**, ae, f. [audāx], *daring, boldness, effrontery*.

**audācter**: see **audāx**.

**audāx**, audācis, adj. [audeō], *daring, bold*; compar. audācior, super. audācissimus. Adverb: audācter, *boldly, daringly*; compar. audācius, super. audācissimē.

**audeō**, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*.

**audiō**, audire, audiī, auditum, *hear, hear of*; dictō audiēns, (hearing to the word), *obedient*.

**augeō**, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase*; auctiōrēs, I. 43, 8, compar. of perf. partic., *more and more increased*.

**Aulerci**, ōrum, m., a people of central Gaul, divided into four tribes.

**Aulus**, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

**Aurunculēius**, ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's *legati*.

**ausus**, a, um, partic. of **audeō**.

**aut**, conj., (1) *or*; (2) **aut** . . .

**aut**, *either . . . or*. See **vel**.

**autem**, conj., *moreover*; *post-positive*.

**auxilium**, ī, n. [augeō], *aid, help*; as military term, *reinforcement, reserve, support*; plural, *auxiliary forces, auxiliaries*, as opposed to the regular legionary forces.

**avāritia**, ae, f., *greed, avarice, grafting*.

**ā-vertō**, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn away, turn aside*; *alienate*, I. 20, 4, (animī, *sympathies*); āversum hostem, (an enemy turned away), *one of the enemy in retreat*, I. 26, 2; āversi, *being turned away* (from some of the enemy), i.e. since there were some of the enemy whom they were not facing, II. 26, 2.

**avus**, ī, m., *grandfather*.

**Axona**, ae, m., a river in the country of the Belgians, now the *Aisne*.

## B

**Baculus**, ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, an especially brave centurion.

**Baleāris**, e, *Balearic*, pertaining to the Balearic islands, off the eastern coast of Spain, now *Majorca* and *Minorca*.

**barbarus**, a, um, *uncivilized, rude, uncultured*: as a substantive, *natives*, II. 35, 1.

**Belgae**, ārum, m., *the Belgians*, the collective name for the inhabitants of the northern of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul.

**bellicōsus**, a, um [*bellicus, pertaining to war*], *warlike*.

**bellō**, 1st conj. [*bellum*], *make war, fight*.

**Bellovacī**, ōrum, m., a powerful tribe in the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul.

**bellum**, ī, n., loc. *belli*, *war*.

**bene**: see *bonus*.

**beneficium**, ī, n. [*bene, faciō*], *kindness, service*; **tantō beneficiō afficere**, (affect with such great kindness), *treat so kindly*, I. 35, 2; **beneficiō sortium**, (by the kindness of the lots), *thanks to fortune*, I. 53, 7.

**Bibracte**, Bibractis, n., loc. *Bibracte* or *Bibracti*, the capital of the Aeduians, situated upon Mont Beuvray, in the central part of their territory, I. 23, 1.

**Bibrax**, Bibractis, f., a town of the Remi, II. 6, 1.

**bīduum**, ī, n. [*bis, twice, diēs*], (the space of two days), *two days*.

**biennium**, ī, n. [*bis, twice, annus*], (the space of two years), *two years*.

**bipertitō**, adv. [*bis, twice, partior, divide, from pars*], *in two divisions*.

**Biturigēs**, um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

**Boduognātus**, ī, m., the leader of the Nervii.

**Bōii**, ōrum, m., a tribe associated in the migration of the

Helvetians, afterwards received by the Aeduians and located in their territory.

**bonitās**, tātis, f. [*bonus*], (goodness), *fertility*.

**bonus**, a, um, *good*; compar. *melior, better*; super. *optimus, best*; neut. as a subst., *good, advantage*, I. 40, 6. Adverb: **bene**, *well*; compar. *melius, better*; super. *optimē, best*.

**brācchium**, ī, n., *forearm, arm*.

**Brātuspantium**, ī, n., a stronghold of the Bellovacī.

**brevis**, e, *short*, of space or time.

**brevitās**, tātis, f. [*brevis*], *shortness, brevity*; *small stature*, II. 30, 4.

**Britannia**, ae, f., *Britain*.

## C

**C**, numeral, 100; but not originally because it was the first letter of *centum*.

**C.**, abbreviation for *Gaius*, a Roman *praenomen*.

**Cabūrus**, ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a distinguished Gaul, a friend of the Romans.

**cadāver**, **cadāveris**, n. [*cadō*], *corpse, (dead) body*.

**cadō**, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsum**, *fall*.

**caedō**, **caedere**, **cecidī**, **caesum** [*cadō*], *cause to fall, fell, cut down, kill*.

**Caemani**, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.

**Caerōsī**, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.

**Caesar**, **Caesaris**, m., *Gaius Julius Caesar*, the great statesman and general, author of the *Commentaries*.

**calamitās**, tātis, f., *disaster, defeat*.

**Caletī, ōrum, m.,** one of the Ar-  
merican tribes, on the north-  
west coast, north of the Seine.

**cālō, cālōnis, m.,** *camp follower*;  
any non-combatant moving  
with an army, including per-  
sonal servants, drivers, sut-  
lers, etc.

**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum,**  
*take; occupy, seize; with*  
*nōmen, derive; ("take in"),*  
*deceive, I. 40, 9; initium*  
*capere ab, (take a beginning*  
*from), begin at.*

**captīvus, a, um [capiō],** *captive;*  
*as subst., prisoner.*

**caput, capitis, n.,** *head; per-*  
*son, individual (like "head"*  
*of cattle), I. 29, 2, II. 33, 7.*

**Carnutēs, um, m.,** a tribe of  
central Gaul.

**carrus, i, m.,** *cart; mentioned*  
*only as used by the Gauls.*

**Cassianus, a, um [Cassius],**  
*(relating to Cassius); bellum*  
*Cassianum, the war with*  
*Cassius.*

**Cassius, i, m.,** *Lucius Cassius*  
*Longinus, consul 107 B.C.,*  
*defeated and killed by the*  
*Tigurini near Lake Geneva;*  
*I. 7, 4, 12, 5, 7.*

**castellum, i, n. [dim. of castrum],**  
*fort, redoubt.*

**Casticus, i, m.,** a powerful chief  
of the Sequanians.

**castra, castrōrum, n. [pl. of**  
**castrum, i, n.,** *fortress], a*  
*camp, always fortified; in*  
*castris, in camp life, in war,*  
*I. 39, 5. [pōnō, pitch; moveō,*  
*break.]*

**cāsus, ūs, m. [cadō],** (a falling,  
happening); (1) *chance, for-*  
*tune, good or bad; (2) acci-*  
*dent, disaster; situation, emer-*

*gency; cāsū dēvenire, (come*  
*by chance), happen to come.*

**Catamantāloedis, is, m.,** the  
most powerful Sequanian of  
the generation before Caesar's  
arrival.

**catēna, ae, f.,** *chain.*

**Caturigēs, um, m.,** a tribe in the  
Graian Alps in the valley of  
the upper Durance.

**causa, ae, f.,** (1) *reason, cause;*  
*case at law, I. 4, 1, 2; (2) abl.*  
*after a gen., for the sake, for*  
*the purpose.*

**caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, be**  
*on one's guard.*

**cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go,**  
*go from); give way, retreat.*

**celer, celeris, celere, swift,**  
*quick; compar. celerior;*  
*super. celerrimus. Adverb:*  
*celeriter, swiftly, quickly,*  
*speedily; compar. celerius;*  
*super. celerrimē.*

**celeritās, tātis, f. [celer],** *swift-*  
*ness, speed. [ad, in the matter*  
*of, II. 26, 5.]*

**celeriter:** see *celer.*

**cēlō, 1st conj.,** *hide, conceal.*

**Celtae, ārum, m.,** *the Celts; in*  
*Caesar, the native name for*  
*the people living in central*  
*Gaul, as distinguished from*  
*the Belgians and the Aquit-*  
*anians; I. 1, 1.*

**cēseō, cēssēre, cēssui, cēn-**  
**sūm, (estimate), decree.**

**cēnsus, ūs, m. [cēseō], (esti-**  
**mate), census, enumeration.**

**centum, indecl. card. adj., a**  
*hundred.*

**centuriō, ōnis, m. [centum],** *cen-*  
*turion, originally the com-*  
*mander of a hundred men;*  
*a subordinate officer in the*  
*Roman legion. See page xxv.*

**certus**, a, um [partic. of *cernō*, *cernere*, *crēvi*, *crētum*, *separate*, *distinguish*], *certain*, *sure*, *definite*; *certiōrem facere*, (make more certain), *inform*; *certior fieri*, *be informed*.

**cēterus**, a, um (sing. rare), *the other*; *cēterae rēs*, *the other things (which he might need)*, II. 3, 3; as subst., *the others*, *the rest*, I. 32, 2.

**Ceutronēs**, um, m., a tribe in the Graian Alps, about the headwaters of the Isère.

**cibārius**, a, um [*cibus*, food], (relating to food); neut. plu., *provisions*; *molita cibāria*, (ground foodstuffs), *meal*, *flour*.

**Cimberius**, i, m., a leader of the Suebi.

**Cimbri**, ōrum, m., a Germanic people who overran Gaul in the second century B.C., and gave Rome great uneasiness until defeated by Marius in the north of Italy, 103 B.C.; I. 33, 4, 40, 5.

**cingō**, *cingere*, *cinxi*, *cinctum*, *surround*.

**circinus**, i, m. [*circus*, circle], *a pair of compasses*; *gigantic compasses*, I. 38, 4.

**circiter**, adv. and prep. with acc. [*circus*, circle], *about*.

**circuitus**, ūs, m. [*circum-eō*, *go around*], (a going around); *circuitous route*, *detour*, I. 41, 4; *succession*, II. 29, 3; *circumference*, II. 30, 2; *in circuitū*, *by a roundabout way*, I. 21, 1.

**circum**, prep. with acc., *around*; *about*, *near*.

**circum-dō**, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*,

(put around); *surround*; perf. partic., *surrounding*, I. 38, 6.

**circum-dūcō**, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductum*, (lead around); *draw (around)*.

**circum-icio** (pronounced as if spelled *circum-jiciō*), *icere*, *iēci*, *iectum* [*iaciō*], *throw around*, as military term; *station around*.

**circum-mūniō**, *mūnire*, *mūnivi*, *mūnitum*, (fortify around), *surround*, *invest*.

**circum-sistō**, *sistere*, *steti*, —, (take a stand around), *rally around*, *surround*.

**circum-veniō**, *venire*, *vēni*, *ventum*, (come around), (1) *surround*, *outflank*; (2) like English "get around," *outwit*, I. 46, 3.

**cis**, prep. with acc., *on this side of*.

**citerior**, *ius*, compar. adj. [*cis*, *citrā*], (more on this side), *nearer (to Rome)*; super. *citimus*.

**citrā**, prep. with acc. [*cis*], *on this side of*.

**citrō**, adv. [*citrā*], (to this side); *ūltrō citrōque*, *back and forth*.

**civitas**, *tātis*, f. [*civis*, *citizen*], (1) *citizenship*, I. 47, 4; (2) *collective*, *state*.

**clāmor**, ōris, m., *shouting*, *shout*.

**claudō**, *claudere*, *clausi*, *clausum*, *close*, *shut*; *āgmen claudere*, (close the line of march), *bring up the rear*.

**clēmēntia**, ae, f., *mildness*, *mercy*, *clemency*.

**cliēns**, *entis*, c., *dependent*, *retainer*; *vassals*.

**co-**, form of *cum-* (*com-*) before vowels and *h*.

**cō-**, form of *cum-* (*com-*) before *gn*.



**co-acervō**, 1st conj. [*acervus*],  
*pile up, pile together.*

**coāctus**, a, um, partic. of **cōgō**.

**co-emō**, *emere*, *ēmi*, *ēemptum*,  
*buy (up), purchase.*

**coepti**, *coepisse*, *coepturus*, *be-*  
*gan.* See pages 214, 215.

The present system is sup-  
plied by **incipiō**. With a  
complementary infin. in the  
passive voice, *coeptus sum*,  
etc., is used as a deponent  
verb; I. 47, 1, II. 6, 2.

**co-erceō**, *ercēre*, *ercui*, *ercitum*  
[*arceō*, *inclose*], (*confine*), *re-*  
*strain.*

**cōgitō**, 1st conj. [for **co-agitō**],  
(*revolve, discuss*), *consider.*

**cō-gnōscō**, *gnōscere*, *gnōvi*, *gni-*  
*tum*, (*become acquainted*  
*with*), *ascertain, learn, find*  
*out*; **cōgnōvi**, as pres. perf.,  
*I have become acquainted with*,  
therefore *I know*; *pluperf.*,  
*I knew*, etc. Perf. partic.  
**cōgnitus**, a, um, as adj.,  
*noted*, I. 28, 5.

**cōgō**, *cōgere*, *coēgi*, **coāctum**  
[for **co-agō**]; (1) with **co-**  
*meaning together*, (*drive to-*  
*gether*), *collect*; (2) with **co-**  
*intensive*, (*drive*), *compel*.  
Perf. partic., **coāctus**, a, um,  
(*having been compelled*),  
*under compulsion*, I. 17, 6.

**cohors**, *cohortis*, f., *cohort*, a  
tenth of a legion.

**cohortātiō**, *ōnis*, f. [*cohortor*],  
*address, appeal.*

**co-hortor**, 1st conj., (*urge on*),  
*address; encourage.*

**col-**, form of **cum-** (**com-**) be-  
fore l.

**collātus**, a, um, partic. of **cōnferō**.

**col-ligō**, 1st conj., *fasten to-*  
*gether.*

**collis**, is, m., *hill.*

**col-locō**, 1st conj. [*locus*], *place*,  
*station; marry off, give in*  
*marriage*, I. 18, 6, 7.

**colloquium**, i, n. [*colloquor*], (*a*  
*talking together*), *conference.*

**col-loquor**, *loqui*, *locūtus sum*,  
*talk with.*

**com-**, regular form of **cum-** as a  
prefix.

**com-būrō**, *būrere*, *būssi*, *būs-*  
*tum* [related to *ūrō*, *burn*],  
*burn up.*

**commeātus**, ūs, m. [*commeō*], (*a*  
*going back and forth*); *provi-*  
*sions, supplies.*

**com-memorō**, 1st conj., *mention*,  
*relate.*

(**commentārius**, i, m. originally,  
*notebook, memorandum, sketch.*  
Not in text of Caesar, but  
applied to the single books by  
the grammarians.)

**com-meō**, 1st conj., *go back and*  
*forth, resort*; **commeāre** ad,  
*visit.*

**com-minus**, adv. [*manus*], *hand*.  
*to hand, at close quarters.*

**com-mittō**, *mittere*, *miſi*, *mis-*  
*sum*, (*send together*); (1)  
with **proelium**, *begin, engage*  
*in, join*; (2) *intrust*; (3) *do*,  
I. 14, 2; (4) *permit*, I. 13, 7,  
46, 3.

**commodē**: see **commodus**.

**com-modus**, a, um [*modus*],  
(*having measure with what is*  
*desired*); *advantageous, con-*  
*venient*; neut. used as a noun,  
*advantage*, I. 35, 4. Adverb:  
**commodē**, *advantageously, con-*  
*veniently*; **satis commodē**, *very*  
*well.*

**com-mone-faciō**, *facere*, *fēci*,  
*factum* [*moneō*], (*give a good*  
*warning about*), *impress upon.*

**com-moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum,** (move strongly), *influence*, I. 20, 3; *alarm*.

**com-mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi, mūnitum,** (fortify strongly); **castella commūnīre,** (fortify forts strongly), *construct strong forts*.

**com-mūnis, e** [mūnus, *task*], (having tasks together); *common, general*.

**commūtātiō, ōnis, f.** [commūtō], (complete) *change*.

**com-mūtō, 1st conj.,** *change* (completely).

**comparō, 1st conj.** [com-pār, *equal with*], (liken), *compare*; I. 31, 11. For all other passages see **comparō** below.

**com-parō, 1st conj.** [intensive of **parō**], *prepare, provide*.

**com-pellō, pellere, puli, pulsum,** *drive* (all together).

**com-perio, perire, peri, pertum** [cf. **experior**], *find out, learn*.

**com-plector, plecti, plexus sum,** *embrace*.

**com-pleō, plēre, plēvi, plētum,** (fill completely), *cover*.

**com-plūrēs, plūra or plūria, gen. plūrium** [plūs], *several, a considerable number of*.

**com-portō, 1st conj.,** *carry together, gather*.

**con-**, form of **cum-** (**com-**) before most of the consonants.

**cōnātum, i, n.** [neut. of perf. partic. of **cōnor** in passive sense], (a thing attempted), *attempt*.

**cōnātus, ūs, m.** [cōnor], *attempt*.

**con-cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum,** (yield), *grant, permit*.

**con-cidō, cidere, cidi, cisum** [caedō], (cut down), *kill*.

**conciliō, 1st conj.** [concilium], (win over); *win, gain*.

**concilium, i, n.,** *assembly, council*.

**con-clāmō, 1st conj.,** *cry out*.

**con-currō, currere, cucurri or curri, cursum, run together, hurry;** *gather at one point*, I. 48, 6.

**concursum, ūs, m.** [concurrō], (a running together), *charges*.

**condiciō, ōnis, f.** [con-dicō], (a saying together), *condition, terms*.

**con-dōnō, 1st conj.** [dōnum, *gift*], *forgive, pardon*.

**Condrūsī, ōrum, m.,** a tribe of Belgians upon the east bank of the Meuse.

**con-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum,** *lead together, bring together; hire*, II. 1, 4.

**cōn-ferō, cōn-ferre, con-tuli, col-lātum, bring together, collect; of things, convey; compare,** I. 31, 11; *attribute*, I. 40, 10; *postpone*, I. 40, 13; **sē cōn-ferre,** (betake themselves), *retire*, I. 28, 1.

**cōn-fertus, a, um** [perf. partic. of **cōn-ferciō, crowd together**], *crowded, compact; cōn-fertō āgmine, in close order*.

**cōn-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum,** [faciō], (do up); (1) *complete, accomplish, finish*; (2) *exhaust, wear out, overcome*; (complete the number of), *furnish*, II. 4, 5; *make out, execute*, I. 29, 1.

**cōn-fidō, fidere, fisis sum,** (trust firmly); (1) with dat. or indirect dis., *trust*; (2) with abl., *rely* (on).

**cōn-firmō, 1st conj.** [firmus], (1) (confirm), *strengthen, estab-*

*lish*; (2) (*affirm*), *assure*, *declare*.  
**cōnfisus**, a, um, partic. of **cōn-**  
**fīdō**.  
**cōn-flīgō**, *figere*, *fixi*, *flīctum*,  
 (strike together), *contend*, *fight*.  
**con-gredior**, *gredi*, *gressus sum*  
 [*gradior*, *step*], (*meet*); *meet*  
*in battle*, *fight*.  
**cōn-iciō** (pronounced as if  
 spelled *conjiō*), *icere*, *con-*  
*iēcī*, *iectum* [*iaciō*], (*throw*  
*together*), *throw*, *hurl*; *place*  
*(hurriedly)*, II. 16, 4, 28, 1;  
*in fugam cōnicipere*, *put to*  
*flight*.  
**cōn-iungō**, *iungere*, *iūxi*,  
*iūctum*, *join* (*together*);  
*unite*, *trans.*; with reflexive,  
*join*, *unite*, *intrans*.  
**coniūrātiō**, *ōnis*, f. [*coniūrō*],  
 (*a swearing together*), *con-*  
*spiracy*.  
**cōn-iūrō**, 1st conj., (*swear to-*  
*gether*), *band together*, *unite*.  
**cōnor**, 1st conj., *try*, *attempt*;  
*idem cōnārī*, (*attempt the*  
*same thing*), *make the same*  
*attempt*; *quicquam cōnārī*,  
*attempt [to do] anything*.  
**con-quirō**, *quirere*, *quisivī*, *qui-*  
*situm* [*quaerō*], *seek for*, *search*  
*out*.  
**cōn-sanguineus**, a, um [*sang-*  
*uis*, *blood*], (*of common*  
*blood*), *related*. Masc. as  
 subst., *relative*, *kinsman*.  
**cōn-sciscō**, *sciscere*, *scivī*, *sci-*  
*tum* [*sciō*, *know*], *adjudge*;  
*sibi mortem cōnsciscere*, *com-*  
*mit suicide*.  
**cōn-scius**, a, um [*sciō*, *know*],  
*conscious*, *aware*.  
**cōn-scribō**, *scribere*, *scripsi*,  
*scriptum*, (*write down to-*  
*gether*), *enlist*, *enroll*.

**cōnsecūtus**, a, um, partic. of  
**cōnsequor**.  
**cōnsēnsus**, ūs, m. [*cōnsentiō*],  
*agreement*, *consent*.  
**cōn-sentiō**, *sentire*, *sēnsi*, *sēn-*  
*sum*, (*feel with*), *agree*, II. 3,  
 2; *unite*, II. 3, 5.  
**cōn-sequor**, *sequi*, *secūtus sum*,  
 (1) *follow up*; (2) *overtake*;  
 (3) *gain*, I. 43, 5, II. 1, 4.  
**cōn-servō**, 1st conj., *save*, *pre-*  
*serve*.  
**Cōnsidius**, i, m., *Publius Con-*  
*sidius*; an officer in Caesar's  
 army.  
**cōn-sidō**, *sidere*, *sēdī* (*sīdī*),  
*sessum* [*sedeō*, *sit*], (*sit*  
*down*); (1) *settle*; (2) of an  
 army, *encamp*.  
**cōnsilium**, i, n. [*cōnsulō*], (*de-*  
*liberation*); *council*, I. 40, 1;  
 regularly, *plan*; *prudence*, I.  
 40, 8.  
**cōn-similis**, e, *quite like*, *very*  
*similar*.  
**cōn-sistō**, *sistere*, *stiti*, —, *take*  
*one's stand*, *make a stand*;  
*stop*, *halt*, I. 13, 7, II. 11, 4;  
*depend*, *in*, *upon*, II. 33, 4.  
**cōn-sōlor**, 1st conj., *comfort*.  
**cōnspectus**, ūs, m. [*cōnspiciō*],  
*sight*.  
**cōn-spiciō**, *spicere*, *spexi*, *spec-*  
*tum*, *see*.  
**cōn-spīcor**, 1st conj. [*secondary*  
*form of above*], *see*.  
**cōnstanter**: *see cōnstō*.  
**cōnstantia**, ae, f. [*cōnstāns*,  
*pres. partic. of cōnstō*, *stand*  
*firm*], *firmness*.  
**cōn-stituō**, *stituere*, *stitui*,  
*stitūtum* [*statuō*], (1) with  
*infin. or ut*, *decide*; (2) with  
*dir. obj. or in passive*, *place*,  
*station*; with *diem*, *appoint*.  
**cōn-stō**, *stāre*, *stiti*, *stātum*,

(stand together, stand firm).  
Adverb of pres. partic.: *cōn-*  
*stanter, consistently.*

*cōn-suēscō, suēscere, suēvi, suēt-*  
*tum, become accustomed;*  
hence, perf., *have become ac-*  
*customed = be accustomed;* plu-  
perf., *was accustomed, etc.*

*cōnsuētūdō, tūdinis, f. [cōnsuē-*  
*scō], custom.*

*cōnsul, cōsulis, m., consul, one*  
of the two chief executive  
officers at Rome, elected  
yearly.

*cōnsulātus, ūs, m. [cōnsul],*  
*consulship.*

*cōn-sulō, sulere, sului, sultum,*  
*consult, deliberate.*

*cōnsultum, i, n. [perf. partic. of*  
*cōnsulō, used as a subst.], (a*  
thing deliberated upon), *decree.*

*cōn-sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī,*  
*sūmptum, (take away alto-*  
*gether), destroy, use up.*

*contemptus, ūs, m. [contemnō,*  
*despise], contempt; contemptui*  
*esse, be an object of contempt,*  
*be a joke.*

*con-tendō, tendere, tendi, ten-*  
*tum, (strain hard, struggle);*  
(1) *fight; (2) hasten, hurry;*  
*strive, work, I. 31, 2.*

*contentiō, ōnis, f. [contendō]*  
*struggle.*

*continenter: see contineō.*

*con-tineō, tinēre, tinui, tentum*  
[teneō], (1) *hold (together),*  
*keep; occupy, I. 38, 5; (2)*  
*surround, bound, hem in. Ad-*  
verb of pres. partic.: *conti-*  
*nenter, continually.*

*con-tingō, tingere, tigi, tactum*  
[tangō], *touch; happen, I. 43,*  
*4.*

*continuus, a, um [contineō], suc-*  
*cessive, in succession.*

*contrā, adv., against (him), I.*  
*18, 3, against (them), II. 17,*  
*3; prep. with acc., against.*

*con-trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāc-*  
*tum, (draw together), con-*  
*centrate, collect.*

*contrārius, a, um [contrā], oppo-*  
*site, facing.*

*contumēlia, ae, f., insult.*

*con-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum,*  
(1) *come together, assemble;*  
*meet, I. 27, 2; (2) be agreed*  
upon, *I. 36, 5, II. 19, 6.*

*conventus, ūs, m. [conveniō],*  
(1) *meeting, assembly, I. 18,*  
*2; (2) court.*

*conversus, a, um, partic. of*  
*convertō.*

*con-vertō, vertere, verti, ver-*  
*sum, turn (around); change,*  
*I. 41, 1; conversa signa*  
*inferre, (bear on turned stand-*  
*ards), a technical military*  
term, an order for the third  
line to face about and ad-  
vance, *I. 25, 7, II. 26, 1;*  
*translate, form a second front*  
*and advance.*

*con-vincō, vincere, vici, victum,*  
(conquer completely), *prove*  
*clearly; avāritiam convictam,*  
*be convicted of grafting, I. 40,*  
*12.*

*con-vocō, 1st. conj., call to-*  
*gether, summon.*

*cōpia, ae, f., (1) plenty, supply;*  
(2) plural, *forces, troops;*  
*wealth, I. 31, 5; supplies,*  
*II. 10, 4.*

*cōpiōsus, a, um [cōpia], (plenti-*  
*ful, full of supplies), wealthy.*

*cōram, adv., (face to face), in*  
*person.*

*Coriosolitēs, um, m., acc. as,*  
a tribe on the northwest  
coast of Gaul.

**cornū, ūs, n.**, (1) *horn*; (2) *wing* of an army.

**corpus, corporis, n.**, *body*; *dead body, corpse*.

**cortex, corticis, m. and f.**, *bark* of trees.

**cotidianus, a, um [cotidiē]**, *daily; regular, usual*, I. 19, 3.

**cotidiē, adv.** [quot, each, diēs, day], *daily*.

**Cotta, ae, m.**, *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's *legati*.

**Crassus, i, m.**, (1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, who with Caesar and Pompey formed the first triumvirate; I. 21, 4. (2) *Publius Licinius Crassus*, (called *adulēscēns, junior*), younger son of the above, one of Caesar's *legati*, I. 52, 7, II. 34.

**crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, frequent, numerous**; compar. *crēbrior*; super. *crēberrimus*.

**cre-dō, dere, didi, ditum** [old stem meaning *faith, and dō, dare*], (give credit), *believe*.

**cremō, 1st conj.**, *burn* (of persons); *igni cremāre*, (burn with fire), *burn to death, burn at the stake*.

**creō, 1st conj.**, (produce), *elect, choose*.

**Crēs, Crētis, m., acc. plu., Crētas, a Cretan**.

**crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum**, (*grow, increase*); *become powerful*, I. 20, 2.

**cruciātus, ūs, m. [cruciō, torture, from crux, cross], torture, cruelty**.

**crūdēlis, e, cruel**. Adverb: *crūdēliter, cruelly*.

**crūdēlitās, tātis, f. [crūdēlis], cruelty**.

**crūdēliter**: see *crūdēlis*.

**cultus, ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], civilization, comfort**.

**cum, prep.** with abl., *with*, in the sense of *in company with*, or *in association with*. Enclitic with the personal pronouns, and often with *quis* and *quī*. As a prefix, *with, together*, or *intensive*.

**cum, subord. conj.**; (1) *when, while*, §§ 182, 183; (2) *since*, § 172; (3) *although*, § 199.

**cum . . . tum**, (*while . . . especially*), *not only . . . but also*, II. 4, 7.

**cūnctus, a, um [for coniūnctus, from coniungō], (joined, taken as a whole), all**.

**cupidē**: see *cupidus*.

**cupiditās, tātis, f. [cupidus], desire, eagerness**.

**cupidus, a, um [cupiō], desirous (of), eager (for)**. Adverb: *cupidē, eagerly*.

**cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum**, *desire, be eager; wish well*, I. 18, 8; with dat.

**cūr, adv.**, *why*.

**cūra, ae, f., care, concern; sibi hanc rem cūrae futūram (esse)**, (that this matter would be a care to him, § 32), *that he would attend to this matter; similarly*, I. 40, 11.

**cūrō, 1st conj. [cūra], (1) (care for, provide for); (2) cause**.

**cursus, ūs, m. [currō, run], (1) running; (2) speed**.

**cūstōdia, ae, f. [cūstōs], (a guarding), guard, watch, sentinel**.

**cūstōs, cūstōdis, m., guard, observer; much like detective**, I. 20, 6.

## D

D, numeral, 500.

d., abbreviation for diem, in ante diem.

damnō, 1st conj. [damnum, harm], find guilty, condemn.

dē, prep. with abl., (1) down from, from; (2) concerning; also occasionally of, during, for. As a prefix, down, also intensive or negative.

dēbēo, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitum [for de-hibeō, from habeō], (not have, owe); ought; sūspicārī dēbēre, cannot help suspecting, have good reason to suspect, I. 44, 10.

dē-cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum, (go from), go away, withdraw.

decem, indecl. card. adj., ten.

dēceptus, a, um, partic. of dēcipiō.

dē-cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, (separate, distinguish from), decree.

dē-certō, 1st conj., fight a decisive battle, "fight it out."

dē-cidō, cidere, cidi, — [cadō], fall off.

decimus, a, um [decem], ord. adj., tenth.

dē-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum [capiō], deceive, "take in."

dē-clārō, 1st conj. [clārus, clear], declare.

dē-clivis, e [clivus, slope], sloping downward.

decumānus, a, um [decimus], of a tenth; decumāna porta, the rear gate of a camp, near which the tenth cohort of a single legion would be placed.

decuriō, ōnis, m. [decem], decurion, a cavalry officer in

charge of a small squad, originally ten men.

dē-currō, currere, cucurri or curri, cursum, run down, hurry down.

dēditicius, a, um [dēditus], having surrendered; masc. as a subst., (one who has surrendered), prisoner, subject.

dēditiō, ōnis, f. [dēdō], surrender; in dēditiōne accipere, accept the surrender of any one.

dē-dō, dere, didi, ditum [dō, dare], give up, surrender, trans. with reflex., give up, surrender, intrans.

dē-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, (lead off), withdraw; when used figuratively, bring, II. 10, 5, 31, 5.

dē-fatigō, 1st conj., tire out, exhaust.

dē-fendō, fendere, fendi, fēsum, (strike down); (1) ward off, keep off, I. 44, 6, II. 29, 5; elsewhere, defend, protect.

dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f. [dēfendō], defense, protection.

dēfēnsor, ōris, m. [dēfendō], defender.

dē-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, (bring down to a destination), report, carry; bestow, confer, ad, upon, II. 4, 7.

dē-fessus, a, um [partic. of dē-fetiscor, become exhausted], exhausted, worn out.

dē-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [faciō], (un-make, un-do), (1) fail, II. 10, 4; (2) revolt, II. 14, 2.

dē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled dējiciō), icere, iēcī, iectum [iaciō], (1) throw down, dislodge, kill; (2) figuratively, cast down, disappoint, I. 8, 4.

dēiectus, a, um, partic. of dēiciō.  
 dēiectus, ūs, m. [dēiciō], (a throwing down), *slope*.  
 de-inde, adv., *then; secondly*.  
 dēlētus, a, um, partic. of dēligō, dēligere.  
 dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvi, dēlētum, *wipe out*, II. 27, 2; *regularly, destroy*.  
 dē-liberō, 1st conj., *deliberate, consider*.  
 dē-ligō, 1st conj., (bind down), *tie*, I. 53, 3.  
 dē-ligō, ligere, lēgi, lētum [legō, pick], *choose, select*.  
 dē-minuō, minuere, minui, minūtum [minus], *lessen, diminish*; *quicquam dē voluptate dēminuere, lessen his delight at all*.  
 dē-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, (let down); *capite dēmissō, with bowed head(s)*.  
 dē-mōnstrō, 1st conj., (point out), *show, mention*.  
 dēmum, adv., *at length*.  
 dē-negō, 1st conj., (utterly deny), *absolutely refuse*.  
 dēni, ae, a [decem], (ten by ten), *ten each*.  
 dēnique, adv., *finally; at least*, II. 33, 2.  
 dēnsus, a, um, *thick, dense*.  
 dē-nūntiō, 1st conj., (announce openly), *threaten*.  
 dē-perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum, *lose (entirely)*.  
 dē-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, (put down), *lay aside; leave*, II. 29, 4; *memoriam dēpōnere, (lay aside the memory), forget*.  
 dē-populor, 1st conj. [not connected with *populus*], *ravage (completely)*.

dēprecātor, tōris [dēprecor], *intercessor, advocate, mediator*; eō dēprecātore, (he being intercessor), *by his intercession, with him as mediator*.  
 dē-precor, 1st conj. [prex], *pray to be delivered from*.  
 dē-serō, serere, serui, sertum, (disjoin), *abandon, desert*.  
 dēsertus, a, um, partic. of dēserō.  
 dē-signō, 1st conj. [signum], (mark down); *designate, mean*.  
 dē-sistō, sistere, stiti, —, (stand down); *cease, desist*.  
 dē-spērō, 1st conj. [spēs], *give up hope, despair (dē, of)*.  
 dēspērātis nostris rēbus, (our affairs having been despaired of), *despairing of our success*.  
 dē-spiciō, spicere, spexi, spectum, *look down upon, despise*.  
 dē-spoliō, 1st conj. [spolia, spoils], *despoil, deprive*.  
 dē-stituō, stituere, stitui, stitutum [statuō], (set aside), *abandon, desert*.  
 dēstrictus, a, um, partic. of dēstringō.  
 dē-stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictum, *draw (from)*.  
 dē-sum, de-esse, dē-fui, (dē-futūrus), *be wanting, be lacking*, I. 48, 3; *fail*, I. 40, 12.  
 dē-super, adv., *from above*.  
 dēterior, ius, compar. adj. [dē], *lower, poorer*; *super*.  
 dēterrimus; vectigālia dēteriōra facere, (make his revenues lower), *lessen his revenues, make his revenues worth-less*.  
 dē-terreō, terrere, terrui, territum, (frighten off), *deter, prevent*.  
 dētrāctus, a, um, partic. of dētrahō.

dē-trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctum, draw off, remove, II. 21, 5; take, II. 25, 2. (dē, or dat. of separation, from.)

dētrimentum, i, n., disadvantage, loss, source of injury.

dētuli, perfect of dēferō.

deus, i, m., vocative deus; pl., and nom. voc., dei, dii, di; gen. deōrum, deum; dat. and abl. deis, diis, dis; acc. deōs; god.

dē-vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum, (convey to a destination), bring.

dē-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, come (down).

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right, opposed to left; compar. dexterior; super. dextrissimus; feminine as subst. with manus understood, right hand, I. 20, 5.

dī-, form of dis- before some consonants.

diciō, ōnis, f. [dicō], sway, control; like the English "say."

dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, (1) say, speak, tell; (2) with diem, appoint; causam dicere, plead the case.

dictiō, ōnis, f. [dicō], speaking; causae dictiō, pleading (of) the case.

dictum, i, n. [neut. of perf. partic. of dicō], (a thing said), word of command, order.

didici, perfect of discō.

diēs, diēi, m., but sometimes fem. in the sing. when referring to a definite date, day; time, I. 7, 5; in diēs, day by day, daily; ad diem, (at the day), promptly, punctually; multō diē, late in the day; diem ex diē, from day to day.

dif-, form of dis- before f.

dif-ferō, ferre, dis-tuli, di-latum, (bear apart), differ, be different.

dif-ficilis, e [facilis, easy], difficult, hard; compar. diff-cilior; super. difficillimus; with iter, hard to pass over.

difficultās, tātis, f. [difficilis], difficulty, trouble.

dignitās, tātis, f. [dignus, worthy], (worthiness, worth); rank, position.

diligenter: see diligō.

diligentia, ae, f. [diligēns, pres. partic. of diligō], carefulness, watchfulness.

dī-ligō, ligere, lēxi, lēctum [legō, pick, choose], select, care for. Pres. partic.: diligēns, caring for, careful. Adverb: diligenter, carefully.

dī-mētiōr, mētiri, mēnsus sum, measure off; opere dimēnsō (passive), the work having been measured off or staked out.

dī-micō, 1st conj. (flash apart: of swords), fight, contend.

dī-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, (send in all directions), (1) send away, dismiss, II. 14, 1; with concilium, dismiss, adjourn; (2) (let go away), lose, II. 21, 6.

dir-, form of dis-, before r.

direptus, a, um, partic. of diripiō.

dir-imō, imere, ēmi, ēptum [emō], (take apart), break off.

dī-ripio, ripere, ripui, reptum, (seize and tear apart), plunder.

dis-, insep. prefix, apart, asunder; hence sometimes having a negative or intensive force, according to the meaning of the word with which it is joined.



**dis-cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum,**  
(go apart), *go away, depart*;  
**discēdere ab,** *leave.*

**discēssus, ūs, m. [discēdō],** *departure.*

**disciplina, ae, f. [discō],** *training.*

**discō, discere, didici, —, learn,**  
*be taught.*

**dis-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled  
**disjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum**  
[**iaciō**], (throw in all direc-  
tions, scatter); *break, rout.*

**di-spergō, spargere, spersi,**  
**spersum [spargō],** *scatter in*  
*all directions, disperse.*

**dispersus, a, um, partic. of**  
**dispergō.**

**dis-pōnō, pōnere, posui, posi-**  
**tum,** (place apart), *place at*  
*intervals, distribute.*

**dis-sipō, 1st conj.,** (throw in all  
directions), *scatter, disperse.*

**dis-tineō, tinēre, tinui, tentum**  
[**teneō**], (hold apart), *keep*  
*apart, separate.*

**ditissimus, a, um:** *see dives.*

**diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv.,**  
*long, for a time; quam diū,*  
*as long as, I. 17, 6.*

**diurnus, a, um [diēs],** *during the*  
*day, by day.*

**diūturnitās, tātis, f. [diūturnus],**  
*length, long duration.*

**diūturnus, a, um [diū],** *long,*  
*long-continued.*

**diversus, a, um, partic. of divertō.**

**di-vertō, vertere, verti, versum,**  
*turn aside or apart. Perf.*  
*partic. used as an adj., dif-*  
*ferent.*

**dives, gen. divitis, or dis, gen.**  
**dītis,** *rich; compar. divitior*  
*or dītior; super. divitissimus*  
*or ditissimus.*

**Diviciācus, i, m.,** (1) the most  
influential of the Aeduans

during Caesar's campaign in  
Gaul, I. 3, 5, etc. (2) A chief  
of the Suessiones, II. 4, 7.

**Divicō, ōnis, m.,** leader of the  
Helvetians in their campaign  
against Cassius, B.C. 107,  
and chief of their embassy to  
Caesar after the destruction  
of the Tigurini.

**dividō, dividere, divisi, divisum**  
[**dis-, videō**], *divide, separate.*

**divīnus, a, um, divine, of the gods.**  
**dō, dare, dedi, datum, give;**  
*afford, allow, I. 14, 1; inter*  
*sē dare, exchange; in fugam*  
*dare, put to flight. In compo-*  
*sition dō often means put.*

**doceō, docēre, docui, doctum,**  
(teach), *show, explain (to).*

**doleō, dolēre, dolui, —, suffer.**  
**dolor, dolōris, m. [doleō],** (suf-  
fering); *distress, grief; māgnō*  
*dolōre affici, (be affected*  
*with great distress), be great-*  
*ly distressed. [capiō, feel, I.*  
*20, 2.]*

**dolus, i, m.,** (device); *deceit,*  
*cunning.*

**domesticus, a, um [domus],** (of  
the house); *local, domestic.*

**domicilium, i, n. [domus],** *dwel-*  
*ling-place, dwelling, residence.*

**dominor, 1st conj. [dominus,**  
*master], rule, be master, lord it.*

**domus, domūs, domui, domum,**  
**domō, loc. domi; pl. domūs,**  
**domōrum, domibus, domōs,**  
**domibus, f., home; domō**  
**exire,** (go out from home),  
*emigrate. See §§ 91, 93, 95,*  
*97.*

**dōnō, 1st conj. [dōnum, gift,**  
*present], present.*

**Dubis, is, m.,** a river of Gaul,  
tributary to the Arar (Saône),  
now the Doubs.

**dubitātiō, ōnis, f.** [dubitō], *doubt, hesitation.*

**dubitō, 1st conj.** [dubius], (1) *hesitate*; (2) when followed by **quīn**, *doubt*, except II. 2, 4; when followed by **dē**, *doubt, entertain doubts*, and so I. 41, 3.

**dubius, a, um** [duo], *doubtful*; **nōn est dubium quīn**, (it is not doubtful but that), *there is no doubt that.*

**ducentī, ae, a** [duō, centum], *card. adj., two hundred.*

**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**, (1) *lead*; of carts, *draw*; *put off, delay*, I. 16, 4, 5; *prolong*, I. 38, 4; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, (lead into marriage), *marry*; (2) *consider*, I. 3, 2.

**dum, subord. conj.**, *while; until.* See §§ 177-180. **nōn-dum**, *not yet.*

**Dumnorix, rīgis, m., a** *turbulent Aeduan.*

**duo, duae, duo, gen. duōrum, duārum, duōrum, dat. abl. duōbus, duābus, duōbus, acc. duōs or duo, duās, duo, card. adj., two.**

**duo-decim, indecl. card. adj.** [decem], *twelve.*

**duo-decim, a, um, ord. adj.** [decem, decimus], *twelfth.*

**duo-dē-vigintī, indecl. card. adj.**, (two from twenty), *eighteen.*

**duplex, gen. duplicis, adj.** [duo, two, plicō, fold], (twofold), *double.*

**dūrus, a, um, hard, difficult.**

**dux, ducis, m. or f.** [dūcō], *leader; guide*, I. 21, 2, II. 7, 1.

## E

**ē**, form of **ex** before some of the consonants.

**Eburōnēs, um, m., a** *tribe of Belgians, dwelling chiefly between the Rhine and the Meuse.*

**ēditus, a, um, partic. of ēdō.**

**ē-dō, dere, didi, ditum** [dō, dare], (put forth), *inflict. Perf. partic. ēditus, elevated, rising.*

**ē-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**, *lead out.*

**ef**, form of **ex**- before **f**.

**ef-fēminō, 1st conj.** [fēmina, woman], (make womanish), *weaken, enfeeble, enervate.*

**ef-ferō, ferre, ex-tuli, ē-lātum** (bear out), *take*, I. 5, 3; *re-late, tell*, I. 46, 4.

**ef-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum** [faciō], (make out, complete); (1) *effect*; (2) *render, make*, I. 38, 6.

**ēgi, perf. of agō.**

**ego, first pers. pron., I.** See page 207, and § 121.

**ē-gredior, gredi, gressus sum** [gradior, step], *go out.*

**ēgregiē**: see **ēgregius**.

**ē-gregius, a, um** [grex, flock], (out of the common), *extraordinary. Adverb; ēgregiē, extraordinarily, remarkably, excellently.*

**ēgressus, a, um, partic. of ēgredior.**

**ēlātus, a, um, partic. of efferō.**

**ēlēctus, a, um, partic. of eligō.**

**ē-ligō, ligere, lēgi, lēctum** [legō, choose], *pick (out).*

**ē-migrō, 1st conj., move out, emigrate.**

**ē-mittō, mittere, misi, missum**, (send out); *drop*, I. 25, 4; *throw*, II. 23, 1.

**emō, emere, emī, ēmptum, buy.**

**ē-nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum**, (be born from), *grow out.*

**enim**, coörd. conj., *for*; **neque enim**, implying an ellipsis, *and (this is true) for . . . not*, in which the *and* is best omitted in translation.

**ē-nūntiō**, 1st conj., (tell out), *disclose, reveal, make known*.

**eō**, *ire*, **ivī** or **ii**, *itum*, *go; march*. For conjugation, see pages 212, 213.

**eō**, adv.: see **is**.

**eōdem**, adv.: see **idem**.

**eques**, **equitis**, m. [**equus**], *horseman, cavalryman*, pl. *horsemen, cavalry*.

**equester**, **tris**, **tre** [**eques**], (pertaining to a horseman); **proelium equestre**, *cavalry battle*. For decl., see page 205.

**equitatus**, **ūs**, m. [**equitō**, *ride*], *cavalry*.

**equus**, **i**, m., *horse*.

**ē-ripiō**, **ripere**, **ripui**, **reptum**, *snatch (out), save; take away*, I. 17, 4, 43, 8; *free*, I. 4, 2.

**ērūpiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**ē-rumpō**, *break out*], (outbreak), *sortie, sally*.

**Esuvii**, **ōrum**, m., a tribe in western Gaul, probably divided into cantons, two of which were on the coast.

**et**, coörd. conj., (1) *and*; (2) *et . . . et, both . . . and*.

**etiam**, adv. [**et, iam**], (1) *also*; (2) *even*; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also*; **quīn etiam**, *further also, in fact*.

**etsi**, subord. conj., (even if), *although*.

**ē-vellō**, **vellere**, **velli**, **vulsum**, *pull out*.

**ēventus**, **ūs**, m. [**ē-veniō**, *come out*], (outcome), *result*.

**ex**, **ē**, prep. with **abl.**, *out from, out of, from*; in partitive expressions, *of; in accordance*

*with, as a result of*. As a prefix, *out, from*, sometimes intensive (like English "out and out"), or negative.

**ex-agitō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **agō**], (keep driving out of one place after another), *harass*.

**ex-animō**, 1st conj. [**anima**, *breath*], (deprive of breath, render breathless); perf. partic., *breathless, out of breath*.

**ex-audiō**, **audire**, **audiui**, **audītum**, *hear (from a distance)*.

**ex-cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cēssi**, **cēssum**, *go out, withdraw*.

**ex-cipiō**, **cipere**, **cēpi**, **ceptum** [**capiō**], (take up), *meet*.

**excursiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**ex-currō**, *run out*], (a running out), *sortie, sally*.

**exemplum**, **i**, n., *example, precedent; sort, kind*, I. 31, 12.

**ex-eō**, *ire*, **ivī** or **ii**, *itum*, *go out*; **exire dē** or **ex**, *leave*.

**ex-erceō**, **ercēre**, **ercui**, **ercitum**, *exercise, train*.

**exercitātiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**exercitō**], *training, practice, exercise*.

**exercitō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **exerceō**], *train thoroughly*.

**exercitus**, **ūs**, m. [**exerceō**], (training), *trained, disciplined or regular army*.

**exiguitās**, **tātis**, f. [**exiguus**, *small*], (smallness); *shortness, lack*. [**tanta**, *such*].

**eximius**, **a**, **um**, *exceptional, excellent, high*.

**existimātiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**existimō**], (thought), *opinion*.

**ex-istimō**, 1st conj. [**aestimō**, *estimate*], *think, consider*.

**ex-pediō**, **pedire**, **pedivī**, **peditum** [**pēs**, **pedis**, *foot*], (get one's foot out, set free). Perf.

partic. *expeditus*, a, um (1) *free, easy*; compar. *less occupied*, I. 52, 7; (2) *light-armed, without baggage*.  
**ex-pellō**, *pellere*, *puli*, *pulsum*, *drive out, expel*.  
**ex-perior**, *periri*, *pertus sum*, *try*; with *fortūnam*, *experience*.  
**explōrātor**, *tōris*, m. [*explōrō*], *scout*.  
**ex-plōrō**, 1st conj., *find out*.  
**ex-primō**, *primere*, *pressi*, *presum* [*premō*], (*press out*), *force out, secure*.  
**ex-pūgnō**, 1st conj., (*fight out*), *take by storm, capture by assault*.  
**ex-quirō**, *quīrere*, *quīsivī*, *quīsītum* [*quaerō*], *search out, find out*.  
**ex-sequor**, *sequi*, *secūtus sum*, (*follow up*), *enforce, assert*.  
**ex-spectō**, 1st conj., (*look out for*); (1) *wait, wait to see*; (2) *wait for, await*.  
**ex-struō**, *struere*, *strūxi*, *strūctum*, (*pile up*), *build, construct*.  
**exter** or *exterus*, a, um, *outside*; compar. *exterior, outer, exterior*; super. *extrēmus* or *extimus*, (1) *farthest, most distant, last*; (2) *the last part of, the end of*, II. 11, 4.  
**extrā**, prep. with acc., *outside, outside of, beyond*.  
**extrēmus**, a, um, *super. of exter*.  
**ex-ūrō**, *ūrere*, *ūssi*, *ūstum*, (*burn out*), *burn up, burn to the ground*.

F

**Fabius**, i, m., *Quintus Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus*, who

defeated the Allobroges, Arvernus, and Ruteni in B.C. 121.  
**facile**, adv.: see *facilis*.  
**facilis**, e [*faciō*], *easy*; compar. *facilior*, super. *facillimus*.  
 Adverb: *facile, easily*; compar. *facilius*, super. *facillimē*.  
**facinus**, *facinoris*, n. [*faciō*], (*deed*); *crime*.  
**faciō**, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factum*, *passive fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum* (see *fiō*), (1) *do*; (2) *make; build, construct, furnish, cause, form, etc.*; with *vis*, *use*; with *proelium*, *fight*; with *pōns*, *build*; with *cōpia*, *give*; with *imperāta*, *obey*; see also *certus*, *iter*, *satis*, *verbum*.  
*factum*, neut. of perf. partic., (*a thing done*), *action*, I. 42, 5.  
**factiō**, *ōnis*, f. [*faciō*], (*a taking sides*), *party, faction*.  
**facultās**, *tātis*, f. [*facilis*; coordinate form *facilitās*], (*ease, facility*); (1) *opportunity, chance, power*; (2) *supply*, I. 38, 3; pl., *resources*.  
**fallō**, *fallere*, *fefelli*, *falsum*, *deceive, disappoint*.  
**famēs**, is, f., abl. *famē*, *hunger, famine*; *famem tolerāre*, (*satisfy hunger*), *live*.  
**familia**, ae, f., (*body of servants; household*); *retinue*, I. 4, 2; *māter familiae*, *matron*.  
**familiāris**, e [*familia*], (1) *belonging to the household*; *rēs familiāris*, *private property*.  
 (2) *Masc. used as a subst., personal friend*.

**fās**, n., indecl. noun, used only in nom. and acc., "*the will of heaven*"; what is right in the sight of the gods, as opposed to *iūs*, what is right in the sight of men.

**fästigö**, 1st conj., *bring to a point.*

Perf. partic. as adj., *sloping.*

**fätum**, i, n., *fate.*

**faveö**, **favere**, **fävi**, **fautum**, *be favorable, favor; with dative.*

**fefelli**, perf. of **fallö**.

**fêlicitäs**, **tätis**, f. [**fêlix**, **fêlicis**, *lucky*], *good fortune, success.*

**ferâx**, **ferâcis**, adj. [**ferö**], *fertile.*

**ferê**, adv., *almost, about.*

**ferö**, **ferre**, **tuli**, **lätum**, *bear, in the sense of (1) bring, carry; or (2) endure, take, as with graviter or dolore, be annoyed, be grieved; passive as middle voice, rush, II. 24, 3; signa ferre, march, move, advance. For conjugation, see pages 212, 213.*

**ferrum**, i, n., *iron.*

**fertilitäts**, **tätis**, f. [**fertilis**, *fertile*], *fertility.*

**ferus**, a, um, *fierce.*

**fidês**, **fidei**, f. [**fidö**, *trust*], (1) *confidence, trust, I. 19, 3, 41, 4; (2) loyalty, faithfulness; (3) pledge; (4) with permittö, veniö, sum, protection; per fidem, through breach of faith, treacherously, I. 46, 3.*

**filia**, ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **filiäbus**, *daughter.*

**filius**, i, m., *son.*

**fiögö**, **ingere**, **finxi**, **factum**, (form, shape); *control.*

**finis**, is, m., (1) *end; limit, II. 19, 5; (2) pl. territory, boundaries.*

**finitimus**, a, um [**finis**], (1) *neighboring; often, adjoining; (2) masc. pl. as subst., neighbors.*

**fio**, **fieri**, **factus sum** [passive of **faciö**], (1) *be made; (2) be done; (3) happen; (4) become.*

**firmus**, a, um, *strong, firm.*

**Flaccus**, i, m., *Caius Valerius Flaccus, propraetor of the province of Gaul, 83 B.C.*

**flägitö**, 1st conj., *demand urgently.*

**fiens**, partic. of **fiö**.

**fiö**, **fiere**, **fiëvi**, **fiëtum**, *weep; pres. partic., (weeping), with tears.*

**fiëtus**, üs, m. [**fiö**], *weeping; magnö fiëtü*, *with many tears.*

**fiöreö**, **fiörëre**, **fiörüi**, —, [**fiös**, **fiöris**, *flower*], (bloom); pres. partic. as adj., *flourishing.*

**fiümen**, **minis**, n. [**fiuö**], (that which flows), *river.*

**fiuö**, **fluere**, **fluxi**, **fluxum**, *flow. fore, occasional form for futürus esse, fut. infin. of sum.*

**fors**, abl. **forte**, no pl., *chance; forte statuere*, (decide by chance), *chance to decide, II. 31, 3.*

**forte**, II. 31, 3, see **fors**.

**fortis**, e, *brave. Adverb: fortiter, bravely.*

**förtiter**: see **fortis**.

**fortitüdö**, **dinis**, f. [**fortis**], *bravery.*

**fortüna**, ae, f. [**fors**], (1) *fortune, chance in general; good fortune, I. 40, 12; (2) property, possessions, I. 11, 6.*

**fossa**, ae, f., *ditch, trench.*

**fräctus**, a, um, partic. of **frangö**. **frangö**, **frangere**, **frëgi**, **fräctum**, (break), *crush.*

**fräter**, **tris**, m., *brother; used figuratively in the plural as term of honor, I. 33, 2, 44, 9, II. 3, 5.*

**fraternus**, a, um [**fräter**], *brotherly, of a brother; nomen fräternum, the name "brothers," I. 36, 5.*

**fremitus**, ūs, m. [fremō, roar], noise.

**frigus**, frigoris, n., cold; pl., cold spells.

**frōns**, frontis, f., (forehead), front. [ā, in, II. 23, 4, 25, 1.]

**frūctuōsus**, a, um [frūctus, fruit], (fruitful), fertile, productive.

**frūmentārius**, a, um [frūmentum], (relating to grain), productive of grain, I. 10, 2; rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, supply of grain.

**frumentum**, i, n., (1) grain; (2) pl. usually standing grain.

**frūx**, frūgis, f., produce; usually pl., crops.

**fuga**, ae, f., flight.

**fugiō**, fugere, fūgi, fugitum [fuga], flee.

**fugitivus**, a, um [fugiō], fleeing, fugitive. Masc. as subst., deserter.

**fūmus**, i, m., smoke.

**funditor**, tōris, m. [funda, sling], slinger.

**furor**, ōris, m. [furō, rage], rage; excitement, II. 3, 5.

**futūrus**, a, um, fut. partic. of sum.

## G

**Gabinus**, i, m., Aulus Gabinus, consul 58 B.C.

**Gāius**, i, m., abbreviation C., a Roman praenomen.

**Galba**, ae, m., "king" of the Suessiones.

**galea**, ae, f., helmet, usually of leather.

**Gallia**, ae, f. [Gallus], Gaul; the name applied to (1) an indefinite region embracing modern France, part of Switzerland, and all the territory north of this to the Rhine,

e.g. I. 1, 1; (2) the central division of the latter, described in I. 1, 5.

**Gallicus**, a, um [Gallus], Gallic.

**Gallus**, a, um, relating to Gaul, of Gaul, Gallic. Masc. used as a subst., a Gaul, pl. the Gauls, inhabitants of Gaul in either sense.

**Garumna**, ae, m. or f., the Garonne river, in southwestern Gaul.

**Genāva**, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva; on Lake Geneva at its outlet into the Rhone.

**generātim**, adv. [genus], by tribes.

**gēns**, gentis, f., tribe.

**genus**, generis, n., kind.

**Germānus**, a, um, German. Masc. pl. as subst., the Germans.

**gerō**, gerere, gessi, gestum, (bear, carry); (1) with bellum, carry on, wage; (2) in passive, be done, be going on; with rem, conduct, manage, I. 40, 12.

**gladius**, i, m., sword.

**glōria**, ae, f., reputation (for), with gen.

**glōrior**, 1st conj. [glōria], boast (of); with abl. of cause.

**Graecus**, a, um, Greek.

**Graioceli**, ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe inhabiting the Graian Alps.

**grandis**, e, large.

**grātia**, ae, f. [grātus], favor, popularity; hanc grātiā referre, show such gratitude, make such return; grātiās agere, (return thanks), thank.

**grātulātiō**, onis, f. [grātulor], (congratulation), joy, satisfaction.

**grātulor**, 1st conj. [grātus], (show joy), *congratulate, offer congratulations.*

**grātus**, a, um, *pleasing, pleasant*; neut. as subst., *favor*, I. 44, 12.

**gravis**, e, (heavy); *serious, severe.* Adverb: **graviter**, (heavily), *bitterly*; **graviter ferre**, *be displeased.*

**graviter**: see **gravis**.

**gravō**, 1st conj. [gravis], (load); pass., (be burdened), *object.*

## H

**habeō**, **habēre**, **habuī**, **habitus**, (1) *have*; (2) *hold, consider, regard*; keep, I. 44, 10; with **cēsum**, *take*; **ōratiōnem habēre**, *make a speech*; **sē habēre**, (have itself), *be*, II. 19, 1.

**Harūdēs**, um, m., a German tribe allied to those under Ariovistus.

**Helvētius**, a, um, *Helvetian*. Masc. as subst., *Helvetian*, pl. *the Helvetians*, the inhabitants of part of modern Switzerland.

**hibernus**, a, um [hiems. *winter*], *of winter, winter*. Neut. pl. as subst., with **castra** understood, (winter camp), *winter quarters.*

**hīc**, **haec**, **hōc**, dem. adj. and pro., *this*, pl. *these*; often best translated by personal pron., *he, she, it*, etc. Adverb: **hūc**, (hither), *to this place.*

**hiēmō**, 1st conj. [hiems. *winter*], *pass the winter, winter.*

**Hispānia**, ae, f., *Spain.*

**homo**, **hominis**, m. or f., (human being), *man*, in the generic

sense; **multitūdō hominum**, *population*, I. 2, 5.

**honestus**, a, um [honōs], (regarded with honor), *respected, honored, distinguished.*

**honōrificus**, a, um [honōs, faciō], *honorable*; compar. **honōrificentior**, super. **honōrificentissimus**.

**honōs** or **honor**, **honōris**, m., *honor, distinction*; **honōris causā**, *as a mark of honor* (to), II. 15, 1.

**hōra**, ae, f., *hour*, one of the twelve equal divisions of the day, opposed to the watches (**vigiliae**) of the night; the Roman hour thus varied in length with the season of the year, but the seventh hour always began at noon.

**horreō**, **horrēre**, **horruī**, —, (bristle), *shudder at, tremble at.*

**hortor**, 1st conj., *urge, encourage.*

**hospes**, **hospitis**, m. or f., (host, guest); *friend*, through ties of hospitality.

**hospitium**, i, n. [hospes], *friendship*, through ties of hospitality; *interest, alliance* (with), I. 31, 7.

**hostis**, is, m. or f., *enemy* of the state, *public enemy*; sing., of an individual, *an enemy, one of the enemy*, I. 26, 2, 44, 11; elsewhere, sing. generically, pl. collectively, *the enemy.*

**hūc**: see **hīc**.

**hūmānitās**, **tātis**, f. [hūmānus, *human, civilized*], (humanity), *refinement.*

## I

**I**, numeral, 1.

**i-**, form of **in** or **in-**, before **g**.

**iaceō, iacēre, iacui**, — [intrans. of **iaciō**], (be thrown, lie prostrate); pres. partic. pl., (those lying prostrate), *the fallen*, II. 27, 3.

**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum**, throw; throw up, construct, II. 12, 5.

**iactō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **iaciō**], throw; discuss, I. 18, 1; wrench about, jerk back and forth, I. 25, 4.

**iam**, adv., (1) of present time, now; (2) of past time, already; (3) of future time, presently; (4) with negatives, longer, any longer.

**ibi** or **ibi**, adv., there, in that place.

**Iccius, i**, m., a leader of the Remi.

**ictus, ūs**, m., blow.

**Īd.**, abbreviation for **Īdūs**.

**idem, eadem, idem**, gen. **ēiusdem**, etc., dem. pron., the same; freely, again, I. 32, 3. [atque, following **idem**, as, II. 6, 2.] Adverb: **eōdem**, to the same place, to the same point; **eōdem pertinēre**, (hold through to the same point), be along the same line, be of the same nature.

**identidem**, adv. [**idem et idem**], again and again, repeatedly.

**idōneus, a, um**, suitable; compar. **magis idōneus**, super. **māximē idōneus**.

**Īdūs, Iduum**, f. plu., the Ides, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of other months.

**ignis, is**, m., abl. **igni**, fire; in the sense of camp-fire, II. 7, 4, signal fire, II. 33, 3.

**i-gnōrō**, 1st conj. [related to **i-gnārus**, unacquainted, **i-gnō-scō, i-gnōtus**], overlook.

**i-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnō-tum**, pardon; with dative.

**il-**, form of **in** or **in-** before **l**.

**illātus, a, um**, partic. of **inferō**.

**ille, illa, illud**, gen. **illius**, etc., dem. pron., that, pl. those; often best translated by an emphatic *he, she, it*, etc. Adverbs: **illic**, there, in that place; **illō**, thither, to that place.

**illic**: see **ille**.

**Īlyricum, i**, n., the country along the eastern coast of the Adriatic, a part of Caesar's province, now Istria and Dalmatia.

**im-**, form of **in** or **in-** before **b, m**, and **p**.

**im-mortalis, e** [in-; mors], (not liable to death), immortal.

**impedimentum, i**, n. [**impediō**], hindrance; pl., (the things that hinder an army), baggage, baggage-train.

**im-pediō, pedire, pedivī, pedītum [pēs]**, (entangle the feet), (1) hinder, interfere with; (2) perf. partic., translated freely, at a disadvantage; **nihil im-peditum**, no obstacle, II. 28, 1.

**impeditus, a, um**, partic. of **impediō**.

**im-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum**, (drove on), incite, influence, urge.

**im-pendeō, pendēre**, —, —, (overhang), tower above.

**imperātor, tōris**, m. [**imperō**], commander, commander-in-chief.

**im-peritus, a, um** [in-], (unskilled), inexperienced (in), unacquainted (with), with gen.; **imperitus rērum**, ignorant of events.



**imperātum** : see **imperō**.

**imperium**, **i**, n. [**imperō**], (1) *command, order, control*; (2) **nova imperia**, (new forms of government), *revolution*, II. 1, 3.

**im-perō**, 1st conj. [**parō**], (prepare upon); (1) *command*, with dat. translated as obj.; (2) *demand*, with dat. translated from; *rule, exercise authority*, I. 31, 12, 36, 1. Neut. of perf. partic. used as a subst., (a thing commanded), *command*. [**faciō**, *execute, obey*].

**im-petrō**, 1st conj., (1) *obtain one's request*; (2) *obtain* (by request).

**impetus**, **ūs**, m. [**petō**, *seek*: like English "go for"], *attack, charge; force, violence*, II. 6, 1.

**im-plōrō**, 1st conj., (cry out for), *beseech, implore; beg, seek*.

**im-pōno**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum**, *place upon*, I. 42, 5, 51, 3 [**ēō**, adv., *upon these*]; with **stipendium**, *levy, impose*.

**im-portō**, 1st conj., *bring in, import*.

**im-probus**, **a**, **um** [**in-**], (not good), *reckless, wicked*.

**im-prōvisus**, **a**, **um** [**in-**; **prōvideō**], *unforeseen*; abl. **im-prōvisō**, or **dē imprōvisō**, as adverb, *unexpectedly*.

**impulsus**, **a**, **um**, partic. of **impellō**.

**impūne**, adv. [**im-pūnis**, *unpunished, from in-, poena*], *without punishment, with impunity*.

**impūnitās**, **tātis**, f. [**im-pūnis**, *unpunished, from in-, poena*], (exemption from punishment), *impunity*.

**imus**, **a**, **um**, super. of **inferus**.

**in**, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) With acc., *into*; less exactly, *to, toward, against*; with terms of extent, **lātitudinem**, **longitudinem**, **altitudinem**, *in*; of purpose or design, *for*, e.g. I. 3, 2, 30, 4, etc. with **iūs**, **potestātem**, *over*. (2) With abl., *in*; less exactly, *at, on, upon, over, among, within*; sometimes with names of persons, *in the case of*.

**in-**, insep. prefix, giving negative force to adjectives and adverbs, and to equivalent expressions.

**in-cendō**, **cendere**, **cendī**, **cēsum**, *set fire to*.

**in-cidō**, **cidere**, **cidī**, **cāsum** [**cadō**], (fall to); *happen, occur*, II. 14, 5; with **in**, *fall into the hands of*, I. 53, 5.

**in-cidō**, **cidere**, **cidī**, **cisum** [**caedō**], *cut into, cut partly through*.

**in-cipiō**, **cipere**, **cēpī**, **ceptum** [**capiō**], (take into), *begin*.

**incisus**, **a**, **um**, partic. of **in-cidō**.

**in-citō**, 1st conj., *urge on; excite, arouse*, I. 4, 3; *quicken*, II. 26, 3.

**in-colō**, **colere**, **coluī**, —, *live (in), inhabit*.

**in-columis**, **e**, *unharmed, safe*.

**in-commodus**, **a**, **um**, *inconvenient*. Neut. as subst., (inconvenience), *defeat, reverse*.

**in-crēdibilis**, **e** [**in-**; **crēdō**], (unbelievable), *incredible*.

**in-crepitō**, 1st conj., *blame, reproach; taunt*, II. 30, 3.

**incursus**, **ūs**, m. [**in-currō**, *run upon*], (on-rush), *onset, charge, attack*.

**in-cūsō**, 1st conj. [**causa**, *case*,

*charge*, (make charge against), *blame*, *reproach*.  
**inde**, adv. (1) *thence*, *from that place*; (2) *then*.  
**indiciūm**, *i*, n. [*in-dicō*, *point out*], *information*, *evidence*; *freely*, *informers*, I. 4, 1.  
**in-dicō**, *dicere*, *dixi*, *dictum*, (*proclaim*); *call*, *summon*.  
**indignitās**, *tātis*, f. [*in-dignus*, *unworthy*], (*unworthiness*), *outrage*, *indignity*.  
**in-diligēns**, *entis*, *careless*. *Ad-verb*: *indiligenter*, *carelessly*.  
**in-dūcō**, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductum*, (*lead on*); *influence*, *induce*; *cover*, II. 33, 2.  
**in-dulgeō**, *dulgere*, *dulsi*, *dul-tum*, (*be kind to*); *favor*, *indulge*, with *dat*.  
**in-duō**, *duere*, *dui*, *dūtum*, *put on*.  
**in-eō**, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, (*go into*); with *cōsillium*, *form*; *initā aestate*, (*the summer having been gone into*), *at the beginning of summer*.  
**in-ermis**, *e*, or *in-ermus*, *a*, *um* [*in-*; *arma*], *unarmed*.  
**in-**, form of *in* or *in-* before *f* and *s*.  
**in-ferō**, *ferre*, *in-tuli*, *il-lātum*, (1) *bring in*, *import*, II. 15, 4; (2) (*bring to*, *bring upon*), with *bellum*, *make* (*offensive*) *war*; with *alacritatem*, *spem*, *inspire*; with *iniūriam*, *calamitatem*, *vulnera*, *inflict*; with *signa*, *advance*; with *conversa signa*, (*advance the standards turned*), *form a second front and advance*, I. 25, 7, II. 26, 1.  
**inferus**, *a*, *um*, *low*; *compar. inferior*, *lower*; *inferior*, II. 8, 2; *super. infimus* or *imus*,

(*the lowest part*), *the base*, *the bottom*, II. 18, 2.  
**infimus**, *a*, *um*, *super. of inferus*.  
**in-flectō**, *flectere*, *flexi*, *flexum*, *bend* (*over*).  
**in-fluō**, *fluere*, *fluxi*, *fluxum*, *flow into*, *empty into*.  
**in-gēns**, *gentis*, *adj.*, (*unnatural*), *huge*, *enormous*.  
**in-gredior**, *gredi*, *gressus sum* [*gradior*, *step*], (*go into*), *enter*.  
**in-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled *injiciō*), *icere*, *iēci*, *iectum*, (*throw into*), *inspire* (*in*).  
**iniectus**, *a*, *um*, *partic. of in-iciō*.  
**in-imicus**, *a*, *um* [*in-*; *amicus*], (1) *unfriendly*, *personally hostile*. (2) *Masc. as subst.*, *personal enemy*, I. 10, 2.  
**iniquitās**, *tātis*, f. [*iniquus*], (*unevenness*), *inequality*; *rērum*, *of circumstances*.  
**in-iquus**, *a*, *um* [*in-*; *aequus*], (*uneven*), *unfavorable*; *unfair*, *unjust*, I. 44, 4, 8.  
**initium**, *i*, n. [*ineō*, *begin*], *beginning*; with *silvārum*, *edge*.  
**initus**, *a*, *um*, *partic. of ineō*.  
**iniūria**, *ae*, f. [*in-iūrus*, *a*, *um*, *wrong*, *from in- and iūs*], (1) *wrong*, *injustice*, I. 12, 7, 14, 2, 20, 5, 36, 4; (2) *damage*, *injury*; (3) *abl. of manner*, *unjustly*, I. 35, 3, 36, 5.  
**in-iūssū**, *adv.* [*in-*, *not*; *iūssū*, *by order*], *without an order*; modified by *posses. adj.* and *gen.*, as though still a noun, *iniūssu suō et civitātis*, *without his order and (that) of the state*.  
**in-nitor**, *niti*, *nixus* or *nisus sum*, *rest upon*, *lean on*, with *abl. of means*.  
**innixus**, *a*, *um*, *partic. of innitor*.

**innocentia**, ae, f., *integrity, uprightness.*

**inopia**, ae, f., *lack, want, need.*

**in-opināns**, antis, adj., (not expecting); *freely, unexpectedly, off their guard.*

**in-sciēns**, entis, adj. [in-; sciō], *not knowing; with ipsis, abl. abs., (themselves not knowing), without their knowledge.*

**in-sequor**, sequi, secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

**insidiae**, ārum, f. [in-sideō, sit in wait for], *(ambuscade); stratagem.*

**in-signis**, e [signum], *(having a sign or mark), marked, remarkable, signal, I. 12, 6. Neut. as subst., sign, signal, II. 20, 1; pl. ornaments, decorations, insignia.*

**in-siliō**, silire, silui, — [saliō], *leap upon.*

**in-sistō**, sistere, stiti, —, *stand upon, take a stand upon.*

**insolenter**, adv., *haughtily.*

**instar**, indecl. noun, *image, likeness; instar mūri, (the likeness of a wall), like a wall.*

**in-stituō**, statuere, stitui, stitutum [statuō], *(put in place), begin; train, teach, I. 14, 7. Neut. of perf. partic. as a subst., custom, habit.*

**institutum**: see institutum.

**in-stō**, stāre, stiti, stātum, *(stand on); press forward; approach, be close at hand, I. 16, 5.*

**in-struō**, struere, struxi, strūctum, *build (up), erect, construct, II. 30, 3; draw up, arrange.*

**intel-legō**, legere, lēxi, lēctum [inter, among, legō, pick], *understand.*

**inter**, prep. with acc., (1) of

two, *between; (2) of more than two, among; within, for, I. 36, 7; less exactly, in the midst of, in; inter sē dare, exchange; inter sē contendere, fight with each other; inter sē differre, differ from each other.*

**inter-cēdō**, cedere, cēssi, cēsum, *(go between), intervene, I. 7, 5; be between; exist between, I. 43, 6. [cum, and.]*

**inter-cipiō**, cipere, cēpi, ceptum [capiō], *(take between), intercept, catch in the air.*

**inter-clūdō**, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum [claudō], *(close in between), cut off.*

**inter-dicō**, dicere, dixi, dictum, *(put a command between a person and his desire), exclude.*

**inter-diū**, adv. [diēs], *during the day, by day, in the daytime.*

**inter-dum**, adv., *("between whiles"), for a while, I. 14, 5; sometimes.*

**inter-eā**, adv. [old case form of is], *(in the midst of this), meanwhile.*

**inter-ficiō**, ficere, fēcī, factum [faciō], *(put down), kill.*

**inter-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled interjiciō), icere, iēcī, iectum [iaciō], *(throw between), put in between, plant between, II. 17, 4; pass., intervene, lie between, II. 22, 1.*

**interim**, adv. [inter], *meanwhile.*

**inter-mittō**, mittere, misi, missum, *(let go between); (1) interrupt, discontinue; leave a gap; stop, cease, II. 25, 1; (2) perf. pass., intervene.*

**interneciō**, ōnis, f. [nex, necō], *extermination, annihilation, destruction.*

**inter-pellō, pellerē, puli, pulsum,** (drive into the midst), *disturb, interfere with.*

**inter-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum,** (place between); **interpositā causā,** *for the reason alleged, or by a mere pretext.*

**interpres, pretis, m., interpreter.**

**inter-scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum,** (cut in two), *break down.*

**inter-sum, esse, fui, futurus,** *be between; impers., it concerns, II. 5, 2, see § 63.*

**inter-vāllum, ī, n.,** (space between two walls), *distance, interval.*

**in-texō, texere, texui, textum,** *weave (in), plait.*

**intrā, prep. with acc.,** *inside, within.*

**intrō, prefix, inside, within.**

**intrō, 1st conj. [inter, intrā],** *enter.*

**intrō-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum,** *lead into, introduce.*

**intrō-mittō, mittere, misi, missum,** *send in or let in.*

**intrōrsus, adv. [contracted from intrōversus, turned toward the inside],** *inside, within.*

**in-tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum,** *look at, gaze upon.*

**intuli, perf. of inferō.**

**in-ūsītātus, a, um [in-; ūtor],** *unusual.*

**in-ūtilis, e [in-; ūtor],** (not usable), *useless.*

**in-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum,** (come upon), *find.*

**in-veterāscō, veterāscere, veterāvī, — [vetus],** (grow old in), *become established, gain a permanent foothold.*

**in-victus, a, um [in-; victus,** *conquered], unconquered, hence,*

*less exactly, unconquerable, invincible.*

**in-videō, vidēre, vidi, visum** (look askance at), *envy, with dat.*

**in-vitō, 1st conj.,** (call into), *invite.*

**in-vitus, a, um, unwilling; sē (eō) invitō, abl. abs.,** (he being unwilling), *without his consent, and similarly, I. 9, 1.*

**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius, dat. ipsi,** *intensive pron., self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; gen. often his own, their own, more emphatic than suus.*

**ir-,** form of **in** or **in-** before **r.**

**irācundus, a, um [ira, wrath],** (liable to wrath), *passionate, irritable.*

**ir-rīdeō, ridēre, risi, risum,** *laugh.*

**ir-ridiculē, adv., unwittingly; nōn irrīdiculē,** *not without wit, quite wittily.*

**is, ea, id,** page 207, *dem. and pers. pron. (1) this, that, pl., these, those; (2) he, she, it, they, etc. Adverb: eō, thither, or, in the inexact English use, there, to that place.*

**ita, adv., so, in such a way; thus, as follows; so well, I. 11, 3; ita uti, as, II. 1, 1; ita . . . ut, as . . . as, II. 33, 4.**

**Italia, ae, f., Italy.**

**ita-que, conj., and so, therefore.**

**item, adv., likewise, in the same way.**

**iter, itineris, n. [eō, go],** (1) *march; journey, I. 3, 4; (2) road, route; iter facere, march; with dare, passage, permission to pass; with prohibēre, passing; ex itinere, while on the*

*march; māgnum iter, long march, forced march.*  
**iterum**, adv., *again, a second time.*  
**iuba**, ae, f., *mane.*  
**iubeō**, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum, *order.*  
**iūdicium**, i, n. [iūdex, iūdicis, *judge*], *judgment, I. 41, 3; trial, I. 4, 2; optimum iūdicium facere, express such an excellent opinion, I. 41, 2.*  
**iūdicō**, 1st conj. [iūdex, iūdicis, *judge*], *judge.*  
**iugum**, i, n. [same stem as iungō], (that which joins); (1) *yoke, formed of three spears, two planted in the ground, the third across the top of these; to pass under this was a symbol of surrender and slavery, I. 7, 4, 12, 5; (2) ridge, connecting two or more summits, or forming a summit.*  
**Iūlius**, i, m., *Julius, a Roman family name.*  
**iumentum**, i, n. [for iugmentum, from stem of iungō], (*yoke-animal*); *draught animal, pack animal, beast of burden, applied to oxen, horses, and mules.*  
**iungō**, iungere, iūnxī, iūctum, *join, unite.*  
**Iūra**, ae, f., *the Jura mountain range, the Jura mountains, extending northeast from the Rhone west of Lake Geneva to the Rhine.*  
**iūrandum**, neut. of gerundive of iūrō, used only with iūs, which see.  
**iūrō**, 1st conj. [iūs], *take (the) oath.*  
**iūs**, iūris, n., *right, rights; law;*

**iūs iūrandum**, iūris iūrandī, n., (sworn duty), *oath.*  
**iūstitia**, ae, f. [iūstus], *justice, fairness.*  
**iūstus**, a, um [iūs], *just, rightful.*  
**iuvō**, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help, assist.*  
**iuxtā**, adv., *near by, next (to them).*

## K

**Kal.**, abbrev. for **Kalendae**, ārum, f., *the Kalends or Calends, the first day of each Roman month.*

## L

**L**, numeral, 50.  
**L.**, abbreviation for **Lucius**.  
**Labiēnus**, i, m., *Titus Labienus, the foremost of Caesar's legati, his chief lieutenant throughout the Gallic war, where he "never made a mistake." In the civil war, thinking his services indispensable, he deserted Caesar, who ironically sent his baggage after him; his painstaking care was no match for Caesar's genius, and he fell at the battle of Munda.*  
**labor**, ōris, m., *toil, exertion, labor.*  
**labōrō**, 1st conj. [labor], (labor); *strive for, I. 31, 2; pres. partic., (being hard pressed), who were hard pressed, I. 52, 7.*  
**laccessō**, lacessere, lacessivī, lacessitum, *provoke, harass.*  
**lacrima**, ae, f., *tear.*  
**lacus**, ūs, m., dat. and abl. pl. **lacubus** or **lacibus**, *lake.*  
**lapis**, lapidis, m., *stone.*  
**largior**, largīri, largītus sum

[*largus, abundant*], (give abundantly); gerund, *bribing, bribery*, I. 18, 4.

**largiter**: see **largus**.

**largitiō, ōnis, f.** [*largior*], (abundant giving), *generosity, bribery*.

**largus, a, um, abundant.** Adverb: **largiter**, *abundantly*; **largiter posse**, *be very powerful, have great influence*.

**lassitudō, tūdinis, f.** [*lassus, weary*], *weariness, exhaustion*.

**lātē**: see **lātus**.

**lateō, latēre, latuī, —**, *lie hidden, be concealed*.

**lātitudō, tūdinis, f.** [*lātus*], *width, breadth*; in *lātitudinem*, in *width*; *laterally, horizontally*, II. 17, 4.

**Latobrigi, ōrum, m.**, a tribe of Gauls located probably upon the farther bank of the Rhine, north of the Helvetians, near the sources of the Danube.

**lātus, a, um, wide, broad**; *extensive*, II, 4, 6. Adverb: **lātē**, *widely*.

**latus, lateris, n.**, *side*; of an army, *flank*; **ab apertō latere**, *on the exposed (i.e. right) flank*.

**laus, laudis, f.**, *praise, glory*.

**laxō, 1st conj.** [*laxus, loose*], (*loosen*); **manipulōs laxāre**, *open or extend ranks*.

**lēgātiō, ōnis, f.** [*lēgō, delegate*], (*delegation*), *embassy*; *mission*, I. 3, 3.

**lēgātus, i, m.** [*masc. of perf. partic. of lēgō, delegate*], (a man delegated with power; hence), (1) in military language, *lieutenant of any rank, especially a lieutenant-general or staff-officer*; (2) in diplo-

matic relations, *ambassador, envoy, commissioner*.

**legiō, ōnis, f.** [*lēgō, collect*], (*collection*); *legion*, the unit of the Roman army; see Introduction, page xxxi.

**legiōnārius, a, um** [*legiō*], (*belonging to a legion*), *legionary, of the legions*; like our "regular" troops, I. 42, 5.

**Lemannus, i, m.**, with *lacus, Lake Geneva*.

**lēnis, e, smooth.** Adverb: **lēniter**, *gently, gradually*.

**lēnitās, tātis, f.** [*lēnis*], *smoothness*.

**lēniter**: see **lēnis**.

**Leuci, ōrum, m.**, a tribe between the Marne river and the Vosges mountains, about the source of the Moselle.

**levis, e, light** (in weight).

**levitās, tātis, f.** [*levis*], (*lightness*), *fickleness, restlessness*.

**lēx, lēgis, f.**, *law; decree*.

(*lib.*, abbreviation for *liber*.)

**libēns, entis, adj.** [*libet, it pleases*], *willing*. Adverb: **libenter**, *willingly, gladly*.

**libenter**: see **libēns**.

(*liber, libri, m.*, *book*. Not in text of *Bellum Gallicum*.)

**liber, libera, liberum, free**; *undisputed*, I. 44, 13; *masc. pl. used as a subst.*, (those born free, or perhaps those free from care), *children*. Compar. **liberior**, *super. liberimus*. Adverb: **liberē**, *freely*.

**liberālis, e** [*liber*], *befitting a free man, generous, gracious*. Adverb: **liberāliter**, *graciously, courteously*.

**liberālitās, tātis, f.** [*liberālis*], *generosity, liberality, kindness*.

**liberaliter** : see **liberālis**.

**liberē** : see **liber**.

**liberī** : see **liber**.

**libertās, tātis**, f. [**liber**], *freedom*.

**liceor, licēri, licitus sum**, *bid* (at auction).

**licet, licēre, licuit** (*licitum est*), (it is lawful), *it is permitted, it is allowed*, often best translated by *may* or *might*; e.g. *ut id sibi facere liceret*, (that it might be permitted to them to do it), *that they might do it*.

**Lingonēs**, um, m., acc. pl. sometimes -as (Greek), a tribe in central Gaul, north of the Aeduians.

**lingua**, ae, f., (tongue), *language*.

**linter, lintris**, f., gen. pl. **lintrium**, *canoe, small boat*, probably a "dug-out."

**Liscus**, i, m., chief magistrate of the Aeduians.

**littera**, ae, f., (1) *letter* of the alphabet, I. 29, 1; (2) pl., (letters of the alphabet), a *letter* (epistle), *dispatch*.

**locus**, i, m., plu. **loca, ōrum**, n., *place, locality; situation; opportunity*, I. 40, 9; *space*, II. 8, 2; abl. sing. with gen., (in the place of), *as*, I. 42, 6, etc.; *light*, I. 26, 6; *condition*, II. 26, 5; pl., *space*, II. 19, 5; *in his locis, in this region*. [The regular masc. pl. is used (not in Caesar) in the sense of *places in a book, passages, topics*.]

**locūtus**, a, um, partic. of **loquor**.

**longē** : see **longus**.

**longinquus**, a, um [**longus**], (*distant*); *long, long-continued*.

**longitūdō, tūdinis**, f. [**longus**], *length*.

**longus**, a, um, *long; distant*, I. 40, 13. Adverb: **longē**, *far; by far*.

**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**, *speak, talk*.

**Lucius**, i, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

**lūna**, ae, f., *moon*.

**lūx, lūcis**, f., *light, daylight; prima lūx, daybreak*.

**lūxūria**, ae, f., [**lūxus**, *excess*], *extravagance, excesses, luxury*.

## M

**M**, numeral, 1000; but not originally because it was the first letter of *mille*.

**M.**, abbreviation for **Marcus**, a Roman *praenomen*.

**māchinātiō, ōnis**, f. [**māchinor**, *contrive*], *contrivance, machine*.

**Magetobriga**, ae, f., the place where Ariovistus defeated the Aeduians and their allies, possibly near the confluence of the Saône and the Oignon.

**magis** : see **māgnus**.

**magistrātus, ūs**, m. [**magister**, *master*], (position of a master); (1) *magistracy, office*; (2) *magistrate, officer, official*.

**māgnitūdō, tūdinis**, f. [**māgnus**], (*greatness*), *extent, size; great size, great extent*, I. 39, 6, II. 30, 4; **māgnitūdō animi**, *great courage*.

**māgnopere** : see **māgnus**.

**māgnus**, a, um, *great; compar. māior, greater; māior nātū, (*greater with respect to birth*), (1) *older*; (2) masc. pl. as subst., *older men, elders*, II. 13, 2, 28, 1; **māiōrēs** (with *nātū* understood), *ancestors*, I. 13, 6, 14, 7; super. **māxi-***

**mus**, *greatest, very great*. Adverb: **māgnō opere** or **māgnopere**, (with great effort, greatly), *earnestly; especially*, I. 13, 5; compar. **magis**, *more; rather*, I. 13, 6; super. **māximē**, *most, very; with verbs, especially; quam māximē*, (as greatly as possible), *implicitly*, I. 42, 5.

**māior**: see **māgnus**.

**male**: see **malus**.

**malefīcium**, i, n. [**male**, **faciō**], (wrong-doing); *harm, outrage*.

**malus**, a, um, *bad*; compar. **pēior**, *worse*; neut., *a worse fate*, I. 31, 10; super. **pessimus**, *worst*. Adverb: **male**, *badly*; **male rē gestā**, (a thing having been badly done), *on account of ill success*.

**mandātum**: see **mandō**.

**mandō**, 1st conj. [**manus**, **dō**], (put into the hands of); (1) *intrust; fugae sē mandāre*, (intrust one's self to flight), *take to flight, take flight*; (2) *command, direct*, I. 30, 5, 47, 5; **mandātum**, i, neut. of perf. partic., (a thing commanded); pl., *instructions; messages*, I. 37, 1.

**maneō**, **manēre**, **mānsi**, **mānsūm**, *remain, stay*; in **eō manēre**, *abide by that*, I. 36, 5.

**manipulus**, i, m. [**manus**, **hand**, **plēō**, **fill**], (a handful, i.e. of hay, because the standard of the manipule originally bore a handful of hay tied to a pole); *maniple*; see Introduction, pages xxiii, xxxi.

**mānsuētūdō**, **tūdinis**, f. [**mānsuētus**, *accustomed to the hand, tame*], (tameness, gentleness), *kindness*.

**manus**, ūs, f., (1) *hand*; **nātūrā et manū**, *naturally and artificially*; (2) *band of men, force*, I. 37, 4. II. 2, 4, 5, 2.

**Marcomani**, **ōrum**, m., a German people, of whose location nothing is certainly known.

**Mārcus**, i, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

**maritimus**, a, um [**mare**, *sea*], (pertaining to the sea), *sea-coast, maritime*.

**Marius**, i, m., *Gaius Marius*, consul seven times, conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutones 106 B.C., I. 40, 5.

**matara**, ae, f., Celtic *javelin, pike*.

**māter**, **mātris**, f., *mother*; **māter familiae** (old gen. in this expression **familiās**), *matron*; **soror ex mātre**, *half-sister*, having the same mother.

**mātrimōnium**, i, n. [**māter**], (motherhood), *marriage*; in **mātrimōnium**, *in marriage*; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, (lead for marriage), *marry*, used always of the husband.

**Matrona**, ae, f., the *Marne*, tributary of the Seine on the left bank, dividing Belgic from Celtic Gaul.

**mātūrē**: see **mātūrus**.

**mātūrō**, 1st conj. [**mātūrus**], (make ripe), *hasten*.

**mātūrus**, a, um, *ripe*; compar. **mātūrior**; super. **mātūrissimus** or **mātūrrimus**. Adverb: **mātūrē**, *early*; compar. **mātūrius**; super. **mātūrisimē** or **mātūrrimē**.

**māxime**, **māximus**: see **māgnus**.

**Māximus**, i, n., a Roman *cognomen*.

**mediocris**, e [**medius**], (*me-*



dium), *moderate*. Adverb: *mediocriter, moderately*; *nōn mediocriter, in no ordinary degree*.

**mediocriter**: see *mediocris*.

**medius, a, um**, (middle); usually having partitive force (§ 113), *the middle of, the midst of*; *in colle mediō, halfway up the hill*; *medius utriusque, midway between the two*.

**memoria, ae, f.** [*memor, mindful*], *memory, recollection*; *memoriam dēpōnere*, with gen., (lay aside the memory), *forget*; *memoriam retinēre* with gen. (retain the memory of), *remember*; *memoriā tenēre*, (hold in memory), *remember*; *nostrā memoriā*, (within our memory), *in our day*; *memoriā patrum nostrōrum*, (within the memory of our fathers), *during the last generation, a generation ago*. [*prōdō, hand down*.]

**Menapii, ōrum, m.**, the most northern tribe of Belgians, mostly south of the Rhine at its mouth, and extending to the Scheldt.

**mēns, mentis, f.**, *mind*; often in the sense of a *state of mind*, as in the English phrase, "change one's mind," e.g. I. 41, 1.

**mēnsis, is, m.**, *month*.

**mercātor, tōris, m.** [*mercor, trade*], *trader*.

**mercēs, ēdis, f.**, *pay, wages*; *mercēde arcessere*, (summon by pay), *hire*.

**mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum**, also deponent, *deserve*; *meritum, i, neut. of perf. pass.*

*partic.*, (a thing deserved), *merit if good, fault if bad*; pl., *services*.

**meridiēs, diēi, m.** [for *medi-diēs*, from *medius diēs*], *mid-day, noon*.

**meritus, a, um, partic. of mereō**.

**Messāla, ae, m.**, *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul 61 B.C., I. 2, 1, 35, 4.

**mētiōr, mēti, mēnsus sum**, *measure, measure out*.

**Metius, i, m.**, *Marcus Metius*, sent to Ariovistus by Caesar as an envoy, I. 47, 4, 53, 8.

**miles, militis, m.**, *soldier*.

**milia, ium**: see *mille*.

**militāris, e** [*miles*], (relating to a soldier), *military*; *rēs militāris, military affairs, military operations, the art of war*.

**mille, indecl. card. adj.**, *a thousand*; pl., *milia, milium, milibus, n.*, *thousands, freely, thousand, e.g. duo milia passuum, (two thousands of paces), two thousand paces, two miles*.

**minimē, minimus**: see *parvus*.

**minor**: see *parvus*.

**minuō, minuire, minui, minūtum** [*minus*], *lessen*.

**minus**: see *parvus*.

**miror, 1st conj. [mirus]**, *wonder (at)*.

**mirus, a, um, wonderful**; *strange*, I. 34, 4; *mirum in modum*, (to a wonderful degree), *wonderfully*.

**miser, misera, miserum**, *wretched, miserable*; compar. *miserior*; super. *miserrimus*. *misericordia, ae, f.*, *pity*. [*utor, take*.]

**miseror, 1st conj. [miser]**, *be-wail, lament*.

**mittō, mittere, mīsi, missum,**  
*send; throw, I. 25, 2. In*  
*comp., mittō often means*  
*let go, allow to go.*

**mōbilitās, tātis, f. [mōbilis,**  
*movable, from moveō], change-*  
*ability, fickleness.*

**modo:** see **modus.**

**modus, i, m., (measure);**  
*manner, way; ēius modī,*  
*hūius modī, (of this sort),*  
*of such kind, such; ad hunc*  
*modum, in this way; quem*  
*ad modum, (in what way),*  
*as, I. 36, 1, how, I. 36, 2.*  
*Adverb: modo, only.*

**moenia, moenium, n., walls**  
*(for defense).*

**molestē:** see **molestus.**

**molestus, a, um, troublesome.**  
*Adverb: molestē, with vexa-*  
*tion; molestē ferre, (bear with*  
*vexation), be annoyed, be vexed.*

**molimentum, i, n. [molior, exert**  
*one's self], exertion, trouble.*

**molitus, a, um, partic. of molō.**  
**molō, molere, molui, molitum,**  
*grind; molita cibāria, (ground*  
*foodstuff), meal, flour.*

**moneō, monēre, monui, moni-**  
**tum, warn, advise.**

**mōns, montis, m., mountain,**  
*mountain range.*

**mora, ae, f., delay.**

**morātus, a, um, partic. of moror.**

**Morini, ōrum, m., a tribe of**  
*Belgians, between the Scheldt*  
*and the ocean, opposite Brit-*  
*ain.*

**morior, mori (moriri), mortuus**  
**sum, fut. partic. moritūrus,**  
**[mors], die.**

**moror, 1st conj. [mora], delay,**  
*wail.*

**mors, mortis, f., death.**

**mortuus, a, um, partic. of morior.**

**mōs, mōris, m., custom.**

**moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum,**  
*move.*

**mulier, mulieris, f., woman.**

**multitūdō, tūdinis, f. [multus],**  
*number; large number; the*  
*common people; general body*  
*of soldiers.*

**multus, a, um, (1) much; (2)**  
**pl., many; multō diē, in**  
*broad day, or late in the day;*  
*compar. plūs, plūris, n., no*  
*dat. or abl., more (in amount);*  
*pl. plūrēs, plūra, gen. plūrium,*  
*dat. plūribus, more (in num-*  
*ber), (more than one), several;*  
*many (comparatively); quite*  
*a number; super. plūrimus,*  
*most, very much; usually pl.,*  
*very many; quam plūrimī, the*  
*most possible, as many as pos-*  
*sible. As adverbs, the neut.*  
**multum, adv. acc., and multō,**  
*abl. of degree of difference,*  
*much; compar. plūs, more;*  
*plūs posse, be more powerful;*  
*super. plūrimum, most, very,*  
*very much; plūrimum posse,*  
*plūrimum valēre, be very power-*  
*ful, be very influential.*

**mūnimentum, i, n. [mūniō], for-**  
**tification.**

**mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi, mūni-**  
**tum [moenia], (build walls for**  
*defense), fortify; protect, I.*  
*44, 6, II. 5, 5.*

**mūnitiō, ōnis, f. [mūniō], forti-**  
**fying, I. 49, 3; fortification;**  
*strength, I. 8, 4.*

**mūnus, mūneris, n., (task, ser-**  
**vice); gift, I. 43, 4; mūnera**  
**amplissimē mittere, (send**  
*gifts most generously), send*  
*most generous gifts.*

**mūrus, i, m., wall, a general**  
*term.*

## N

**nactus**, a, um, partic. of **nanciscor**.

**nam**, coörd. conj., *for*.

**Nammēius**, i, m., an envoy sent by the Helvetians to Caesar.

**nam-que**, coörd. conj., (and . . . *for*), *for*; an omission is always implied, as "and (this is so), *for*."

**nanciscor**, **nancisci**, **nactus** (**nactus**) sum, (get), *find*, *come upon*.

**nāscor**, **nāsci**, **nātus** sum, *be born*; *rise*, II. 18, 2.

**Nasua**, ae, m., one of two brothers, leaders of the Suebi.

**nātiō**, ōnis, f. [**nāscor**], (birth); *race*, *nation*; of divisions of Gaul, *tribe*, *state*.

**nātūra**, ae, f. [**nāscor**], (birth; natural constitution, nature); *character*; abl., (by nature), *naturally*.

**nātus**, ūs, m. [**nāscor**], *birth*; *for* maior **nātū**, see **māgnus**.

**nāvicula**, ae, f. [dimin. of **nāvis**], *small boat*, *boat*.

**nāvis**, is, f., *ship*.

**nāvō**, 1st conj., (work busily, accomplish); **operam nāvāre**, (succeed in one's efforts), *do one's best*.

**-ne**, interrog. enclitic particle, used when there is no other interrogative word in the sentence, and implying nothing as to the answer expected; appended to the word about which the question centers; not translated separately into English.

**nē**, adv., *not*, only in phrase **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even*, emphasizing the word between.

**nē**, negative subord. conj., (1) *in order that . . . not*, *that . . . not*; (2) *lest*, *for fear that*; (3) after verb of fearing, *that*.

**nec**, form of **neque**.

**necessārius**, a, um [**necesse**, indecl., *necessary*], (1) *necessary*; *critical*, I. 16, 6; *sufficient*, I. 39, 3; **rēs necessāria**, *urgent matter*, I. 17, 6. (2) Masc. used as a subst., *close friend*, I. 11, 4. Neut. sing. abl. used as an adv., *of necessity*, *necessarily*.

**necessitās**, tātis, f. [**necesse**, *necessary*], *necessity*; *urgency*, II. 22, 1.

**necessitūdō**, tūdinis, f. [**necesse**, *necessary*], *close relationship*.

**nec-ne**, conj., or *not*.

**necō**, 1st conj. [**nex**], *put to death*; **igni necāre**, *burn at the stake*, *burn to death*.

**neg-legō**, **legere**, **lēxi**, **lēctum** [**nec**, **legō**], (not choose), *disregard*, *overlook*, *neglect*.

**negō**, 1st conj., *say . . . not*; **negat sē posse dare**, *he says that he cannot give*.

**negōtium**, i, n. [**nec**; **otium**, *leisure*], (1) *business*, I. 34, 4; (2) *trouble*; **negotiō dēsistere**, (stand down from the business), *retreat from the position he had taken*; **negotium dare**, (give a task), *employ*, *charge*, *direct*.

**Nemetēs**, um, m., a German tribe with Ariovistus.

**nēmō**, gen. supplied by **nūllius**, dat. **nēmīni**, acc. **nēmīnem**, abl. supplied by **nūllō**, m. or f. [**nē**, **homō**], *no one*, *nobody*.

**ne-que** or **nec**, conj., (1) *and . . . not*; (2) *nor*; (3) **neque** . . . **neque**, *neither . . . nor*.

**nē-quiquam**, adv. [**nē**; **quiquam**, old abl. of **quisquam**], (not to any purpose), *in vain, without good hope of success*.

**Nerviī**, ōrum, m., a particularly warlike tribe of Belgians, west of the Scheldt.

**nervus**, ī, m., (any cord of the body); *sineu*; pl., *strength*.

**neu**, a form of **nēve**.

**neuter**, tra, trum, gen. **neutrius**, dat. **neutrī** [**nē**; **uter**, indefinite, *either*], *neither*; pl. used of two parties.

**nē-ve**, neu, conj., (or that not), *and (that) not; or*, I. 26, 6.

**nex**, necis, f., (violent) *death*.

**nihil**, indecl. noun, *nothing*; with gen., see § 49, 2; adv.

**accus.**, § 13, *not at all, not . . . at all; not, emphatic*.

(**nihilum**), **nihili**, abl. **nihilō** [**nihil**], *nothing*; abl. of degree, (by nothing), *none*; **nihilō minus**, **nihilō sētius**, (none the less), *nevertheless*.

**nisi**, subord. conj. [**nē**, **si**], *if . . . not*, I. 44, 11; *unless; except*.

**nītor**, nīti, **nixus sum** (usually in literal sense) or **nīsus sum** (usually in fig. sense), (rest upon), *rely (on)*; with abl. of means.

**nōbilis**, e [**nōscō**, *know*], (1) (*well*) *known*; *noble*; (2) pl. as a subst., *nobles*.

**nōbilitās**, tātis, f. [**nōbilis**], (nobility); as an abstract noun, **summa nōbilitās**, *the highest rank*, II. 6, 4; elsewhere as a collective noun, (the nobility as a class), *the nobles*.

**noctū**, adv. [old abl. of fourth declension noun, from **nox**], *at night, by night, in the night*.

**nocturnus**, a, um [**nox**], (of the night), *night, at night*.

**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōlui**, — [**nē** (**nōn** in compound forms), **volō**], *be unwilling, not wish*. See pages 214, 215.

**nōmen**, minis, n. [**nōscō**, *know*], (a means of knowing), *name*; **suō nōmine**, *on his own account*.

**nōminātim**, adv. [**nōminō**], *name by name, individually*, I. 29, 1; *by name*, II. 25, 2.

**nōminō**, 1st conj. [**nōmen**], (name), *mention*.

**nōn**, adv., *not*.

**nōnāgintā**, indecl. card. adj., *ninety*.

**nōn-dum**, adv., *not yet*.

**nōnus**, a, um, ord. adj. [for **novēnus**, from **novem**], *ninth*.

**Nōrēia**, ae, f., the chief town of the Norici.

**Nōricus**, a, um, of the *Norici*, a tribe between the Danube and the summits of the Alps, I. 5, 4; fem. as subst., *one of the Norici*, I. 53, 4.

**nōs**, pl. of **ego**; see page 207.

**noster**, tra, trum, possess. adj. [**nōs**], *our, ours*; masc. pl. as a subst., *our men, our soldiers*.

**novem**, indecl. card. adj., *nine*.

**Noviodūnum**, ī, n., the chief town of the Suessiones, now probably *Soissons*.

**novus**, a, um, *new*; with **cōpia**, *fresh*; no comparative; super.

**novissimus**, (newest), *last*; **novissimum agmen**, (the last part of a marching column), *the rear, rear-guard*; and so the masc. pl. used as a subst., *those in the rear, the rear-guard*; **novae rēs**, *change of*

*government, revolution; nova imperia, (new forms of government), revolution.*

**nox, noctis, f., gen. pl. noctium, night; primâ nocte, (in the first part of the night), as soon as it was dark; multâ nocte, late at night.**

**nûbō, nûbere, nûpsî, nûptum, (veil one's self), marry; said of the woman.**

**nûdō, 1st conj. [nûdus], (make bare), expose; with abl. of separation, strip (of).**

**nûdus, a, um, (naked, bare), unprotected.**

**nûllus, a, um, gen. nûllius, dat. nûllî [nê, ûllus], (not any), no, adj.; as a subst., no one; nôn nûllus, often written as one word, some.**

**num, interrog. particle, placed at the beginning of a question to hint that the answer "No" is expected. In I. 14, 3, it is untranslatable by any separate word, but contributes indignant emphasis to posse, "COULD he?"**

**numerus, i, m., number; amount; abl. numerō, or in numerō, with gen., (in the number of), as, among.**

**Numidae, ârum, m., Numidians, inhabitants of northern Africa, used as light-armed auxiliaries by the Romans, since they were skillful archers.**

**numquam, adv. [nê; umquam, ever], never; nôn numquam, sometimes.**

**nunc, adv., now.**

**nûntiō, 1st conj. [nûntius], announce, report.**

**nûntius, a, um [for noventius, from novus, which accounts**

**for the ū before nt], (bringing news); masc. as a subst., (1) messenger; (2) message, news.**

**nûper, adv. [for novi-per], (newly), recently; no comparative; super. nûperrimê. nûtus, ūs, m. [nuō, nod], nod; ad nûtum aut ad voluntâtem, "at his nod and beck."**

## O

**ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for; in Bel. Gal. always with rem, rês, causam, causâs, and a relative or demonstr. adjective, on this account, for this reason; quam (interrog.) ob rem, (for what reason), why, I. 50, 4. As a prefix, toward, against.**

**ob-aerâtus, a, um [aes, aeris, copper money], (having money against one), in debt. Masc. used as a subst., debtor.**

**ob-dûcō, dûcere, dûxî, ductum, (lead across a path), construct at right angles.**

**ob-iciō (pronounced as if spelled objiciō), icere, iēcî, iectum, (throw against), throw up, I. 26, 3; expose, I. 47, 3.**

**obitus, ūs, m. [ob-eō, perish], destruction.**

**ob-liviscor, livisci, litus sum, forget; with gen.**

**ob-secrō, 1st conj. [sacer, sacred], entreat (by what is sacred), implore.**

**ob-servō, 1st conj. (watch for), observe, regard.**

**obses, obsidis, m. or f. [ob-sideō, sit over against], (one who sits over against an agreement), hostage.**

**ob-signō**, 1st conj. [signum],  
(put a seal upon), *seal*.

**ob-stringō**, stringere, strinxī,  
strictum, (bind to anything),  
*bind*; suō beneficiō obstric-  
tās, (bound by his kindness),  
*put under obligation*.

**ob-tineō**, tinēre, tinui, tentum  
[teneō], (hold against any-  
one), *hold*; *possess*.

**ob-tuli**, perf. of of-ferō.

**ob-veniō**, venire, vveni, ventum,  
(come against), *encounter*,  
*meet*, *attack*.

**oc-**, form of ob- before c.

**occāsus**, ūs, m. [oc-cidō, fall],  
(a falling); *setting*; occāsus  
sōlis, (setting of the sun),  
*sunset*; *west*, I. 1, 7.

**oc-cidō**, cidere, cidi, cīsum  
[caedō], (cut down), *kill*.

**occultō**, 1st conj. [occultus],  
*hide*, *conceal*.

**occultus**, a, um [perf. part. of  
occulō, cover], *covered*, *hidden*;  
*in occultō*, *in hiding*, *in con-  
cealment*; *in secret*, I. 32, 4.

**oc-cupō**, 1st conj. [capiō], *seize*;  
*cover*, *occupy*, II. 8, 2; perf.  
partic., *occupied*, *busy*, II. 19, 8.

**oc-currō**, currere, cucurri or  
curri, cursum, (run against);  
*find*, II. 21, 4; *meet*, II. 24,  
1; *engage (with)*, II. 27, 1;  
quibus rēbus occurrere, *face  
these conditions*, I. 33, 4.

**Ōceanus**, i, m., the Atlantic  
*Ocean*.

**Ocelum**, i, n., "the most west-  
ern town of the nearer  
province," I. 10, 5.

**octāvus**, a, um, ord. adj. [octō],  
*eighth*.

**octō**, indecl. card. adj., *eight*.

**octōgintā**, indecl. card. adj.  
[octō], *eighty*.

**oculus**, i, m., *eye*.

**ōdī**, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *hate*. See  
pages 214, 215.

**of-**, form of ob- before f.

**of-fendō**, fendere, fendi, fēn-  
sum (strike against), *hurt*,  
*offend*. [animus, feelings.]

**offēnsiō**, ōnis, f. [offendō], *hurt-  
ing*. [ēius animi, obj. gen.,  
*his feelings*.]

**of-ferō**, ferre, ob-tuli, ob-lātum,  
(bear against), *take*.

**officiū**, i, n. [for opi-ficiū,  
from opus, faciō], (service,  
duty); *allegiance*, I. 40, 2;  
*doing his duty*, I. 40, 10;  
*sense of duty*, I. 40, 13; prō  
māgnis hominum beneficiis,  
*for men's great services*, I. 43, 4.

**o(ob)-mittō**, mittere, misi, mis-  
sum, (let go by), *neglect*.

**omniō**, adv. [omnis], *in all*;  
*altogether*, *entirely*, I. 27, 4;  
with negatives, *at all*, and so,  
I. 34, 4, an implied negative.

**omnis**, e, *all*, *every*; neut. pl.  
often best translated *every-  
thing*.

**onus**, oneris, n., (load), *weight*.

**op-**, form of ob- before p.

**opera**, ae, f. [opus], *exertion*.

**opiniō**, ōnis, f. [opinor, think],  
(1) *belief*, *idea*; (2) *reputation*,  
II. 8, 1, 24, 4; (3) *reports*,  
II. 35, 1; omnium opiniōne,  
(than the belief of all), *than  
any one expected*.

**oportet**, oportēre, oportuit, im-  
pers. verb, *it is fitting*, *it is  
proper*, *it is necessary*; best  
translated by *ought* or *must*  
as auxiliaries; e.g. metiri  
oportet, *he ought to measure  
out*.

**oppidānus**, a, um [oppidum],  
*of a town*; masc. pl. as a

subst., *townspeople, inhabitants of a town.*  
**oppidum**, i, n., *walled town.*  
**opportūnus**, a, um, *favorable, suitable.*  
**op-portūnus**, a, um [portus], (before the port), *favorable, suitable.*  
**op-primō**, *primere, pressi, pressum [premō], (press against), crush; overwhelm.*  
**oppūgnātiō**, ōnis, f. [oppūgnō], *assault, attack; method of attack*, II. 6, 2.  
**op-pūgnō**, 1st conj. [pūgna], (fight against), *attack; of fortifications, assault.*  
**(ops)**, opis, f., nom. and dat. not used, *help, aid; pl. resources, power.*  
**optimē**, *optimus: see bonus.*  
**(1) opus, operis**, n., *work, work of fortifying, fortifying, fortification; quantō opere, as adv., how much, how greatly*, II. 5, 2; *māgnō opere, especially*, I. 13, 5; *earnestly*, I. 38, 2.  
**(2) opus**, indecl., n., *need, necessity; opus est, there is need, it is needful*, I. 34, 2, 42, 5 (§ 74), II. 8, 5 (§ 74), 22, 1.  
**ōrātiō**, ōnis, f. [ōrō], *speech, address.*  
**ōrdō**, ōrdinis, m., (row); (1) *rank*; (2) *order*, II. 11, 1, 19, 1, 22, 1.  
**Orgetorix**, rigis, m., *a powerful Helvetian chief.*  
**orior**, oriri, ortus sum, fut. partic. *ōritūrus*, imperf. subjunct. sometimes *orerētur*, *rise, begin; be descended*, II. 4, 1; *oriēns sōl*, (rising sun), *east.*  
**ōrnāmentum**, i, n. [ōrnō, equip],

(means of equipping), *mark of honor.*  
**ōrō**, 1st conj. [ōs, ōris, mouth], *beg, entreat.*  
**os-**, form of ob- in *ostendō.*  
**Osismi**, ōrum, m., one of the Aremorian tribes, in the extreme western part of Gaul.  
**os-tendō**, *tendere, tendi, tentum* (stretch toward), *show.*

P

**P.**, abbreviation for *Publius*, a Roman *praenomen.*  
**pābulātiō**, ōnis, f. [pābulator, forage], *foraging.*  
**pābulum**, i, n. [pāscō, feed], (food); *fodder, the green or dry stalks of corn or grain, as food for animals.*  
**pācō**, 1st conj. [pāx], (pacify), *subdue.*  
**paene**, adv., *almost.*  
**pāgus**, i, m., *district, canton, a division of a Gallic or German tribe.*  
**pālūs**, ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*  
**pandō**, *pandere, pandi, passum*, spread; *passis manibus, with outstretched hands.*  
**pār**, paris, adj., *equal; same; pār atque, the same as.*  
**parātus**, a, um, partic. of *parō.*  
**pāreō**, *pārere, pārui*, —, *obey; with dative.*  
**parō**, 1st conj., *prepare, get ready.* Perf. partic. usually as adj., *prepared, ready; compar. better prepared, more ready; super. perfectly ready, quite ready.*  
**pars**, partis, f., (1) *part*; (2) often after *ad* or *in*, when not modified by a gen., *direction; e.g. in utram partem, in which*

*direction*; (3) often with **ab** or **ex**, *side*, e.g. **unā ex parte**, *on one side*; see § 98.

**partim**, adv. [**pars**], *partly*.

**parum**: see **parvus**.

**parvulus**, a, um [dim. of **parvus**], (very little); **parvulum proelium**, *skirmish*.

**parvus**, a, um, *little, small*; with **pretium**, *low*; compar. **minor**, **minus**, *less, smaller*; neut. used as a subst. with the partitive gen., *less*; super. **minimus**, *least*; neut. in adv. acc., **minimum posse**, *have very little power*, I. 20, 2. Adverb: **parum**, *too little*; compar. **minus**, *less*; super. **minimē**, *least*, II. 33, 2; **minimē saepe**, *very seldom*; **minimē firmus**, (least strong), *weakest*.

**passus**, a, um, partic. of **pandō**. **passus**, ūs, m. [**pandō**], *pace*, with the Romans a double step, a little less than five English feet; **mille passūs**, (a thousand paces), a Roman mile.

**pate-faciō**, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, passive **pate-fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum** [**pateō**], (make to be open), *throw open, open*.

**patēs**, **patētis**, partic. of **pateō**. **pateō**, **patēre**, **patui**, —, (1) *lie open*; (2) *extend*, I. 2, 5, II. 7, 4; pres. partic. used as an adj., *open*, I. 10, 2.

**pater**, **patris**, m., *father*.

**pator**, **patī**, **passus sum**, *suffer*, in the sense of (1) *allow*; (2) *endure*, II. 31, 5.

**patrius**, a, um [**pater**], (of a father), *ancestral*.

**paucus**, a, um, rare in sing., *little, small*; pl., *few*; **pauca respondēre**, *answer briefly*.

**paulatim**, adv. [**paulus**], *little by little, gradually*.

**paulis-per**, adv., (for) a little while.

**paululum**, adv. [acc. of dim. of **paulus**], a very little, very slightly.

**paulus**, a, um, *little*; espec. **paulum**, adverbial acc., and **paulō**, abl. of degree of difference, a little.

**pāx**, **pācis**, f., *peace*.

**peccō**, 1st conj., (do wrong, sin); **peccandi causa**,  *motive for injury*.

**pedes**, **peditis**, m. [**pēs**], *foot soldier*; pl., *foot soldiers, infantry*.

**pedester**, **tris**, **tre** [**pedes**], *pertaining to a foot soldier*. **pedestrēs cōpia**, *infantry*.

**Pedius**, i, m., *Quintus Pedius*, a legatus of Caesar, II. 2, 1, 11, 3.

**pēior**, **pēius**: see **malus**.

**pellis**, is, f., *skin, hide*.

**pellō**, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, (1) *drive*, I. 31, 11; (2) *rout, beat, defeat*.

**pendō**, **pendere**, **pependī**, **pēnsum**, (hang, weigh out), *pay*.

**per**, prep. with acc., *through*, in various senses, as in English; of space, *across, over, among*; of time, *during*; of agency, *by means of, by*; of cause, *because of*; **per sē**, *so far as he was concerned*, I. 42, 1, *on their own responsibility*, II. 20, 4. As a prefix, *through, thoroughly*, hence often intensive, especially with adjectives.

**percontātiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**per-contor**, *inquire*], *inquiry*.

**per-dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**, (lead through), *construct*.



per-eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum, (go through life), *perish*.  
 per-facilis, e, *very easy*.  
 per-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, (bear through); (1) of tidings, bear, carry, report; otherwise, (2) endure, submit to.  
 per-ficiō, ficere, fēci, fectum [faciō], (make or do through); *finish*, I. 47, 1; *carry out, accomplish*, I. 3, 6; *arrange*, I. 9, 4.  
 per-fringō, fringere, frēgi, frāctum [frangō], *break through*.  
 perfuga, ae, m. [perfugiō], *deserter*.  
 per-fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitum, (flee through), *desert, escape*.  
 periclitor, 1st conj. [periculum], (make a trial), *try to find out*.  
 periculōsus, a, um [periculum], (full of danger), *dangerous*.  
 periculum, i, n. (1) *trial, test*, I. 40, 5; (2) *danger*.  
 peritus, a, um, *skilled (in), experienced (in), with gen.*  
 per-lātus, a, um, partic. of perferō.  
 per-maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsūm, *remain (through)*.  
 per-mittō, mittere, misī, missum, (let go through); (1) *yield, intrust*; (2) *permit*, I. 30, 5; *drop a hint*, I. 35, 3.  
 per-moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, (move strongly), *arouse; alarm*.  
 perniciēs, ēi, f. [nex], *destruction, ruin*.  
 per-paucus, a, um, *rare in sing., very small*; pl., (only) *a very few*.  
 per-petuus, a, um [petō], (ever seeking), *unbroken, perpetual*; with *vita, whole*; abl. sing. neut. as adv. (supply *tempore*), *forever*, I. 31, 7.

per-rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, ruptum, (break through), *force a passage*.  
 per-sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue*.  
 per-sevērō, 1st conj. [per-sevērus, *very strict*], (be very strict), *persist, persevere*; bellō persequi perseverāre, *continue to prosecute the war*.  
 per-solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtum, *pay in full*. [poenās, *penalty*].  
 per-spiciō, spicere, spexi, spectrum, (see through, see clearly), *see*.  
 per-suadeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsūm, (advise successfully), *persuade*.  
 per-terreō, terrēre, terrui, ter-ritum, (frighten thoroughly), *frighten, terrify, dismay*; perf. partic., with or without timōre, *panic-stricken*.  
 pertinācia, ae, f. [pertināx, *obstinate, from pertinēō*], *obstinacy, stubbornness*.  
 per-tineō, tinēre, tinui, — [teneō], (hold through); (1) of actual space, *extend*; (2) figuratively, with ad, *tend to, pertain to, concern*; for I. 14, 4, see *idem*.  
 per-turbō, 1st conj., *greatly disturb; throw into confusion*, II. 11, 5.  
 per-veniō, venīre, vēni, ventum, (come through), *arrive*; with ad, *reach*.  
 pēs, pedis, m., *foot*; as a measure of length, a very little less than the standard English foot; pedem referre, (bear back the foot), *retreat*.  
 petō, petere, petivī or petii, petitum, *seek, ask, request*.

**phalanx, phalangis, f.**, sometimes with Greek accus. sing. **phalanga, phalanx**, used by Caesar to describe any close, compact formation of troops.

**pilum, i, n.**, *spear, javelin*; especially those used by the Romans when their line of battle and the enemy's were nearing; see page xxx.

**Pisō, Pisōnis, m.**, (1) *Marcus Pupius Piso*, consul 61 B.C., I. 2, 1, 35, 4. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, consul 58 B.C., father-in-law of Caesar, I. 6, 4, 12, 7. (3) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesonius*, consul 112 B.C., grandfather of the last named, I. 12, 7.

**placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum**, *please*, with dative; *impers.*, *placuit ei, it pleased him, he decided*.

**plānitēs, ēi, f.**, no pl. [**plānus**, *level*], *plain*.

**plēbs, plēbis, f.** (also **plēbēs, plēbei**), *the common people, populace*.

**plērusque, plēraque, plērumque**, regularly only on pl., *most, most of*; **plērumque**, *adverbial accus.* (§ 13), *generally, usually*.

**plūrēs, plūrimus**: see **multus**.

**plūs**: see **multus**.

**poena, ae, f.**, *punishment*.

**polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum**, *promise*.

**pondus, ponderis, n.** [**pendō**], *weight*.

**pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum**, *place, put*; **castra pōnere**, *pitch camp, encamp*; *perf. pass. of locations, be situated*; **sibi praesidium pōnere**, (*place a defense for one's self*), *take refuge*.

**pōns, pontis, m.**, *bridge*.

**popōsci, perf. of pōscō**.

**populātiō, ōnis, f.** [**populor**], *ravaging, laying waste a country*.

**populor, 1st conj.** [NOT connected with **populus**], *ravage, lay waste*.

**populus, i, m.**, *people*; *pl.*, *peoples, nations*, I. 3, 7.

**porrēctus, a, um**, *stretched out*.

**porta, ae, f.**, *gate*.

**portō, 1st conj.**, *carry, take*.

**portōrium, i, n.** [**portō**], *customs duty*.

**pōscō, pōscere, popōsci, —**, *demand*.

**positus, a, um, partic. of pōnō**. **possessiō, ōnis, f.** [**possideō**], *possession, in any sense*.

**pos-sideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessum** [**prō**; **sedeō, sūt**], (*sit before*), *possess*.

**possum, posse, potuī, —**, *be able, be powerful; can*; see also **largus, multus, parvus**. **potēns, potentis, pres. partic.**, *powerful*; **potentiōrēs**, *the more powerful*, II. 1, 4. For conjugation, see pages 212, 213.

**post, adv.**, (1) *afterwards*; *prep. with acc.*, (2) *of time, after*; (3) *of place, behind*.

**postea, adv.**, *afterwards*; **postea quam**, (*later than*), *after*, I. 31, 5, 46, 4.

**posterus, a, um** [**post**], *next, the following*; *compar. posterior*; *super. postrēmus* or *postumus*.

**post-quam, subord. conj.**, (*later than*), *after*.

**postri-diē, adv.** [**posterus, diēs**], *on the following day, the next day*; with **ēius diēi** following, the meaning is the same.

**pōstulō**, 1st conj. [pōscō], *demand; request*, I. 31, 9; **pōstulāta**, neut. pl. of perf. partic., (things demanded), *demands*.

**posuī**, perf. of **pōnō**.

**potēns**, **potentis**, partic. of **possum**.

**potentātus**, ās, m. [potēns], (power), *supremacy, leadership*.

**potentia**, ae, f. [potēns], *power*.

**potestās**, tātis, f. [potis, able], (ability), *power*; **potestātem facere**, *give opportunity or chance*, and so I. 48, 3, II. 6, 3.

**potior**, **potiri**, **potitus sum** [potis, able], (make one's self powerful); with abl. or gen.; **imperio potiri**, *gain control; obtain possession (of)*.

**potius**, compar. adv. [potis, able], *rather* (which is strictly a comparative in English); super. **potissimum**.

**potui**, perf. of **possum**.

**prae**, prep. with abl., *in comparison with*. As a prefix, *before, in front*, also intensive.

**prae-acūtus**, a, um [ācer, sharp], *sharpened at the end, pointed*.

**praebeō**, **praebere**, **praeui**, **praebitum** [prae, habeō], (hold before, hold out), *furnish, afford*.

**prae-caveō**, **cavēre**, **cāvī**, **cautum**, (be on one's guard against in advance), *take precautions, look out*.

**prae-cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cēssi**, **cēssum**, (go ahead of), *surpass, excel*.

**prae-ceps**, **capitis**, adj. [caput], ("head first"), *headlong*.

**prae-cipio**, **cipere**, **cēpi**, **ceptum**, [capiō], (take beforehand), *command, direct*.

**prae-cipuus**, a, um [capiō], (taking first place), *special*. Adverb: **praecipuē**, *especially*.

**prae-dicō**, 1st conj., (set forth), *declare*; **multa praedicāre**, *boast a great deal*.

**praedor**, 1st conj. [praeda, booty], (obtain booty), *plunder*.

**praefectus**, a, um, partic. of **praeficiō**.

**prae-ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, (carry in front); **sē praeferre**, (carry themselves in front of), *surpass; with dative*.

**prae-ficiō**, **ficere**, **fēci**, **fectum**, [faciō], (put in front), *put in command (of), place in charge (of)*; with dative. Masc. of perf. partic., (one put in command), *commander, especially a prefect of cavalry*, I. 39, 2.

**prae-mittō**, **mittere**, **misi**, **missum**, *send ahead, forward, or in advance*.

**praemium**, i, n., *reward*.

**prae-optō**, 1st conj., (wish before), *choose in preference, choose*.

**prae-pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum**, (place in front), *place in command (of)*; with dative.

**prae-scribō**, **scribere**, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, (write in advance), *dictate*. Neut. of perf. partic. as a subst., (a thing dictated), *dictation*, I. 36, 1.

**praesēns**, **praesentis**, **praesentia**, partic. of **praesum**.

**praesertim**, adv., *especially*.

**praesidium**, i, n. [prae-sideō, sit in front of, guard], *garrison for a fortification; guard*; **praesidiō esse**, (be for a guard), *guard, with another dative: see also pōnō*.

**prae-stō, stāre, stitī, stitum**, (stand before); (1) *excel, surpass; show*, II. 27, 3; (2) *impers., it is better*, I. 17, 3, II. 31, 5.

**prae-sum, esse, fui, —**, (be in front), *be in command (of)*, with dat.; *hold*, I. 16, 5. Pres. partic., **praesēns, praesentis, present, being present; plūribus praesentibus**, (more being present), *in the presence of others; sē (ipsō) praesente*, *in his presence; in praesentia (tempora), for the present (time)*, I. 15, 4.

**praeter, prep. with acc.**, (1) *beyond, past*, I. 48, 2; (2) *except, besides*.

**praetereā, adv.**, *besides; else*, I. 40, 14.

**praeter-eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum, go past**. Neut. pl. of perf. partic. as a subst., (things gone past), *the past*, I. 20, 6.

**praeteritus, a, um, partic. of praetereō**.

**praetor, tōris, m.** [for **prae-itor**, from **prae-eō**], (one who goes ahead), *commander; lēgātus prō praetōre*, (lieutenant as commander), *lieutenant general*.

**praetōrius, a, um [praetor]**, *belonging to a commander; praetōria cohors, bodyguard*.

**precibus**: see **prex**.

**premō, premere, pressī, pressum, press**; in military expressions, *press hard, push hard*.

**prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsu[m]** [contracted from **prehendō**], *grasp, seize*.

**pretium, i, n., price**.

**prex, precis, f.**, (in sing. only in

dat., acc., and abl.), *prayer, entreaty*.

**pri-diē, adv. [prior, diēs]**, (*on the day before*; with **ēius diēi** following, the meaning is the same).

**primi-pilus, i, m.** [**primus, first, pilus, century**], *first centurion*; see pages xxiii, xxv.

**primus, a, um**: see **prior**.

**princeps, principis, adj. [primus, capiō]**, (taking first place), *chief*, in two senses: (1) *first*, I. 7, 3, 12, 6, 41, 2; (2) *masc. used as a subst., leader, chief*.

**principātus, ūs, m.** [**princeps**], *leadership*.

**prior, prius, compar. adj., former**; *masc. pl. used as a subst., those in front*, II. 11, 5; *super. primus, first*; having partitive force with **nox, lūx, impedimenta**, *the first part of, the first of*; *masc. pl. used as a subst., leaders, chiefs*, II. 3, 1,

13, 1; in **primis**, (among the first), *especially*, I. 33, 2; **primō, at first**, I. 31, 5, II. 8, 1,

30, 1. Adverbs: **prius, earlier**; **prius quam, (earlier than), before**; *super. primum, first, in the first place*; **quam primum, as soon as possible**;

**cum primum, (when first), as soon as**.

**pristinus, a, um [for prius-tinus, from prior and teneō]**, *former, previous*.

**prius**: see **prior**.

**privātim, adv. [privātus]**, *personally, privately, as private citizens*.

**privātus, a, um [partic. of privō, deprive]**, (apart from the state); *i.e., private*, I. 5, 2; *personal*, I. 12, 7.

**prō**, prep. with abl., (1) of place, *before, in front of*; (2) of defense or protection, *in behalf of, for*; (3) of substitution, *in place of, instead of, as, for; in return for*; (4) of relation, *in proportion to; in accordance with; in view of*. As a prefix, *forth, before*.

**probō**, 1st conj., (1) *prove, I. 3, 6*; (2) *approve, approve of*.

**prō-cēdō**, *cēdere, cēssi, cēssum*, (go forward), *advance, proceed*.

**Procillus**, i, m., *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, a Gaul of the Province, a personal friend of Caesar, I. 47, 4.

**procul**, adv., *at a distance, far off*.

**prō-cumbō**, *cumbere, cubui, cubitum*, (lean forward), *sink to the ground*.

**prō-currō**, *currere, cucurri or curri, cursum*, *run forward*.

**prōd-**, form of **prō-**, before vowels.

**prōd-eō**, *ire, ivi or ii, itum*, (go forth), *come out, I. 50, 2*; *go forward, advance, I. 48, 7*.

**prō-dō**, *dere, didi, ditum [dō, dare]*, (give forth), *hand down*.

**prō-dūcō**, *dūcere, dūxi, ductum*, *lead forth, lead out*.

**proelior**, 1st conj. [**proelium**], *fight*.

**proelium**, i, n., *battle*.

**profectiō**, *ōnis, f. [proficiscor]*, (a starting out), *departure*.

**prō-ficiscor**, *ficisci, fectus sum [prō-ficiō, make forth]*, *start out, set out*.

**prō-fligō**, 1st conj., (strike down), *rout, put to flight*.

**prō-fugiō**, *fugere, fūgi, fugitum*, (flee forth), *flee; escape*.

**prō-gnātus**, a, um [(g)nāscor], (born from), *descended*.

**prō-gredior**, *gredi, gressus sum [gradior, step]*, *go forward, advance*.

**pro-hibēō**, *hibēre, hibui, hibitum [habeō]*, (hold off); (1) *keep, keep away, keep off; check, stop, I. 6, 1, 8, 2, 47, 6*; (3) with accus. and infin., *prevent, e.g. Teutonōs ingredi prohibuērunt, prevented the Teutons from entering. [itinere, from passing; munitiōne, from fortifying.]*

**prō-iciō**, (pronounced as if spelled **prōjiciō**), *icere, iēcī, iectum [iaciō]*, (throw forward, throw away), *throw, cast; betray, disgrace, II. 15, 5*.

**prō-moveō**, *movēre, mōvi, mōtum*, *move forward*.

**prope**: see **propior**.

**prō-pellō**, *pellere, puli, pulsum*, *drive off*.

**properō**, 1st conj., *hurry, hasten*.  
**propinquitās**, *tātis, f. [propinquus]*, *nearness; relationship, II. 4, 4*.

**propinquus**, a, um [**prope**], (1) *near*; (2) masc. used as a subst., *relative, kinsman*; fem. *female relative, I. 18, 7*.

**propior**, *ius, compar. adj., nearer*; super. **proximus**, *nearest, very near*; of time, *next*. Adverb (and preposition with acc.): **prope**, *near, nearly, almost*; compar. **propius**, *nearer*; super. **proximē**, *last*.

**prō-pōnō**, *pōnere, posui, positum*, *set forth, state, explain; raise, display, II. 20, 1*.

**propter**, prep. with acc. [**prope**], *on account of, because of*.

**propterea**, adv. [**propter**], (on account of this), *on this account; propterea quod, (on*

this account, because), *because*.

**prō-pūgnō**, 1st conj., *fight outside, go outside to fight; make sallies or sorties*.

**prō-pulsō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **prō-pellō**], *drive off*.

**prō-sequor**, **sequi**, **secutus sum**, (follow forward), *follow up, pursue; liberāliter orātione prōsequi, *address graciously, dismiss with gracious words*.*

**prōspectus**, **ūs**, m. [**prōspiciō**], *view, sight, outlook*.

**prō-spiciō**, **spicere**, **spexi**, **spec-tum**, *look out, provide (for); with dative*.

**prō-tinus**, adv. [**tenus**, *as far as*], (so far forth), *forthwith, immediately*.

**prō-turbō**, 1st conj. [**turba**, *crowd*], *throw into confusion*.

**prō-vidēō**, **vidēre**, **vidi**, **visum**, *foresee, see in advance*.

**prōvincia**, ae, f. [**prō**, **vincō**], (a conquered region beyond the borders of a country), *province; especially the Province, meaning Transalpine Gaul, the southeastern part of modern France*.

**prō-volō**, 1st conj., (fly forth), *rush out*.

**proximus**, **proximē**: see **propior**.  
**prudentia**, ae, f. [**prūdēns**, for **prōvidēns**, from **prōvideō**], *foresight, prudence*.

**pūblicē**: see **pūblicus**.

**pūblicus**, a, um [**populus**], (of the people); *public; rēs pūblica*, *the state, especially Rome; state affairs*, I. 34, 1.

**Pūblius**, i, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

**pudor**, **ōris**, m. [**pudet**, *it shames*], (shame), *sense of shame*.

**puer**, **puerī**, m., *boy*.

**pūgna**, ae, f., (hand to hand encounter), *fight, battle*.

**pūgnō**, 1st conj. [**pūgna**], *fight*.

**pulsus**, a, um, partic. of **pellō**.

**pūrgātus**, a, um, *blameless, exonerated, clear*.

**putō**, 1st conj., (reckon), *think*.

**Pyrēnaeus**, a, um, *Pyrenees*.

## Q

**Q.**, abbreviation for **Quintus**, a Roman *praenomen*.

**qua**, neut. pl. of **qui** indef., II. 14, 5.

**quā**, rel. adv. [abl. of **qui**, with **viā** or **parte** understood], *where*, I. 6, 1, 8, 4, 10, 3, 38, 5, II. 33, 2.

**quadrāgintā**, indecl. card. adj. [**quattuor**], *forty*.

**quadringenti**, ae, a, gen. um, card. adj. [**quattuor**, **centum**], *four hundred*.

**quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī** or **quaesii**, **quaesitum**, *ask a question, inquire; ask for, inquire for*, II. 21, 6.

**quaestor**, **tōris**, m. [for **quaesitor**, from **quaerō**], *quaestor, the pay- and quarter-master of a Roman army*.

**quālis**, e, interrog. adj., *of what sort? what?*

**quam**, adv. [case form of **quis**, **quī**], (1) after any compar., *than; after praestat, which implies comparison, than, rather than*; (2) before a super., with or without a form of **possum**, as (positive) as possible, or the (super.) possible, e.g. **quam māximus**, as great as possible, or the greatest possible, I. 3, 1; before

positive of adj., *how*, I. 43, 6, 7.

**quantus**, a, um, (1) interrog., *how great?* (2) rel., *tantus* . . . *quantus*, *as great* . . . *as*; without *tantus* expressed, *as much as*, *as far as*; **quantum boni**, *how much* (of) *advantage*, I. 40, 6; **quantō opere**, *how much*, *how greatly*, II. 5, 2.

**quā rē, quārē**: see *rēs*.

**quārtus**, a, um, ord. adj. [**quattuor**], *fourth*.

**quattuor**, indecl. card. adj., *four*.

**quattuor-decim**, indecl. card. adj. [**quattuor**, *decem*], *fourteen*.

**-que**, enclitic coörd. conj., *and*; appended to the word, or to the first word (usually) of a phrase or clause, which it connects.

**queror, queri, questus sum**, (1) intrans., *complain*; (2) trans., *complain of*; *lament*, I. 39, 4.

**qui, quae, quod**, gen. *cūius*, dat. *cui*, rel. pron., *who*, *which*, etc.; *that*; neut. without expressed antecedent, *what*; as rel. adj., *which*, (2) interrog. adj., *what?*

**qui, quae or qua, quod**, indef. pron. or adj., *any*, *any one*; see § 139.

**qui-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever*, *whichever*, *whatever*, objective, *whomsoever*.

**quid**: see *quis*.

**quidam, quae-dam, quid-dam** (subst.) or **quod-dam** (adj.), indef. pron.; as a subst., *a certain one*, *a certain thing*, pl., *certain ones*, *certain things*; as an adj., *a certain*, pl. *certain*.

**quidem**, adv., *indeed*, *at least*, emphasizing a preceding word; *nē* . . . *quidem*, *not even*, emphasizing the intervening word.

**quin**, subord. conj. [*qui*, *who*, *how*, *nē*, negative], (*but*) *that*; **quin exirent**, *from passing out*, I. 33, 4; and similarly, I. 47, 2, II. 3, 5; **quin etiam**, *moreover*.

**qui-nam, quae-nam, quid-nam**, interrog. adj., giving sarcastic force, *what*, *what now*.

**quin-decim**, indecl. card. adj. [*quinque*, *decem*], *fifteen*.

**quin-genti, ae, a**, card. adj. [*quinque*, *centum*], *five hundred*.

**quini, ae, a**, distributive adj. [*quinque*], *five at a time*; *five a day*, I. 15, 5.

**quingūgintā**, indecl. card. adj. [*quinque*], *fifty*.

**quinque**, indecl. card. adj., *five*.

**quintus**, a, um, ord. adj. [*quinque*], *fifth*.

**Quintus**, i, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

**quis**, —, **quid**, gen. *cūius*, etc., interrog. pron., *who?* *what?* *whose?* *whom?* Neut. sing. accus. **quid** used adverbially, *why?* I. 40, 4. Also indef. pron., *any one*, *anything*; see § 139.

**quis-quam**, —, **quid-quam** or **quic-quam**, or **quod-quam** (adj.), indef. pron., *any one*, *anything*, *any* (at all).

**quis-que, quae-que, quid-que** (subst.), or **quod-que** (adj.), indef. pron., *each one*, *each*.

**quis-quis**, —, **quic-quid**, gen. *cūius-cūius*, etc., indef. pron. *whoever*, *whatever*.

**qui-vīs, quae-vīs, quod-vīs**, gen. **cūius-vīs** [**vīs**, second person of **volō**], indefinite adj., (any you wish), *any . . . whatever*.

**quō**, (1) abl. of **quis** and **quī**; (2) adv. [old dat. of **quis**, **quī**], interrog. or rel., *whither*, less exactly in common English, *where*; indef. after **sī** (like **quis**, **quī**), *to any point, anywhere*, I. 48, 7. (3) for **quō**, I. 8, 2, II. 17, 4, 25, 2, see § 160, and for I. 31, 7, see §§ 161, 210.

**quod** [acc. of **quī**], (in respect to which); as subord. conj., (1) *because*; (2) *the fact that*, *that*; (3) *in regard to the fact that*; see §§ 170, 171, 215. **quod sī**, *but if, and if*.

**quoniam**, subord. conj., *since*.

**quoque**, adv., *also, too*, following the word emphasized.

**quot-annis**, adv. [**quot**, *as many as*, **annus**, *year*], *every year, yearly, annually*.

**quotiens**, adv. [**quot**, *how many*], *how many times; how frequent*, I. 43, 7.

## R

**rādix, icis**, f., (root); of a mountain, *spur, ridge, foothill*.

**raeda**, ae, f. [Celtic], *wagon with four wheels*.

**rāmus**, i, m., *branch*.

**rapīna**, ae, f. [**rapīō**, *snatch*], *plundering*.

**ratiō, ōnis**, f. [**reor**, *reckon*], (1) *reckoning*, I. 29, 1; *calculation*, I. 40, 8; (2) *method*, I. 40, 9; (3) *consideration*, II. 10, 5; (4) *reason*, I. 28, 4; (5) *manner*, in this sense only in the abl. of manner.

**ratis**, is, f., *raft*.

**Rauraci, ōrum**, m., a tribe north of the Helvetians.

**re-red-**, a particle used only as a prefix, *back, again*.

**recēns, entis**, adj., *recent*.

**re-cipīō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum** [**capiō**], (take back), *receive*; **sē recipere**, (1) *recover*, II. 12, 1; (2) *retreat*, and so **recipere** alone, I. 48, 7.

**re-cūsō**, 1st conj., *refuse*, see § 210; *decline, reject*, I. 44, 5.

**red-**, see **re-**.

**redāctus, a, um**, partic. of **redigō**.

**red-dō, dere, didī, ditum** [**dō**, *dare*], (give back); (1) *return*; (2) *render*, II. 5, 5.

**redēemptus, a, um**, partic. of **redimō**.

**red-eō, ire, ivi or iī, itum**, (go back), *return; slope back*, II. 8, 3.

**red-igo, igere, ēgī, āctum** [**agō**], (drive back); (1) *reduce*; (2) *render*, II. 27, 5.

**red-imō, imere, ēmī, ēmptum** [**emō**], (buy back), *purchase; buy up, farm*, I. 18, 3.

**red-integrō**, 1st conj. [**integer**, *untouched, whole*], (*render whole again*), *renew*.

**reditiō, ōnis**, f. [**redeō**], *returning, return*.

**Redonēs, um**, m., a tribe in western Gaul, near or on the coast.

**re-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**, *lead back; bring back*.

**re-ferō, ferre, ret-tulī, re-lātum**, *bring back; report; turn over*, I. 29, 1; **pedem referre** (*draw back the foot*), *retire, retreat*; **hanc grātiām referre**, *show such gratitude*.



- refractus**, a, um, partic. of **refringō**.  
**re-fringō**, fringere, frēgi, frāctum [frangō], (break back), *break open*.  
**regiō**, ōnis, f. [regō, rule], (direction), *region, district*.  
**rēgnum**, i, n. [rēx], *royal power*.  
**re-iciō**, (pronounced as if spelled **re-jiciō**), icere, iēcī, iectum [iaciō], *throw back, I. 46, 2; drive back; throw away, drop, I. 52, 4*.  
**re-languēscō**, languēscere, languī, —, *become weakened*.  
**relātus**, a, um, partic. of **referō**.  
**relictus**, a, um, partic. of **relinquō**.  
**re-linguō**, linquere, liquī, lictum (leave behind), *leave*.  
**reliquus**, a, um [relinquō], (remaining), *the rest of, the remaining; pl. as a subst., the rest; with tempus, future; left, I. 12, 2; nihil reliqui, nothing (of) left, I. 11, 5; nihil reliqui facere, leave nothing undone. [ad, in the way of.]*  
**re-maneō**, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain behind, remain*.  
**Rēmi**, ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians north of the Marne, about the headwaters of the Axona (Aisne), who allied themselves with Caesar.  
**re-miniscor**, minisci, —, (call to mind), *recall, remember*.  
**re-mittō**, mittere, misi, missum, (1) *send back; throw back, II. 27, 4; (2) lose, weaken, II. 15, 4; diminish, I. 44, 5*.  
**re-moveō**, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move back), *remove; dismiss, send away, I. 19, 3; perf. partic. as adj., far removed, remote, I. 31, 14*.  
**re-mūneror**, 1st conj. [mūnus], *repay, reward*.  
**Rēmūs**, i, m., *one of the Remi*.  
**re-nūntiō**, 1st conj., *report, bring back word*.  
**re-pellō**, pellere, ppulī, pulsum, *drive back*.  
**repente**, adv. [abl. of repēns, sudden], *suddenly*.  
**repentinus**, a, um [repēns, sudden], *sudden, unexpected*.  
**re-periō**, perire, pperī, pertum, *find out, find*.  
**re-petō**, petere, petivī or petiī, petitum, (seek back), *demand back, try to get back, I. 31, 7; poenās repetere, seek satisfaction*.  
**re-praesentō**, 1st conj. [praesēns], (make present again), *do at once*.  
**re-prehendō**,prehendere,prehendī,prehensum, (hold back), *blame, criticise*.  
**re-pudiō**, 1st conj., *reject*.  
**re-pūgnō**, 1st conj., (fight back, oppose); *outweigh, offset; with dative*.  
**repulsus**, a, um, partic. of **repellō**.  
**rēs**, rei, f., *thing, matter, fact, circumstance, etc.; see various words with which it is used; quā rē or quārē, quam ob rem, (on account of which thing, wherefore), therefore; on account of which, I. 14, 2; introducing a question, why; quā rē putāret, (why he should think), to think, I. 33, 2*.  
**re-scindō**, scindere, scidi, scissum, (cut back), *break down, destroy*.  
**re-sciscō**, sciscere, scivī or scīī, scitum [sciō], *ascertain, find out*.

**re-scribō**, scribere, scripsī, scriptum, (write back), *transfer*.

**re-servō**, 1st conj., (keep back), *reserve*.

**re-sistō**, sistere, stitī, —, (stand back), *resist*; with dative.

**re-spiciō**, spicere, spexi, spectum, *look back*.

**re-spondeō**, spondere, spondi, spōnsum, (promise back), *answer, reply, respond*. Neut. of perf. partic. used as a subst., *answer, reply*.

**respōnsum**, i: see **respondeō**.

**re-spuō**, spuerē, spui, —, (spit back), *reject, spurn*.

**re-stituō**,stituere, stitui, stitutum [statuō], (replace), *restore; rebuild*; with proelium, *renew*.

**retentus**, a, um, partic. of **retineō**.

**re-tineō**, tinēre, tinui, tentum [teneō], (hold back), *detain; keep back, retain*, II. 32, 4, 33, 2; *restrain*, I. 47, 2; *memoriam retinere*, (retain the memory of), *remember*.

**re-vellō**, vellere, velli, vulsum, (wrench back), *pull back, pull away*.

**reversus**, a, um, partic. of **revertor**.

**re-vertor**, verti, verti, versum [vertō], deponent in present system and perf. partic., (turn back), *return*.

**re-vocō**, 1st conj., *call back, recall*.

**rēx**, rēgis, m. [regō, rule], *king*.

**Rhēnus**, i, m., *the Rhine*.

**Rhodanus**, i, m., *the Rhone*.

**ripa**, ae, f., *bank of a stream*.

**rogō**, 1st conj., *ask, ask for, request*.

**Rōma**, ae, f., loc. **Rōmae**, *Rome*.

**Rōmānus**, a, um [Rōma,] *Roman*.

Masc. used as a subst., *a Roman*; pl., *the Romans*.

**rota**, ae, f., *wheel*.

**rubus**, i, m., *bramble*.

**rūmor**, ōris, m., *report, rumor*.

**rūpēs**, is, f., *cliff, steep rock*.

**rūrsus**, adv. [for **re-versus**], (turned back), *again*.

**Rutēni**, ōrum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul and the province, west of the Cevennes.

## S

**Sabinus**, i, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's legati.

**Sabis**, is, m., the *Sambre*, a tributary of the Meuse (Mosa) in Belgic Gaul.

**saepe**, adv., *often*; compar. **saepius**, *oftener; repeatedly*, I. 32, 3; super. **saeplssimē**; **saepe numerō**, (often in number), *oftentimes, often*; **minimē saepe**, (by no means often), *very seldom*.

**saeplēs**, is, f., *hedge*.

**sagittārius**, i, m. [sagitta, arrow], *archer, bowman*.

**salūs**, ūtis, f., *safety; welfare*.

**sanciō**, sancire, sānxi, sānctum, *agree solemnly*.

**sānitās**, tātis, f. [sānus, sound], *soundness of mind and body, sanity*; ad sānitātem reverti, *come to his senses*.

**Santonēs**, um, or **Santoni**, ōrum, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul, on the coast north of the Garonne, I. 10, 1, 11, 6.

**sarcinae**, ārum, f., *packs, individual baggage*; sub sarcinis, *while carrying their packs*.

**satis**: (1) adv., *sufficiently; quite*, I. 43, 1; **satis commodē**, *very well*; **satis māgnus**, *large*

*enough*; (2) indecl. adj., *enough*; (3) *sufficient*; *satis habere*, consider *sufficient*, be *satisfied*; *satis causae*, *sufficient* (of) *reason*, *reason enough*; *satis facere*, *make restitution*, I. 14, 6, *apologize*, I. 41, 3.  
**satisfactiō**, ōnis, f. [*satis faciō*: see *satis*], *apology*, *excuse*.  
**saxum**, i, n., *rock*, *large stone*.  
**scelus**, sceleris, n., *crime*.  
**scientia**, ae, f. [*sciēns*, present participle of *sciō*], *knowledge*.  
**sciō**, scire, scīvi, scītum, *know*.  
**scribō**, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, *write*.  
**scūtum**, i, n., *oblong shield*; see page xxix.  
**sē**, sēse, acc. of *sui*.  
**sēcrētō**, adv. [*sēcernō*, *separate*], (*separately*), *secretly*.  
**sectiō**, ōnis, f. [*secō*, *cut*], (*share*); *booty*.  
**sēcum** = *cum sē*.  
**secundum**, prep. with acc. [*secundus*], (*following*), (1) *besides*, I. 33, 2; (2) *beside*, *along*, II. 18, 3.  
**secundus**, a, um [*sequor*], (*following*); (1) with *aciēs*, *vigilia*, *locus*, *second*; (2) *favorable*, *successful*; *secundiōrēs rēs*, *greater prosperity*.  
**sed**, coörd. conj., *but*; stronger than *at*.  
**sē-decim**, *sex-decim*, indecl. card. adj. [*sex*, *decem*], *sixteen*.  
**sēdēs**, is, f. [*sedeō*, *sit*], (*seat*), *settlement*; *locus āc sēdēs*, *dwelling places*; § 280.  
**sēditiōsus**, a, um [*sēditiō*, *sedition*], *sedition*, *treasonable*.  
**Sedusiī**, ōrum, m., a tribe of Germans, location uncertain.  
**Segusiāvī**, ōrum, m., a Gallic

tribe south of the Aeduan, west of the Rhone.  
**semel**, adv., *once*; *semel atque iterum*, *time and again*.  
**sēmentis**, is, f. [*sēmen*, *seed*], *sowing*; *sēmentēs quam mǎxīmās facere*, (*make as great sowings as possible*), *plant as much grain as possible*.  
**semper**, adv., *always*.  
**senātor**, ōris, m. [*senex*], *senator*, the name applied by Caesar to a member of the council of elders of the Nervii, corresponding to the Roman senate.  
**senātus**, ūs, m. [*senex*], (*council of elders*), the Roman *senate*; what corresponded to it among the Gallic tribes, the *council*.  
**senex**, *senis*: as adj., *old*; as noun, *old man*; compar. *senior* or *māior* (*nātū*); super. *māximus* (*nātū*).  
**sēni**, ae, a, distributive adj. [*sex*], *six at a time*; *six a day*, I. 15, 5.  
**Senonēs**, um, m., a powerful Gallic tribe about the Yonne river.  
**sententia**, ae, f. [*sentiō*], *opinion*, *resolution*; *effect*, I. 45, 1.  
**sentiō**, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsum, *perceive* through any of the senses; hence *see*, *find*, etc.  
**sentis**, is, m., *thorn*, *brier*.  
**sēparātīm**, adv. [*sēparātus*, *separate*], *separately*; *individually*, I. 19, 4.  
**septem**, indecl. card. adj., *seven*.  
**septen-triō**, ōnis, m., generally pl., (*the seven plow oxen*, *the stars that form the constellation of the Great Bear*); hence, *the north*.  
**septimus**, a, um, ord. adj. [*septem*], *seventh*.

**sepultūra**, ae, f. [sepeliō, bury], burial.

**Séquana**, ae, m., the Seine, the most important river of northern France.

**Séquanus**, a, um, *Sequanian*; masc. pl. used as a subst., the Sequanians, one of the most powerful tribes of Gaul before Caesar's arrival, opponents of the Aeduan.

**sequor**, sequi, secutus sum, follow; accompany, join, II. 17, 2.

**servilis**, e [servus], of slaves, equivalent to servorum, I. 40, 5.

**servitūs**, tūtis, f. [servus], slavery; subjection, bondage.

**servō**, 1st conj., keep.

**servus**, i, m., slave.

**sēsē**: = sē.

**sētius**, comparative adv., less; nihilo sētius, (none the less), nevertheless.

**seu**, form of sive.

**sex**, indecl. card. adj., six.

**sexāgintā**, indecl. card. adj. [sex], sixty.

**sex-centi** (or sēs-centi), ae, a, card. adj. [sex, centum], six hundred.

**Sextius**, i, m., Publius Sextius Baculus, a very brave centurion.

**sī**, subordinate conjunction, if.

**sic**, adv., so, in such a manner.

**sic-ut**, adv., (so as), just as.

**signi-fer**, ferī, m. [signum, ferō], standard-bearer.

**significātiō**, ōnis, f. [significō], indication; signal, II. 33, 3.

**significō**, 1st conj. [signum, faciō], (show by signs), indicate by signs, announce by word of mouth.

**signum**, i, n., (1) signal; (2) military standard.

**silva**, ae, f., forest, woods.

**silvestris**, e [silva], wooded.

**simul**, adv., at the same time.

**simulātiō**, ōnis, f. [simulō], pretense.

**simulō**, 1st conj. [similis, like], (make like), pretend.

**sīn**, subordinate conjunction [sī, ne], but if.

**sine**, prep. with abl., without.

**singulāris**, e [singuli], (single, singular); extraordinary, unequalled.

**singuli**, ae, a, distributive adj., (1) one at a time; (2) separate, individual.

**sinister**, tra, trum, left; fem. used as a subst. with manus understood, left hand, I. 25, 3.

**sī-ve**, or **seu**, coördinate conjunction, (or) if; **sive** . . . **sive**, either . . . or.

**socer**, soceri, m., father-in-law.

**socius**, i, m., companion; pl., allies.

**sōl**, sōlis, m., no gen. pl., sun; **oriēns sōl**, (the rising sun), the east. **occāsus sōlis**, (meaning setting of the sun), the west.

**sollicitō**, 1st conj., stir up.

**solum**, i, n., (bottom); soil, I. 11, 5.

**sōlus**, a, um, gen. sōlius, dat. sōli, alone, only. Adverb: solum, only.

**soror**, sorōris, f., sister; **soror ex mātē**, (sister from one's mother), half-sister by the same mother.

**sors**, sortis, f., lot.

**spatium**, i, n., space, either properly or in time; distance; time, interval.

**speciēs**, ēi, f. [-speciō, look],

(appearance), *sight*; **ad speciem**, *for show*.  
**spectō**, 1st conj. [intensive of -speciō, *look*], (look); of countries, *lie, extend, be situated*; (look at), *consider*, I. 45, 3.  
**speculātor**, tōris, m. [speculor], *spy*.  
**speculor**, 1st conj. [-speciō], *spy, act as spies*.  
**spērō**, 1st conj. [spēs], *hope*.  
**spēs**, speī, f., plural limited to nom. and acc., *hope*.  
**spīritus**, ūs, m. [spīrō, *breathe*], (breath); pl. *pride*, like English "airs."  
**spontis**, gen., **sponte**, abl., f., no other forms found, *free will*; **suā sponte**, *by their own influence*, I. 9, 2; *of his own accord*, I. 44, 2.  
**statim**, adv. [stō, *stand*], (on the spot), *immediately*.  
**statiō**, ōnis, f. [stō, *stand*], (a standing), *picket*.  
**statuō**, statuere, statui, statūtum [stō, *stand*], (set up); *determine, decide; take measures*, I. 19, 5; **nē quid gravius statueret**, *not to take any very severe measures*.  
**statūra**, ae, f. [stō, *stand*], (standing), *stature, height, size*.  
**stipendiārius**, a, um [stipendium], *tributary*.  
**stipendium**, ī, n., *tribute*.  
**strepitus**, ūs, m., *noise*.  
**studeō**, studēre, studui, —, (desire), *be eager; care, pay attention*, II. 17, 4.  
**studium**, ī, n. [studeō], *desire, eagerness; devotion*, I. 19, 2.  
**sub**, prep.; with acc., when implying motion, (1) *under; close up to*, I. 24, 5; (2) in expressions of time, *towards*;

with abl., when implying rest, (3) *under, at the foot of, close by*. As a prefix, *under, from under, up*.  
**sub-dūcō**, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, (lead from below), *lead up*.  
**sub-eō**, ire, ivi or ii, itum, (1) *undergo*; (2) *go under, enter*, I. 36, 7; *come up*, II. 25, 1; *approach*, II. 27, 5. Perf. partic. used as an adj., **subitus**, a, um, (having come up), *sudden*; abl. **subitō** used adverbially, *suddenly*.  
**sub-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **subjiciō**), icere, iēcī, iectum [iaciō], (throw under, throw from under), *thrust from below*.  
**subitō**: see **subeō**.  
**sublātus**, a, um, partic. of **tollō**.  
**sub-levō**, 1st conj. [levis], (lighten from below, lift up), *support, help*; perfect participle, *assisted (by), holding on (to)*, I. 48, 7.  
**sub-ministrō**, 1st conj. [minister, *servant*], *furnish, provide*.  
**sub-mittō**, mittere, misi, missum, *send as a help, dispatch*.  
**sub-moveō**, movēre, movi, mōtum, (move from under), *drive back*.  
**sub-ruō**, ruere, rui, rutum, *undermine*.  
**sub-sequor**, sequi, secutus sum, *follow up, follow closely*.  
**subsidiū**, ī, n., *reserve, reinforcement; aid, help*.  
**sub-sistō**, sistere, stiti, —, (stand under), *halt, stop, make a stand*.  
**sub-trahō**, trahere, trāxi, trāctum, (draw from beneath), *take away, set at liberty*.  
**sub-vehō**, vehere, vexi, vectum, *bring up*.

**suc-**, form of **sub-** before **c**.

**suc-cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cēssi**, **cēssum**,  
*come up, approach.*

**Suēba**, **ae**, **f.**, *a Swabian (woman).*

**Suēbī**, **ōrum**, **m.**, *the Suebi or Swabians, the most powerful German tribe of Caesar's time.*

**Suessiōnēs**, **um**, **m.**, *a Belgian tribe about the Marne, around modern Soissons.*

**sui**, **gen.**, see page 207, reflexive pronoun, third person, *himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her*, when English usage makes the meaning clear.

**Sulla**, **ae**, **m.**, *Lucius Cornelius Sulla, consul B.C. 88, dictator 81-79.*

**sum**, **esse**, **fui**, **futūrus**, **be**;  
*happen.* See pages 212, 213.

**summus**, **summa**, **summum** : see **superus**.

**sūmō**, **sūmere**, **sūmpsi**, **sūmptum** [for **sub-imō**, from **emō**],  
(take from beneath), *take*;  
**sibi sūmere**, (take to one's self), *sasume*; **dē obsidibus supplicium sūmere**, (take punishment from the hostages; like the expression "take it out of them"), *inflict punishment on the hostages.*

**sūmptus**, **ūs**, **m.** [**sūmō**], *expense.*

**sup-**, form of **sub-** before **p**.

**super-**, prefix, *over*.

**superbus**, **a**, **um**, *proud.* Adverb : **superbē**, (*proudly, haughtily.*

**superior** : see **superus**.

**superō**, 1st conj. [**superus**], *overcome, conquer.*

**super-sedeō**, **sedēre**, **sēdi**, **sesum**, (*sit over, be above*),  
*refrain.*

**super-sum**, **esse**, **fui**, —, (*be over, be left over*), *be left, remain.*

**superus**, **a**, **um** [**super**], *high; compar. superior*, (1) *higher, upper*; (2) *of time, former*; (3) *of general comparison, superior, more successful*; **super. suprēmus**, **summus**, (1) *highest*; (2) *figuratively, greatest*; **summae rēs**, *most important matters*; (3) *often with partitive force, as with mōns, collis, iugum, the top of, the summit of*; **summa**, **f.**, *used as a noun, with rēs understood, (highest thing), sum, total*, I. 29, 2, 3; **summa imperiī**, *chief authority, general management*; **summam imperiī tenēre**, *be commander-in-chief*; with **belli**, *conduct*, I. 41, 3.

**sup-petō**, **petere**, **petivi** or **petiī**, **petitum**, (*seek to help, come to the aid of*), *be on hand, be available.*

**sup-plex**, **plicis**, **adj.** [**plicō**, *fold*], (*bending under, kneeling*), *submissive.* Adverb : **suppliciter**, *submissively, humbly.*

**supplicātiō**, **ōnis**, **f.** [**sup-plicō**, *fold under, from supplex*], (*a kneeling*), *thanksgiving.*

**suppliciter** : see **supplex**.

**supplicium**, **i**, **n.** [**supplex**, in the sense of *bending to receive lashes*], *punishment*; often in the sense of *capital punishment, execution.* See also **sūmō**.

**sup-portō**, 1st conj., *bring up.*

**suprā**, **adv.** and **prep.** with **acc.** [**superus**], *above.*

**sus-**, form of **sub-** before **c**, **p**, and **t**.

**sus-cipiō**, **cipere**, **cēpi**, **ceptum**

[capiō], (take under, take up), *undertake*; *sibi suscipere*, (take upon one's self), *assume*.  
**sūspiciō**, ōnis, f. [sū-spiciō, *suspect*], *suspicion*.  
**sūspicor**, 1st conj. [intensive of sū-spiciō, *suspect*], *suspect*.  
**sus-tentō**, 1st conj. [intensive of sus-tineō], *sustain, endure, meet*, with *bella* understood, II. 14, 5; impers. pass., *the attack was sustained*, II. 6, 1.  
**sus-tineō**, tinēre, tinui, tentum [teneō], (hold up under); (1) with *impetum*, *meet, sustain*; (2) intrans., *hold out; bear, endure*, I. 31, 13; *sē sustinēre*, *stand upright*, II. 25, 1.  
**suus**, a, um, reflexive possessive adj. of the third person, *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)*, according to the subject of the clause or sentence; *his usual, well known*, II. 14, 4, 31, 3; masc. pl. used as a subst., *his own or their own men, friends, countrymen*: neut. sing., *their standing*, I. 43, 8; plu., *their property or possessions*.

## T

**T.**, abbreviation for *Titus*, a Roman praenomen.  
**tabernāculum**, i, n., *tent*.  
**tabula**, ae, f., (board, writing tablet), *list, table*.  
**taceō**, tacēre, tacui, tacitum, *be silent*; trans., *be silent about, keep . . . silent*. Perf. partic. used as an adj., *silent*.  
**tam**, adv., *so, to such a degree*.  
**tamen**, adv., *yet, nevertheless; still; however, indeed*.

**tam-etsi**, subordinate conjunction, [tamen, etsi], *although*.  
**tandem**, adv., *at length*.  
**tantopere**, adv. [for tantō opere], *fiercely, desperately*.  
**tantulus**, a, um [diminutive of tantus], *such slight, such small*.  
**tantus**, a, um, *so great, such great, such, so much*; for tanti, I. 20, 5, see § 62; neut. used as a subst., *so much*; tantus . . . quantus, *as great . . . as*.  
**tardō**, 1st conj. [tardus], (make slow), *retard, check*.  
**tardus**, a, um, *slow*; comparative, *rather slow*.  
**tēctum**: see tegō.  
**tegimentum**, i, n. [tegō], *covering*.  
**tegō**, tegere, tēxi, tēctum, *cover*; neut. of perf. partic. used as a subst., (a thing covered), *shelter, roof*.  
**tēlum**, i, n., any weapon intended to be thrown, *spear, dart*.  
**temerārius**, a, um [temerē], *rash, reckless, headstrong*.  
**temerē**, adv., *rashly, recklessly*.  
**temperantia**, ae, f. [temperāns, from temperō], *moderation*.  
**temperō**, 1st conj. [tempus], (observe times, be moderate), *refrain*, I. 7, 4; *sibi temperāre*, *restrain themselves, refrain*.  
**temptō**, 1st conj. (also written tentō) [intensive of tendō], *try*; iter temptāre, *try to force a passage*.  
**tempus**, temporis, n., *time*; in reliquum tempus, *for the future*; omni tempore, *always*.  
**tendō**, tendere, tetendi, tentum, *stretch*.  
**teneō**, tenēre, tenui, (tentum), *hold; have; restrain*, I. 31, 9, 39, 4; *sē tenēre*, (hold himself), *remain*.

**tener, tenera, tenerum, tender,**  
*young; compar. tenerior;*  
*super. tenerrimus.*

**ter, num. adv. [trēs], three times.**

**tergum, i, n., back.**

**terni, ae, a, another form of**  
**trīni.**

**terra, ae, f., (dry) land, I. 30, 2;**  
*earth, ground.*

**terrēnus, a, um [terra], of earth.**

**terror, ōris, m. [terreō, frighten,**  
*terrify], terror, fright.*

**tertius, a, um, ordinal adj. [ter],**  
*third.*

**tēstamentum, i, n. [tēstor, bear**  
*witness, from tēstis], will.*

**tēstimōnium, i, n. [tēstor, bear**  
*witness, from tēstis], evidence,*  
*proof.*

**tēstis, tēstis, m. or f., witness.**

**tēstūdō, dinis, f. [tēsta, earthen-**  
*ware, shell], tortoise; as mili-*  
*tary term, testudo, a close*  
*formation for assault, shields*  
*lapping, II. 6, 2.*

**Teutonī, ōrum, or Teutonēs, um,**  
*m., the Teutons, a Germanic*  
*tribe which with the Cimbri,*  
*roamed over Gaul in the*  
*second century B.C., then*  
*turned toward Italy and was*  
*finally defeated by Marius,*  
*102 and 101 B.C.*

**Tigurinus, a, um, name of a**  
*canton of the Helvetians, I.*  
*12, 4; masc. plu. used as a*  
*subst., the Tigurini, I. 12, 7.*

**timeō, timēre, timuī, —, fear,**  
*be afraid (of).*

**timidus, a, um [timeō], timid,**  
*cowardly.*

**timor, ōris, m. [timeō], fear.**

**Titurius, i, m., Quintus Titurius**  
*Sabinus, a legatus of Caesar.*

**tolerō, 1st conj., endure.**

**tollō, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum,**

(1) *raise; (2) take away; can-*  
*cel, give up, I. 42, 5; perf.*  
*partic., sublātus, elated, I.*  
*15, 3.*

**Tolosātēs, ium, m., [Tolōsa,**  
*Toulouse], a tribe about Tou-*  
*louse.*

**tormentum, i, n. [torqueō, twist],**  
*(windlass); tormentum, plu.*  
*tormenta, military engines for*  
*throwing darts and other*  
*missiles; see page xxxviii.*

**totidem, indecl. num. adj. [tot,**  
*idem], (just so many), as*  
*many, the same number (of).*

**tōtus, a, um, gen. tōtius, dat.**  
**tōti, the whole (of), all, all the.**

**trabs, trabis, f., beam, timber.**

**trā-, form of trāns-.**

**trā-dō, dere, didī, ditum [dō,**  
*dare], hand over; give up, sur-*  
*render.*

**trā-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum,**  
*lead across, lead over.*

**trāgula, ae, f., javelin, lance, with**  
*a thong or strap to assist in*  
*hurling.*

**trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum,**  
*(drag, draw); hurry along,*  
*drag along.*

**trā-nō, 1st conj., swim across.**

**trāns, prep. with acc., across,**  
*over.*

**trāns-eō, ire, ivi or iī, itum, go**  
*across, cross; pass through, I.*  
*8, 2, 9, 4.*

**trāns-figō, figere, fixī, fixum,**  
*(fasten across), pierce.*

**trāns-gredior, gredi, gressus**  
*sum [gradior, step], (step*  
*across), cross.*

**trāns-portō, 1st conj., carry**  
*across, transport.*

**trāns-versus, a, um [vertō],**  
*(turned across); trānsversa*  
*fossa, cross ditch.*



tre-centi, ae, a, card. adj. [trēs, centum], *three hundred*.  
 trēs, tria, gen. trium, dat. abl. tribus, card. adj., *three*.  
 Treveri, ōrum, m., a strong Belgian tribe, about the Meuse (Moselle).  
 Triboci, ōrum, m., a German tribe about the Rhine, east of the Vosges mountains.  
 tribūnus, i, m. [tribus, *tribe*], (originally, head of a tribe); *tribune*; see page xxv.  
 tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribūtum [tribus, *tribe*], *assign, attribute*.  
 triduum, i, n. [trēs, diēs], (space of three days), *three days*.  
 trigintā, indecl. card. adj. [trēs], *thirty*.  
 trinī, ae, a, sometimes written ternī, ae, a, distrib. adj. [trēs], (three at a time); *triple*.  
 triplex, triplicis, adj. [trēs; plicō, *fold*], (threefold), *triple*.  
 tristis, e, *sad*; freely, *sadly*.  
 tristitia, ae, f. [tristis], *sadness*.  
 Troucillus, i, m., Gaius Valerius Troucillus, a Gaul of the Province, a personal friend of Caesar.  
 tuba, ae, f., *trumpet*.  
 tuli, perfect of ferō.  
 Tulingi, ōrum, m., a German tribe north of the Helvetians, allied with the latter in their migration.  
 tum, adv., *then*; cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also, II. 4, 7.  
 tumultus, ūs, m. [tumeō, *swell*], *uproar, confusion; revolt, uprising*, I. 40, 5.  
 tumulus, i, m. [tumeō, *swell*], *mound*.  
 Turoni, ōrum, m., a tribe of

west central Gaul, on both banks of the Liger (Loire), about modern Tours.  
 turpis, e, (ugly), *disgraceful*.  
 turpitūdō, tūdinis, f. [turpis], *disgrace*.  
 turris, is, f., *tower*; see page xl.  
 tūtus, a, um [perf. partic. of tueor, *defend*], (defended), *safe*.

## U

ubi, ubi, rel. adv., (1) *where*; (2) *when*; ubi primum, (when first), *as soon as*.  
 Ubii, ōrum, m., a German tribe, opposite the Arvennes, friendly to Caesar.  
 ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, (1) *avenge*, I. 12, 7; (2) *punish, take vengeance upon*.  
 ūllus, a, um, gen. ūllius, dat. ūlli, any; as a subst., *any one, anything*.  
 ūlterior, ius, compar. adj., [ūltrā], *farther, more distant*; super. ultimus, *farthest, most distant*.  
 ūltrā, prep. with acc., *beyond*.  
 ūltrō, adv., (to the farther side); *voluntarily, of one's own accord*; ūltrō citrōque, *back and forth*.  
 ultus, a, um, partic. of ulciscor.  
 umquam, adv., *ever*.  
 ūnā: see ūnus.  
 unde, rel. adv., *whence, from which*.  
 ūn-decim, a, um, ord. adj. [ūn-decim, *eleven*], *eleventh*.  
 undique, adv., (from all sides), *on all sides*.  
 ūni-versus, a, um [ūnus, *vertō*], (turned into one), *all, whole*.  
 ūnus, a, um, gen. ūnius, dat. ūnī, card. adj., *one; alone, only, only one*; pl., *alone, only*;

**ūnā**, used as an adv., *together*, especially with *cum*; *the same way, along with him*, II. 17, 2; *in the same place, together*.

**urbs**, **urbis**, f., *city*; referring to Rome, I. 7, 1, 39, 2.

**urgeō**, **urgēre**, **urgui**, —, *press*; passive, *be hard pressed*.

**usque**, adv., *all the way*; with *ad*, *even to, clear to*.

**ūsus**, a, um, partic. of **ūtor**.

**ūsus**, **ūs**, m. [**ūtor**], (1) *use*; (2) *experience*; **ūsui** (§ 32) *esse*, *be of use, be useful*; **ex ūsū**, *to the advantage, advantageously, advantageously, of use*.

**ut**, **uti**, subord. conj.; (1) with subjunct. of purpose, *that, in order that*; (2) with subjunct. of result, *that, so that*; (3) with indic. (or subjunct. in indirect dis. representing an indic.), *as*; in phrases of comparison where verb is omitted, *as if, as*; (4) *how*, I. 43, 7, 46, 4.

**uter**, **utra**, **utrum**, gen. **utrius**, dat. **utrī**, interrog. or rel. pron. or adj. *which of two*.

**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque**, gen. **utriusque**, dat. **utrīque**, indef. pron. or adj., *each of two*; freely, *both*.

**uti**: see **ut**.

**ūtor**, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, *use*, with abl., § 73; with **cōnsiliō**, *adopt*; *show*, II. 14, 4, 28, 3; *avail themselves of, accept*, II. 32, 4; *enjoy*, I. 44, 4, 45, 3, 47, 4.

**utrimque**, adv. [**uterque**], *on each side, on both sides*.

**utrum**, conj. [neut. of **uter**], *which of the two things, whether*; **utrum** . . . **an**, *whether* . . . or; **utrum** . . . **necne**, *whether* . . . or not.

**uxor**, **ōris**, f., *wife*.

## V

**V**, numeral, 5, this character being half of **X**, 10.

**vacō**, 1st conj., *be unoccupied, be vacant*.

**vacuus**, a, um, (empty, vacant); *stripped*. [**ab**, of.]

**vadum**, i, n., *ford*.

**vagor**, 1st conj., *wander, roam*.

**valeō**, **valēre**, **valui**, **valitum**, *be strong, be powerful*; *prevail*, I. 40, 13; **minimum valēre**, *have very little power*; **plūrium valēre**, *be very strong, be very influential*.

**Valerius**, i, m., (1) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, governor (propraetor) of Gaul, 83 B.C., I. 47, 4; (2) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship, I. 47, 4, 53, 5; (4) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a prominent Gaul of the Province, I. 19, 3.

**vāllum**, i, n., *wall, rampart*, of Roman fortifications; see page xxxv.

**Vangionēs**, um, m., a German tribe with Ariovistus.

**varius**, a, um, *various, different*.

**vāsto**, 1st conj. [**vāstus**, *empty, waste*], (make empty), *ravage, devastate, lay waste*.

**vāticinātiō**, **ōnis**, f., *prophecy*.

**vectigal**, **vectigālis**, n., *tax*; pl., *revenues*.

**vehemēns**, **entis**, adj., *eager*. Adverb: **vehementer**, *exceedingly*; with verbs of fighting, *vigorously, desperately*; with **incūsō**, *severely*.

**vel**, coörd. conj., (1) *or*; (2) **vel** . . . **vel**, *either* . . . or; **aut**

. . . aut is used when the alternatives exclude each other, vel . . . vel when they do not.  
**Vellocassēs**, ium, m., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.  
**vēlōx**, **vēlōcis**, adj., *swift, quick*.  
**vel-ut**, adv., *just as*.  
**vēn-dō**, **dere**, **didī**, **ditum** [**vē-num**, *sale, dō, dare, put*], (put on sale), *sell*.  
**Venelli**, ōrum, m., a tribe on the northern coast of Brittany.  
**Veneti**, ōrum, m., a tribe on the southern coast of Brittany.  
**veniō**, **venire**, **vēni**, **ventum**, *come*; in **spem venire**, (come into the hope), *entertain hope, begin to hope*; **ventum est**, impersonal passive, (it was come), *they came*.  
**Verbigenus**, ī, m., a canton of the Helvetians, east of the Tigurini.  
**verbum**, ī, n., *word*; **facere verba**, *speak, plead*.  
**vereor**, **verēri**, **veritus sum**, *fear, be afraid*.  
**vergō**, **vergere**, —, —, (incline), *lie, be situated, extend*.  
**vergobretus**, ī, m., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aeduaus.  
**veritus**, a, um, partic. of **vereor**.  
**vērō**: see **vērus**.  
**versō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **vertō**], (turn); usually dependent, (1) *engage*; (2) *be*, II. 24, 2, 26, 5; *remain*, II. 1, 3.  
**vertō**, **vertere**, **verti**, **versum**, *turn*.  
**Verucloetius**, ī, m., a Helvetian nobleman, I. 7, 3.  
**vērus**, a, um, *true*; **vērō**, abl., (in truth); *indeed, in fact; but; while; and, emphatic*.

**Vesontio**, ōnis, m., the chief city of the Sequanians, now Besançon.  
**vesper**, **vesperi** or **vesperis**, m., *evening*.  
**veterānus**, a, um [**vetus**], *veteran*.  
**vetō**, **vetāre**, **vetui**, **vetitum**, *forbid*.  
**vetus**, **veteris**, adj., (old); *former*; of soldiers, *veteran*; *long-standing*, I. 43, 6.  
**vēxillum**, ī, n., *flag*, for any especial purpose or signal. [**prōpōnere**, *raise, display*.]  
**vēxō**, 1st conj., *harass, assail; overrun*, II. 4, 2.  
**via**, ae, f., (1) *way, road, route*; (2) *journey, march*.  
**victor**, tōris, m. [**vincō**], *conqueror, victor*, I. 44, 2, II. 28, 1; elsewhere, as if adjective, *victorious*.  
**victōria**, ae, f. [**victor**], *victory*.  
**victus**, a, um, partic. of **vincō**.  
**victus**, ūs, m. [**vivō**, *live*], *living*; **cōnsuētūdō victūs**, *mode of life*.  
**vīcus**, ī, m., *village*.  
**videō**, **vidēre**, **vidi**, **visum**, (1) *see*; (2) passive usually dependent, *seem*; *seem best*, II. 20, 4; passive in regular sense, *be seen*, II. 18, 3; *appear*, I. 47, 4, II. 33, 2.  
**vigilia**, ae, f., *watch*, one of the four equal divisions of the night.  
**viginti**, indecl. card. adj., *twenty*.  
**vīmen**, minis, n., *twig, osier, with*.  
**vincō**, **vincere**, **vinxi**, **vinctum**, *bind*.  
**vincō**, **vincere**, **vici**, **victum**, *conquer*.  
**vinculum**, ī, n. [**vincio**], *chain*; in **vincula cōnicere**, (throw

into chains), *imprison*; **ex vinculis**, *in chains*, I. 4, 1.

**vīnea**, *ae*, *f.*, *movable shed*; see pages xxxix, xl.

**vinum**, *i*, *n.*, (*vine*), *wine*.

**vir**, *virī*, *m.*, *man*.

**virēs**, *ium*, *etc.*, *plural of vis*.

**Viromandūi**, *ōrum*, *m.*, *a tribe in the western part of Belgic Gaul, about the headwaters of the Somme*.

**virtūs**, *tūtis*, *f.*, [*vir*], (*manliness*), *bravery, valor; worth, ability*, I. 47, 4; *plural, virtues, merits*.

**vis**, *vis*, *vi*, *vim*, *vi*, *f.*, (1) *force, violence; attacks*, I. 11, 4; (2) *plural, virēs, virium, (physical forces), strength*.

**visus**, *a*, *um*, *partic. of videō*.

**vīta**, *ae*, *f.*, *life*.

**vitō**, 1st conj., *avoid*.

**vix**, *adv.*, *hardly, barely, scarcely, with difficulty*.

**Vocciō**, *ōnis*, *m.*, *king of the Norici*.

**vocō**, 1st conj. [*vox*], *call*, usually in the sense of *summon*.

**Vocontii**, *ōrum*, *m.*, *a tribe of the Province, south of the Isère*.

**volō**, *velle*, *volui*, —, (1) *wish*; (2) *be willing*; *sī quid mē*

(*acc.*) *vis*, (*if you want me at all*), *if you want anything of me*, I. 34, 2; *quid tibi vis?* *what do you mean?* I. 44, 8. For conjugation, see pages 214, 215.

**voluntās**, *tātis*, *f.* [*volēns*, *pres. partic. of volō*], *wish, desire, consent, especially with licet; goodwill*, I. 19, 2.

**voluptās**, *tātis*, *f.* [*volō*], *pleasure*. **vōx**, *vōcis*, *f.*, (1) *voice*, II. 13, 2; (2) *word*, I. 32, 3, 39, 5; *statement, reply*, I. 39, 1; **vōci-**  
**bus increpitāre**, *taunt*, II. 30, 3.

**vulgus**, *i*, *n.*, *acc. vulgus*, *n.*, or **vulgum**, *m.*, *common people, multitude; common soldiers; in vulgus efferre*, *spread abroad*; *abl. used as an adv., generally*, I. 39, 5, II. 1, 4.

**vulnerō**, 1st conj. [*vulnus*], *wound*.

**vulnus**, **vulneris**, *n.*, *wound*.

**vultus**, *ūs*, *m.*, *expression of the face*; **vultum fingere**, *control their faces*.

## X

**X**, numeral, 10.

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

[For distinctions in meaning, consult the Latin-English vocabulary.]

### A

**able**: be *able, possum*.

**about**, *dē; circiter*.

**above**, *suprā*.

**abstain**, *abstineō*.

**accept**, *accipiō, recipiō*.

**access**, *aditus*.

**accomplish**, *cōficiō*.

**accord**: of one's own accord, *ūltrō*.

**accordance**: in accordance with, *prō*; see also § 86.

**account**: on this account, *hōc* (§ 84), *quam ob rem, propterea*; on account of, *propter, ob*; see also § 84.

**accustomed**: become accustomed, *cōnsuēscō*; be accustomed, *cōnsuēvī*.

**acquainted**: become acquainted with, *nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum*; be acquainted with, *nōvī*.

**across**, *trāns*.

**address**, *cohortor*.

**advance**, *prōcēdō, prōgredior*.

**advantage**, *commodum*; to the advantage, *ex ūsū*.

**advantageous**, *commodus*; *ex ūsū*.

**advantageously**, *ex ūsū*.

**advise**, *moneō*.

**affair**, *rēs*.

**affirm**, *cōnfirmō*.

**afraid**: be afraid, *vereor, timeō*.

**after**, *post, postquam*.

**afterwards**, *postea*.

**again**, *rūrsus, iterum*.

**against**, *contrā*; in with acc.

**aid**, *auxilium*; *iuvō*.

**alarm**, *permoveō, commoveō*.

**all**, *omnis*; in all, *omnīnō*; all that, *tantus*.

**alliance**, *amīcitia, hospitium*.

**allow**, *patior, concēdō*; it is allowed, *licet*.

**ally**, *socius*.

**almost**, *ferē, paene*.

**alone**, *sōlus*.

**along**, *secundum*.

**already**, *iam*.

**also**, *etiam, quoque*.

**although**, *cum*.

**am**, *sum*.

**ambassador**, *lēgātus*.

**ambuscade**, *īnsidiāe*.

**among**, *inter, apud*.

**amount**, *cōpia*.

**anchor**, *ancora, ae, f*.

**and**, *et, atque, -que*; and so, *itaque*.

**announce**, *nūntiō*.

**annoyed**: be annoyed, *graviter ferō*.

**another**, *alius*.

**answer**, *respondeō; respōnsum*.

**any**, *ūllus; aliquis*.

**approach**, *aditus; accēdō*, with *ad*; *appropinquō*, with *dat.* or *ad*.

**approve**, *probō*.

**arise**, *orior*.

arm, *armō*; (fore-) arm, *brāchium*.  
 arms, *arma*.  
 army, *exercitus*.  
 around, *circum*.  
 arouse, *commoveō*.  
 arrange, *cōstituō*.  
 arrival, *adventus*.  
 arrive, *pervenio* (at, ad).  
 as, *ut*; as soon as, *ubi*.  
 ascertain, *cōgnōscō*.  
 ask, *quaerō*, *rogō*, *petō*.  
 assault, *oppugnō*.  
 assemble, *conveniō*.  
 assistance, *opera*.  
 at: at least, *at*.  
 attack, *impetus*; *oppugnō*, *aggredior*, *impetum faciō*.  
 attempt, *cōnātus*; *cōnor*, *temptō*.  
 auxiliary, *auxilium*.  
 avenge, *ulciscor*.  
 await, *expectō*.  
 away: away from, *ab*; be away, *absum*.

## B

back, *tergum*.  
 baggage, *impedimenta*.  
 bank, *rīpa*.  
 barbarian, *barbarus*.  
 basis, *ratiō*.  
 battle, *proelium*; battle line, *aciēs*.  
 be, *sum*, *versor*.  
 bear, *ferō*, *perferō*.  
 beat, *pellō*.  
 because, *quod*, *propterea quod*;  
     because of, *propter*, *ob*; see  
     also § 84.  
 become, *fiō*.  
 before, *ante*; *anteā*.  
 beg, *orō*.  
 begin, *incipiō*, *orior*, *ineō*, *initium capiō* (at, ab); began, *coepi*.

beginning, *initium*.  
 behalf: in behalf of, *pro*.  
 belief, *opiniō*.  
 belong: § 46.  
 beseech, *orō*.  
 beside, besides, *secundum*; *praeterē*.  
 betray, *prōdiciō*.  
 between, *inter*.  
 bitterly, *graviter*.  
 boat, *nāvis*.  
 body, *corpus*.  
 bold, *audāx*.  
 booty, *praeda*, *ae*, *f*.  
 border on, *atingō*.  
 born: be born, *nāscor*.  
 both, *uterque*; both . . . and, *et . . . et*.  
 bound, *contineō*.  
 boundary, *finis*.  
 brave, *fortis*.  
 bravery, *virtūs*.  
 break camp, *moveō*.  
 bridge, *pōns*.  
 brief, *brevis*.  
 bring, *dūcō*, *addūcō*, *ferō*, *afferō*;  
     bring back, *referō*, *redūcō*;  
     bring on, bring upon, *inferō*;  
     bring together, *cōnferō*; bring  
     about, *efficiō*.

broad, *lātus*.  
 brother, *frāter*.  
 build, *faciō*.  
 building, *aedificium*.  
 business, *negotium*.  
 but, *sed*, *at*; doubt but that, *quān*.  
 buy, *emō*, *coemō*.  
 by, *ab*; or ablative alone.

## C

calculation, *ratiō*.  
 call, *appellō*; *vocō*; call together, *convocō*; call out, *ēvocō*.  
 camp, *castra*.

capture, *capiō*; *expūgnō*.  
 care, *cūra*.  
 carefully, *diligenter*.  
 carry, *ferō*, *portō*; carry back,  
*referō*; carry on, *gerō*; carry  
 out, *administrō*.  
 cast down, *dēiciō*.  
 cause, *causa*; *cūrō*.  
 causeway, *agger*.  
 cavalry, *equitātus*; *equitēs*.  
 cease, *dēsistō*, *intermittō*.  
 centurion, *centuriō*.  
 certain, *quādam*; *certus*.  
 chance, *cāsus*.  
 character, *nātūra*.  
 charge, *impetus*.  
 check, *impediō*.  
 chief, chieftain, *prīnceps*.  
 child, *puer*; pl. *puerī*, *liberī*.  
 choose, *dēligō*.  
 citizens, *civitās*.  
 city, *urbs*.  
 cliff, *rūpēs*.  
 cohort, *cohors*.  
 collect, *cōgō*; *condūcō*; *conferō*.  
 come, *veniō*; come together,  
*conveniō*; come up, *succēdō*.  
 command, *imperium*; *imperō*,  
*mandō*; be in command,  
*praesum*; place in command,  
 put in command, *praeficiō*.  
 commander, *imperātor*.  
 compel, *cōgō*.  
 complain, complain of, *queror*.  
 complete, *cōnficiō*.  
 concerning, *dē*.  
 condition, *condiciō*.  
 confer, *dēferō* (upon, *ad*).  
 conference, *colloquium*.  
 confidence, *fidēs*.  
 confirm, *cōnfirmō*.  
 conquer, *vincō*, *superō*.  
 consent, *voluntās*.  
 consider, *habēō*, *dūcō*, *existimō*.  
 consideration, *ratio*.  
 conspiracy, *coniūratiō*.

construct, *faciō*.  
 consul, *cōsul*.  
 consult, *cōsulō*.  
 contest, *certāmen*, *minis*, *n*.  
 continuous, *perpetuus*.  
 contribute, *cōnferō*, *adferō*.  
 control, *imperium*; with *vultum*,  
*ingere*; gain control of, *potior*.  
 convenience, *commodum*.  
 convenient, *commodus*.  
 council, *concilium*.  
 courage, *virtūs*.  
 courteously, *liberaliter*.  
 cowardice, *timor*.  
 cowardly, *timidus*.  
 critical, *necessārius*.  
 cross, *trāseō*.  
 cruelty, *cruciātus*.  
 crush, *opprimō*.  
 custom, *mōs*, *cōnsuetūdō*.  
 cut down, *caedō*.

## D

daily, *coīdiē*; *coīdiānus*.  
 danger, *periculum*.  
 dare, *audeō*.  
 daring, *audāx*.  
 daughter, *filia*.  
 day, *diēs*.  
 daybreak, *prīma lūx*.  
 death, *mors*.  
 decide, *statuō*, *cōstituō*.  
 declare, *ostendō*, *cōnfirmō*.  
 decree, *cōnsultum*.  
 deep, *altus*.  
 defeat, *vincō*, *superō*.  
 defend, *dēfendō*.  
 delay, *mora*; *moror*.  
 deliver a speech, *habēō*.  
 demand, *postulō*, *pōscō*; *imperō*.  
 depart, *discēdō*, *excēdō*.  
 departure, *profectiō*.  
 deprive, *privō*.  
 depth, *altitūdō*.  
 descend: be descended, *orior*.

desert, *dēserō*.  
 deserve, *mereō*.  
 desire, *cupiō*, *studeō*; *voluntās*;  
     *cupiditās*.  
 destroy, *cōnsūmō*.  
 determine, *statuō*, *cōstituō*.  
 different, *varius*.  
 difficulty: with difficulty, *aegrē*.  
 direction, *pars*.  
 disappoint, *dēiciō*.  
 disaster, *calamitās*.  
 discuss, *agō*.  
 dismiss, *dīmittō*.  
 display, *ostendō*.  
 disposition, *animus*.  
 distance, *spatium*.  
 disturb, *perturbō*.  
 ditch, *fossa*.  
 divide, *dīvidō*.  
 do, *faciō*, *gerō*.  
 double, *anceps*.  
 doubt, *dubitō*.  
 down from, *dē*.  
 drag, *trahō*.  
 drive, *pellō*; drive back, *re-*  
     *pellō*; drive out, *expellō*.  
 drop, *reiciō*.  
 dry, *āridus*, *a*, *um*.  
 during, *dē*.  
 duty, *officium*.  
 dyke, *mōlēs*, *is*, *f*.

## E

each, *quisque*; each (of two),  
     *uterque*.  
 early, *mātūrē*.  
 easily, *facile*.  
 east, *oriēns sōl*.  
 easy, *facilis*.  
 effect, *sententia*; *efficiō*.  
 eight, *octō*.  
 either, *aut*, *vel*.  
 elated, *sublātus*.  
 embankment, *agger*.  
 embassy, *lēgātīō*.

employ, *ūtor*.  
 encamp, *cōnsidō*, *castra pōnō*.  
 encourage, *cohortor*.  
 end, *finis*.  
 endure, *perferō*; enduring: *§ 270, 1*.  
 enemy, *hostis*, *inimicus*.  
 energy, *animus*.  
 engage in, *committō*, *versor*.  
 enjoy, *ūtor*.  
 enough, *satis*.  
 entire, *tōtus*.  
 entrust, *committō*.  
 equal, *pār*, *aequus*.  
 escape, *profugiō*; *mē ēripiō*.  
 especially, *māximē*, *praesertim*.  
 establish, *cōfirmō*.  
 even, *etiam*; not even, *nē . . .*  
     *quidem*.  
 everything, *omnia*, nom., acc.,  
     *omnēs rēs*, gen., dat., abl.  
 excel, *praestō*.  
 except, *praeter*.  
 excite, *incitō*, *impellō*.  
 exertion, *labor*.  
 exhaust, *cōnficiō*.  
 experience, *ūsus*; *experior*.  
 explain, *prōpōnō*.  
 expose, *obicitō*.  
 extend, *pertineō*, *pateō*.  
 extraordinary, *ēgregius*, *īnsignis*.

## F

fact, *rēs*.  
 fail, *dēficiō*.  
 fall, *cadō*; fall to the ground,  
     *prōcumbō*.  
 far, *longē*.  
 farther, *ūterior*.  
 farthest, *extrēmus*.  
 father, *pater*.  
 favor, *faveō*; *grātia*.  
 favorable, *secundus*.  
 fear, *vereor*, *timeō*; *tīmor*; for fear  
     that, *nē*.



feel, *sentio*.  
 fell, *caedo*.  
 fertile, *frumentarius*.  
 few, *pauci*.  
 field, *ager*.  
 fierce, *acer, ferus*.  
 fiercely, *acriter*.  
 fifteen, *quādecim*.  
 fifth, *quintus*.  
 fight, *pugna*; contendō, *pugnō*,  
*amicō*; fight it out, fight a  
 decisive battle, *dēcertō*.  
 fill, *compleō*.  
 finally, *dēnique*.  
 find, *occuro*, *nanciscor*; find  
 (out), *reperiō*; cognōscō, *ex-*  
*plorō*.  
 finish, *cōnficiō, perficiō*.  
 fire, *ignis*.  
 first, *primus*; first, in the first  
 place, *primum*; at first, *primō*.  
 fitting: it is fitting, *oportet*.  
 five, *quinque*.  
 flank, *latus*.  
 flee, *fugio, profugio*.  
 fleet, *classis, is, f.*  
 flight, *fuga*; take to flight, *mē*  
*fugae mandō*; put to flight, in  
*fugam cōniciō*.  
 flow, *fluō*.  
 follow, *sequor, cōsequor*; follow  
 closely, follow up, *subsequor*.  
 foot, *pēs*; at the foot of, *sub*,  
 with *abl.*  
 footprint, *vestigium*.  
 foot-soldier, *pedes*.  
 for, *nam, namque, enim; ad; prō*;  
 also ablative of cause, or  
 dative.  
 force, *vīs*; manus; forces,  
*cōpiae*; forced, *māgnus*.  
 ford, *vadum*.  
 forearm, *brāchium*.  
 foresee, *prōvidēō*.  
 forest, *silva*.  
 form, *faciō*.

former, prior, superior, *vetus*.  
 fortification, *mūnitio*.  
 fortify, *mūniō*.  
 fortune, *fortūna*.  
 four, *quattuor*.  
 fourth, *quartus*.  
 free, *liber*; *expeditus*; of one's  
 free will, *ultro*.  
 freedom, *libertas*.  
 frequent, *creber*.  
 friend, *amicus*; close friend,  
*necessarius*.  
 friendly, *amicus*.  
 friendship, *amicitia*.  
 frighten, *perterreo*.  
 from, *a, ab; dē; ē, ex*; from  
 which, *unde*; from all sides,  
*undique*.  
 front, *frons*; *primum agmen*:  
 in front of, *prō*.  
 further, *amplius*.

## G

gain, *cōsequor*; gain (possession of), *potior*.  
 Gallic, *Gallicus*.  
 garrison, *praesidium*.  
 gate, *porta*.  
 generally, *plērumque*.  
 Geneva, *Genāva*.  
 get at, *adeō*.  
 gift, *mūnus*.  
 give, *dō*; give back, *reddō*; give  
 orders, *mandō*; give out, *dē-*  
*ficiō*; give up, *tradō, dēdō*.  
 go, *eō*; go across, *trānseō*; go  
 ahead, *prōcēdō*; go away, *dis-*  
*cēdō*; go back, *redeō*; go for-  
 ward, *prōdeō, prōcēdō, prō-*  
*gredior*; go into, *ineō*; go  
 under, *subeō*.  
 good, *bonus*.  
 gracious, *liberalis*.  
 graciously, *liberaliter*.  
 gradually, *paulatim*.

grain, *frūmentum*; standing grain, *frūmenta*; grain supply, *rēs frūmentāria*.

grant, *concēdō*.

great, *māgnus*; so great, *tantus*; how great, *quantus*; as great as, *tantus . . . quantus*; greatest, when used figuratively, *summus*.

greatly, *māgnopere*.

greatness, *māgnitūdō*.

grieve, *doleō*.

guard, *praesidium*.

guide, *dux*.

## H

halt, *cōnsistō*.

hand, *manus*; be at hand, *īnstō*.

happen, *accidō*.

harass, *laccessō*.

harbor, *portus*, *ūs*, m.

hard, *dūrus*.

harm, *noceō*, *nocēre*, *nocuī*, *nocitum*, with dative.

hasten, *contendō*.

haughtily, *superbē*.

haughty, *superbus*.

have, *habēō*.

he, *is*; also *hic*, *ille*.

head, *caput*.

headlong, *praeceps*.

hear, hear of, *audiō*.

heavily, *graviter*.

heavy, *gravis*.

height, *altitūdō*.

help, *auxilium*; *iuvō*.

her, *eam*; also *hanc*, *illam*; *ēius*; her (own), *suus*.

here, *hic*.

herself, *ipsa*; *suī*.

hesitate, *dubitō*.

hide, *abdō*; *mē abdō* (in, in with acc.); be hidden, *lateō*.

high, *altus*; higher, *altior*, *superior*.

hill, *collis*.

him, *eum*; also *hunc*, *illum*.

himself, *ipse*; *suī*.

hinder, *impediō*.

hindrance, *impedimentum*.

his, *ēius*; his (own), *suus*.

hold, *teneō*, *obteneō*, *contineō*,

hold out, *sustineō*.

home, *domus*.

hope, *spēs*.

horse, *equus*.

horseman, *eques*.

hostage, *obses*.

hour, *hōra*.

how, *quam*; *quō modō*, *quem ad modum*; how great, how much, *quantus*.

however, *autem*.

hundred, *centum*.

hurry, *contendō*.

## I

I, *ego*.

if, *sī*.

immediately, *statim*.

in, in with abl.; in all, *omnīnō*.

increase, *augeō*.

incredible, *incrēdibilis*.

indeed, *vērō*.

induce, *adducō*.

indulge, *indulgeō*.

influence, *auctoritās*; *adducō*.

inform, *certiōrem* (-ēs) *faciō*.

inhabit, *incolō*.

injury, *iniūria*.

inside, *intrā*.

instead of, *prō*.

intervene, *intermittor*.

into, in with acc.

intrust, *committō*.

island, *insula*, *ae*, f.

it, *id*; also *hoc*, *illud*.

its, *ēius*; its (own), *suus*.

itself, *ipsum*; *suī*.

## J

join, *iungō, coniungō.*

journey, *iter.*

judge, *iudicō.*

## K

keep, *teneō*; keep away, keep out, *prohibeō.*

kill, *occidō, interficiō.*

kind, sort, *genus*; kind deed, kindness, *beneficium.*

king, *rēx.*

kinsman, *propinquus.*

know, *sciō*; *nōvī, cōgnōvī.*

known, *nōtus*; well known, *nōbilis.*

## L

labor, *labor.*

lack, *inopia.*

lacking: be lacking, *dēsum.*

lake, *lacus.*

land, *terra*; *ager.*

language, *lingua.*

large, *māgnus, amplus*; large number, *multitūdō.*

last, *proximus*; *proximē.*

late in the day, *multō diē.*

law, *lēx.*

lay aside, *dēpōnō*; lay waste, *vāstō.*

lead, *dūcō*; lead across, *trādūcō*; lead away, *dēdūcō*; lead back, *redūcō*; lead out, *ēdūcō*; lead up, *subdūcō.*

leader, *dux.*

leadership, *prīncipātus.*

learn, *cōgnōscō.*

least, *minimus*; at least, *at.*

leave (behind), *relinquō.*

left, *sinister*; *reliquus.*

legion, *legiō.*

length, *longitūdō*; at length, *dēmum, tandem.*

letter, *littera*; *litterae.*

liberty, *libertās.*

lieutenant, *lēgātus.*

light, *lūx*; *levis.*

light-armed, *expeditus*; *levis armātūrae* (§ 44).

like, *similis*, super. *simillimus.*

likewise, *item.*

line: line of battle, *aciēs*; line of march, *agmen.*

little, *parrus*; *paulus* in acc. and abl.; little by little, *paulatim.*

live (in), *incolō.*

locality, *regiō, locus.*

long, *longus.*

look back, *respiciō.*

lose, *amittō.*

loss, *dētrīmentum*; *calamitās.*

lot, *sors.*

low, *inferus.*

loyalty, *fidēs.*

## M

magistrate, *magistrātus.*

make, *faciō, efficiō*; be made, *fiō*; make a stand, *cōsistō*; make war, *bellum inferō.*

man, *homō*; *vir.*

manliness, *virtūs.*

manner, *modus*; *ratio.*

many, *multū.*

march, *iter*; *iter faciō*; forced march, *māgnum iter*; line of march, *agmen.*

maritime, *maritimus.*

marked, *insignis.*

marsh, *palūs.*

matron, *māter.*

matter, *rēs.*

meanwhile, *interea*, *interim.*

meet, *occurrō*; *sustineō*; *ex-cipio*; *conveniō.*

memory, *memoria.*

message, *nūntius.*

messenger, *nūntius.*

method, *ratio*.  
 middle (of), *medius*.  
 midnight, *media nox*.  
 mile, *mille passūs*; miles, *mīlia passuum*.  
 military, *militāris*; military affairs, *rēs militāris*.  
 mind, *animus*.  
 missile, *telum*.  
 mission, *lēgatiō*.  
 more, *plūs*; *magis*; *amplius*.  
 moreover, *autem*.  
 most, *plūrimus*; most, most of, *plērique*.  
 mother, *māter*.  
 motion, *mōtus*.  
 mound, *agger*.  
 mountain, *mōns*.  
 move, *movē*.  
 much, *multus*.  
 my, *meus*, *a*, *um*.

## N

name, *nōmen*.  
 narrow, *angustus*.  
 nation, *populus*, *nātiō*.  
 native, *barbarus*.  
 near, *prope*; *ad*; *propinquus*; *finitimus*; very near, *proximus*; be near, *adsum*.  
 nearest, *proximus*.  
 nearly, *prope*.  
 need, *opus*.  
 neglect, *neglegō*.  
 neighbor, *finitimus*.  
 neighboring, *finitimus*.  
 neither, *neque*.  
 never, *numquam*.  
 nevertheless, *tamen*.  
 new, *novus*.  
 news, *nūntius*.  
 next, *proximus*; (on) the next day, *postridiē*.  
 night, *nox*.  
 nine, *novem*.

no (adj.), *nāllus*; no one, no-body, *nēmō*.  
 nor, *neque*.  
 not, *nōn*; not yet, *nōndum*.  
 noted, *nōbilis*, *cōgnitus*.  
 nothing, *nihil*.  
 notice, *animadvertō*.  
 now, *nunc*; of past time, *iam*.  
 number, *numerus*; great number, *multitūdō*; quite a number of, *complūrēs*.

## O

oak, *rōbur*, *roboris*, *n*.  
 oar, *rēmus*, *i*, *m*.  
 oath, *iūs iūrāndum*; take an oath, *iūrō*.  
 obey, *pāre*.  
 obtain; obtain possession of, obtain control of, *potior*; obtain (one's request), *impetrō*.  
 occupy, *tene*, *obtinē*, *occupō*.  
 ocean, *Oceanus*.  
 often, *saepe*.  
 old, *vetus*.  
 on, in with abl.; on all sides, *undique*.  
 once: at once, *statim*.  
 one, *ūnus*; one . . . another, *alius* . . . *alius*; one . . . the other, *alter* . . . *alter*; one by one, one at a time, *singulī*.  
 only, *sōlus*; not only, *nōn sōlum*; *nōn modo*.  
 open, *apertus*.  
 opinion, *sententia*.  
 opportunity, *facultās*.  
 or, *aut*; *vel*; *an*.  
 order, *iube*; in order that, *ut*; in order that . . . not, *nē*.  
 other, *alius*; *alter*; *reliquus*; *cēterī*.  
 otherwise, *aliter*.  
 ought, *dēbe*; *oportet*.  
 our, *noster*.

out from, out of, *ex*.  
 overcome, *superō*.  
 overlook, *neglegō*.  
 overpower, *opprimō*.  
 overrun, *vērō*.  
 overtake, *cōsequor*.  
 overwhelm, *opprimō*.

## P

pace, *passus*.  
 pacify, *pācō*.  
 panic-stricken, (*tīmōre*) *perterritus*; *perturbātus*.  
 pardon, *ignōscō*.  
 part, *pars*.  
 partly, *partim*.  
 pass, *intermittor*.  
 peace, *pāx*.  
 people, *populus*; common people, *vulgus*.  
 perceive, *sentiō*.  
 peril, *periculum*.  
 permit, *permittō*, *committō*; *concedō*; it is permitted, *licet*.  
 personal, *privātus*.  
 persuade, *persuādēō*.  
 pertain, *pertineō*.  
 pitch, *pōnō*.  
 place, *locus*; *pōnō*, *collocō*; in place of, *prō*; place around, *circumdō*; place upon, *impōnō*.  
 plan, *cōnsilium*, *ratio*.  
 pledge, *fidēs*.  
 plenty, *cōpia*.  
 point, *locus*.  
 popularity, *grātia*.  
 position, *locus*.  
 power, *potētās*, *facultās*.  
 powerful, *potēns*; be powerful, *multum possum*, *valeō*.  
 pray, *orō*.  
 prayer, *prex*.  
 prepare, *parō*, *comparō*.  
 prepared, *parātus*.

present: be present, *praesum*.  
 press hard, *premō*.  
 prevent, *dēterreō*, *prohibeō*.  
 prisoner, *capīvus*.  
 private, *privātus*.  
 productive, *frūmentārius*.  
 prominent, *nōbilis*.  
 promise, *polliceor*.  
 proper: it is proper, *oportet*.  
 property, *fortūna*.  
 protection, *praesidium*.  
 proud, *superbūs*.  
 prove, *probō*.  
 province, *prōvincia*.  
 provisions, *commedtus*.  
 provoke, *laccēō*.  
 prudence, *cōnsilium*.  
 public, *pūblicus*.  
 punish, *animadvertō*, with *in* with acc.  
 purpose: for the purpose, *causā*, after gen.  
 pursue, *sequor*.  
 put: put in, *immittō*; put in charge of, *praeficiō*; put to death, *interficiō*.

## Q

quick, *celer*.  
 quickly, *celeriter*.

## R

raft, *ratis*.  
 raise, *tollō*.  
 rampart, *vallum*.  
 rank, *ōrdō*.  
 rapidly, *celeriter*.  
 reach, *pervenio ad*.  
 ready, *parātus*.  
 realize, *intellegō*, *sentiō*.  
 rear, *novissimum āgmen*.  
 reason, *causa*; *ratio*; for this reason, *hōc* (§ 84); *ob eam causam*; *propterea*.

receive, *accipiō*; *recipiō*; *ex-*  
*cipiō*.  
 recent, *recēns*.  
 reckoning, *ratiō*.  
 recollection, *memoria*.  
 refuse, *recūsō*.  
 region, *regiō*.  
 regular, *legiōnārius*.  
 reinforcement, *subsidiūm*.  
 relative, near relative, *propin-*  
*quus*.  
 rely, *cōnfidō*.  
 remain, *maneo*, *remaneo*; *super-*  
*sum*.  
 remaining, *reliquus*.  
 remove, *removēō*.  
 render, *reddō*.  
 reply, *respondeō*.  
 report, *nūntiō*, *dēferō*.  
 reputation, *opīniō*.  
 reserve, *subsidiūm*.  
 resist, *resistō*.  
 resource, *facultās*.  
 rest: the rest of, *reliquus*.  
 restrain, *teneō*, *retineō*, *dēterreo*.  
 result: the result is, *fiō*.  
 retain, *adhibeō*, *retineō*.  
 retire, *pedem referō*.  
 retreat, *mē recipiō*; *cēdō*.  
 return, *redeō*, *revertor*; *reddō*.  
 revolt, *dēficiō*.  
 revolution, *novae rēs*.  
 reward, *praemium*.  
 Rhine, *Rhēnus*.  
 Rhone, *Rhodanus*.  
 ridge, *iugum*.  
 right, *dexter*; *iūs*.  
 ripe, *mātūrus*.  
 river, *flūmen*.  
 road, *iter*, *via*.  
 rock, *saxum*.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus*.  
 Rome, *Rōma*.  
 rope, *fūnis*, *is*, *f*.  
 rout, *pellō*; *in fugam cōniciō*.  
 row, *ōrdō*.

royal: royal power, *rēgnum*.  
 rule, *imperium*; *imperō*.  
 rumor, *rūmor*.  
 run against, *occurrō*.  
 running, *cursus*.

## S

safe, safely, *incolumis*.  
 safety, *salūs*.  
 sail, *vēlum*; *nāvigō*, 1st conj.  
 sailor, *navita*, *ae*, *m*.  
 sake: for the sake, *causā*, after  
*gen*.  
 same, *idem*; in the same way,  
*item*; at the same time, *simul*.  
 save, *cōnservō*.  
 say, *dīcō*.  
 scarcely, *aeqrē*, *vix*.  
 scarcity, *inopia*.  
 scatter, *dīspargō*.  
 scout, *explōrātor*.  
 sea, *mare*, *maris*, *n*.  
 seacoast, *ōra maritima*.  
 second, *secundus*; the second  
 (of two), *alter*; a second time,  
*iterum*.  
 secure, *potior*.  
 see, *videō*; see clearly, *per-*  
*spiciō*, *cōspiciō*.  
 seek, *petō*.  
 seem, *videor*.  
 seize, *occupō*, *capiō*.  
 select, *dēligō*.  
 senate, *senātus*.  
 send, *mittō*; send ahead, send  
 forward, *praemittō*; send  
 away, *dīmittō*; send back,  
*remittō*.  
 separate, *dīvidō*.  
 service, *mūnus*; *beneficium*;  
 services, *opera*.  
 set, *cōstitūō*; set forth, *prōpōnō*;  
 set on fire, set fire to, *in-*  
*cendō*; set out, *proficiscor*.  
 seven, *septem*.

seventh, *septimus*.  
 several, *complūrēs*.  
 sharp, *acer*.  
 she, *ea*; also *haec, illa*.  
 shield, *scūtum*.  
 ship, *nāvis*.  
 shoal, *vadum*.  
 shore, *litus, litoris, n.*  
 short, *brevis*.  
 shout, shouting, *clāmor*.  
 show, *doceō, ostendō, dēmōn-  
strō*.  
 shut in, *contineō*.  
 sick, *aeger*.  
 side, *latus, pars*; on all sides,  
 from all sides, *undique*.  
 sight, *cōnspectus*.  
 signal, *signum*.  
 similar, *similis*.  
 since, *cum; quoniam*.  
 sister, *soror*.  
 situated: be situated, *pōnor*.  
 six, *sex*.  
 sixty, *sexāgintā*.  
 size, great size, *māgnitūdō*.  
 slay, *interficiō, occidō*.  
 slow, *tardus*.  
 small, *parvus*.  
 smooth, *mollis*.  
 snatch, *ēripiō*.  
 so, *ita; ita, sic*.  
 soft, *mollis*.  
 soldier, *miles*.  
 some, *nōn nulli; some . . .  
 others, alii . . . alii; some  
 one, aliquis*.  
 son, *filius*.  
 soul, individual, *caput*.  
 space, *spatium*.  
 speak, *loquor, dīcō*.  
 spear, *pilum*.  
 speech, *ōrātiō*.  
 speed, *celeritās; cursus*.  
 spread, *pandō*.  
 spring from, *orior*.  
 stand, make a stand, *cōnsistō*;

stand up, *mē sustineō*; stand  
 up under, *sustineō*.  
 standard, *signum*.  
 start (out), *proficiācor*.  
 state, *civilās*.  
 stay, *remaneō; moror*.  
 stop, *prohibeō; cōnsistō*.  
 storm, *expugnō; tempestās, tālis, f.*  
 strength, *vīrēs*.  
 strengthen, *cōnfirmō*.  
 stripped, *vacuus*.  
 strive, *contendō*.  
 strong, *firmus*.  
 submissive, *supplex*.  
 succession: in succession, *con-  
tinuus*.  
 successive, *continuus*.  
 such: such (great), *tantus*; in  
 such a manner, *ita, sic*; to  
 such a degree, *tam*.  
 sudden, *subitū*.  
 suddenly, *subitō*.  
 suffer, *patior*.  
 sufficient, sufficiently, *satis*.  
 suitable, *idōneus*.  
 summer, *aestās*.  
 summon, *arcessō*.  
 sun, *sōl*.  
 superior, *superior*.  
 supply, *cōpia; facultās; grain  
 supply, supply of grain, rēs  
 frūmentāria*.  
 support, *auxilium*.  
 sure, *certus*.  
 surpass, *praestō*.  
 surrender, *trādō, dēdō; surren-  
der(ing), dēditiō*.  
 surround, *contineō; circumveniō;  
 circumdō; cingō*.  
 survive, *supersum*.  
 sustain, *sustineō; accipiō*.  
 swamp, *palūs*.  
 swear, *iūrō*.  
 swift, *celer*.  
 swiftness, *celeritās*.  
 sword, *gladius*.

## T

take, *capiō*; occupy, *sūmō*;  
take away, *tollō*; *ēripiō*; take  
to flight, *mē fugae mandō*; take  
possession of, *potior*; take by  
storm, *expūgnō*.

talk, *loquor*.

tear, *lacrima*.

tell, *dicō*.

ten, *decem*.

tend, *pertineō*.

tenth, *decimus*.

terms, *condiciō*.

territory, *finēs*.

than, *quam*.

that, *ille*; *is*; *quī*; *ut*.

their, *eōrum*, *eārum*; their (own)  
*suus*.

themselves, *ipsī*; *suī*.

then, *inde*, *deinde*; *tum*.

there, *ibi*; *eō*.

therefore, *itaque*; *quam ob rem*.

they, *ei*; also *hī*, *illī*.

thick, *dēnsus*.

thing, *rēs*; also neuter gender.

think, *arbitror*, *putō*, *existimō*.

third, *tertius*.

this, *hic*.

though, *cum*; *et̄s̄*.

thousand, *mille*; thousands,  
*mīlia*.

three, *trēs*; three at a time, three  
by three, *trīnī*; three times,  
*ter*; three hundred, *trecentī*.

through, throughout, *per*.

throw, *iaciō*; *cōniciō*; throw  
back, *reiciō*; throw down, *dē-  
iciō*, *prōiciō*; throw up, throw  
against, *obiciō*; throw from  
under, *subiciō*.

thus, *ita*.

tide, *aestus*, *ūs*, *m*.

timber, *trabs*.

time, *tempus*.

to, *ad*, or dative case.

together, *ūnā*.

toil, *labor*.

too, *quoque*; too little, *parum*;  
see also § 116.

top of, *summus*.

torture, *cruciātus*.

toward, *ad*.

tower, *turris*.

town, *oppidum*.

trader, *mercātor*.

training, *exercitātiō*.

treachery, *insidiae*.

treat, *agō*.

tree, *arbor*.

tribe, *nātiō*.

tribune, *tribūnus*.

triple, *trīnī*.

troops, *cōpiae*.

true, *vērus*.

trust, *cōnfidō*.

try, *cōnor*; *temptō*; *experior*.

turn, *vertō*, *convertō*; turn away,  
*āvertō*; turn to, *advertō*.

twice, *bis*.

two, *duo*.

## U

uncivilized, *barbarus*.

under, *sub*.

undergo, *subeō*.

understand, *intellegō*.

undertake, *suscipiō*.

unencumbered, *expeditus*.

unexpected, *repentinus*.

unfavorable, *inīquus*.

unfriendly, *inimīcus*.

unharmcd, *incolumis*.

unless, *nisi*.

unlike, *dissimilis*.

unwilling, *invītus*; be unwilling,  
*nōlō*.

unwillingly, *invītus*.

urge, *hortor*; *impellō*.

use (noun), *ūsus*.

use (verb), *ūtor*.

usually, *plērumque*.



## V

vain : in vain, *frustrā*.  
 valley, *vallēs, is, f.*  
 van, *primum agmen*.  
 vanquish, *vincō*.  
 various, *varius*.  
 very, *ipse*; also superlative.  
 victor, *victor*.  
 victory, *victoria*.  
 village, *vīcus*.  
 violence, *vīs*.  
 voice, *vox*.  
 voluntarily, *ultrō*.

## W

wage, *gerō*.  
 wait, *moror, exspectō*; wait for,  
*exspectō*.  
 wall, *mūrus, vallum*.  
 wander, *vagor*.  
 want, *volō*.  
 war, *bellum*.  
 warn, *moned*.  
 waste : lay waste, *vāstō*.  
 watch, *vigilia*.  
 water, *aqua, ae, f.*  
 wave, *fluctus, ūs, m.*  
 way, *via*.  
 weak, *mollis, ē*.  
 weapon, *lētum*.  
 wear out, *cōnficiō*.  
 weep, *fleō*.  
 well, *bene*; well known, *nōbilis*.  
 what, *quis, quī, etc.*  
 when, *cum, ubi*.  
 where, *ubi*; *quō*.  
 whether, *num*; *utrum*.  
 which, *quī, quae, quod, quid, etc.*;  
 which (of two), *uter*.

whither, *quō*.  
 who, *quis*; *quī*.  
 whoever, whichever, *quicumque*.  
 whole, *tōtus*.  
 why, *cūr*; *quam ob rem*.  
 wide, *lātus*.  
 width, *lātitudō*.  
 willing : be willing, *volō*.  
 willingness, *voluntās*.  
 win, *potior*.  
 wind, *ventus, ī, m.*  
 wing, *cornū*.  
 winter, *hiems, hiemis, f.*; winter  
 quarters, *hiberna*.  
 wisdom, *cōnsilium*.  
 wish, *volō*; *voluntās*; not wish,  
*nōlō*.  
 with, *cum*.  
 withdraw, *discēdō*; *mē recipiō*;  
*subdūcō, dēdūcō*; *excēdō*.  
 within, *intrā*.  
 without, *sine*.  
 withstand, *sustined*.  
 woman, *mulier*.  
 woods, *silva*.  
 word, *verbum*; *vox*.  
 work, *opus*.  
 wound, *vulnus*; *vulnerō*.  
 wrong, *iniūria*.  
 wrongdoing, *iniūria*.  
 wrongly, wrongfully, *iniūriā*.

## Y

year, *annus*.  
 yield, *concedō*.  
 yoke, *iugum*.  
 you, *tū*; *vōs*.  
 young man, *adulēscēns*.  
 your, *tuus*; *vester*.  
 youth, *adulēscēns*; *adulēscēntia*.

## ADVERTISEMENTS



# LATIN

## LATIN GRAMMAR

Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar. School edition. 340 pages. 90 cents.  
Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar. Complete. 560 pages. \$1.25.  
Jenks's Latin Word Formation. 86 pages. 50 cents.

## BEGINNERS' BOOKS

Bain's First Latin Book. Revised. 420 pages. 90 cents.  
Barss's Beginning Latin. 331 pages. \$1.00.  
D'Ooge's Colloquia Latina. 81 pages. 25 cents.  
Moulton's Introductory Latin. Revised. 278 pages. \$1.00.  
Smith's Elements of Latin. 361 pages. \$1.00.

## CAESAR

Dotey's Latin Exercise Books on Caesar's Gallic War, Book I, 25 cents; Books II, III and IV, each, 25 cents.  
Perrin's Caesar's Civil War, with Vocabulary. 340 pages. \$1.00.  
Towle & Jenks's Caesar's Gallic War, Books I, II, III, and IV. Contains Text, Notes; Grammatical Appendix and Vocabulary. 479 pages. \$1.00.  
Towle & Jenks's Caesar's Gallic War. Complete. 604 pages. \$1.25.  
Towle & Jenks's Caesar for Sight Reading. 144 pages. 60 cents.

## CICERO

Tunstall's Six Orations of Cicero. Four Catilines, Manilian Law, Archias. \$1.00.  
Tunstall's Cicero's Orations. Same as above, with Verres, Milo, Marcellus, Ligarius and Ninth Philippic. 616 pages. \$1.25.

## LATIN COMPOSITION

Barss's Writing Latin, Book I. Based on Caesar. 144 pages. 50 cents.  
Barss's Writing Latin, Book II. Based on Caesar and Cicero. 168 pages. 75 cents.  
Daniels's Latin Drill and Composition. 125 pages. 40 cents.

## OVID

Anderson's Selections from Ovid, with Vocabulary. 264 pages. \$1.00.

## FOR COLLEGE WORK

Carter's Roman Elegiac Poets. 330 pages. \$1.25.  
Bowen's Cicero's De Amicitia. 151 pages. 75 cents.  
Bowen's Cicero's De Senectute. 164 pages. 75 cents.  
Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar. Complete. 560 pages. \$1.20.  
Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Composition. 201 pages. 75 cents.  
Lease's Livy, Books I, XXI and XXII. 510 pages. \$1.25.  
Moore's Prose Exercises. Revised. 80 pages. 50 cents.  
Penick's Sallust's Catiline. With vocabulary. 191 pages. \$1.00.  
Rockwood's Cicero's De Officiis. 183 pages. \$1.00.  
Sihler's Cicero's Second Philippic. 157 pages. \$1.00.  
Wilson's Juvenal. 372 pages. \$1.25.

D. C. HEATH & CO., Publishers

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

# WELLS AND HART'S ALGEBRAS

The widespread fame of this series of Algebras, and its adoption by states, cities, and towns for use in thousands of schools is convincing proof of the authors' wisdom in planning a course that contains a *unique progressive treatment of the equation and its applications*, and reserves for a later discussion the more abstract generalizations and the more difficult type forms, thus furnishing *the largest amount of usable Algebra* that has been brought within the limits of the first year's work.

## FIRST YEAR ALGEBRA

Contains sufficient material for a strong first year course. Eminently teachable; emphasizes the parts of Algebra of use in business and industrial life; has practical, concrete problems; with ample drill upon factoring and the use of the equation as an accurate and time-saving mathematical aid.

## NEW HIGH SCHOOL ALGEBRA

Contains ample material for standard high school courses, and includes all the topics ordinarily required for entrance to college. The first 275 pages are identical with the authors' *First Year Algebra*, and the book provides a continuous and consistently developed course.

## SECOND COURSE IN ALGEBRA

Designed for a second course which is separated from the first by the lapse of a year or more. Chapters I to VIII comprise a brief but complete review of the rudiments; Chapters IX to XVIII duplicate corresponding chapters of the *New High School Algebra*; and Chapters XIX to XXIV contain new material designed to enable schools to meet the highest forms of college entrance requirements.

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS









